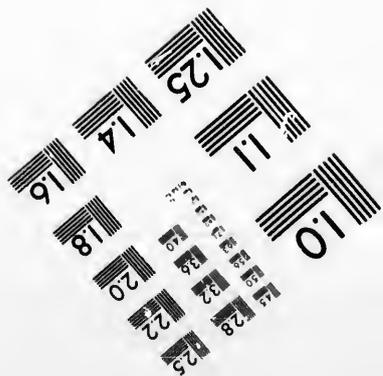
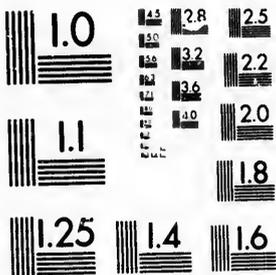


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions**

**Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**1980**

Technical Notes / Notes techniques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Physical features of this copy which may alter any of the images in the reproduction are checked below:

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Certains défauts susceptibles de nuire à la qualité de la reproduction sont notés ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/  
Couvertures de couleur
- Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Tight binding (may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin)/  
Reliure serrée (peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure)
- Additional comments/  
Commentaires supplémentaires

- Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- Coloured plates/  
Planches en couleur
- Show through/  
Transparence
- Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées

Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image.

---

Bibliographic Notes / Notes bibliographiques

- Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- Plates missing/  
Des planches manquent
- Additional comments/  
Commentaires supplémentaires
- Pagination incorrect/  
Erreurs de pagination
- Pages missing/  
Des pages manquent
- Maps missing/  
Des cartes géographiques manquent

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

The original copy was borrowed from, and filmed with, the kind consent of the following institution:

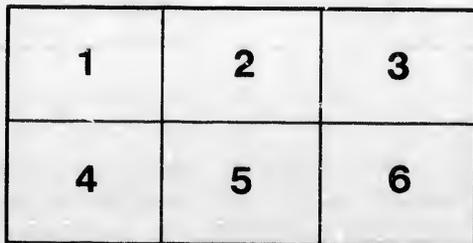
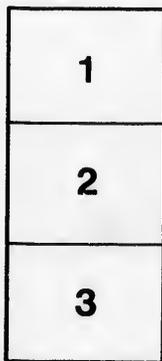
National Library of Canada

L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de l'établissement prêteur suivant :

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Maps or plates too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:

Les cartes ou les planches trop grandes pour être reproduites en un seul cliché sont filmées à partir de l'angle supérieure gauche, de gauche à droite et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Le diagramme suivant illustre la méthode :





New Brunswick School Series.

---

55944

# A HISTORY OF CANADA.

---

For the Use of Schools.

BY ANDREW ARCHER.

---

PRESCRIBED BY THE BOARD OF EDUCATION FOR  
NEW BRUNSWICK.

---



LONDON:

T. NELSON AND SONS, PATERNOSTER ROW.

J. & A. McMILLAN, SAINT JOHN, N.B.

---

1875.

FC51  
A84

EDUCATION OFFICE, }  
PROVINCE OF NEW BRUNSWICK. }

The Board of Education, under the Authority of THE COMMON-SCHOOL ACT 1871, has prescribed this edition of Archer's *School History of Canada*, as a Text-Book for use in the Schools of this Province.

THEODORE H. RAND,  
*Chief Superintendent of Education.*

## PREFATORY NOTE.

### ERRATA.

Through miscarriage of some of the revised proof sheets, a few errors appear in the text:

- P. 189, par. 9, for "2nd of July," read 21st of JUNE.  
P. 275, 2nd line, for "Chedabucto Harbour," read CHERUCTO HARBOUR.  
P. 350, 1st line, for "William Bailey," read THOMAS BAILLIE; and for "Frederick A. Robinson," read FREDERICK P. ROBINSON.  
P. 390, par. 18, for "Sectarian Schools," read DENOMINATIONAL COLLEGES; and for "a free common school system," read A PROVINCIAL UNIVERSITY.  
P. 418, for "Winacke," read J. UNIACKE.  
P. 487, par. 39, for "1866," read 1867.  
P. 439, for "Langeoul," read LANGEVIN; for "Benny," read KENNY. The name of Hon. Adams G. Archibald, should also appear in the list of the first Privy Council.  
For "Frederickton," read FREDERICTON; for "Magaquadaric," read MAGAGUADAWIC; for "Missignash," read MISSISQUASH.
- now called Quebec and Ontario, which long since bore the name of Canada; but, though these necessarily occupy the greatest space, the course of events in Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and the other Provinces, is in this book treated in the order of their relative importance. The writer, in dealing with a long series of events, has made it his aim to be as clear and concise as possible; but he has not thought it necessary to confine himself to a bare outline. The greater interest given to a narrative by dwelling a little at length on some of the more important incidents, and the desirableness of placing a pretty comprehensive history in the hands of teachers, will, it is hoped, successfully meet objections to fulness of detail, should any be raised.

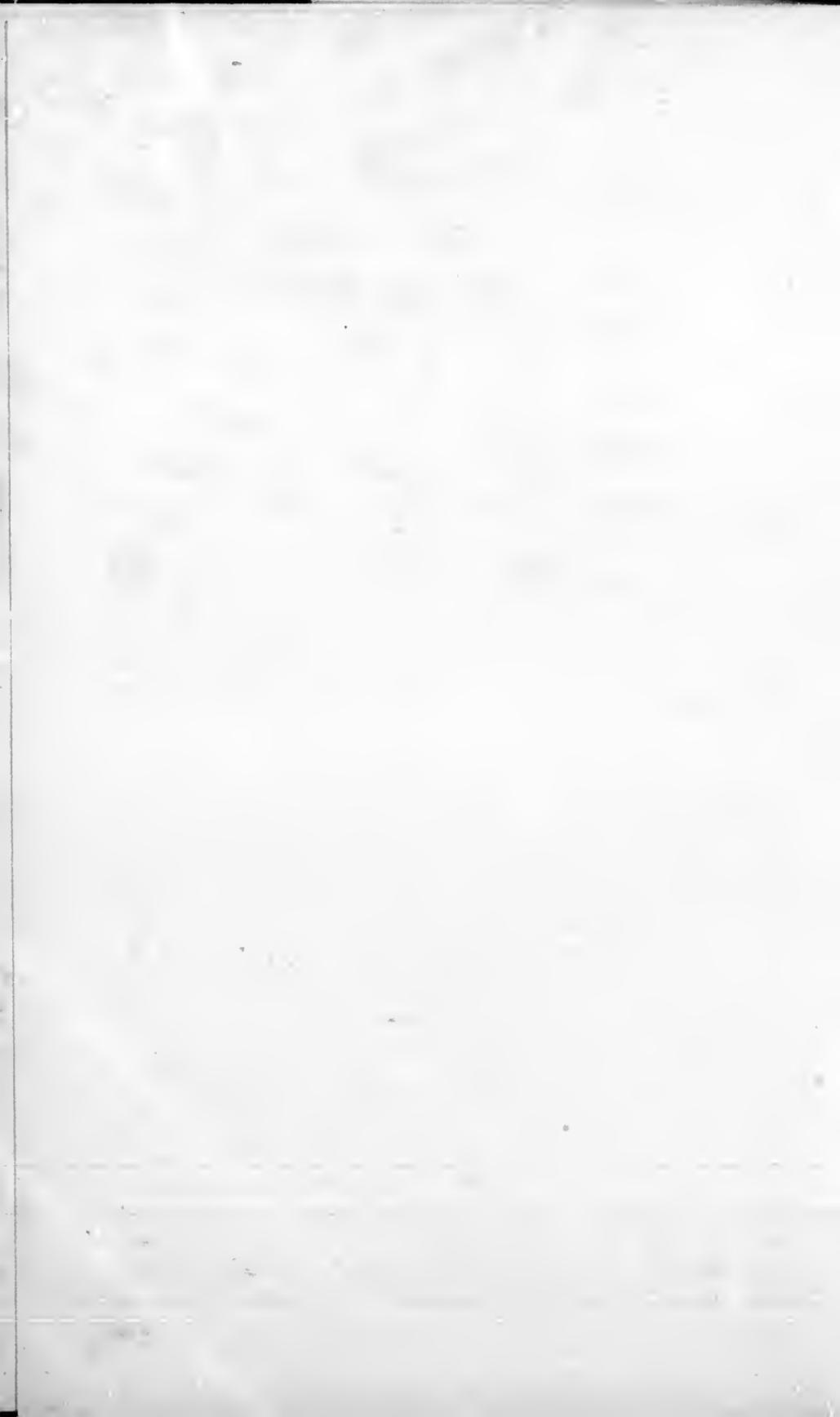
FC51  
A84

Through misprint of name of the ...  
 P. 180 ...  
 P. 175 ...  
 P. 170 ...  
 P. 165 ...  
 P. 160 ...  
 P. 155 ...  
 P. 150 ...  
 P. 145 ...  
 P. 140 ...  
 P. 135 ...  
 P. 130 ...  
 P. 125 ...  
 P. 120 ...  
 P. 115 ...  
 P. 110 ...  
 P. 105 ...  
 P. 100 ...  
 P. 95 ...  
 P. 90 ...  
 P. 85 ...  
 P. 80 ...  
 P. 75 ...  
 P. 70 ...  
 P. 65 ...  
 P. 60 ...  
 P. 55 ...  
 P. 50 ...  
 P. 45 ...  
 P. 40 ...  
 P. 35 ...  
 P. 30 ...  
 P. 25 ...  
 P. 20 ...  
 P. 15 ...  
 P. 10 ...  
 P. 5 ...

## PREFATORY NOTE.

---

SINCE Confederation, a new interest has been awakened in the History of Canada. The different Provinces comprised in the Dominion have been intimately connected in the past ; a study of their records shows that the same course of events abroad, and similar causes of political dissatisfaction within, have helped to mould their destiny. Separate Histories of the British North American Provinces have, from time to time, been written for the use of schools ; but these, viewed from the stand-point of the Dominion under Confederation, are incomplete. In the present book an endeavour has been made to give a general view of the history of the country now known as Canada, from the earliest to the latest times. That history centres in the Provinces now called Quebec and Ontario, which long alone bore the name of Canada ; but, though these necessarily occupy the greatest space, the course of events in Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and the other Provinces, is in this book treated in the order of their relative importance. The writer, in dealing with a long series of events, has made it his aim to be as clear and concise as possible ; but he has not thought it necessary to confine himself to a bare outline. The greater interest given to a narrative by dwelling a little at length on some of the more important incidents, and the desirableness of placing a pretty comprehensive history in the hands of teachers, will, it is hoped, successfully meet objections to fulness of detail, should any be raised.



# CONTENTS.

---

## CHAPTER I.—INTRODUCTORY. 1604 to 1867 A.D.

A Glance at the History of Canada from its earliest settlement by the French to the consummation of Confederation..... 13

## CHAPTER II.—DISCOVERY. 982, 1492, 1583 A.D.

The Northmen—Christopher Columbus—John and Sebastian Cabot—Amerigo Vespucci—The Banks of Newfoundland—John Verazzani—Jacques Cartier's first Voyage—His second and third Voyages—Sieur de Roberval, Viceroy of Canada—Disastrous issue of his Expedition—Martin Frobisher—Sir Humphrey Gilbert—Origin of the name "Canada"..... 23

## CHAPTER III.—THE INDIAN TRIBES.

The first peopling of America—The three Indian "Families"—The Esquimaux and Savannois—Location of the Algonquin Tribes—The Hurons or Wyandots—The Iroquois—Indian Characteristics—Their constructive skill—Dress—Wampum—Occupations and Amusements—Position of the Women—Form of Government—Superstitions; Religious Belief—Their present state ..... 37

## CHAPTER IV.—FIRST SETTLEMENTS IN NEW FRANCE.

1588 to 1608 A.D.

The Fur-trade at Anticosti—Sieur de la Roche, Viceroy of Canada—Convicts on Sable Island—M. Pontgravé at Tadoussac—Samuel de Champlain—He ascends the St. Lawrence—M. de Monts, Lieutenant-General of Acadie—Settlement on the St. Croix—Port Royal—Baron de Poutrincourt and Marc Lescarbot—The Order of the Good Time—Break-up of the establishment at Port Royal ..... 48

## CHAPTER V.—QUEBEC. 1608 to 1614 A.D.

Renewal of De Monts' Monopoly—Foundation of Quebec—Plot to murder Champlain—He goes to war against the Iroquois—Disorders caused by French fur-traders—Poutrincourt returns to Port Royal—Baptism of Membertou and family—The Society of Jesus—Discord at Port Royal—Settlement at St. Sauveur—Destroyed by Samuel Argall—Destruction of Port Royal..... 55

## CHAPTER VI.—CHAMPLAIN. 1612 to 1616 A.D.

Lieutenant-Generals of New France—Comte de Soissons—Prince de Condé—Vignan the impostor—Champlain ascends the Ottawa—His disappointment—His troubles in France—He visits the Huron country—Goes to war against the Senecas—Repulse of the allied Indians—Champlain detained a prisoner—Lost in the woods..... 63

## CHAPTER VII.—DIFFICULTIES OF FIRST SETTLEMENT.

1617 to 1626 A.D.

Precarious existence of Canada—Duc de Montmorency—Intrigues of the Associated Merchants—Champlain victorious—Dismal state of Quebec—Madame de Champlain—Guillaume and Emery de Caen—Duc de Ventadour, Viceroy—The Jesuit Fathers—Acadie—Sir William Alexander—Knights-Baronets of Nova Scotia ..... 72

## CHAPTER VIII.—FIRST CAPTURE OF QUEBEC. 1627 to 1635 A.D.

Unsatisfactory state of affairs—Cardinal Richelieu—New Company of the One Hundred Associates—War between France and England—Admiral Kirkst seizes Port Royal—Champlain refuses to surrender Quebec—French fleet captured by that of Great Britain—Quebec taken—Treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye—Restoration of Canada and Acadie—The last labours of Champlain—His death ..... 78

## CHAPTER IX.—THE RULE OF THE CHURCH. 1636 to 1649 A.D.

M. de Montmagny—The Jesuit Fathers—Colleges, Seminaries, Hospitals—The Huron Mission—Founding of Ville-Marie de Montreal—Inursions of the Iroquois—Dangers incurred by missionaries—Maisonneuve at La Place d'Armes—New Company fails to perform obligations—Deceptive truce with Iroquois—Continued prosperity of the Huron Mission—Its total destruction..... 84

## CHAPTER X.—TIME OF TRIAL. 1648 to 1663 A.D.

The New England Colonies—Proposed treaty of perpetual peace—Its failure—M. de Lauson—State of Canada—Jesuit Mission in Onondaga—Viscomte d'Argenson—Insolence of the Mohawks—Portents and signs in the skies—The liquor traffic—The great earthquake—New Company surrenders its charter..... 95

## CHAPTER XI.—ACADIE. 1632 to 1670 A.D.

D'Aulnay and La Tour, lieutenants under Razilli—Their feuds—La Tour disobeys the royal command to appear in France—D'Aulnay's Fleet at Part-ridge Island—La Tour and wife visit Boston—D'Aulnay makes Treaty with New England—Madame La Tour's heroism and death—Death of D'Aulnay—His widow marries La Tour—Emmanuel le Borgue—The English seize Acadie—Grant to La Tour, Temple, and Crowne—Acadie restored to the French ..... 102

## CHAPTER XII.—CANADA A SOVEREIGN COLONY. 1663 A.D.

M. Gaudois, Royal Commissioner—The Sovereign Council—Governor-General, Bishop, Intendant—Courts—Character of the French Canadians—The West India Company—The Feudal System—The Fur-trade—Commerce—The English at New York—Their Alliance with the Iroquois—Rivalries between French and English ..... 110

## CHAPTER XIII.—DOMINION OF FRANCE EXTENDED.

1665 to 1672 A.D.

M. de Mesy—Marquis de Tracy, Viceroy—Joy in Quebec—The Forts on the Richelieu—Defiant attitude of the Mohawks—Campaign against them—M. de Courcelles—Peace—Missions at Ste. Marie and Michillimackinac—The labours of M. Talon—The Tribes of the west, and the Crown of France—The Mississippi—Hudson Bay—Newfoundland ..... 119

## CHAPTER XIV.—THE MISSISSIPPI. 1673 to 1685 A.D.

Firm rule of M. de Courcelles—The Fort at Cataracoui—Count Frontenac—M. Duchesneau, Intendant—Sieur la Salle—The *Griffin* on Lake Huron—La Salle reaches the mouth of the Mississippi—His sad fate—Frontenac in disgrace—Governor Dongan of New York—M. de la Barre—The Bay of Famine ..... 131

## CHAPTER XV.—THE AGONY OF CANADA. 1684 to 1689 A.D.

Marquis de Denonville—Treaty of Neutrality—Seizure of Iroquois Chiefs—The Senecas punished—Pestilence—Intrigues of Governor Dongan—Cataracoui besieged—Kondiaronk "the Rat"—The Peace killed—M. de Callières in France—The Massacre of Lachine—Hudson Bay ..... 140

## CHAPTER XVI.—THE STRUGGLE COMMENCED. 1690 A.D.

Canada in extremity—The three war parties—Schenectady—The first Congress—Acadie—Capture of Port Royal—Montreal threatened—New England Fleet off Point Levi—The rage of Frontenac—*Kebeca liberata* ..... 149

## CHAPTER XVII.—THE BATTLE DRAWN. 1691 to 1698 A.D.

The Iroquois Chiefs—Frontenac's policy—Expedition against the Onondagas—Naval fight in the Bay of Fundy—Baron St. Castine—Fort William—Henry captured—The Nachouac—Newfoundland and Hudson Bay—Peace of Ryswick—Death of Frontenac—M. de Callières—Marquis de Vaudreuil.. 157

## CHAPTER XVIII.—PEACE AND WAR. 1703 to 1740 A.D.

Canada and New England—Port Royal—The Bostonians enraged—The French destroy Haverhill—Invasion of Canada checked—Nova Scotia—Annapolis Royal—Canada again threatened—The English Fleet shattered on the Egg Islands—The Treaty of Utrecht—Internal condition of Canada—Father Charlevoix—Marquis de Beauharnois ..... 167

## CHAPTER XIX.—LOUISBURG. 1744 to 1748 A.D.

The War of the Austrian Succession—The Acadians—Du Vivier's stratagem—The siege of Louisburg—The great French Fleet—Duc d'Anville—A series of casualties—The Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle..... 179

## CHAPTER XX.—CONTEST APPROACHING. 1749 to 1754 A.D.

Territorial pretensions of France—Count de la Galissonnière—Boundary Commission of Paris—M. de la Jonquière—Official corruption—Halifax—Abbé de Loutre—Fort Beauséjour—Preparation for the coming struggle—Collision in the Valley of the Ohio..... 186

## CHAPTER XXI.—WAR DECLARED. 1755 to 1757 A.D.

The Marquis de Vaudreuil-Cavagnac—Capture of Fort Beauséjour—Braddock at Monongahela—Battle of Lake George—Expulsion of the Acadians—War declared—Loudoun Commander-in-Chief—Marquis de Montcalm—Fort Oswego taken—Massacre at Fort William-Henry ..... 195

## CHAPTER XXII.—THE CONQUEST. 1758 to 1760 A.D.

Internal state of Canada.—William Pitt—Louisburg captured—The Island of St. John—Ticonderoga—The last struggle—Bourlamaque bars the gate—Fort Niagara taken—Wolfe before Quebec—Battle of the Plains—Surrender of Quebec—Fattle of Ste. Foye—M. de Levi's blockade raised—End of French Rule in Canada..... 205

## CHAPTER XXIII.—PONTIAC. 1760 to 1763 A.D.

Military Government—Canada left bankrupt by the French—Close of the Seven Years' War—The Treaty of Paris—Influence of the Noblesse—The Royal Proclamation—The Boundaries of the Province of Quebec—Civil Government—Surrender of the western forts—The rise and defeat of Pontiac's Conspiracy..... 222

## CHAPTER XXIV.—THE CONFLICT OF LAWS. 1766 to 1774 A.D.

The "New" and the "Old" Subjects—English and French Law—Governor Guy Carleton—The Remedies for the conflict of laws—The Feudal Terure—Marriage and Mortgage—The discontents in the English Colonies—The Quebec Act—The dissatisfaction in Quebec—The first Assembly of Nova Scotia—The French on the Miramichi—The Loyalist Refugees—Maugerville—The Island of St. John..... 235

## CHAPTER XXV.—THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR. 1775 to 1800 A.D.

The Philadelphia Congress—The "Gates of Canada" secured—The Invasion—General Montgomery—Benedict Arnold threatens Quebec—Montreal Abandoned—Death of Montgomery at Quebec—Naval fight on Lake Champlain—Burgoyne's Surrender at Saratoga—Sir Frederick Haldimand—Fort Cumberland—The last Rising of the Indians ..... 248

## CHAPTER XXVI.—NEW BRUNSWICK. 1782 to 1790 A.D.

Close of the Revolutionary War—The United Empire Loyalists—The Treaty of 1783—Boundaries—Landing of the Loyalists—New Brunswick—Governor Thomas Carleton—Frederickton—Lord Dorchester, Governor-General—State of Canada ..... 256

## CHAPTER XXVII.—THE CONSTITUTIONAL ACT. 1791 to 1798 A.D.

The French Revolution—Fox and Burke—Earl Grenville's Act—Upper and Lower Canada—The Constitution—The Meeting of the two Legislatures—Governor Simcoe at York—Treaty of Amity, Commerce, and Navigation—Affairs in Lower Canada ..... 265

## CHAPTER XXVIII.—THE SISTER PROVINCES. 1783 to 1800 A.D.

## SIGNS OF WAR. 1807 to 1811 A.D.

Nova Scotia—Impeachment of the Judges—Sir John Wentworth—Edward, Duke of Kent—Prince Edward Island—Legislative Disputes in New Brunswick—Members' pay—Governor T. Carleton's Administration—Hostile feeling in the United States—The Right of Search—Change of Governors—Reign of Terror in Lower Canada ..... 273

## CHAPTER XXIX.—THE ANGLO-AMERICAN WAR. 1812—1813 A.D.

The Feeling in the United States—President Madison declares War—Defeat of the American General Hull—Death of Brock—Queenston Heights—Ill success of American War operations—Preparations for Campaign of 1813—Ogdensburg burned—General Proctor victorious in the West—York captured by Americans—Fort George taken—Sackett's Harbour—Midnight Attack at Stony Creek—Naval Fight on Lake Erie—Chateaugay—Newark burned by the Americans—Buffalo burned by the British.... 281

## CHAPTER XXX.—WAR ENDED. 1814—1815 A.D.

Mediation of the Czar—Impeachment of the Lower Canada Judges—Position of the combatants—U.S. General Brown crosses the Niagara—General Riall retreats—Battle of Lundy's Lane—Halifax—The *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon*—Washington burned—Sir George Prevost at Plattsburg—Fort Erie—Close of the War..... 300

## CHAPTER XXXI.—THE FAMILY COMPACT. 1815 to 1827 A.D.

State of Canada after the War—The Feeling of the French Canadians—The Revenues—Disputes in the Legislature—Death of the Duke of Richmond—The Earl of Dalhousie—Upper Canada—Aliens—Clergy Reserves—Customs Dispute between the two Provinces..... 310

## CHAPTER XXXII.—THE FIRST APPEAL TO ENGLAND.

## 1822 to 1827 A.D.

The Union Scheme—Canada Trade Act—Failure of Sir John Caldwell—The Canada Tenures Act—The Earl of Dalhousie's unpopular acts—The Crown

Lands—State of Nova Scotia—Cape Breton—Legislative troubles in New Brunswick—Death of Governor G. Tracey Smythe—Sir Howard Douglas—The Great Fire at Miramichi—The Disputed Territory—The Duties on Baltic timber..... 320

CHAPTER XXXIII.—RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT—LOWER CANADA. 1828 to 1836 A.D.

An age of Political Reform—Report of the Canada Committee—Recall of the Earl of Dalhousie—The Concessions made by the British Government—Renewed discontents—Lord Aylmer—Rebellious tendencies—The Ninety-two Resolutions—Lord Gosford—The Commission of Inquiry—A deadlock..... 320

CHAPTER XXXIV.—RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT—UPPER CANADA. 1828 to 1836 A.D.

William Lyon M'Kenzie—The Family Compact—William IV., the People's Friend—M'Kenzie expelled from the Assembly—The People's Agent in Downing Street—The Result of the Mission—M'Kenzie dragged from his seat—Lord Goderich—The Fifty-six Rectories—Sir Francis B. Head—The Reformers deceived—The Tories triumphant..... 330

CHAPTER XXXV.—RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT—THE LOWER PROVINCES. 1832 to 1837 A.D.

The Family Compact of Nova Scotia—Joseph Howe and L. A. Wilmot—Division of the Council of New Brunswick—Crown Land Department—Mission of Messrs. Simonds and Chandler—Surrender of Casual and Territorial Revenue—Mission of Messrs. Crane and Wilmot—Sir Archibald Campbell—Hon. G. F. Street in Downing Street—The Civil List Bill passed—Harvey and the Reign of Harmony—Joseph Howe—The closed doors—The Twelve Resolutions—The doors opened—The King's gracious intentions defeated..... 348

CHAPTER XLXVI.—REBELLION. 1837 A.D.

Lord John Russell's Resolutions—Opinions regarding Responsible Government—Final Dissolution of the Legislature of Lower Canada—Sir Francis Head tranquilly awaits rebellion—The Meeting of the Five Counties—The "Dories" and the "Sons of Liberty"—Affair at St. Denis and St. Charles—Flight of Papineau—M'Kenzie threatens Toronto—The Rebels defeated at Montgomery Farm—Loyal enthusiasm of Militia of Upper Canada—Insurrection in the Two Mountains crushed..... 357

CHAPTER XXXVII.—TROUBLOUS TIMES. 1838-1839 A.D.

Loyal Feeling in the Maritime Provinces—M'Kenzie on Navy Island—The burning of the steamer *Caroline*—American sympathizers invade Canada—Suspension of the Constitution of Lower Canada—Sir Francis B. Head resigns—Execution of Lount and Matthews—Earl Durham, High Commissioner—Amnesty to Political Prisoners—The Earl abruptly leaves Canada—Fresh outbreak—Affairs at Napierville and Odell-town—The "Hunters" invade Canada—The Disputed Territory—Warlike excitement in Maine and New Brunswick—The Ashburton Treaty..... 369

CHAPTER XXXVIII.—RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT ESTABLISHED.  
1839 to 1849 A. D.

Lord Durham's Report—Charles Poulett Thompson—The Union Act of 1841—Meeting of First Parliament of United Canada—Death of Lord Sydenham—Sir Charles Bagot and Sir Charles Metcalfe—The right of Appointment to Office—Lord Elgin and the Reform Ministry—Nova Scotia—Reconstruction of the Executive Council—Lord Falkland—Responsible Government carried—New Brunswick—The Provincial Secretaryship—Charles Fisher's Resolution—Rebellion Losses Bill—Lord Elgin mobbed—The Parliament Buildings burned—Seat of Government question..... 381

CHAPTER XXXIX.—MEASURES OF PROGRESS. 1850 to 1858 A. D.

Commercial independence—Measures of Progress—Municipal Institutions—The Intercolonial Railway—Delegations and Conferences—The Reciprocity Treaty—The Clergy Reserves question settled—Feudal Tenure Abolished—Emigration—The Hudson Bay Company—The North-West Territory—Selkirk Settlement—Feuds of Rival Traders—British Columbia..... 400

CHAPTER XL.—CONFEDERATION. 1857 to 1867 A. D.

State of the Union Question—Increased Representation—Elective Legislative Council—Representation by Population—First Proposal of Union—The Canadian Tariffs—Prince of Wales' Visit—The United States Defence question—Crisis in Parliament of Canada—Parties coalesce to carry Confederation—Prince Edward Island Conference—Quebec Conference—The Scheme of Union—Delegation of Canadian Ministry to London—New Brunswick Anti-confederate—Mr. Cardwell's Despatch—The Fenian Brotherhood—The Session of 1866 in New Brunswick—Meeting of Delegates in London—British North America Act—First Meeting of Confederate Parliament..... 417

---

APPENDIXES.

NOTES OF PRINCIPAL EVENTS SINCE CONFEDERATION.....	439
THE CONSTITUTION.....	444
INTERNAL PROGRESS OF CANADA—1492—1867.....	447
CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.....	458
PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES.....	466
<hr/>	
INDEX.....	470

# M A P S .

---

THE KNOWN WORLD IN THE FIFTEENTH AND NINETEENTH CENTURIES .....	24
EARLY DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS .....	34
LOCATION OF INDIAN FAMILIES (Province of Quebec in 1774) .....	36
ACADIE .....	51
CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLORATION OF THE OTTAWA .....	65
NOVA SCOTIA, 1621 A.D. ....	76
THE HURON MISSION .....	92
LOUISBURG.....	182
LAKE CHAMPLAIN .....	198
SIEGE OF QUEBEC .....	214
THE LAKE COUNTRY AND THE WESTERN FORTS.....	226
THE DISPUTED TERRITORY .....	258
UPPER AND LOWER CANADA .....	266
NIAGARA FRONTIER. ....	285
LAKE ERIE.....	289
SACKETT'S HARBOUR AND CHRYSLER'S FARM .....	297
ST. DENIS AND ST. CHARLES .....	364
BRITISH COLUMBIA.....	414

# HISTORY OF CANADA.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### INTRODUCTORY.

1604 to 1867 A.D.

A Glance at the History of Canada from its earliest Settlement by the French, to the Consummation of Confederation.

1. WITHIN three centuries a band of **Frenchmen**—nobles and adventurers, soldiers and fur-traders, Catholic priest and Protestant curé—attempted to settle on a small island in the mouth of a river that flowed into Passamaquoddy Bay, and which they named the **St. Croix**. Exposed to the bitter blasts of winter, they struggled against cold, disease, and despair. Many sank before the balmy breath of spring inspired vigour and revived hope. In all the country now called the Dominion of Canada there was not, except those forlorn adventurers, a single European or white man. From ocean to ocean, and north to the region of perpetual snow and ice, stretched a vast unknown wilderness; boundless prairies, deep valleys, and lofty mountains; dense and trackless forests, in whose gloomy depths inland seas, great lakes, reposed in calm and raged in storm, and through which mighty rivers with many tributaries flowed, to empty themselves into ocean, gulf, and bay. Tribes of untamable savages pitched their wigwams by the shores of the lakes, and by the banks of the streams. War and hunting were their avocations; they were sunk in a state of cruel barbarism;

but even amidst their degradation they showed some signs of greatness, goodness, and generosity.

2. Among the adventurers of the St. Croix there was one man of noble mind and disinterested purpose, who looked beyond the immediate profit of the hour. **Samuel de Champlain**,<sup>1</sup> to the courage of a soldier, and the zeal of a missionary, added the daring curiosity of a discoverer. He had a strong desire to see strange lands. He had skill to note and map out their features. He was not discouraged by the utter failure of the first attempt at settlement on the St. Croix, or by the misfortunes that befell the colony at Port Royal in Acadie.<sup>2</sup> He followed in the track of his predecessor, **Jacques Cartier**.<sup>3</sup> He was haunted by the idea of finding his way to the rich and glowing East by penetrating the western wilds until he reached a great northern sea. Eagerly he listened to the hints given by the Huron and Ottawa Indians, whom he met on the banks of the St. Lawrence; and intently he studied the rude charts, drawn on birch bark, of the rivers and lakes in the west and north. He persuaded himself that great discoveries awaited him if he ascended the St. Lawrence and the grand northern river—the Ottawa—to their sources.

3. One autumn day he stood by the Falls of the Chaudiere, while his Indian companions threw votive offerings of **1612** tobacco into the seething caldron to propitiate the spirit A.D. —the Manitou of the waters. He was discomfited, and, for the time, discouraged. He had been made the dupe of an impostor, who had falsely told him that the great northern sea was to be found by ascending the Ottawa to its source in Lake Nipissing, and by following the river that flowed into it. With excessive toil he had made his way to the **Isle d'Allumette**, only to find that he had been deceived; and he was then returning to the banks of the St. Lawrence. But (and not unconsciously to himself) he stood on the ground of his predestined labour. The riches of the glowing East were

<sup>1</sup> *Samuel de Champlain*.—A French naval officer, born at Le Brouage (a village in the west of France), 1570; died 1635. Lake Champlain was named after him.

<sup>2</sup> *Acadie*.—The ancient name of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick.

<sup>3</sup> *Jacques Cartier*.—Born at St. Malo (in the north-west of France), 1494; died after 1522.

a mere delusion of the imagination—his work lay among the wilds and the savages of Canada. Already, in the rude fort and palisades of **Quebec** he had laid the foundation of a colony. He was not gifted with the vision of a seer, and could not foretell the events that would come to pass. He was obliged to work on, often in doubt and in sickness and with perpetual difficulties, sustained by his trust in God and the strength of his purpose. Within sight of the spot on which he stood, two centuries and a half afterwards rose a noble pile of buildings, worthy of his own regal Paris. The solitary, savage spot on the Ottawa, had become the centre, the capital, of a vast **Dominion**, aspiring to the rank of a nation. His dream of finding a way to the East across the Western Continent had become an every-day fact. By the agency of the wondrous power, Steam, travellers were whirled from great cities on the Atlantic seaboard, through a richly-settled country, out through the forest and over the prairie and the mountain, to the great ocean across which lay the islands and the far **Cathay**,<sup>1</sup> which the old discoverers had longed to reach by this route.

4. Two centuries and a half ago the rude fortress at Quebec, the fort at Port Royal, the trading station at Tadoussac on the Saguenay, and the fisheries at Canceau and La Hève on the southern and ~~western~~<sup>eastern</sup> coasts of Acadie, were the only occupied posts in the country, held by the French under the name of New France. Along the iron-bound and fog-enshrouded eastern coast of Newfoundland were scattered a few English fishing-stations; and, in the season, vessels from every maritime nation in Europe congregated to fish on "**the banks.**" Rude and feeble were the beginnings of our Dominion. The difficulties in the way of making a settlement, and keeping up communication between the different posts, were immense, so vast were the distances between them: through the intervening forests roamed fierce and hostile savages; and when the adverse winds arose, the little sail-ships were blown from their course across stormy gulf and bay. Where Toronto, Halifax, and St. John<sup>2</sup>—the capitals of three flourishing Provinces—now stand, solitude and barbarism reigned two hundred and fifty years ago. On the

<sup>1</sup> *Cathay*.—An old name for China; | <sup>2</sup> *St. John*.—The commercial capital  
now used chiefly by the poets. | of New Brunswick.

northern shore of Lake Ontario the forest descended to the shore, and the trees g'assed themselves in the waters; across the noble Bay of Chebucto a few Indians in their canoes sometimes darted; beneath the western height within the sheltered harbour of St. John a family of the Micmac tribe pitched their wigwams. A century and a half after the foundation of the colonies of Canada and Acadie, the primeval quietness was scarce broken, in places which are now the seats of intelligence and the centres of industry. So recent has been the rise of the modern Provinces of Ontario, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick, and of all that constitutes the chief strength of the present Dominion of Canada.

5. Canada has attained her present position with infinite pain and difficulty. There have been many obstacles in the path of her progress. The first settlers possessed their souls in fear and trembling, exposed to the constant onslaughts of wily and blood-thirsty savages. Deeds of pious zeal and adventurous courage cast a lustre over that period of trial and suffering. The efforts of the **Jesuit missionaries** to carry the Cross of Christ among the distant Indian tribes, and the discoveries of explorers, extended the power of the Crown of France over the wilderness, and made it known to the world. For a hundred years there were commercial rivalry and perpetual war between the French in Canada and Acadie and the British colonists of New England and New York, until the struggle was decided by the taking of Port Royal and Acadie, the capture of Quebec, and the conquest of Canada. Not until the final relinquishment by the Crown of France of all claim to territory, by the Treaty of Paris,<sup>1</sup> did Nova Scotia (the ancient Acadie) enter fairly on the path of internal peace and progress. Peculiar obstructions, from the first, were met with in carrying on the government of Canada. The difficulty of reconciling the pretensions of French Canadians and the claims of the new British population was very great. Though but a small minority, the

<sup>1</sup> *The Treaty of Paris.* — Between England, France, and Spain, concluded February 10, 1763. One of the principal articles was that France should resign all claim to Nova Scotia, Canada, and Cape Breton, but should retain a share in the fisheries of Newfoundland, with the isles of St. Pierre and Miquelon; which, however, were not to be fortified.

British, as the conquerors, and possessing the greatest amount of capital, intelligence, and enterprise, assumed that the language and laws of the Province should be altered to suit their views and prejudices. But the British Government, in imposing a constitution on Canada, took into consideration the interests of the large majority. For several years it remained a French Province under British sovereignty. Deeply attached as the French Canadians were to France, and to their own language, laws, customs, and institutions, they were well satisfied with the benignity of British rule, under which they enjoyed a peace, a happiness, and a prosperity unknown in the times of the French government. During the trying period of the American Revolutionary War they remained loyal to the British Crown.

6. After that war, and the acknowledgment of the independence of the American Colonies, a new era opened for Canada. **Bands of Loyalists**, who had lost all in fighting for their King and country, fled thither to seek safety and sustenance. The two new Provinces of Upper Canada and New Brunswick were created. The Loyalists brought with them a love for monarchical institutions. Separate governments were granted to Upper Canada, Lower Canada, and New Brunswick, like that which, since 1750, Nova Scotia had enjoyed. In each Province there was a Legislature of three branches. The two upper branches—the Governor, assisted by an Executive Council, and the Legislative Council—had control over the making of the laws and the expenditure of all moneys. They acknowledged no responsibility to the third branch, the Assembly, which represented the people. They presumed to be actuated by the highest motives, and were interested in promoting the happiness and prosperity of the Provinces; but if the Acts of the Councils excited the censure of the Assembly, the representatives of the people had no redress, for the members of the upper branches held their offices for life. The Imperial Government protected the commerce of the Provinces between the mother country and her other colonial dependencies, and regulated the trade between them and foreign countries by discriminative duties in favour of the home merchant and manufacturer.

7. Under this system of oligarchical government and commer-

cial protection and restriction the Provinces made considerable advances in **wealth and population**. They stood **1812-14** the shock of war unshaken in their loyalty, and **A.D.** fought bravely to preserve their dearly-prized connection with the mother country. But in the course of time a number of causes conspired to bring about a change in the form of government, and in the relations between the mother country and the Provinces. The people could not see unmoved the marvellous prosperity of the United States under free institutions, and they were influenced by the agitation of liberal political opinions at home. Immigration from the British Isles set in, and the Provinces received large accessions in population from classes more or less imbued with those opinions. But above all, the composition of the Executive and Legislative Councils excited popular discontent.

8. **For twenty years** there was political strife; and in Lower Canada the antagonism between the races grew in intensity.

The discontent exploded in a brief rebellion. Upper **1848** and Lower Canada were then united. **Responsible** **A.D.** **Government** was established in all the Provinces.

Political power was transferred from the upper to the lower branch of the Legislature. No Government that could not command the support of a majority of the members of the Assembly in carrying out its policy, could thenceforth remain in office. At the same time that the Imperial Government granted to the Provinces the right to manage their own affairs, it withdrew all protection from their commerce—they were placed on the same footing as foreigners.

9. Under the system of free government and free trade the Provinces grew enterprising. In Canada abuses were reformed, and improvements were made in internal communication by means of canals and railways. The system of common schools was inaugurated. Efforts were made to establish free commercial intercourse between the Canadas, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick, and to construct a railway to connect them. A Confederation of the Provinces had long been declared, by eminent statesmen, to be the best remedy for the political discords that rent the Canadas, and a means of advancing the prosperity of all. A wonderful conjuncture of circumstances made it possible

to turn those suggestions to practical account. **The Confederation of the Provinces** was consummated. Two hundred and fifty years from the time when Champlain stood near the Falls of the Chaudiere, in the wilds of the Ottawa, the Dominion of Canada was erected. **1867**  
A.D.  
Wonderful changes had taken place in the condition of the country.

10. What is now the state of this Dominion? Quebec—grown up from being a rude wooden fort with a garrison of fifty people, to be a venerable city of 60,000 inhabitants<sup>1</sup>—gives its name to a well settled Province (that once comprised all Canada), having a population of 1,192,000 souls. Montreal—the Hochelaga of the Indians, the Ville-Marie of Maisonneuve and the religious enthusiasts of 1642—is a flourishing and beautiful city, the commercial centre of the Dominion. It has a population of 107,000. Time has worked many changes in Lower Canada. The **Feudal Tenure**,<sup>2</sup> which held the mass of French Canadian inhabitants in a state of semi-bondage, has been swept away. Universities, colleges, superior and common schools are established in the cities, towns, villages, and districts. But the attachment of the French Canadians to their language, laws, customs, and institutions has not been shaken. The evidence of the French origin of Canada is as strong as ever, amidst the proofs of the wonderful growth of British power. This double nationality ought to widen the sympathies of the young Canadian. It gives him an interest in the history of two great nations—France and Great Britain.

11. By the shores of Lake Ontario—where, eighty years ago, the Indian pitched his wigwam beneath the shade of overhanging boughs, and myriads of wild-fowl gathered in the bay and surrounding marshes—the city of Toronto, the capital of the leading Province of the Dominion, has arisen. On the site where it stands, **Governor Simcoe**<sup>3</sup> had encamped with his regiment,

<sup>1</sup> *Inhabitants.*—The figures referring to population are taken from the Census of 1871.

<sup>2</sup> *Feudal Tenure.*—Tenure of land, not by virtue of rent paid, but of military service rendered to a superior.

<sup>3</sup> *Governor Simcoe.*—Colonel John

Graves Simcoe, appointed Governor of Upper Canada, when the new Constitution dividing Canada into Lower and Upper Provinces was inaugurated in 1792. He had commanded the Royal Virginian Rangers during the Revolutionary War. See p. 270.

the Royal Rangers, in 1793. Not a house was then erected. Within the years of an old man's life Upper Canada, now called Ontario, from being a few settlements, scattered between the Bay of Quinté and Toronto and along the Niagara frontier, without towns, roads, or schools, has grown up to be a well-ordered, self-governing, prosperous Province, with an established system of education scarce to be surpassed, and magnificent means of internal communication by roads, canals, and railways. **Toronto** has a population of 58,000. It lacks nothing that a rising city should have—great docks, broad streets, fine buildings, churches, universities, colleges, schools, halls, a busy population, and growing manufactures, acquired wealth, enterprise, and a free and powerful press. Other cities and towns have arisen by the shores of Lakes Ontario and Erie—Kingston (the ancient Cataracoui), Hamilton, London, Brantford, Guelph, ~~Leeds~~, Chatham, and others—while numberless villages are spread over the vast extent of the Province. The country between the St. Lawrence, the Ottawa, and Georgian Bay is being filled up. Railways have been made; more are being constructed, and soon the whole Province will be intersected by ramifying lines. The great source of its wealth is its fertile wheat-growing soil; agriculture is its chief pursuit. In the ancient capitals of Europe—London, Paris, Vienna—the excellence of its products has won distinction. Its manufactures are growing in importance. Its population numbers 1,700,000.

12. By the incorporation of **Hudson Bay and North-West Territories** into the Dominion, an addition has been made to Canada vastly more extensive than all the **1870** country claimed by the French, and called by them New **A.D.** France. The extension of the Dominion to the Pacific coast took place in 1870, and in all probability consequences of the utmost importance will result from it. Many years may not elapse before a line of railway will connect the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. Across the Dominion will be the shortest route from England to China. Traffic generally seeks the shortest route. Then the commerce between Europe and Asia will pass over the American Continent, realizing in a strange manner the dream of the first explorers—of finding a way to the East by the west. A tide of emigration may pour into the vast and

fertile valley of the Saskatchewan, and other Provinces besides Manitoba may spring up. In the far west of the Dominion there are illimitable means of expansion.

13. **Acadie** is now no more. What it was is a matter of history. Cattle graze in the ruined ditches and on the mounds of the ancient Port Royal. Few and faint are the vestiges of French domination in Acadie. Two British Provinces occupy its ground—Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Lying along the Gulf shore, and abutting on the Atlantic, they show an extensive sea-board, with spacious harbours and ports, without which the Dominion of Canada could never attain a commanding position in the Empire. By Chebucto Bay and the harbour of St. John stand two cities of nearly equal population—**Halifax** and **St. John**, the centres of extensive commerce. The sister maritime Provinces bring to the Dominion a great accession of strength: a joint population of 677,000 souls; a revenue of over \$2,500,000; in their extensive forests and fisheries, and in their mines of coal and iron, great sources of wealth; a great commercial fleet, and a hardy sea-going class of people.

14. The fertile Island of St. John, now **Prince Edward Island**,<sup>1</sup> joined the Confederation in 1873. It was very long neglected, and its existence as a Province dates back only to 1758. It brings to the Dominion a population of 94,000, and a revenue of \$400,000; both greater than those of Canada in the best days of French rule. With the entry of Newfoundland the Confederation of the British North American Provinces will be completed.

15. The Dominion of Canada has come of age. Its people have reached the stage of free action, and can either make or mar their future. Many of the worst obstacles in their path of progress have been overcome, and they have acquired strength to proceed with accelerated speed. The future is hid from all, but the prospect seems full of promise. The Dominion has now a population close on 4,000,000 of people. Its flag is now carried by its marine to every quarter of the globe. Its commerce, in the aggregate, amounts to \$200,000,000. The rudiments of a sound education are within the reach of every

<sup>1</sup> *Prince Edward Island*.—So named | the father of Queen Victoria; died  
in 1800, after Edward, Duke of Kent, | 1820.

child. The means of enlightenment are freely spread abroad. The Church, the School, the University, the Press unite in maintaining the religious, moral, and intellectual advancement of the people. In their hands is the control of the government. It is in their power, ultimately, to put an end to the sectional strifes, the bitter party political contests, that have caused great difficulties in the past, and to determine that the administration of affairs shall be pure.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was the first attempt made to settle in Canada? Where? What was the fate of many of the adventurers? Describe the country as it then was.

2. Who was the most remarkable of the St. Croix settlers? What was his character? What idea haunted him?

3. What great imposture was practised on him? Where did he really lay the foundation of a colony? How has his dream been realized?

4. Describe the state of what is now the Dominion of Canada, two centuries and a half ago. What shows how recent has been the rise of all that constitutes its strength?

5. Mention some of the difficulties which Canada has had to encounter. From what does the rise of Nova Scotia date? What obstructions in carrying on the government of Canada were met with from the first? What made the French Canadians loyal to the British Crown? When was their loyalty put to a severe test?

6. How did the independence of the United States open a new era for Canada? Describe the new Constitution then conferred on the latter.

7. How did the country prosper under the new government? What were

the chief causes which led to the introduction of change?

8. How long did the political strife last? In what did it result? What change took place in the position of commerce?

9. What improvements followed these changes? What remedy was suggested for the political discords that prevailed? When was confederation consummated?

10. What changes have occurred in Lower Canada? What is meant by the "double nationality" of Canadians? What effect ought it to have?

11. Describe the present state of Toronto and the cities of Ontario. What is the population of the capital? What is the chief source of the wealth of the Province?

12. When was the Dominion extended to the Pacific? What effects may be anticipated from that extension?

13. What Provinces now occupy the ground of Acadie? Describe their present condition.

14. When did Prince Edward Island join the Confederation? What was its former name? What Province is still outside the Dominion?

15. What considerations seem to fill the future of Canada with promise?

## CHAPTER II.

## DISCOVERY.

982 A.D.—1492 A.D.—1583 A.D.

The Northmen.  
 Christopher Columbus.  
 John and Sebastian Cabot.  
 Amerigo Vespucci.  
 The Banks of New foundland.  
 John Verazzani.  
 Jacques Cartier's first Voyage.

His second and third Voyages.  
 Sieur de Roberval, Viceroy of  
 Canada.  
 Disastrous issue of his Expedition.  
 Martin Frobisher.  
 Sir Humphrey Gilbert.  
 Origin of the name "Canada."

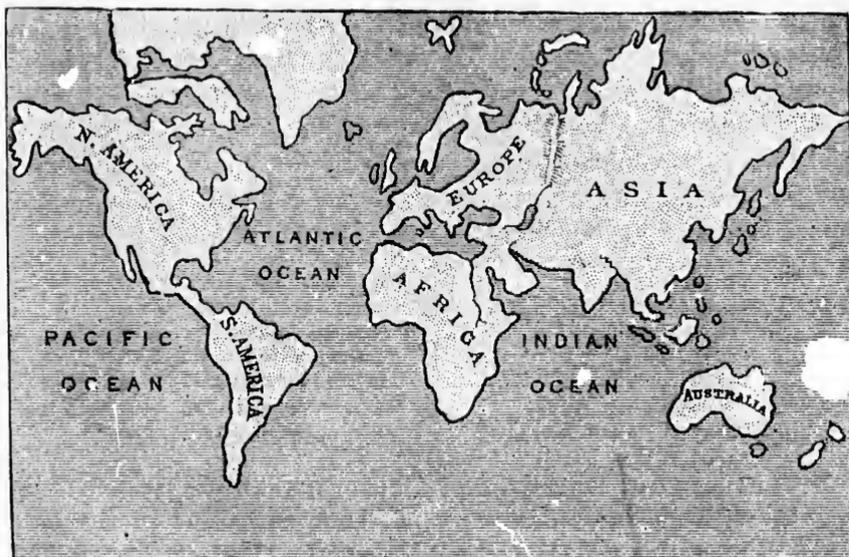
1. THE name of **Christopher Columbus**<sup>1</sup> is inseparably connected with the first discovery of America. But in the old records of Iceland, it is recorded that the Western Continent was known to the Northmen in the tenth century. Eric Raude (the Red) discovered the coasts of Greenland **982** and Labrador. Following up those discoveries, Biarni **A.D.** Heriulfson<sup>2</sup> passed through the straits between Newfoundland and Labrador, and, entering the Gulf, sailed until he gained the ocean. Keeping a south-westerly course, he saw from his vessel's deck the low-lying and wood-covered shores of **Nova Scotia**; he passed the headland of Cape Cod, and steering his way among the beautiful islands of Narragansett Bay, landed on the point on which the town of Newport now stands. To the Northmen, Newfoundland was *Helluoland*, "the land of broad stones;" Nova Scotia, *Markland*, "the land of woods;" Massachusetts and Rhode Island, *Vinland*, "the land of vines," because, according to the legend, some of Biarni's crew gathered grapes in Martha's Vineyard.

2. The prior discovery of America by the Northmen does not detract from the fame of Columbus. Long before their time

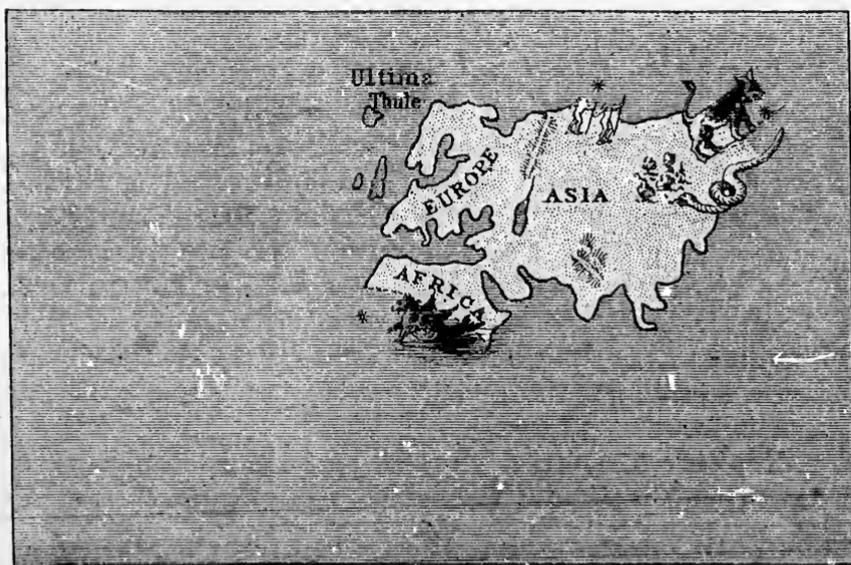
<sup>1</sup> *Christopher Columbus*. — Born at Genoa, 1445. He was of humble origin. In 1470 he joined his brother Bartholomew, who was a maker of charts at Lisbon. After soliciting assistance in vain from the Courts of England, Genoa, and Portugal, he obtained three

vessels from Ferdinand and Isabel of Spain. He discovered San Salvador in 1492, and the mainland of South America in 1498. He died at Valladolid poor and neglected in 1506.

<sup>2</sup> *Biarni Heriulfson*. — By some simply called Biörn.



THE KNOWN WORLD IN THE NINETEENTH CENTURY.



THE KNOWN WORLD IN THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

\* Such figures were used by old geographers to denote unknown regions.

the existence of another continent was deemed very probable. The great glory of the Genoese mariner was that he proved practically the truth of theories, and clearly established a fact that, before his time, had rested in the shadowy realm of tradition. His exploit filled all Europe with wonder and admiration. It was believed that sailing from the west by a way never before attempted, he had found the East Indies; a mistake that caused the natives of the new continent to be ever afterwards called **Indians**. **1493** A.D.

3. The discovery awakened a wonderful spirit of enterprise. It filled men's minds with wild dreams of glorious countries across the main; of lands of gold and precious stones, and of fragrant spices, through which flowed rivers of miraculous waters, that cured all diseases, and renewed in the old the spring-time of youth. When it was noised abroad, Henry VII. of England, cold and cautious as he was, regretted that he had let slip the opportunity of linking his name with the great discovery of the age, when he refused to aid the Genoese adventurer.

4. The success of Columbus excited the envy of **John Cabot**, a merchant of Venice, then carrying on business in Bristol. His son Sebastian,<sup>1</sup> an ambitious youth, was stirred by the event, and grew impatient to distinguish himself by some extraordinary enterprise. Father and son found favour with Henry. They received the royal permission to take six vessels of about 200 tons each, from any port in England. At their own charges they equipped this little fleet, and the King stipulated that he should receive one-fifth of the profits of the venture. The Cabots left Bristol, hoping, by sailing west, to reach Cathay. **1496** A.D.

5. On the 24th of June they first saw land, the coast of Newfoundland, which they named *Prima Vista*. Turning in a northerly direction, they kept the line of the coast of Labrador, sailing as far as the 56th degree of north **1497** A.D.

<sup>1</sup> *Sebastian Cabot*.—Born at Bristol 1477,—son of John Cabot, or Gabotto, a merchant of Venice. It is, however, believed by many that Cabot's "*Prima Vista*" was not Newfoundland, but Labrador. Sebastian Cabot spent many

years in the service of Spain, exploring the coasts of Brazil and La Plata. In 1553 he was at the head of the enterprising merchant adventurers who formed the "*Russia Company*" of traders. He died in 1557.

latitude, meeting great islands of ice, and experiencing intense cold. Much troubled at finding that the land still extended north without showing any entrance or gulf, they changed their course, and after passing through the Straits of Belle Isle, and exploring the Gulf, sailed south as far as **Florida**. The hardships of the voyage, and the scarcity of provisions, raising a mutiny among their crews, they returned to England. The

Cabots saw the mainland of the new continent fourteen months before Columbus, who reached the coasts of **1498** Paria<sup>1</sup> the next year. By right of this discovery from A.D. their vessels' decks, Henry VII. claimed possession of **1499** the North American Continent from Labrador to A.D. Florida.

6. A Florentine, **Amerigo Vespucci**,<sup>2</sup> followed in the track of Columbus. An account of what he had seen was **1507** published. When the book appeared Columbus was dead, A.D. and the discoveries of the Cabots were then little known to the world. No one at first refuted the false assertion that he had reached the mainland before the great Genoese; so the new continent was called *America* after him.

7. Sebastian Cabot made another voyage of discovery. **1517** He found by the Banks of Newfoundland and the coasts A.D. of Cape Breton a fleet of French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese fishing-vessels. These islands were then called *Baccalaos*, which in the Basque<sup>3</sup> language signifies "cod-fish."

8. England and France at this time met in the field of American discovery. Both ignored the right of the natives to the soil of the new continent, and claimed vast territories, whose boundaries were vague and undefined. Hence arose confusion and conflict when they asserted their right to the same tract of

<sup>1</sup> *Paria*.—North-east of Venezuela. It gives name to the gulf between Trinidad and the mainland.

<sup>2</sup> *Amerigo Vespucci*.—Born at Florence 1451. In the first account of his voyage, published in 1507, his discovery was placed in 1497. Humboldt, the great German philosopher and traveller (1769–1859), showed that he did not visit

South America till 1499—one year later than Columbus—and maintained that the application of his name to the New World was made in ignorance.

<sup>3</sup> *Basque*.—The language spoken in the Basque provinces (Biscay, Guipuscoa, and Alava) of the north-west of Spain. It is supposed to be of Tartar origin.

country. French adventurers from Harfleur<sup>1</sup> and Dieppe<sup>2</sup> had taken possession of some islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Seven years afterwards, Baron de Lery attempted a settlement on that little barren outpost, Sable Island, and left cattle upon it. **1518** A.D.

9. The claim of the French to the possession of the North American Continent rested on the discoveries of **John Verazzani**, an Italian mariner of ancient Florentine lineage. He entered the employ of Francis I. of France, and explored the American coast from the 34th to the 50th degree of north latitude. In the account of his voyage, it is said that he was the first man who saw the shores of North Carolina, and scented the fragrance of their forests, which was borne far out to sea; that the natives of Virginia and Maryland, when they descried his vessels, crowded on the beach and made signs of welcome; that he entered the Bay of New York, and saw the harbour crowded with canoes; that he was most hospitably received by the natives of Narragansett Bay; and that as he passed the irregular coasts of Massachusetts and the surf-beaten rocks of Maine, he viewed the scenes "ill pleased." This voyage terminated after he had explored, for many miles, the coasts of Terre-Neuve, or New-Foundland. Fearful that his provisions would fail, he returned to France, where the report of his discoveries raised the hopes of the merchants that in these new countries would be found mines of gold. Little is known with certainty of the after life of Verazzani. **1524** A.D.

10. Ten years afterwards **Jacques Cartier**, a famous mariner of the sea-port of St. Malo,<sup>3</sup> followed in the course of the Florentine explorer. The expedition was undertaken under the patronage of ~~Phillipe~~ **Phillipe de Brian Chabot**, the favourite and boon companion of Francis I.<sup>4</sup> On the 30th of April the Breton Master Pilot sailed from St. Malo, **1534** A.D.

<sup>1</sup> *Harfleur*.—A sea-port of France, at the mouth of the Seine, 3 miles east of Le Havre.

<sup>2</sup> *Dieppe*.—A sea-port of France, on the English Channel, 50 miles north-east of Le Havre.

<sup>3</sup> *St. Malo*.—A fortified sea-port in the north-west of France; on the north coast of the old province of Bretagne.

<sup>4</sup> *Francis I.*—King of France from 1515 till 1547. He was the great rival of Charles I. of Spain for the dignity of Emperor, which the latter obtained in 1519. His famous interview with Henry VIII. of England on "the Field of the Cloth of Gold" took place in 1520. He was taken prisoner at Pavia in 1525.

with two small, quaintly-shaped vessels. By the end of June he had crossed the ocean. He saw enormous islands of ice floating down from the Northern Sea. Passing through the Straits of Belle Isle into the Gulf, he sailed past islands white with fowl, and luxuriant with wild fruits and verdurous woods. On a resplendent day in July he entered a sheltered, shining sheet of water, called since that day **Bay Chaleur**; for, coming from the icy air off Labrador and out of the fogs of the Gulf, they felt the heat intensely. Passing out, Cartier steered his course north-west till he saw white and rugged cliffs rise high and straight from the water. He cast anchor at the entrance of Gaspé Bay. But a **furious storm** having caused his ships to drag, he was compelled to haul up his anchor and seek shelter in the Bay of Penouil.

11. The weather continuing stormy and foggy, he remained there several days. A crowd of Souriquois, Salt-water Indians, fishing for mackerel, held communication by signs with the Frenchmen. On the 24th of July Cartier caused a **large white cross**, thirty feet high, bearing an escutcheon, on which were graven three *fleurs-de-lis*,<sup>1</sup> and the words "Vive le Roi," to be planted at a point at the entrance of the bay. When the cross stood firm and erect, he knelt on the sands with his companions, and prayed with clasped hands. The Indians viewed these proceedings with mingled wonder and alarm. An old chief, accompanied by his two sons, went on board Cartier's vessel, and, by signs, testified displeasure. He would not have been easily pacified if he had understood that the act he had witnessed transferred to a distant potentate all the rights of his people to their country. The Frenchmen set themselves to amuse the old man and his boys. They made the youths doff their fowl furs, and arrayed them in white shirts and coloured woollen jackets. Placing red bonnets on their heads, and throwing brass chains around their necks, they pronounced their civilized attire complete. Proud of their gorgeous array, the simple boys were easily induced to remain on board with their kind friends, while their father went on shore. Next

<sup>1</sup> *Fleurs-de-lis*.—Flowers of the lily, or iris—the ancient royal insignia of France. Some, however, have supposed it to represent the head of a javelin. At the Revolution (1789) it was superseded by the tricolor flag.

day Cartier sailed off with the two young "savages," as the French always called the natives. He reached an island, whose whitish cliffs reminded him of a familiar port in France, and named it **L'Assomption**. Along its dangerous and forbidding south-west coast he found no safe shelter for his ships. The clouds beginning to gather and the winds to rise, he debated with his company whether, in the face of the threatening weather, they should proceed further. They returned to France.

12. Next spring Cartier was ready to **cross the Atlantic again**. The report of what he had seen induced several gentlemen to accompany him as volunteers. The Church gave her **1535** blessing, and on the 16th of May, with three vessels, A.D. small as river schooners, he set sail, full of expectation. He was still buoyed up with the hope of finding a way to the East, and of bringing back gold, rubies, and spices, and everything to delight the senses of man. A furious storm overtook and separated the vessels as they approached the Labrador coast. Uninjured by the buffeting of the storm, the tiny barques were gathered together again. Cartier sailed for the mouth of the **great river**. On the 10th of August he cast anchor in a bay on the north-western shore of L'Assomption Isle. It was **the day of St. Lawrence**, and this name was given to the gulf and the river.

13. The adventurers sailed past the precipitous and barren rocks through whose chasm rolled the deep and gloomy waters of the Saguenay; past bold coasts that now rose steep from the water's edge, then receding, enclosed wooded plain and meadow lands within an amphitheatre of hills. They left behind the lofty promontory of Cape Tourment and the difficult channel between the mainland and the richly-wooded "Isle de Coudres." Another island, whose vines and clustered grapes suggested the name "Isle of Bacchus," which divided the river into two channels, was soon seen. The red Indians, darting in their canoes from the north shore of the river, surrounded the vessels. They swarmed on board whooping and yelling, but with no hostile intent. Dunnaconna, the chief lord of that country, harangued the Frenchmen, and invited them to visit his town. With bread and wine the "pale faces" regaled their red brothers, pleased with their welcome to Canada. Accompanied

by the flotilla of canoes, the French vessels, threading the northern channel, passed into the broad basin. A lofty promontory of bare and weather-beaten rock thrust itself into the river, standing like a fortress raised by the hand of Nature to bar all hostile approach. When the scene in its grandeur burst upon the Frenchmen, some writers pretend that a Breton mariner exclaimed "Quel bec"—how beautiful! But others are content to derive the time-honoured name Quebec from the Indian Kebec, which means a strait.

14. *Stadaconé*, **Dunnaconna's town**, was approached by crossing a river that Cartier called the St. Croix, and clambering up rocks until the height on which it was situated was attained. While here, Cartier heard of Hochelaga, the chief town of the tribe. The Indians tried hard to dissuade him from visiting it, and even sent **three devils**, messengers of their god Codougey, to threaten him with inevitable destruction if he persisted. But, in spite of the well-acted play, Cartier, with his volunteers and fifty sailors in the smallest of his vessels, ascended the river. Missing the channel into Lake St. Peter, they were compelled to take to their boats. It was evening when they approached the island on which Hochelaga stood. They encamped on shore, and when the darkness came the Indians lighted fires and danced around them in glee through all the night. The town was surrounded by a circle of high palisades, constructed of trunks of trees set in a triple row.

15. In the morning, Cartier and his band (the leaders in plumed helmets, shining breastplates, and cuisses on their thighs) in military pomp, with trumpets sounding and colours flying, entered the gateway. As they took position in the square around which rows of long cabins were placed, women and children swarmed out in loud amazement. Those noisy welcomers were thrust into the back-ground, and the warriors squatted themselves on their haunches. Mats having been brought out, the chief Frenchmen sat down in the centre of a grave and reverent throng. Those untutored savages looked up to Cartier as a **divine being**, a touch of whose hand could cure all mortal disease. Their old chief, paralytic and helpless, was brought out to be restored to pristine health and strength;

from the cabins came forth the blind, the halt, and the palsied ; the fevered and the sick were carried out by their friends, and laid down before the Frenchmen. Looking compassionately upon the afflicted throng, Cartier read aloud a portion of the Gospel of St. John, and made the sign of the cross. This painful scene ended, gifts were distributed—to the men hatchets and knives, to the women beads. Handfuls of pewter rings and little images of Agnus Dei were thrown into the square to be scrambled for by the children. As the Frenchmen repassed the gateway, the women crowded round and tried to force on them unsavoury articles of food, which were courteously declined.

16. Before leaving the island, Cartier ascended to the top of the mountain on the north-west. From its height he saw the blue glistening waters of the St. Lawrence, encircling isle and islet, flowing between lofty verdurous heights, and the forest spreading like a billowy ocean all around. He called it Mount Royal. It was late in autumn when Cartier returned to Quebec. In his absence a rude fort had been built, and he determined **to winter there**. A terrible time was passed. The scurvy attacked nearly the whole company, and killed seventy-five. Fearful that the Indians would discover their weakness, the men were kept immured within the fort, and were told to beat on its wooden walls with sticks as if hard at work. From a poor Indian, Cartier learned that a decoction of a certain evergreen was a sovereign remedy for the disease. This *ameda*, as the natives called it, was the common spruce. The Frenchmen drank so copiously that they used up a whole tree ; and with the best effect, for when the spring came they were in health and spirits.

17. Cartier resolved to return to France. Before leaving he took **formal possession of the country**. Instead of gold and rubies he had gathered mica only, and rock **1536** crystals from the slate ledges of Cape Diamond. Such A.D. dross was a poor return for all the expense and suffering of his voyage. He wished to have some living witnesses that he had visited a glorious land, worth many a sacrifice to convert and bring to the knowledge of the true faith. He determined to take back with him some of the natives. Dunna-

conna and four chiefs, lured on board his vessel, were borne away to France.

18. Five years elapsed before Cartier again saw the promontory of Quebec. Francis I. was dissatisfied at not receiving treasures of gold and precious stones. Evil reports of an unhealthy, inclement climate got abroad.

For a time exploration of the Western Continent was discouraged; but soon the King's interest revived. By letters patent, dated 15th of January, **Jean François de la Roche, Sieur de Roberval**, a nobleman of Picardy, was created Viceroy and Lieutenant-General of Canada, Hochelaga, Saguenay, Newfoundland, Belle Isle, Carpent, Labrador, and Baccalaos, and Lord of Norembègne.<sup>1</sup> Cartier was appointed Captain-General and Master Pilot. He was thus placed in a secondary position over an enterprise which he had claims to lead. In his commission of the 17th of October, it was set forth that the King had caused certain natives to be brought to France to be instructed, so that on their return they might be able to induce their countrymen to embrace the true faith. This declaration reads like Cartier's justification for carrying off the chiefs, as it gives a command and a reason for the act. Unfortunately, Dunnaconna and his brothers died before the expedition sailed. The prisons were scoured to man the ships, and fifty convicts were hauled on board.

19. There was some delay at St. Malo. The King, growing impatient, commanded Cartier to sail with the five ships that were ready. He departed on the 23rd of May. When the French fleet appeared off the Isle of Bacchus no canoes, filled with gleeful Indians, darted out from the shores to welcome them. The savages of Stadaconé had learned to distrust their kidnapping visitors. They did not show open hostility. They listened quietly when told that Dunnaconna was dead, but that the other chiefs had married and were living in state in France. The whole truth was too harsh to be told. The old feeling of trust and cordiality had vanished. Cartier determined to move up the river and make a settlement on the height at

---

<sup>1</sup> *Norembègue*.—Lands on the Pentagoët or Penobscot, and near its mouth.

Cap Rouge. Two forts were built, one at the summit, another at the foot. A gully ran down the face of the rock, and up it a road of communication was cut. This place was called **Charlesbourg Royal**. The cold weather came upon the inhabitants soon after the work was completed. The gloom of the darkening days fell upon their spirits. Their experience of the winter must have been bitter. On the return of spring they **abandoned their forts** and left the country.

20. Sieur de Roberval did not leave Rochelle<sup>1</sup> until the 16th of April. He put into a harbour, Saint Jean, on the eastern coast of Newfoundland. Soon after, to his **1542** utter amazement, his Master Pilot entered with his A.D. five vessels. He commanded him to return to Canada; but Cartier, quietly disobeying the order, sailed away under cover of night to France. Thus ended the last known voyage of the Breton mariner, in disgust, disappointment, and disaffection. He had failed to discover a route to the rich East; but he had found Canada on his way. He lived for many years in his seignorial mansion at Limoilu. There he wrote an account of his voyages, which kept alive the knowledge of the countries he had visited, and the spirit of adventure in kindred minds. A cloud of doubt rests over his last voyage. It is said that the King sent him out to endeavour to ascertain the fate of De Roberval. Whatever else is doubtful, it is certain that the enterprise of that nobleman **failed disastrously**. He built a spacious fort above the site of Charlesbourg, but could not defend it against cold, famine, and disease. His convict settlers grew mutinous. Terrible scenes were enacted throughout the winter of 1542 within that fort by the frozen St. Lawrence, over which the curtain of oblivion had better be dropped.

21. The spirit of discovery grew languid in France. **1576** The mania of finding a north-west passage to India A.D. spread in England. Martin Frobisher<sup>2</sup> explored the

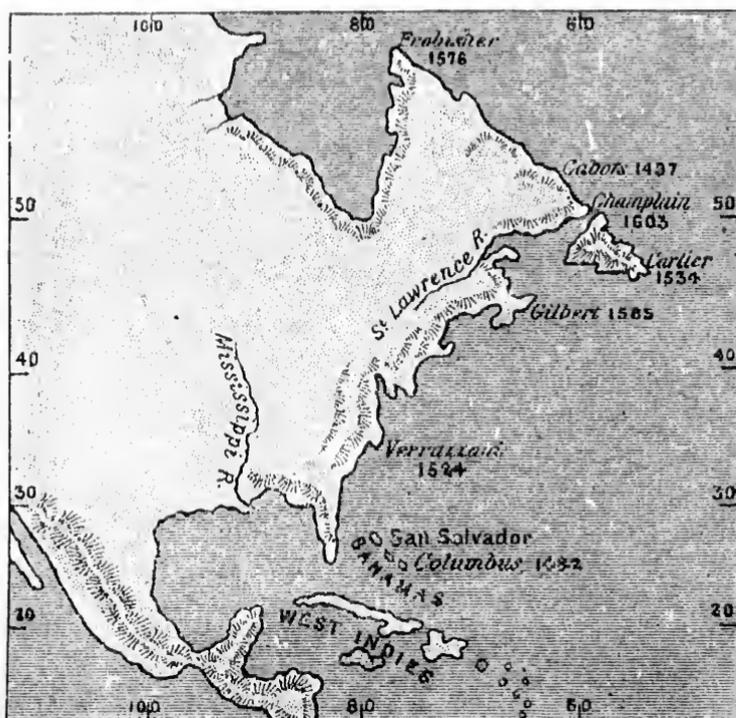
<sup>1</sup> *Rochelle*.—A fortified sea-port on the west coast of France, 95 miles north of Bordeaux.

<sup>2</sup> *Martin Frobisher*.—A famous explorer and naval hero of Elizabeth's reign. The object of his first expedi-

tion was to search for a north-west passage. He took part in the action with the Spanish Armada, 1588; and was killed in assaulting a fort near Brest (in France) in 1594. He was a native of Yorkshire.

coasts of Labrador and Greenland; discovered the cape which he called Elizabeth's Foreland, and the straits which bear his name; and gathered a quantity of mica, under the impression that it was the precious metal. Two years later,

Frobisher, commanding an expedition of fifteen ships **1578** sailed again to find the north-west passage, but brought A.D. back **ruin** only on the heads of those who had adventured their means to fit it out. Strange, chimerical ideas, filled the imagination of the first explorers. The immediate results of their voyages appear to have been miserable, but mighty consequences followed upon them.



EARLY DISCOVERERS AND EXPLORATIONS.

**1583** 22. Five years later **Sir Humphrey Gilbert**<sup>1</sup> took A.D. possession, by authority of Queen Elizabeth, of the Island of Newfoundland, and formed a settlement on

<sup>1</sup>*Sir Humphrey Gilbert.*—Born at Dartmouth (Devonshire), 1539. He was half-brother of Sir Walter Raleigh, who had accompanied him in an earlier voyage to America. Gilbert published a Discourse on the North-West Passage.

the harbour of St. John's. But he failed to reach any part of the mainland of America. On his return to England he was caught in a furious storm. As his consort vessel scudded past him, Sir Humphrey cried out, "Be not afraid; Heaven is as near by water as by land." At midnight his little *barque* **founded with all on board.** The English never ascended the great river St. Lawrence in the course of any of their voyages of exploration. To the French belongs the honour of discovering and founding "Canada."

23. There has been considerable controversy over the derivation of that name. Some writers pretend that the Spaniards preceded the French, and disappointed at finding no gold in the country, exclaimed contemptuously, "Aca nada"—here is nothing. Others hold that Canada is a modification of the Algonquin word Kanata, "a cluster of cabins," a town. Whatever its derivation, Canada sounds grandly to the ear, and is a name that suggests to the mind the idea of a great country.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who are said to have discovered America long before Columbus? Give some account of the discoveries of Biarni. What names did the Northmen give to these districts?

2. What was the great glory of Columbus? What islands was he supposed to have reached? What mistake thence arose?

3. What effects did his discovery produce? Whom did it fill with regret?

4. Who obtained Henry's permission to fit out an expedition? What country did the Cabots hope to reach?

5. Give an account of their voyage. On what ground did Henry VII. claim possession of North America?

6. After whom was America named? Through what error?

7. When did Sebastian Cabot make another voyage of discovery? What did he find near Newfoundland and Cape Breton? What were these islands then called?

8. What were the consequences of England and France meeting in the field of American discovery? Who took possession of islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence?

9. On what did the French claim to the possession of the North American Continent rest? Whose service did Verazzani enter? What is said in the account of his voyage? Describe the termination of his voyage.

10. When did Cartier cross the ocean? Where did he sail after making the coast of Labrador? Where did he first cast anchor?

11. What ceremony was performed at the Bay of Penouit? What trick was played on the sons of an old chief who visited the ship?

12. Who accompanied Cartier on his second voyage? What hope buoyed him up? What was the origin of the name of the St. Lawrence?

13. Where did the adventurers next sail? What chief invited them to visit his town? What different accounts are given of the origin of the name "Quebec"?

14. How was Stadaconé reached? From what did the Indians try to dissuade the adventurers? What occurred when they landed at Hochelaga?

15. How was Cartier regarded by the Indians? What painful scene occurred in the square of the town?

16. Where did Cartier go before leaving the island? What was resolved on when he returned to Quebec? From what did the men suffer severely? How were they cured?

17. When did Cartier return to France? What expectations were disappointed? Whom did he take with him? Why?

18. When was the next expedition undertaken? Under whose command? In what position was Cartier? What was the fate of the Indians taken to France? How were the ships for the new expedition manned?

19. How were the Frenchmen received on their return to the St. Lawrence? What had destroyed the feeling of

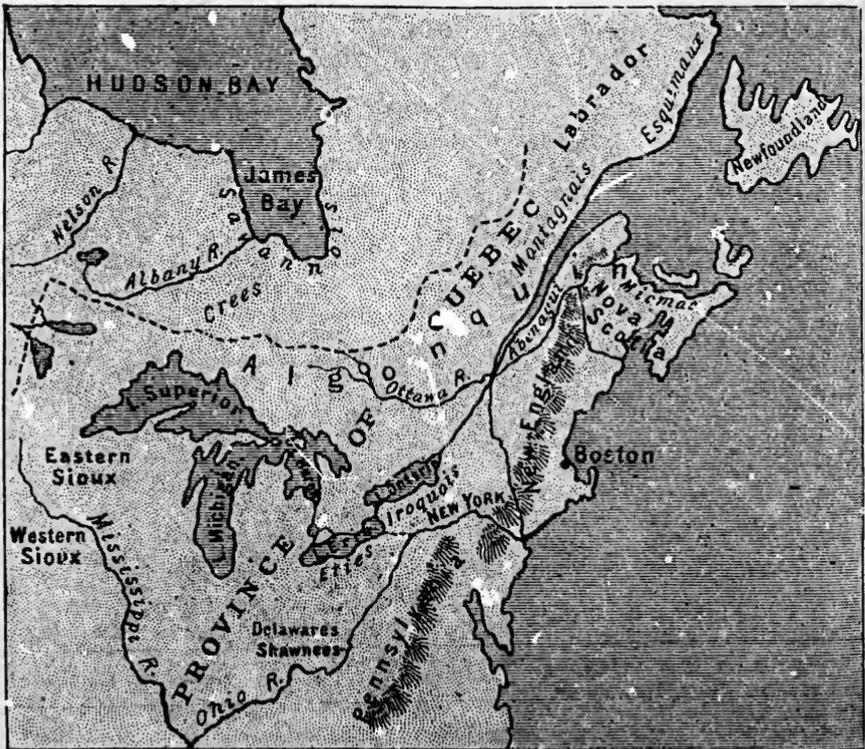
cordiality? Where did the Frenchmen spend the winter? What did they do on the return of spring?

20. Where did Cartier meet De Roberval? How did his expedition end? How did he occupy the remainder of his days? What was the fate of De Roberval's enterprise?

21. Who was the next to explore the Labrador coast? What led Frobisher thither? How many voyages did he make to the west? With what results?

22. What did Gilbert accomplish? What was his fate? What did none of the English explorers do?

23. What different explanations are given of the origin of the name "Canada"?



MAP SHOWING LOCATION OF INDIAN FAMILIES.

*The dotted line shows the extent of the Province of Quebec in 1774.*

## CHAPTER III.

## THE INDIAN TRIBES.

The first peopling of America.  
 The three Indian "Families."  
 The Esquimaux and Savannois.  
 Location of the Algonquin Tribes.  
 The Hurons or Wyandots.  
 The Iroquois.  
 Indian Characteristics.

Their constructive skill.  
 Dress—Wampum.  
 Occupations and Amusements.  
 Position of the Women.  
 Form of Government.  
 Superstitions; religious Belief.  
 Their present state.

1. THERE has been a great deal of speculation over the question, "**How was the New World peopled?**" Ingenious theories have been raised only to be refuted. Bold authors have maintained that Peru was identical with Ophir,<sup>1</sup> "the land of gold;" that the Antilles were the ancient isles of the Hesperides.<sup>2</sup> It is a disputed point whether America was found by accident, by ships having been driven on its coasts by violent winds, or by free emigration from Europe and Asia. The learned men of many countries in Europe have claimed for their countrymen the honour of having been the first who passed over to the Western Continent. Theorists have given free rein to their imagination in answering the question, "How was the New World peopled?" Theophrastus Paracelsus,<sup>3</sup> a philosopher of Zurich, solved it to his own satisfaction by asserting that each hemisphere had an Adam and Eve. Such speculations, however, need not detain us.

2. At the time when the French began to settle in Canada (using that name in its present wide geographical sense), there were several distinct Indian "families,"<sup>4</sup> who were sparsely

<sup>1</sup> *Ophir*.—A country, repeatedly mentioned in the Old Testament, to which the ships of Solomon traded. It was famous for its gold. The "gold of Ophir" was proverbially the finest gold (see Ps. xlv. 9). Various conclusions have been arrived at regarding its locality. Some interpreters have placed it in the East Indies, others in Africa, and others in Arabia.

<sup>2</sup> *Hesperides*.—A poetical name for the islands of the West; just as first Italy and then Spain were called Hesperia.

<sup>3</sup> *Paracelsus*.—A famous physician and chemist. He was the first to make use of mercury and opium as medicines. Born 1493, died 1541.

<sup>4</sup> *Indian "families."*—For their location, see *Map*, p. 36.

spread over its vast extent. The chief were the **Sioux**, the **Algonquin**, and the **Huron** or Wyandot. The Indians of Newfoundland were a race distinct from those of Canada; they were Esquimaux—eaters of raw flesh—from the desolate and sterile regions of Labrador. They were ferocious and inhospitable. Many had white complexions and flaxen hair.

3. Several tribes, also of distinct origin, called collectively by the French **Savannois**, from the low, marshy, ill-wooded country they inhabited, dwelt along the southern shores of Hudson Bay. They adored the Sun, and devoured human flesh, and lived in squalid misery. On the western shore of the bay lived a tribe to whom the sobriquet “Plats cotez de chien”—Dogribs—was given.

4. Each of these great families was divided into numerous tribes and sub-tribes. The Sioux, eastern and western, dwelt south-west of Lake Superior, in the region between the Mississippi and the Missouri, by the River Assiniboine, and Lake Winnipeg. They were less warlike than the other two families.

5. The Algonquins were spread along the northern shores of the St. Lawrence, along the coasts of the Gulf, and of the Bay of Fundy, and from Maine to Virginia. They were found also along the course of the River Ottawa, from its mouth to its source, and on the western shores of Lake Huron.

6. From the mountainous region of the Saguenay to Quebec were scattered several tribes of Algonquin blood,—the Bersiamites, Papinachois, Montagnais, and Neskapees. The Atticamignes, or White Fish, dwelt about the sources of ~~the Three~~ *Maurice* Rivers. The **Ottawas** claimed to be lords of the grand northern river; and various tribes of Beavers, Bullheads, and Sorcerers pitched their wigwams by lakes Temiscaming and Nipissing, and on the islands Allumette and Calumet. The Cristinilaux, or Crees, noted for their volubility of tongue and vivacity of manner, dwelt in the region between the south-western shores of Hudson Bay and Lake Winnipeg. At Sault de Ste. Marie, on the neck of country between lakes Superior and Huron, dwelt the **Ojibaways** and **Chippewas**, called Salteurs by the French. In the regions around Lake Michigan there were many tribes, the chief being the Pottawattamies, the

Sacs, the Ottigamies or Foxes, the Kickapoos, and Mascoutins. The **Abenaquis**, of Algonquin lineage, occupied the territory south of the St. Lawrence, between the rivers St. Francis and Chaudiere and the northern part of Maine. Under the general name Abenaquis, or St. John Indians, some writers include the Milicetes (or Etchemins), whose wigwams were pitched along the rivers Trois Pistoles, Restigouche, Miramichi, and St. John ; the Micmacs (Souriquois or Salt-water Men), who were spread along the southern shores of the St. Lawrence to Gaspé, and who were found on the isles and the coasts of the Gulf, on the shores of the Bay of Fundy to the St. Croix River, and all over the peninsula of Nova Scotia ; also the Canibas, who dwelt in the country watered by the Penobscot River. There were several Algonquin tribes in the New England States—the Pequods, Narragansetts, and others—who sorely plagued the Puritan Fathers.<sup>1</sup>

7. The Hurons of Canada occupied the territory between the lakes Huron, Erie, and Ontario. The principal tribe lived in what is now called **Simcoe County**. They were a settled, agricultural people, unlike the Algonquins, who were hunters and fishers, who were continually shifting their camps as the game grew scarce, and who were often reduced to the direst distress. At the south-eastern extremity of Lake Huron lived the Tionnates or Tobacco Indians ; on the isthmus between lakes Ontario and Erie, the Attinanchrons or the Neutral Nations ; along the southern shores of Lake Erie, the Eries or Cats.

8. The most powerful members of the Huron family were the **Iroquois** ; a name given to them by the French, and derived from the word "hiro,"—I have said,—with which they invariably finished their speeches. Among the Indian tribes they were known as the Hodenosaunee, "the people of the long house ;" they proudly termed themselves Ougonhonne, "the men surpassing all others." Of all the savages of North America they

<sup>1</sup> *The Puritan Fathers.*—The name "Puritan" was first given, about the middle of the sixteenth century, to dissenters from the Established Church of England, who aimed at greater *purity* of doctrine, of worship, and of life,

than prevailed within the Church. The "Pilgrim Fathers," who founded the first of the New England States in 1620, were Puritans who had been driven from England by persecution in the reign of James I.

were the most warlike and astute. They were divided into five tribes or cantons; whence they were called the Five Nations.<sup>1</sup> Their bourgades or villages were situated between the Mohawk River in the east and the Genessee in the west, in the following order:—Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Cayugas, Senecas. They claimed the territory which is now the northern part of the State of New York. The position of the long house of the Iroquois enabled them to command the entrance to the west by the Great Lakes, and to Canada by Lake Champlain and the River Richelieu. They were placed between the French and the English. The Five Nations were united into one confederacy; but each nation was in a great measure independent, and made war and peace on its own account. The Iroquois were thus a very difficult people to deal with. The French might conclude a treaty with the Senecas on the west, while the Mohawks on the east carried on war from Montreal to Quebec.

9. The Iroquois were divided into **eight clans**—the Wolf, Bear, Beaver, Tortoise, Snipe, Deer, Heron, Hawk. The tie of clanship ran through the whole Five Nations; thus, a Mohawk wolf was connected with the wolves of all the other tribes. The figure of a wolf, or bear, and so on, was the emblem or totem of the clan. It was tattooed on every clansman's body; it was the signature of a chief to a treaty. The relation of clanship existed among other Indian tribes, but among the Iroquois the bond was strongest.

10. Early French voyagers said that to see one Indian was to see all; but close observers among the Jesuit missionaries said that there were great distinctions between the people of the different families. They called the Hurons the "**noblemen**," the Algonquins the "**burghers**," and the tribes of the Saguenay the "**peasants**" of the wilderness. The reddish tawny skin, the coarse black hair, the smooth, beardless face, the high cheek bones, were common to all. They were, on the whole, a race of robust men, often of tall stature, sometimes of majestic proportions. Their carriage was easy and dignified. Notwithstand-

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Five Nations*.—When the Tuscaroras joined the Iroquois (which they did in 1717), they were called "The Six Nations."

ing unclean living and filthy personal habits, they had sound constitutions, and were free from many of the diseases incident to civilization. They had no idea of restraining their animal appetites; while food lasted they ate voraciously, then they tightened their belts and fasted. Experience of dire distress never taught them to husband their stores.

11. Their intellectual powers were good; their perception was keen, their memory exceedingly retentive, their judgment just, their wit and imagination lively. They made their way through the trackless forest as easily as a denizen of a city walks its streets. They had **no written language**, no books; the traditions of the past were handed down orally. Their best orators displayed true eloquence: when they spoke they seemed absorbed in their subject, they went direct to the point, and used just and striking imagery. The Indians paid willing homage to superior merit. They could be faithful and devoted friends to those who commanded their esteem, but they were not easily deceived by mere professions.

12. In the Indian character there were some strange contradictions. Vicious as wild beasts, they yet displayed qualities that did honour to human nature. Fierce in war, pitiless and atrociously cruel to the prisoners whom they doomed to death, they were in social life very free from hatred, envy, jealousy. No one, while food lasted, was allowed to want; and their adopted prisoners were treated like their own people. In an Indian community every one did pretty much what seemed good in one's own eyes; there was a great deal of good humour and forbearance shown. But discord entered the cabins of this careless people when the traders introduced the fell "**fire-water**." Under their many afflictions they were very patient; the most dreadful tortures they often bore calmly.

13. The Indians displayed little constructive skill. The wigwams of the wandering tribes were mere sticks driven into the ground and covered with sheets of bark. The cabins of the stationary tribes were sometimes a hundred feet long and thirty feet high. They were formed by driving two parallel rows of saplings into the ground, and bending them until they formed an arch overhead; the outside was covered with thick sheets of bark. Sometimes a low mud wall was built around

the cabin. Several families lived in one house, which was divided into compartments like a stable. The fires were lighted in a line in the centre. A number of houses of this description formed a **bourgade**, which was generally situated on a rising ground by the side of a lake or river. It was surrounded by lofty palisades, often set in a triple row. The outer rows were planted in the ground in a sloping direction till they met and crossed at the top; the middle row was set upright; and the whole were firmly braced together. Galleries, supplied at different points with magazines of stones, ran along the palisades on the inside and near the top. There was also a gutter, by means of which the waters of the adjacent river or lake were poured down on the fires that a foe might enkindle without.

14. The dress of the Indians was suitable to a climate of alternate cold and heat. In winter they wore the skins of wild animals, which they had the art of making pliable and soft. In summer the warriors generally dispensed with clothing altogether, and rubbed their bodies with malodorous oil as a preservative against mosquito bites. They tattooed on their faces the forms of beasts, birds, and plants. On their war excursions they painted themselves in startling colours, in order to strike terror into the foe, and sometimes to hide their own fear.

15. The Indians wore their hair in many fantastic fashions. Sometimes they dressed it so that it bristled up on one side and remained flattened down in plaits on the other, or they left it to hang straight down to their ears and eyebrows, or gathered it up in the form of a crown. Sometimes they shaved their heads, leaving only the long scalp-lock. The warriors often oiled it and powdered it with swan-down. On their heads they placed the plumes of rare birds and tufts of dyed hair. Around their necks they wore collars of bears' claws, eagles' talons, roe-bucks' hoofs, and the paws and teeth of other wild animals. The women neither adorned their heads nor dressed their hair.

16. **Wampum** was an article of immense value to an Indian. It was made of fine, beautifully tinted sea-shells, which were formed into beads. Strung upon threads, these beads were worked into necklaces, collars, and belts. Wampum was the chief ornament and all the riches of the women. It was the

only **money** of the country. No important speech was made, no treaty was ratified, without the presentation of wampum belts. These belts, worked into various mnemonic designs, were the only records of war and treaties.

17. **War, hunting, and fishing** were the chief occupations of the Indian men. They built the cabins and fortifications, they made the implements of battle and the chase. Before European traders supplied them with the rifle, their principal weapons were the bow and arrows, spears tipped with points of various designs, the round-headed club of hard wood, the **toma hawk**, hatchet, and scalping-knife, made of stone and shell, sharpened with infinite labour, and easily dulled. The introduction of steel weapons saved them much work, and put more deadly arms into their hands. They framed the light and elegant birch canoe; they made threads and cords, and wove the fishing nets; they carved in curious fashion the heads of the calumets or pipes, and ornamented the stems with coloured plumes of various designs.

18. Among the Huron nations **the women** were, in theory, the fountain of all authority. The chiefs were their representatives. But, in practice, they were not consulted on public affairs. When a woman entered the marriage state, her life was a course of perpetual drudgery. The squaw was the slave of her husband. She performed all the hard work, tilling the soil and bringing in the fire-wood. When the harvest was ripe, the warriors condescended to bestir themselves, and aided the women in gathering it in. The mothers nursed their children with tenderest care. Through infancy and youth the parents bestowed the greatest affection on their offspring.

19. The Indians had some amusements. They were inveterate **gamblers**. They played matches with bat and ball. Baggiat-way, "la crosse," is now a national game among Canadians. They held numerous festivals, both for ceremony and pleasure. The sound of the drum and the monotonous notes of the chickahoué (a gourd filled with pebbles) were continually heard in an Indian village.

20. The **medicine men and conjurers** were persons of the greatest importance. They pretended to the possession of supernatural powers. They had some knowledge of the virtue

of simples,<sup>1</sup> and cured wounds by the application of the juice of certain herbs. They often set fractured limbs with success. For colds, fevers, and inflammation they prescribed sweating baths. But they joined to their medical and surgical practice the most ridiculous mummeries, and sanctioned the most revolting and indecent customs.

21. The Indians had a defined form of government. They held the republican doctrine that all men are equal ; but they were aristocratic so far that they chose the best men to be their leaders. The Algonquins elected their chief. Among the Hurons the dignity was hereditary, but its descent was by the woman's side. When a chief died his eldest son did not succeed him, but, it might be, a brother of his mother, or a son of his sister. Among the Five Nations the chief bore the name of **Alilatho**, and the dignity was hereditary in one family of the Onondagas. The great council-house of the confederacy was situated in the chief bourgade of that nation. Among the Micmacs the chief was elective, and they generally chose the warrior who had the largest family, and to him they paid tribute.

22. The power of the chief was not despotic. He derived no revenue from his office. He held no particular state. He led by advice and persuasion, and not by force. He had a body of counsellors, **sachems**, chosen from the heads of families, who guarded the public treasure, and without whose advice he could do nothing. There were also a body of ancients, men of mature age, and a crowd of warriors, comprising all capable of bearing arms, who had a voice in all public matters. The Indians had thus their governor, executive and legislative councils, and general assembly ; **responsible government**, in fact, but in a rude form.

23. The Indians were the slaves of superstition. They believed that they were surrounded by good and evil spirits. All nature to them was animate. The roar of the cataract, the brawling of the stream, the howling of the angry wind or the sighing of the gentle breeze, and the rustling of the leaves, betokened to them the presence of spirits—**Manitous** and

<sup>1</sup> *Simples*. — Medicinal plants. So called because each plant is believed to have a special virtue, which it exerts without its being compounded.

**Okies.** They were given to feticism—the worship of inanimate objects, plants, and stones.

24. It has been asserted, that, before the advent of Christian missionaries, the Indians professed belief in one God ; and, on the contrary, it has been said that they received from their ancestors no knowledge of God, and that there was no word in their language that expressed his name. Some of the Indian tribes spoke of the **Great Spirit**. When pressed to explain what were the attributes of this Being, they showed by their puerile notions that they had no conception whatever of one God. The legends in which some writers—anxious to prove that the Indians were the descendants of the Hebrews—profess to see distortions of the scriptural accounts of the creation, the fall of man, the deluge, are in the last degree confused and ridiculous.

25. Among the Algonquins, Messou, the Great Hare, was the Supreme Spirit. He formed the earth out of a grain of sand brought up from the depths of the ocean, and men from the bodies of dead animals. Areskoué, the God of War, was held by the Hurons to be the Supreme Being. The Indians believed in the immortality of men and animals. Heaven to them was an improved earth, a happy hunting-ground, where game was always plentiful, and where an eternal spring reigned ; where want, misery, and pain were unknown ; where the warrior was rewarded in proportion to the number of foes he had vanquished in battle. The Indian was sunk in the lethargy of savage ignorance. He was excessively indolent, and scorned what he did not understand. He had no knowledge of the laws of nature, and accounted for their operation by some ridiculous fable.

26. An account of the aborigines of Canada may fitly close with a statement of their present condition. They are now only a remnant of a people, never very numerous. Fragments of the tribes of the Montagnais, Bersiamites, and Neskapees in north-eastern Quebec, and of the Abenakis of the rivers St. Francis and Bécancour, still occupy portions of their old hunting-grounds. The descendants of the Christian Iroquois, who were in 1671 settled first at Madelaine Prairie, then at Sault St. Louis, under the care of the Seminary of St. Sulpicius, are still found at the

latter place, now commonly called Caughnawaga. The remains of other tribes occupy lands in Manitoulin and other islands of Lake Huron. Bands of Ojibaways, Chippewas, Ottawas, and Hurons are settled in different parts of the country east of Lake Huron, and in Walpole Island in Lake St. Clair. The Moravian<sup>1</sup> settlement of Delawares is located on the River Thames in that district. The "Six Nations" have lands on the Grand River in Brant county, whither, in 1784, after the War of Independence, they were removed by the British Government. Bands of Iroquois, Ottawas, and Nipissings live at Two Mountains, near the mouth of the Ottawa. The Mohawks are settled at Bay of Quinté, and on Salmon River, in the township of Tyengeda, in the county of Hastings. There are Micmac villages in all the counties of Nova Scotia, and in Kent and Westmoreland, New Brunswick; and there are Milicete towns on the Restigouche, Miramichi, and St. John rivers. The whole Indian population does not exceed **twenty-five thousand**.

27. Forty years ago the Indians were looked upon only as useful allies in case of war. They were under the charge of military superintendents, whose chief duty was to make them annual presents of blankets, calico, thread, knives, powder, ball, and tobacco. The majority were then pagans. The British Government reserved large tracts of country for their support; but their just liberality was in a great measure nullified by the rapacity of individuals who coveted the lands, and took advantage of the simplicity and intemperance of the poor Indian. These reserves checked the settlement of the country, and it was found neither judicious nor possible to allow them to be held locked up. The policy of reclaiming the  
**1830** A.D. Indians from paganism and sloth to Christianity and settled habits was adopted. They were put under the charge of superintendents. For several years afterwards no correct accounts of the extent of Indian lands or of the number of sales was given.

<sup>1</sup> *Moravian*. — The Moravians, or United Brethren, originated in Moravia, a province in the north of Austria, and in the neighbouring province of Bohemia, about 1467. Having formed a settlement on the estate of Count Zin-

zendorf in Upper Lusatia (in 1722), and having called it *Hernhut*, — "The watch of the Lord," — they are generally known on the Continent of Europe by the name *Hernhutters*. They began to found missionary colonies about 1732.

28. In the present day the Indians are the charge of the department of the Secretary of State. Under the paternal care of the Government of the Dominion they are comparatively prosperous. Their lands are sold to intending settlers, and the proceeds are invested for their benefit. They receive annual presents of grain, seeds, implements, and are, especially in Ontario, advancing in agricultural industry. Hundreds of children in all sections of the country attend Indian schools. It is impossible to change nature; but under the influence of religion, education, and industry, they are being brought within the pale of our civilization.

QUESTIONS.—1. What theories have been advanced regarding the first peopling of America?

2. Name the three chief Indian "families" found by the French in Canada. Who were the inhabitants of Newfoundland?

3. What tribes occupied the southern and the western shore of Hudson Bay?

4. Where did the Sioux dwell? What was their character?

5. Where were the Algonquins found?

6. Mention the other tribes of Algonquin lineage, and their territories.

7. What county did the Hurons occupy? Where did the principal tribe live? Wherein did they differ from the Algonquins?

8. Which was the most powerful branch of the Hurons? Explain the meanings of the different names they bore. What was their character?

9. Into how many clans were the Iroquois divided? What was peculiar in the tie of clanship?

10. How did the Jesuit missionaries distinguish the three great families? Describe their common characteristics.

11. Give some account of their intellectual powers. How were the traditions of the past preserved among them? Describe their oratory.

12. What strange contradictions were noticeable in the Indian character? What introduced discord among them?

13. Describe their houses, and their mode of living. What name was applied to a collection of cabins?

14. Describe their dress, and the adornment of their bodies.

15. How did they dress the hair? How did they adorn the head and neck?

16. What was wampum? For what was it used?

17. What were the chief occupations of the Indians? What weapons did they use?

18. What was the position of the women among the Huron nations? How were children treated?

19. What amusements had the Indians?

20. Why were the medicine-men so important?

21. What was the fundamental doctrine of their government? In what different ways was the chief chosen?

22. Show that responsible government prevailed among the Indians.

23. By what superstitions were they possessed? To what kind of worship were they given?

24. What statements have been made regarding their belief in one God?

25. What was held to be the Supreme Spirit among the Algonquins and the Hurons respectively? What were their notions regarding immortality?

26. Where are the remnants of the aborigines of Canada now settled? To what does their population amount?

27. How did the Indians use to be regarded? How were they supported? When was a change of policy adopted?

28. How are they now treated? What is their present condition?

## CHAPTER IV.

## FIRST SETTLEMENTS IN NEW FRANCE.

1588 to 1607 A.D.

The Fur-trade at Anticosti.	Settlement on the St. Croix.
Sieur de la Roche, Viceroy of Canada.	Port Royal.
Convicts on Sable Island.	Baron de Poutrincourt and Marc Les-carbot.
M. Pontgravé at Tadoussac.	The Order of the Good Time.
Samuel de Champlain.	Break-up of establishment at Port Royal.
He ascends the St. Lawrence.	
M. de Monts, Lieut.-General of Acadie.	

1. CANADA was neglected for a period of **forty years** after the disastrous issue of De Roberval's expedition. During that time France was torn by civil and religious strife.<sup>1</sup> While stern and bloody work had to be done at home, her adventurous sons thought not of pursuing the path that had been opened up by the first discoverers. But hundreds of Europeans engaged in the fisheries annually visited the Banks of Newfoundland, the coasts of Cape Breton, and the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The Indians brought their peltries to the Island of Anticosti, and bore them away to the fishermen. The **fur-trade** became an object of importance to the merchants of the sea-ports of France. When Henry III. granted to Jacques Noel and Sieur Chatin, nephews of Jacques Cartier, a monopoly of the trade in the Gulf and River of St Lawrence for twelve years, they raised such an outcry that the King rescinded it.

2. With the return of peace, and the ascent of Henry IV.<sup>2</sup> to the throne, the spirit of adventure was re-awakened. The scheme of creating on the Western Continent a "**New France**," with the feudal institutions of the old country, was revived.

<sup>1</sup> *Civil and religious strife.*—It was the time of the wars of the League (formed in 1576 to oppose the Protestants) in France. Henry III. (the last King of the House of Valois) was murdered in 1589, and was succeeded by

Henry of Navarre (the first King of the House of Bourbon) as Henry IV. He overthrew the League at the Battle of Ivry in 1590.

<sup>2</sup> *Henry IV.* — Henry of Navarre. See preceding note.

The commission given half a century before to Sieur de Roberval was made out afresh in favour of Troilus des Mesguets, Sieur de la Roche. This viceroy of a boundless domain sailed in a vessel so small, that the convicts, by whom it was chiefly manned, could wash their hands in the sea by leaning over its sides. Sieur de la Roche touched at Sable Island, and left there forty of his unruly jail-birds, with the intention of returning and taking them off. But furious winds blew his barque out of its course, and the viceroy returned "bootless home, and weather-beaten back" to France. For **five years** the abandoned crew were left on the island. They hunted the wild cattle, the progeny of the animals left by Baron de Lery in 1618. They fished, and they fought and murdered each other. Henry of France was touched with compassion when he heard the story of their abandonment. He sent Chetodel, De la Roche's pilot, to ascertain their fate. Only twelve were alive when their release came. Clad in wild attire of skins, burned black by exposure, with shaggy beards and long tangled hair, they stood before the King in his palace, and received his bounty. Sieur de la Roche was utterly ruined.

**1589**  
A.D.

**1598**  
A.D.

**1603**  
A.D.

3. M. Pontgravé, a merchant of St. Malo, and M. Chauvin, captain of marine, obtained an extensive grant of territory in Canada. Their chief object was commerce; and the settlement they attempted to make at Tadoussac, on the Saguenay, did not succeed as a permanent colony, but it continued for many years to be the centre of the fur-trade of the St. Lawrence. The profits of the fur-trade were required to help to defray the expenses of colonization; but the mere merchant was the worst of colonizers. It was against his interest to establish people in the country to share the gains which he wished to monopolize. This spirit of selfishness retarded for many long years the growth of Canada. It was the great difficulty against which its founder had to contend.

**1599**  
A.D.

4. **Samuel de Champlain**, captain of marine, was a native of Brouage, a small sea-port on the Bay of Biscay. From his boyhood he had been familiar with the sea. He was thirty years old when his attention was directed to the lands discovered

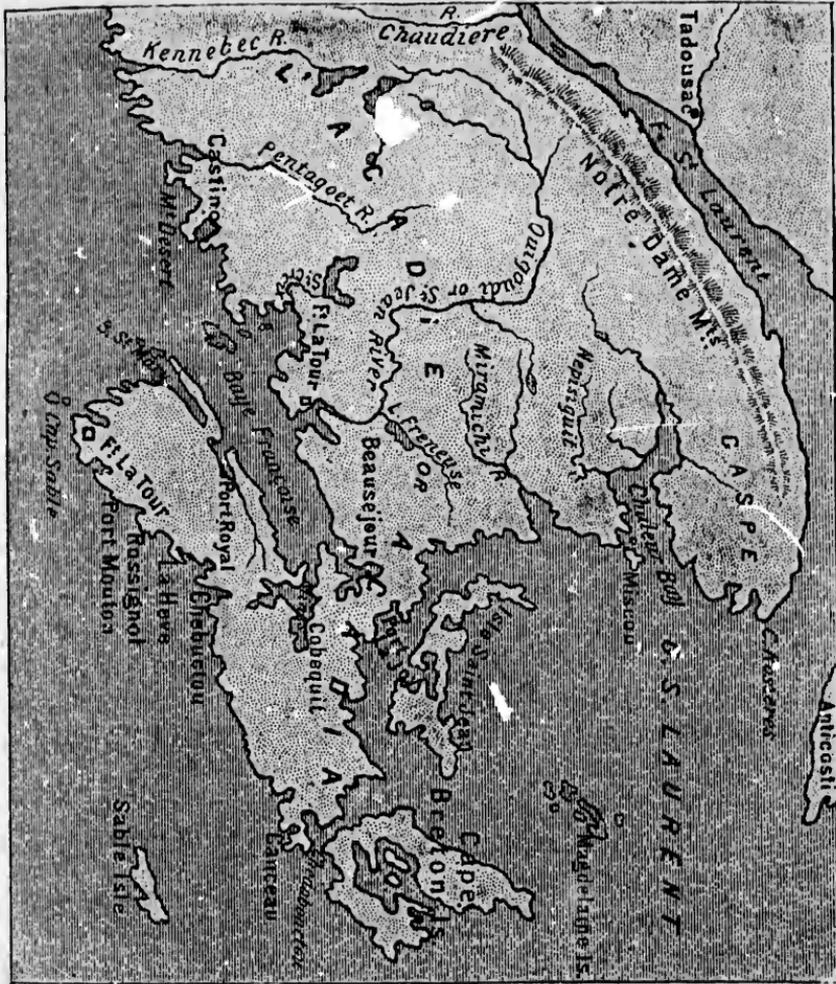
by Cartier. He had lived a life of action; had commanded a ship, and had fought with Henry of Navarre. High in favour at Court, he cared not to dally in the ante-chambers of a palace. He loved adventure in strange lands, and was very curious to observe and skilful to note the manners and customs of their peoples. He was single-minded, courageous, resolute, but kind and courteous. In him the zeal of the missionary tempered the fire of the warrior. His first expedition was undertaken

**1603** along with Pontgravé, under the patronage of Aymar A.D. de Chastes, governor of Dieppe, and commander of the Order of St. John, who desired to found a colony in Canada, and to convert its heathen tribes. When Champlain ascended the St. Lawrence, he saw no vestige of Stadaconé or Hochelaga. No gleeful natives came out to meet him. Nothing remained but the ruins of the fort at Cap Rouge, to attest the fact that Cartier had been there before him. At the Sault St. Louis, where his course was checked, the Indians drew rough plans on bark of the river above, of its chain of rapids, of the great lakes, and the mighty cataract of Niagara. Champlain's enthusiasm was aroused, and he longed to explore that magnificent reach of waters. But he was compelled to **return with Pontgravé**, who had, with much profit, traded with the Indians. In the meantime De Chastes had died.

5. King Henry now created a gentleman of his bed-chamber—Pierre du Guast, Sieur de Monts—Lieutenant-General of the Province of Cadie, or Acadie, (which extended from the 40th to the 46th degree of north latitude,) with full power to colonize it, and with authority to make grants of land and to confer titles, to levy troops and to wage war. He also received the monopoly of the trade of the Gulf and River St. Lawrence. **A colony was to be founded** under the wing of the Roman Catholic Church. De Monts, who was a Huguenot,<sup>1</sup> was directed to take out priests with him. He was

**1604** accompanied by Champlain and a kindred spirit, Baron A.D. Poutrincourt of Champagne. With them sailed, from Hâvre de Grace, a mixed company of noblemen and gentlemen, Catholic curés and Huguenot ministers, artisans and soldiers, sailors and convicts. They made for the south-west

<sup>1</sup> *Huguenots*.—The French Protestants, so called in the 16th century.



coast of Acadie, and entered a harbour, where they found a solitary trading vessel. De Monts, by right of his monopoly, seized it, and the place was called, after the unfortunate owner, **Rossignol**. They then sailed west into a smaller bay. A sheep jumping overboard suggested the name—Port au Mouton. Here they waited for Pontgravé's ship, which carried the principal supplies. When anxiety was relieved by its arrival, they left the port, and rounding Cape Sable, sailed north into the narrow Bay of St. Mary. Traces of silver and iron were here found. Excursions were made into the woods. M. Aubry, a young priest of Paris, became bewildered, and lost his way. In vain his companions shouted themselves hoarse to guide his

steps; in vain were the ship's cannon fired. Suspicion grew that he had been murdered. Dark looks were cast on a Huguenot minister with whom he had had a dispute on the passage out. Seventeen days after he had been given up as dead, a man-spectre appeared, and hailed feebly a boat's crew fishing off the bay shore. It was the priest.

6. Leaving St. Mary's, and sailing up French Bay, the expedition entered a gut that opened into a spacious and placid harbour, encircled by wooded heights. The beauty of the scene made an instant impression, and it was called **Port Royal**. Poutrincourt was so charmed, that he prayed the Lieutenant-General to make him a grant of the place, and was graciously answered. De Monts and Champlain then made a circuit of French Bay.<sup>1</sup> At the head of the basin were found traces of copper ore, and some blue stones supposed to have been amethysts. They called the basin Mines.<sup>2</sup> The mouth of the river of the Etchemins, Ouangondy, on the northern shore of the bay, was entered on the 24th of June; and in honour of the day it was named the **St. John**. They then sailed west until they came to the Bay of Passamaquoddy. Passing by so many islands that Champlain was unable to ascertain their number, they continued their course until they found the mouth of a broad river. Four miles up they saw an island in the middle of the stream, that seemed "to be strong by nature and easy of defence." River and island De Monts called **St. Croix**. On this island, a sandy spot where neither herb nor grain would grow, where neither fire-wood nor fresh-water was to be found, he determined to settle and fortify himself. A busy and harassing summer and autumn were passed. By the beginning of winter a quadrangle of buildings was erected, including the governor's house, which was "of fair carpentry work."

7. The cold set in early, and with intense severity. The icy north-west wind swept down the river over the shelterless island, and made the poor Frenchmen shiver in their rough boarded barns, and forced them to think despairingly, as they cowered over their fires, of the vine-clad hills of sunny France. Gloom fell over the once vivacious company. Though Cham-

<sup>1</sup> *French Bay*.—Now Bay of Fundy. | found there, or from the stone called

<sup>2</sup> *Mines*.—So named from copper ore | *mines*, once used for wheel arquebuses.

plain ever maintained a confident and cheerful front, many grew dejected, and fell an easy prey to disease. Thirty-five died, and as many lay long sick nigh unto death. The experience of that dreadful winter convinced De Monts that he had chosen the site of his settlement unwisely. When spring came, he with Champlain cruised along the coast of Maine and Massachusetts, from the River Penagoët to the shoals and sands of Malabar Bay, but found no place that pleased so well as Port Royal. Thither they removed the colony from St. Croix Island, carrying with them the timber of the buildings, which they used in constructing another quadrangular fort. Apprised by letters from Paris that he had enemies who were jealous of his monopoly, and who were endeavouring to deprive him of it, De Monts, with Baron Poutrincourt, returned to France. There he remained. Though, by his influence at Court, he preserved his privileges, his enemies were vigilant, and he required to be constantly on his guard.

8. **Poutrincourt returned to Acadie** next year. With him came Marc Lescarbot, a briefless barrister, a poet, a man of varied talent, with whom the world had not gone well. Their coming, like a gleam of sunshine after long dismal weather, infused a spirit of joy and hope throughout the settlement of Port Royal. The miseries of a severe winter were forgotten, as the expatriated Frenchmen hob-nobbed with their friends from la belle France, around a hogshead of wine that the baron caused to be tapped in the square.

9. Champlain sailed soon afterwards to explore again the rugged coasts of Massachusetts: those who preferred land adventure dispersed themselves through the woods, and fished, hunted, and traded with the Micmacs. Lescarbot remained in command of the fort, to direct the ploughing and sowing of the fields around it, to till his garden, to indite a rhyme, or write a page of his History of New France. When Champlain returned in November, rather disconsolate from his cruise, the irrepressible Marc, habited like old Father Neptune, appeared at the gate of the fort, surrounded by his Tritons, and welcomed him with a poetical address. To pass the time pleasantly, fifteen of the gentlemen of the colony instituted **the Order of the Good Time**. Each of them held the office of grand-master for

a day, and his duty was to cater for the company. At the hour of dinner this grand-master, with the staff of office in his hand, a napkin on his shoulder, and the collar of the order around his neck, entered the hall, followed by the members of the brotherhood, each bearing a dish. There was great rivalry among them as to who should provide the best table. Their board groaned with the variety of fish and game. The best restaurant in Paris, Lescarbot boasted, could not show a better bill of fare. An Indian tribe was encamped near Port Royal. The merry and hospitable Frenchmen invited its sagamore, Membertou, and other chiefs, to their table. Warriors of less note, and women and children, crouched in the corners of the hall, and were fed from the board. The winter was mild and genial, and it gave zest to "the Good Time."

10. In spring the prospect before Port Royal appeared bright; but the first ship from France brought **dismal 1607 news**. The enemies of De Monts had for a time prevailed, and he sent out imperative orders to break up the establishment. This was a sore blow to Champlain and Lescarbot, who had hoped to found a prosperous settlement in Acadie. Membertou and his Micmacs were much grieved at the departure of their kind friends, and were only consoled by the good-natured promise of a speedy return.

QUESTIONS. —1. What led to the neglect of Canada for a time after De Roberval's expedition? What trade was opened during that time? What showed the importance which the French merchants attached to it?

2. What scheme was revived with the return of peace? To whom was a new commission granted? What befell the convicts on Sable Island?

3. What was the chief object of Pontgravé and Chauvin? Where did they attempt to found a settlement? Why were merchants bad colonizers?

4. Sketch the early career and the character of Champlain. When was his first expedition undertaken? Along with whom? What were the only traces he found of Cartier's visits? What aroused his enthusiasm?

5. Who was at the head of the expe-

dition sent out in 1604? Who accompanied him? What incidents occurred after they reached the coast of Acadie?

6. What places were touched at in French Bay? Where did De Monts determine to settle? What was the character of the island?

7. How was the winter passed? Where did De Monts and Champlain go in spring? Whither did they remove their colony? What led De Monts to return to France?

8. What revived the spirits of the settlers at Acadie the next year?

9. What coasts did Champlain soon afterwards explore? How was he received on his return to Port Royal? Describe the "Order of the Good Time."

10. What dismal news arrived in spring? How were the Micmacs consoled for the departure of their friends?

## CHAPTER V.

## QUEBEC.

1608 to 1614 A.D.

Renewal of De Monts' Monopoly.

Foundation of Quebec.

Plot to murder Champlain.

He goes to war against the Iroquois.

Disorders caused by French fur-traders.

Poutrincourt returns to Port Royal.

Baptism of Membertou and family.

The Society of Jesus.

Discord at Port Royal.

Settlement at St. Sauveur.

Destroyed by Samuel Argall.

Destruction of Port Royal.

1. DE MONTS, though he had many powerful enemies, had still sufficient influence at Court to secure the renewal of his monopoly for another year. The scheme of **1608** founding a colony on the St. Lawrence was revived. A.D. The explorer and the trader again united to carry out the enterprise. It was expected that the profits of traffic would defray the expense of colonization. The project was nearly spoiled at the outset. Pontgravé, at Tadoussac, narrowly escaped death at the hands of a fiery Basque sailor captain, who resented his assertion of an exclusive right to the fur-trade. Early in June, Champlain moored his vessels in the roadway between Point Levi and the promontory on which formerly stood Stadaconé. At the foot of the rock by the river's bank a number of buildings were erected in the form of a square, enclosing a court, in the centre of which rose a tall pole surmounted by a dove-cot. They were surrounded by a wooden wall, pierced with holes for musketry. Outside the wall ran a moat; and at salient points ramparts were thrown up, which were defended by cannon. This rude place was called **Quebec**. It was scarcely finished when some of the inmates conspired to murder its founder, and hand over the habitation to Basque and Spanish traders. Timeous warning was given to Champlain. The conspirators were arrested; the leader was executed, and his head was stuck upon a pole; four were sent manacled to France, and a salutary impression was made on the remainder. During the winter, twenty of the garrison died from the effect of in-

proper food. A tribe of Montagnais pitched their wigwams close to Quebec. Among them were a few Ottawas from the river of the north. They beheld with mingled awe and confidence the stately and gracious presence of "**the man with the iron breast,**" whose weapon killed with flame and thunder, and who always was happy to converse with them. They longed to secure so potent an ally to aid them against the Iroquois, and they proposed that he should accompany them when they next went to war. Eager to explore the country, Champlain seized this opportunity to gratify his desire.

2. In spring, Champlain, with a few Frenchmen, crossed Lake St. Peter, and met at the mouth of the River Iroquois<sup>1</sup> a throng of Algonquin and Huron warriors, who A.D. gave him a most clamorous welcome. The allied party, slowly ascending the river, checked often by its rapids, and hunting and fishing on the way, entered a great lake, which was studded by numerous islands, and enclosed by lofty mountains clothed with rich forests. Ever since that time it has borne the name of **Champlain**. This lake in one place narrows to the breadth of a river, and then opens out into a beautiful sheet of water, Lac Sacrament.<sup>2</sup> In the gray dawn of a summer morning the party landed on the western shore of this "Holy Lake." Proudly the Mohawk warriors stalked out from their fortifications to meet a foe whom they despised. But their confidence turned to alarm when Champlain, coming to the front, **fired his arquebuse** rapidly, and two of their chiefs fell and bit the ground in their death's agony. Soon they fled in dismay. Champlain's heart turned sick within him when he beheld the tortures inflicted on their prisoners by the exultant victors. Angrily he remonstrated; and, out of respect, they forbore their savage practices in his presence. After the victory so easily gained, the allied Indians dispersed to their hunting-grounds. Before separating from Champlain, they exacted a promise that he would meet them the following spring, again to make war upon the Iroquois.

3. A few months afterwards, Champlain was in Fontaine-

<sup>1</sup> *The River Iroquois.*—Now the River Richelieu.

<sup>2</sup> *Lac Sacrament.*—Long afterwards called Lake George.

bleau<sup>1</sup> Palace, amusing the King with the story of his adventures. When next spring came, he went to **fight the** **1610**  
**Algonquians** according to his promise. In the meantime the fur-trade did not prosper in the hands of Pontgravé. A.D.  
 The one year's term of De Monts' monopoly had expired. The traders of St. Malo, Rouen, and Rochelle gathered the best of the harvest at Tadoussac and Quebec, and enriched themselves by exchanging hatchets, axes, knives, copper kettles, and beads for costly beaver skins. Champlain, with a view of intercepting the canoes laden with peltry that descended the Ottawa River, caused a station to be erected on the Isle of Montreal. But the traders ascended as far as the head of the Sault St. Louis. By their rough and boisterous manners they intimidated the Indians, who did not think they were safe unless they had the rapids between themselves and the pale faces. The chiefs went to Champlain and besought their kind friend to leave his companions and come to live with them. They told him he might make them Christians, or do what he pleased with them. The red men appear to have been very tractable under good treatment. It may be that if Europeans generally had shown in their dealings with them a kinder and fairer spirit, they might not have been the forlorn people that they now are. Champlain was grieved at heart. He saw that unless some barrier were erected against the incursions of the traders his infant colony would die.

4. Three years after the abandonment of Acadie, **Baron** **Poutrincourt** returned to **Port Royal**, the grant made to him by De Monts having been confirmed by the **1610**  
 King. He found the buildings standing untouched by A.D.  
 the Indians and uninjured by the climate. By Membertou, the stately Micmac sagamore, he was received with the dignity of a chief who esteemed himself the equal of kings, and with the cordiality of a man not oblivious of past good cheer. A prejudice had been created against the former attempt at colonization by a charge made by its enemies, that the interests of religion had been neglected. The influence of the "**Society**

<sup>1</sup> *Fontainebleau*.—A town 35 miles south-east of Paris, celebrated for its ancient royal palace, long the favourite residence of the French Sovereigns. The palace is surrounded by beautiful gardens and parks.

of Jesus," founded by Ignatius Loyola<sup>1</sup> in 1534, was then great at the Court of Paris. Through Cottin, confessor of King Henry, Father Pierre Biard was appointed organizer of spiritual affairs in Acadie. But the feeling against the formidable Society, whose members mingled with intense religious zeal much worldly wisdom, was very strong in France, and Poutrincourt, to satisfy the scruples of a Huguenot merchant with whom he was associated, had evaded his engagement to take out with him the Jesuit Father. To evince his zeal for religion he substituted in his place a priest, La Flèche, surnamed the Patriarch. Pitying the state of heathen darkness in which the ancient Membertou had lived for over a century, Father la Flèche prevailed on him **to be baptized** along with all his family. The names of the King and Queen of France, and those of princes and ladies of high degree, were bestowed on the chief and his wife, and on his sons and his daughters. The rite was performed with much solemnity, and was followed by profuse hospitality. It excited a great desire among the Indians generally to be received into the fold of the Church. Biencourt, the Baron's son, was despatched to France with the registry of baptisms, and for the purpose of seeking material aid from certain Huguenot merchants of Dieppe.

5. In the meantime a tragical event had occurred. Henry IV., riding through the narrow streets of Paris, had **May 24,** been **stabbed** by Ravailiac,<sup>2</sup> a priestly fanatic. After **1610** the great King's death Jesuit influence became all-powerful at Court. Zeal for the conversion of the heathen took possession of the great ladies. Madame de Guercheville (late maid of honour to the consort of King Henry) evinced an uncontrollable desire, after inspecting the registry brought by Biencourt, to aid in the conversion of the savages of Acadie. Biencourt was constrained to assent to the proposition pressed on him, that Fathers Biard and Enemond Masse should accompany him on his return. The merchants of Dieppe,

<sup>1</sup> *Ignatius Loyola*.—The founder of the Jesuits; was the youngest son of a Spanish nobleman; born 1491, died 1566. He began life as a soldier; but having got a leg broken, he vowed that if he recovered he would devote him-

self to a religious life. This was the origin of the "Society of Jesus."

<sup>2</sup> *Ravailiac*.—François Ravailiac, born 1570, originally a monk, was expelled from his order on account of his fanatical views.

hearing of this condition, refused to make their promised advances. Biencourt was driven to accept the assistance of Madame de Guercheville. Through her zealous efforts among the charitable, funds were raised. The Society of Jesus became partners with Poutrincourt by contributing 3,500 livres to the common fund, besides advancing further sums as loans. This aid placed him under heavy obligations. As a mark of distinction, Biencourt was appointed **Vice-Admiral** of the Seas of New France, with authority over the trading vessels from St. Malo and Rochelle. Claude Etienne de la Tour and his son Charles Amador accompanied his party to Acadie. Poutrincourt returned to France soon after **1611** the arrival of his son, leaving him in command. Young, A.D. self-willed, and impulsive, he resented any interference by the Jesuit Fathers with his authority, which he was inclined to exercise harshly. Enemond Masse visited the wigwams of an Indian tribe of the River St. John, of which Louis, son of Membertou, was chief. After a few months' experience he returned half starved, and inexpressibly disgusted by the filth and smoke and indescribable annoyances among which he had lived. When winter came **evil days** fell upon Port Royal. Instead of the plenty and geniality that had reigned in the winter days of Champlain and Lescarbot, scarcity and discord cast their gloom over it. The Indians shunned the once merry hall, though a few, grateful for past kindness, came with small presents of game.

6. The internal harmony of Port Royal was not restored when Madame de Guercheville, who had obtained from Louis XIII. a grant of all the territory formerly given **1612** to De Monts, sent out Father Gilbert du Thet to look A.D. after her interests in the colony. Discord burst forth into open flame. The Fathers, rather than endure the overbearing authority of the young Vice-Admiral, made preparations to leave Port Royal, but were restrained by him. Thereupon they **excommunicated** their tyrant, and for months refused to officiate at the altar. Then a change came over their spirit. The chapel door was again opened, and peace for a time came back to Port Royal. Soon afterwards Father du Thet left for France. Baron Poutrincourt was now involved

in law-suits arising out of the moneys advanced to him by Madame, and he loudly accused the Jesuit Fathers of having enmeshed him in legal toils. An attempt was made to induce him to abandon Port Royal. On his refusal the Fathers resolved to seek some other place. In the spring of the following year, M. de la Saussaye received a commission as Lieutenant-

General of Acadie under Madame de Guercheville. He **1613** sailed with Fathers du Thet and Quentin, and a small party of colonists. After taking Fathers Biard and Masse on board at Port Royal, he cruised the Bay of Fundy to find the mouth of the Penobscot River. Off the south-east of Grand Manan the vessel was enveloped in a thick fog, and it drifted along until the cloud rose from the sea, and disclosed to the party on board wreaths of vapour curling around the heights of Mount Desert. They anchored in a bay on the east side of the island, and called it St. Sauveur. On a well-sheltered point of Penobscot Bay a fit place to land was found. There the tents presented by the Queen and the ladies of the Court were pitched, and there the work of settlement commenced.

7. The English colony of **Virginia**<sup>1</sup> was then struggling into existence. It was the custom of the people to send annually a fleet of boats, under an armed convoy, to fish on the banks around the "Seven Isles of the Shoals," some twenty-five leagues south of the Penobscot. This year **Samuel Argall**, a man of daring and unscrupulous character, but generous withal, commanded the convoy. Hearing from some Indians that Frenchmen were settling on Penobscot Bay, he promptly resolved to treat them as invaders of English territory. By right of the discoveries of the Cabots, King James claimed all the country named Acadie, which was held by the French by virtue of the explorations of John Verazzani. When it is considered that the English and French nations were at peace, and that the claims of both were vague and undefined, Argall's action appears unjustifiable.

8. The French sailors and settlers were on shore, busy ploughing and building, when a strange vessel was descried beating up

<sup>1</sup> *Virginia*.—So named by Sir Walter virgin Queen of England, when he took Raleigh in honour of Elizabeth, the possession of the settlement in 1584.

the mouth of the bay. Saussaye hurried his men on board his ship, and, all unprepared, put out to meet the stranger. To the sound of drum and trumpet, and with the red flag flying, Argall advanced, and when within range, saluted the Frenchmen with a **volley of musketry**. A cannon shot fired by Father du Thet dropped harmlessly into the water. In reply, the English discharged their broadside, which tore up the timbers of the French ship, and rolled the courageous priest, mortally wounded, on the deck. The Frenchmen then struck their flag. The English landed, and plundered and destroyed the rising settlement. By the craft of Argall (who privately caused the cherts of the French commandant to be rifled), M. de la Saussaye could not produce his commission from the French King ; so, when he was accused of having invaded foreign territory, he could show no warrant for his act. He, with Father Masse and fifteen others, were sent adrift in an open boat. Fortunately, off the east coast of Acadie they fell in with a French vessel, which bore them away to France. The rest of the party were taken to Virginia. Sir Thomas Dale, the Governor at Jamestown, would have executed them summarily as pirates, but was deterred by Argall, who then produced Saussaye's commission.

9. Next year Argall was again on the track of havoc. Father Biard is vehemently accused of having disclosed to him, from the grudge he bore to Biencourt, the fact of the **1614** existence of a French settlement at Port Royal. After A.D. completing the ruin of the St. Sauveur settlement on the Penobscot shore, he sailed for Passamaquoddy Bay, and on the Island of St. Croix razed to the ground such buildings as had been left standing. Crossing the Bay of Fundy (long afterwards known as Argall's Bay), he plundered and destroyed Port Royal ; and caused the names of De Monts, Poutrincourt, Champlain, and others, and the *fleur-de-lis* of France, to be erased from a massive stone. In a meadow, and standing on the opposite sides of a stream, he and Biencourt had a stormy interview. Each accused the other of piracy and robbery, and they parted in mutual rage.

10. Knighted by King James, Sir Samuel Argall was shortly afterwards appointed **Governor of Virginia**. Baron Poutrin-

court abandoned his settlement at Port Royal. The following year he was slain at the siege of Mesy, on the **1615** Seine. Buried at St. Just, in Champagne, his epitaph bore testimony to his military virtues, and to the difficulties he had encountered in his Christian work of establishing New France.

**QUESTIONS.**—1. By whom was the scheme of founding a colony on the St. Lawrence revived? Give an account of the founding of Quebec. What narrow escape did Champlain make? What proposal gave him an opportunity of exploring the country?

2. What lake was discovered? How were the Mohawks defeated? What promise did his allies exact from Champlain?

3. Where did he go in the meantime? What disorders did he find prevailing on his return? What did the chiefs propose to him? What reflection is made regarding the treatment of the Indians? What did Champlain clearly see?

4. When did Poutrincourt return to Port Royal? What charge had been made against the former attempt at colonization? Into what difficulty was Poutrincourt led in trying to clear his new enterprise of such a charge? What solemn rite was performed by La

Flèche? What effect had it on the Indians?

5. What change did the death of Henry IV. bring about? Who became especially zealous for the conversion of the heathen? Who withdrew their support from the colony? Who then became Poutrincourt's partners? How was the next winter passed at Port Royal?

6. What led the Jesuit Fathers to leave Port Royal? Where did they found a new settlement?

7. Who resolved to attack the new settlers? On what ground? Why was the action unjustifiable?

8. Describe Argall's attack on St. Sauveur. What became of the Frenchmen?

9. What did Argall do the following year? Where and how did he and Blencourt part?

10. How was Argall rewarded for his exploits? What was the fate of Poutrincourt?

## CHAPTER VI.

## CHAMPLAIN.

1612 to 1616 A.D.

Lieutenant-Generals of New France.  
Comte de Soissons.  
Prince de Condé.  
Vignan the impostor.  
Champlain ascends the Ottawa.  
His disappointment.

His troubles in France.  
He visits the Huron country.  
Goes to war against the Senecas.  
Repulse of the allied Indians.  
Champlain detained a prisoner.  
Lost in the woods.

1. **CHAMPLAIN**, after his return to France in 1611, exerted himself to secure a powerful patron for his colony, with the object of establishing a centre of permanent authority. **Charles de Bourbon**,<sup>1</sup> Comte de Soissons, prevailed upon to give the influence of his name and rank to the project, was created Lieutenant-General of New France. By a commission, dated 15th of October, Champlain was appointed his lieutenant, and was invested with absolute civil and military jurisdiction over the colony, and with exclusive trade privileges. The spread of the Roman Catholic religion, and the conversion of the savages, were mentioned as objects of paramount importance. The trade monopoly, of course, excited the wrath of the merchants of the sea-ports. Their satisfaction was not concealed when, by the sudden death of the Comte de Soissons, it was rescinded. Their satisfaction, however, was short-lived.

2. **Henri de Bourbon**,<sup>2</sup> Prince de Condé, was appointed Lieutenant-General in room of the deceased Comte; and the commission to Champlain was revived with all its powers and privileges. Champlain sought not the monopoly of trade for a selfish purpose, but for the protection of his colony. He invited the clamorous merchants to join him. The strife of religious differences was then very bitter. The Huguenots of Rochelle refused to associate with him, and with the Catholic traders

<sup>1</sup> *Charles de Bourbon*.—Second son of Louis Prince de Condé, and cousin of Henry IV. He died in 1612.

<sup>2</sup> *Henri de Bourbon*.—Grandson of

Louis Prince de Condé, and nephew of Charles, referred to in preceding note. He died in 1646. His son Louis was the great Condé, a famous soldier.

of St. Malo and Rouen, who formed themselves into a body of "**Associated Merchants**," preferring to run the risk of carrying on illicit traffic. The obstructions that met Champlain in his way, from the indifference of people in high places, and from the envy and jealousy of others, could only have been surmounted by a most resolute spirit, fortified by the secret belief that he was an instrument in the hands of Providence to effect a great purpose. In the course of the winter, Nicolas Vignau (an adventurer who had served with Champlain in Canada) appeared in Paris, and gave out that he had ascended the Ottawa River **to its source** in a lake, and that he had followed the course of a river that flowed into it until he reached a great sea. Champlain listened eagerly to this tale. If it were true (and Vignau, under threat of death by the hangman's cord in event of its falsity being proved, maintained that it was true), the question that had agitated discoverers since the time of Christopher Columbus was solved,—the way to the East by the west was found.

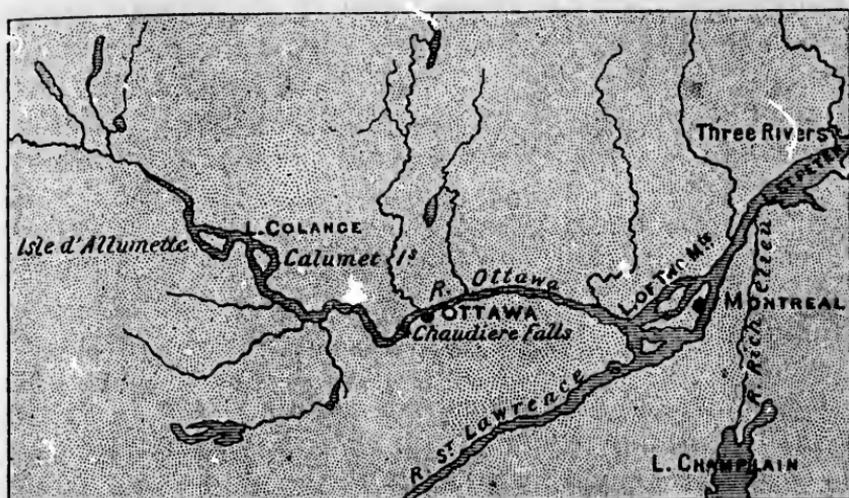
3. He did not require to be pressed by his friends at Court to follow up this discovery. He crossed the Atlantic in spring.

On the 27th of May, with Vignau and three other  
**1613** Frenchmen and one Indian, in two canoes, he left a  
 A.D. little island near the Island of Montreal, which he named

St. Helène, in honour of his wife. Three days afterwards he entered the mouth of the Ottawa, and saw its black tide flowing through, without intermingling with, the blue-green waters of the St. Lawrence. Above "**the Lake of the Two Mountains**" an impetuous rapid checked his course, and the party was compelled to drag the canoes through the thick tangled woods. Beyond this "sault" the course was smooth; for leagues the river flowed gently past wooded banks sometimes level with the water's edge. But before long Champlain was compelled to land. As he ascended, the river ran with great force, and soon he saw the body of the stream dashing down a steep chasm, and falling into a huge and deep "kettle," where, frothing and bubbling, it swirled round with a mighty noise. The upward voyage was arduous and difficult on account of the ever-recurring "**chuts**" and cataracts. Above Chaudiere Lake he entered the Lac du Chats, a beautiful expanse of soft

and glassy water. As he ascended, small islands divided the descending waters into numerous falls. On one of them, the Isle of St. Croix, he erected a cross of red cypress bearing the arms of France. On his further way the canoes had sometimes to be carried through forests swarming with mosquitoes, and over or beneath huge prostrate trunks; sometimes they had to be drawn in the water by cords, near the edge of the banks, on which there was slippery and dangerous footway.

4. At the Island of Calumet, which divided the river into two arms, Champlain was welcomed by Nibachis, the chief of a friendly tribe. With this escort he proceeded on his way.



CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLORATION OF THE OTTAWA.

passing frequent rapids and falls, and threading deep rocky defiles, until the river expanded into Lake Colange. At the Isle d'Allumette he was met by Tessouac and his warriors. The old Algonquin chief viewed Champlain with wonder, as a man who had fallen from the clouds. He could hardly believe that with so small a party he had made his way through a country so difficult and dangerous. He gave a grand feast in his honour. A solemn council was afterwards held, when Champlain, through his interpreter, recounted the story told by Nicolas Vignan, and expressed a hope that Tessouac would assist him with men and canoes to ascend to the source of the river, whence he might find the great sea. The Indians heard

the story in silence ; but they looked askance at Vignan (whom they knew, and who had passed a winter in their company), as if they would have eaten him. But the old chief broke out in fury, calling him **liar**. Nicolas, he said, had lain down with his children and risen up with them. If he had seen the people, the country, and the sea he had spoken of, it must have been in his dreams.

5. The calm-tempered Champlain was transported with momentary rage when he found that he had been made the **dupe of an impostor**. Vignan had to the last persisted in his story, hoping that the difficulties of the way would break up the expedition, while he would retain the reputation of having made a great discovery. The Indians cried out, " Kill him with tortures ;" but the humane Champlain pardoned the wretch after a full confession of his lie. He would fain have pursued his journey to Lake Nipissing, where dwelt the tribe of the Nipercini, or Sorcerers ; but Tessouac threw obstructions in the way. He was forced to retrace his weary steps. A party of Algonquin warriors accompanied him as far as the Chaudiere Falls. On parting, he promised to accompany them and their Huron allies on their next war expedition against the Iroquois.

6. **Trouble** awaited Champlain on his return to France. Trade jealousies gave him no rest. The merchants of Rochelle intrigued for permission to trade to the St. Lawrence independently of the Associated Merchants ; and they found men in authority who abetted their pretensions. The Prince de Condé even was accused of playing into their hands, and for a money consideration of giving them passports that secured to them the privileges of free trade. A facile disposition truly he must have had, to pretend to be anxious to further the views of his friend and lieutenant, and yet to permit those who were hostile to them to approach himself with bribes ! Champlain found the greatest difficulty in raising his enterprise above a mere trade speculation. Nothing as yet had been done to promote the spread of religion.

7. When he returned to Canada, he took out with him four servants of the Church to minister to the wants of his own people, and to convert the savages. The priests chosen as the

fittest missionaries for New France were named **Recollets**, an order of Franciscan monks of "the strict observance," who abjured all worldly ambition, and took the vow of **1615** perpetual poverty. They wore a coarse, hooded gown, girt A.D. with a knotted rope, and wooden sandals on their bare feet. To Father d'Oilbeau was assigned the mission among the Montagnais at Tadoussac; Fathers Jamet and Pacifique du Plessis were stationed at Quebec. Champlain chose Father le Caron as his companion in his intended expedition **to the Huron country**.

8. He found the Algonquins of the Isle d'Allumette impatiently waiting for him at Sault St. Louis. Imperative business calling him to Quebec, he exacted a promise from them that they would await his return. But his fickle allies, taking with them Father le Caron and a few Frenchmen, were at the Chaudiere Falls before he again reached the Isle of Montreal. This insolent disregard of his wishes mortified Champlain, and his first angry impulse prompted him to abandon the expedition. If he had followed it, it might have been well for the future peace of Canada. But he believed that he could not extend his discoveries, and so promote the spread of religion and commerce, without the goodwill of the Algonquins and Hurons, and that he could not gain their friendship without aiding them in their wars against the Iroquois. The benefits, however, that were derived from an alliance with people so intractable were very doubtful, while the evils that flowed to Canada from the hostility to the French which his course awakened among the "Five Nations," were very certain.

9. Passion for travelling conquered Champlain's irritation. With his trusty interpreter, Etienne Brulé, the first of Canadian voyageurs, and a crew of four Frenchmen, he ascended the Ottawa to the Isle d'Allumette. He found the firs and boulders of the country above it displeasing to his eye; but he remarked, as a signal instance of the goodness of Providence to the inhabitants of so sterile a region, that it abounded in **wild fruit**. On the borders of Lake Nipissing he was heartily welcomed by the Nipercini, or Sorcerers. From the lake he entered the French River, and the country along its course appeared to him even more uninviting than that through which

he had passed. On the shores of Lac Attigouantin (the Georgian Bay<sup>1</sup> of Lake Huron) he encountered a friendly people whom he called Les Cheveux Relevés; for no courtier in France, he thought, had his hair dressed in so magnificent a style.

10. Skirting along the rough, flat, and ill-wooded northern shore of this lake, he passed many islands, and rejoiced in the enormous trout and in the huge sturgeons, "of a marvellous goodness," that were caught by his men. He was out many days on this lake, which, from its vast extent, he called the Fresh Sea. Coasting along its southern shore, he entered its eastern extremity at Matchedash Bay.<sup>2</sup> There his party landed, and took the trail through a pleasant country of vale and stream that led them to the bourgade of Otouächa. On their way they visited several other bourgades, and were everywhere received by the Huron people in the most kindly and hospitable manner. At Cahiaque, the principal town of the country, Champlain met Father le Caron and the Frenchmen who had preceded him. It was the 12th of August, and Father le Caron (who rejoiced that it was his lot to be the first to proclaim the gospel in that heathen land) performed divine service, returning thanks to God for their preservation amidst many dangers.

11. **Cahiaque** was situated at the north-eastern extremity of Lake Simcoe. The fine country around it was well adapted for wheat culture. Champlain saw fields of Indian corn, pumpkins, and sunflowers from which the Indians extracted an oil. In the fir plantations hares and partridges abounded. Plums, raspberries, strawberries, wild apples, cherries, nectarines, and nuts were plentiful. Here on the 1st of September the allied Hurons and Algonquin warriors assembled for their expedition against the Iroquois. They expected the aid of five hundred Eries, who dwelt on the southern shore of Lake Erie; and a few resolute men, among whom was Etienne Brulé, went forward to apprise them that the war party had set out.

12. By a succession of lakes that formed an almost continuous

---

<sup>1</sup> *Georgian Bay.*—See Map, p. 92.    <sup>2</sup> *Matchedash Bay.*—See Map, p. 92.

river through a country that looked like a great pleasure-park, and which abounded in game, Champlain and the dusky warriors, who fished, and hunted the bear and deer for their daily support, made their way to the shore of Lake Entouhonous.<sup>1</sup> They crossed its eastern extremity, and hid their canoes in the woods. They were now in the enemy's country, and they moved cautiously. The object of their attack was **the castle of the Senecas**, guarding the western end of the line at the River Genessee, between which and the Mohawk River in the east the bourgades of the "Five Nations" were situated. On the 10th of October they came in sight of it. Against Champlain's advice the allied warriors rushed at once to the attack; but before they shot their arrows they poured out a volley of abuse against their foes, who, crowding on the galleries within the palisades, returned it vigorously; and hurled down stones upon the foremost assailants. Champlain and his few Frenchmen then stepped to the front. The balls from their arquebuses whistling about the ears of the defenders of the castle caused them to hide their heads. Several of the Senecas were killed and wounded. The allies then retired and encamped themselves out of sight of the foe.

13. Champlain rated them soundly for their want of discipline. He taught them how they might overpower the volleys of their foe by constructing a high covered platform that would overlook the palisades, and from whence the arquebusier could shoot down their defenders. He showed then also how to make **mantelets**<sup>2</sup> to protect themselves in advancing to set fire to the palisades. They patiently set to work and constructed the platform, and two hundred warriors pushed it within distance; but, scorning the shelter of mantelets, they rushed into the open fields and shot their arrows, which did little execution. Champlain in despair roared himself hoarse in his endeavour to restore discipline, but could not be heard above the furious yelling of the combatants. He received two wounds, in the thigh and knee. After fighting three hours, and suffering a trifling loss, the allies grew discouraged, and drew off, saying that they would await the arrival of the five hundred Erie warriors.

<sup>1</sup> *Entouhonous*.—That is, Ontario. | of boards, covered with skins or metal.

<sup>2</sup> *Mantelets*, movable parapets, made | [Diminutive of *mantle*, a cloak.]

14. After three days, when no aid appeared, they retreated towards Lake Ontario, harassed by the foe. Champlain, chagrined, suffering from his wounds, confined in a sort of pannier, and carried over rough ground on an Indian's back, endured unspeakable torture of mind and body. The unreasonable allies, though their want of discipline and perseverance had alone prevented success, blamed him. They had imagined that he carried assured victory with him; but finding that their "champion with the iron breast" was neither invulnerable nor invincible, they failed to pay him superstitious respect as had been their wont.

15. When they arrived at the shore of Lake Ontario the chiefs broke the plight they made to Champlain before the battle. None of them would take him to Sault St. Louis by the route of the "great river" St. Lawrence, as they had promised to do. He was compelled to **accompany them**, a virtual prisoner, to the Huron country. He was indebted to the chief Durantal for shelter. He spent the winter of his forced stay in hunting and in close observation of the manners, customs, and superstitions of the Indians. The results of his observations are recorded in his published works. Once he lost himself in the woods, and for two days and nights he wandered about. He had given himself up for lost before he struck upon the track by which he had entered. If he had perished in his solitude, what would have become of infant Canada?

**1616** Except himself, there was not a man in all France willing to devote his life to its preservation. When in the spring he and Father le Caron reached Sault St. Louis, they were welcomed by Pontgravé and the Recollets as men who had risen from the grave.

QUESTIONS. — 1. Whose patronage did Champlain secure for his new colony in 1611? What was Champlain's own position? What objects were held of paramount importance? What event gave satisfaction to the merchants? Why?

2. Why was their satisfaction short-lived? What difficulties had Champlain to encounter? What story fired his enthusiasm?

3. Describe Champlain's expedition

up the Ottawa. Who accompanied him?

4. What occurred on the Isle d'Allouette? What did Tessouac say of Vignan's story?

5. How did Champlain receive the discovery? How did he treat the impostor? Whither did he go?

6. What difficulties did Champlain meet with in France? Of what duplicity was the Prince de Condé accused?

7. Whom did Champlain take with

him on his return to Canada? How were they distributed? Where did he himself go?

8. What conduct of the Algonquins annoyed him greatly? What was his first impulse? What prevented him from following it?

9. In what direction did Champlain travel? Who were his companions? Describe his course.

10. Where did the party land? Where did they meet Le Caron?

11. Describe the country around Lake Simcoe, and its products. What expedition was resolved on?

12. In what direction did they proceed? What was the object of their attack? Describe the first encounter.

13. For what did Champlain reprove his allies? What did he teach them? What were the results? What befell Champlain?

14. In what direction did the allies retreat? On what ground did they blame Champlain?

15. How did the chiefs break faith with him? Where and how did he spend the winter? When did he return to Sault St. Louis? How was he received?

## CHAPTER VII.

## DIFFICULTIES OF FIRST SETTLEMENT.

1617 to 1626 A.D.

Precarious existence of Canada.	Guillaume and Emery de Caen
Duc de Montmorency.	Duc de Ventadour Viceroy.
Intrigues of the Associated Merchants.	The Jesuit Fathers.
Champlain victorious.	Acadie.
Dismal state of Quebec.	Sir William Alexander.
Madame de Champlain.	Knights-Baronets of Nova Scotia.

1. For several years the **infant colony of Canada** passed a precarious existence under the nominal sovereignty of the Prince de Condé, and in the hands of the "Associated Merchants," who quarrelled among themselves, and would do nothing to advance its permanent interests. Champlain, when in France, was surrounded by a network of intrigue. Every effort was made to deprive him of his position as lieutenant under the Viceroy. The persistency with which he urged upon the Associated Merchants the duty of planting a colony, and of maintaining priests for its spiritual welfare, was exceedingly irksome to them. They tried to evade their obligation by citing the ill success of the efforts of De Monts to found a colony in Acadie. But Champlain would not be diverted from the purpose of his life by so irrelevant an excuse.

2. At this time the venal Prince de Condé disposed of his interest in the viceroyalty to the Duc de Montmorency,<sup>1</sup> **1619** Admiral of France, for 11,000 crowns. Champlain A.D. retained his position as lieutenant. By great efforts arrangements were made to send out a body of eighty colonists, including three Recollet Fathers. Two years before, Louis Hebert had taken out his wife and two children, and they were the **first regular settlers** in Canada. To encourage the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Duc de Montmorency.* — He was grandson of the Constable Montmorency who was taken prisoner, along with Francis I. at Pavia, 1525. He joined in a plot against Richelieu's government, and was taken prisoner in a skirmish with the royal troops. He was convicted, and beheaded in 1632. Born 1595.

work of actual settlement, Champlain resolved to take his household with him. In 1611 he had married H el ne de Boulay, a young lady of great beauty and of pious mind. A determined effort was made by the Associated Merchants to deprive him of the command of the colony. They intimated that Pontgrav  would command at Quebec, while he would be left free to pursue his discoveries. But he refused to accept this mandate. He hurried to Paris, pleaded and won his case before the Royal Council, and then he caused the Royal Decree, establishing him in his position as lieutenant, to be posted up in the exchanges of all the sea-ports.

3. Champlain found the habitation of Quebec in a most deplorable state, and the colony in a **perishing condition**.

Abuses introduced by the free-traders awakened his **1620** deep displeasure. In exchange for peltries they bartered **A.D.** away fire-arms and brandy. The poor red man took a violent liking for the fiery liquid, which worked like poison in his blood, inflaming him to madness. Champlain gave immediate orders for the construction of a stone fort on the summit of the rock. Though clothed with full authority under the Viceroy, he could not command the power of the purse. The Associated Merchants could not see the necessity of fortifying Quebec. The advances they made were small and intermittent, and so the work of the fort made slow progress. **Madame de Champlain** was not dismayed by the rude scene in which she found herself, but entered with enthusiasm into the work of instructing the Indian children, whose hearts were won by her beauty, her benignity, and her pretty trinkets.

4. Owing to the non-fulfilment of their obligation to colonize the country, the Associated Merchants were temporarily deprived of their privileges. The monopoly of the **1621** trade was granted to two Huguenot gentlemen, Guil- **A.D.** laume and Emery de Caen, on condition that they would send out to Canada none but native Frenchmen and Roman Catholics. The Associated Merchants were shortly afterwards admitted to a share in the profits of the concern; but the interests of the colony were little advanced by the new arrangement. An element of **religious discord** was introduced, which caused scandal, and roused the wonder of the Indians.

De Caen's Huguenot sailors, debarred from attending divine service on land, roared out their psalmody from the decks of their vessels, which lay moored by the banks of the St. Lawrence.

5. The state of the colony was **very dismal**. It was little cared for at home; it was rent by dissensions, and exposed to the onslaught of foes from without. The Iroquois, perceiving its feeble condition, sent out three war parties to extirpate the Frenchmen at one fell swoop. The Montagnais, Hurons, and Algonquins, hitherto friendly, evinced a disposition to join them in their onslaught. But the dangers were averted. The example set by Champlain in bringing out his family was not followed by any one in France. By reason of the irregular arrival of ships he was often in want of necessary things; and he did not choose that his wife should be exposed to privations. Her first glowing enthusiasm had waned. He **returned home**; and Madame de Champlain retired to a convent.

6. The Duc de Montmorency was succeeded by his nephew, Henri de Levi, Duc de Ventadour. He was a spiritual enthusiast. From the splendour of the Court of Paris he had retired to the seclusion of a convent. The great objects he held before his eyes were, the spread of the Roman Catholic religion, and the conversion of the savages, under his auspices. Fathers Lallemand, Masse (who had survived the disaster in Acadie), François, and Gilbert, of the Order of Jesus, were chosen and equipped for the work. On their first arrival in Canada, the **Jesuit Fathers** had to encounter a hostility systematically encouraged by the Huguenot merchants. Emery de Caen received them with the chilliest civility. To the Recollets they were indebted for temporary shelter in their convent on the River St. Charles. In the following year they were joined by Fathers Noyrot and Anne de Noue, who brought with them several workmen. They were soon independent of the hospitality of the "gray gowns." The establishment they raised formed quite an addition to Quebec. Still, outside the floating population during the open season, there were not more than fifty-five actual residents, agriculturists, artisans, and labourers, in the habitation.

7. It will now be convenient to relate the events that occurred in **Acadie** after the descent of Argall upon Port Royal. Bien-court still held possession of the country, and claimed to be its commandant under the French King. With his lieutenant, young Charles de la Tour, he lived among the Micmacs, dressed after their fashion, and with them fished and hunted. Aid and encouragement were sent to him by his friends in France. When the Recollets established themselves in their convent (1620) on the St. Charles, they sent **missionaries** to the Nepisiguit, to the mouth of the St. John, to Port Royal, and to Cape Sable. They were the first Europeans who penetrated the unbroken wilderness between the Bay of Chaleur and the Bay of Fundy.

8. The expedition of Argall paved the way for the occupation of Acadie by the English. King James, in 1614, granted to Sir Fernando Gorges and other gentlemen, who formed the "**Association of the Grand Council of Plymouth**," all the territory from the 40th to the 48th degree of north latitude, to which the name of New England was given. In 1620 they received a charter. One of the members of this Grand Council was a Scottish knight, **Sir William Alexander**,<sup>1</sup> gentleman usher to Prince Charles, and a member of the Privy Council. He had an enthusiastic imagination and a patriotic mind. He saw a New Spain, a New France, and a New England established on the American Continent, and he conceived the project of founding a New Scotland.

9. Through his influence with King James, he obtained a concession of Cape Breton and the Peninsula, and all the lands between the Bay of Fundy and the River St. Lawrence, and from the River St. Croix on the west to the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the east. The charter was granted on the 20th of September, and the territory was called **Nova Scotia**. Sir William boasted that while other preceding patents had been imaginarily limited by the degrees of heaven, his was the first national patent that was ever clearly bounded in America by particular limits upon earth.

<sup>1</sup> *Sir William Alexander*.—Born 1580, died 1640. In 1630 he was made a viscount, and afterwards became Earl of Stirling. He was an intimate friend of the poet Drummond of Hawthorn-den, and was himself a skilful versifier.



NOVA SCOTIA, 1621 A.D.

Under his auspices the Scotch made a settlement and built a fort on the west side of the basin of Port Royal, opposite Goat Island. But they did not interfere with the French who were already settled in Acadie.

1622

A.D.

10. The La Tours continued to occupy land within Nova Scotia. Claude, the father, built a fort at the mouth of the St. John. When Biencourt died, Charles, the son, succeeded to the nominal dignity of Commandant of Acadie, and maintained himself in Fort Louis on the harbour of L'Omeron at Cape Sable. On the death of King James the

1623

A.D.

grant to Sir William Alexander was confirmed by Charles I. At this time the order of the **Knights-Baronets of Nova Scotia**<sup>1</sup> was founded, and con-

1625

A.D.

<sup>1</sup> *Knights-Baronets of Nova Scotia.*—The first order of Baronets was instituted by James I. in 1611, in connection with a scheme for the colonization of Ulster, in Ireland. The Baronets of

Ireland were created in 1619, and those of Nova Scotia in 1625. Since the Irish Union (1801), all Baronets have been styled in their patents Baronets of the United Kingdom.

sisted of one hundred and fifty members. They received extensive grants of land on condition of sending out settlers. Their patents were ratified by Parliament. The insignia of the order were designed. A great idea floated through the brain of Sir William. He would transplant the feudal institutions of his country to the New World. His Nova Scotia, divided into the provinces of Carolina and Alexandria, and separated from New England by another Tweed—the St. Croix—would take a proud place among the young nations created by the old kingdoms of Europe on the American Continent.

QUESTIONS.—1. What were the causes of the precarious existence passed by Canada for some years? What duty did Champlain urge on the Associated Merchants? How did they try to evade their obligation?

2. Who succeeded the Prince de Condé in the viceroyalty? Who were the first regular settlers in Canada? How did the Associated Merchants intrigue against Champlain? What was the result?

3. In what condition did Champlain find Quebec? What great abuses had the free-traders introduced? What prevented the fortifying of Quebec? How did Madame de Champlain occupy herself?

4. On what condition did the De Caens receive the trade monopoly? How did the religious discord operate?

5. What new danger threatened the colonists? What effect had the privations to which Madame de Champlain was exposed?

6. By whom was the Duc de Mont-

morency succeeded? What were his great aims? Whom did he send out for this work? What difficulties did the Jesuit Fathers encounter? How many actual residents were there in Quebec?

7. What became of Biencourt after the destruction of Port Royal? Who were the first Europeans who penetrated the forests between Chaleur Bay and the Bay of Fundy?

8. For what did Argall's expedition pave the way? To whom did King James grant a wide territory? To whom did the project occur of founding a New Scotland?

9. What concession did he obtain? What name was given to the territory? Where did the Scotch make a settlement?

10. Who succeeded Biencourt as Commandant of Acadie? What new order of knighthood was established in 1625? What great idea possessed Alexander's brain?

## CHAPTER VIII.

## FIRST CAPTURE OF QUEBEC.

1627 to 1635 A.D.

Unsatisfactory state of affairs.	French fleet captured by that of Great Britain.
Cardinal Richelieu.	Quebec taken.
New Company of the One Hundred Associates	Treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye.
War between France and England.	Restoration of Canada and Acadie.
Admiral Kirkt seizes Port Royal.	The last labours of Champlain.
Champlain refuses to surrender Quebec.	His death.

1. WHEN Champlain returned to Quebec he found that affairs had gone on very ill in his absence. The half-finished **1627** stone fort was in the same condition in which he had **A.D.** left it three years before. It was evident to him that decisive measures ought to be taken **to rescue Canada** from the hands of the traders, and to put an end to religious dissensions. Either Huguenots or Catholics might form a colony by themselves; but while the commerce was mainly in the hands of the former, and spiritual affairs were in those of the latter, there could be neither progress nor peace. The founding of Nova Scotia and the creation of the knights-baronets had the effect of stirring up the friends of New France. Champlain viewed with displeasure the pretensions of the English to found a New England and a New Scotland in territory which, he held, belonged by right of discovery to France. It was necessary to take steps to reassert his claims. A vivid representation of the feeble state of Canada was laid before the Royal Council at Paris.

2. **Cardinal Richelieu**,<sup>1</sup> a statesman of enlightened views, and of liberal ideas when external grandeur was concerned, was at the head of affairs in France. He approved of a project

---

<sup>1</sup> *Cardinal Richelieu*.—The powerful minister of Louis XIII. Born 1585, died 1642. He was the great opponent of the Huguenots. Having crushed them, he devoted all his powers to the work of humbling the House of Austria, then the greatest power in Europe. He founded the French Academy, and was a liberal patron of men of letters and science.

submitted to him by a number of gentlemen of the principal towns of France. Accordingly, a royal charter was granted to the "**New Company of the Hundred Associates**," ceding to them all New France, including Florida, Canada, Acadie, Newfoundland, and all the islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, on the feudal tenure of fealty and homage. Power was given them to grant lands in large and small concessions, to give titles, and to erect duchies, marquisates, counties, and baronies. They were accorded the monopoly of the fur-trade in perpetuity, and of all other commerce except the fisheries for fifteen years. In return for these extensive privileges they agreed to send out three hundred **workmen** of all trades in 1628, and to increase the number to four thousand by the year 1653. They bound themselves to select only Frenchmen and Roman Catholics; to house and support the settlers for three years; to assign to them cleared lands, with implements of culture and seeds; and to maintain for fifteen years three priests in every habitation. They entered into an agreement, subject to penalties in the event of their not fulfilling it, to send out fifteen hundred settlers during the first ten years. The act confirming the establishment of the New Company received the assent of Louis XIII., and was proclaimed by an edict dated 6th of May, given in the camp before Rochelle.

1628

A.D.

3. Fourteen months before, an expedition undertaken by the Duke of Buckingham<sup>1</sup> to relieve the Huguenots of that "proud City of the Waters"<sup>2</sup> had failed disastrously at the Island of Rhé. There being then a **state of war** between France and England, Sir William Alexander thought it an opportune time to make himself master of the country which had been granted to him. Under his patronage David Kirkt, son of a Scotchman naturalized in France, received a commission from Charles I. to seize Quebec and all the French forts in Acadie. Along with his brothers Louis and Thomas, and with the assistance of his friends, he equipped a dozen vessels. He seized Port Royal,

<sup>1</sup> *Duke of Buckingham*.—George Villiers, the profligate favourite of James I., the "Steenie" of Scott's *Fortunes of Nigel*. Born 1592, died 1628. He went to Portsmouth to superintend the preparations for the departure of a second

expedition to La Rochelle. While there, John Felton, a half-crazed officer whom he had disappointed, stabbed him, and he died almost immediately.

<sup>2</sup> *Proud City of the Waters*.—La Rochelle. See Macaulay's "Battle of Ivry."

and took formal possession of the country for Sir William. In the Gulf of St. Lawrence he captured a vessel fitted out by the New Company to aid Quebec, on board of which was Claude de la Tour.

4. Champlain, at Quebec, was anxiously awaiting the arrival of ships from France, when he heard with dismay that there was an **English fleet** at Tadoussac. A peremptory summons from Admiral Kirkt to surrender was conveyed to him. Assuming a confidence he scarcely felt, he indignantly refused to give up his post. Kirkt, deceived by this bold tone, sailed off, leaving a threat behind that he would return in spring.

5. Scarcely had this danger disappeared when a swift-sailing pinnace brought Champlain intelligence that M. de Royemont, convoying several vessels freighted by the New Company, had arrived in the Gulf. Fast on the heels of this cheering news came the tale of disaster. The French officer, rashly disobeying the positive orders to relieve Quebec at all hazards and to shun the enemy, after lightening his vessels at Gaspé, went in pursuit of Admiral Kirkt. He encountered the British fleet, and **was defeated**, with the loss of his ships.

6. Champlain was now left in dire straits to face the long and dreary winter. After levying on the fields of the priests and of Madame Hebert, he could scarcely gather the scantiest subsistence for his people. In these circumstances Father Lallemant, superior of the Jesuits, embarked with the greater body of the establishment for France, with the intention of returning with succour in the spring. But he did not come back to cheer the denizens of the rock. On his return voyage his vessel was wrecked off the Isle of Canceau, and of all the crew he alone escaped to find his way back to France.

7. Champlain revolved in his mind many schemes for dispersing his people until the return of better times. With infinite trouble a small barque was fitted out, and Boulay, his brother-in-law, and thirty men, were despatched in the spring to France, with urgent **demands for aid**. Off Gaspé **1629** Boulay met Emery de Caen, who told him that there **A.D.** was peace between France and England. Returning with the joyful news to Quebec, he fell into the hands of Admiral Kirkt, who was again in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

8. One morning in July, as Champlain sat alone in his fort occupied with melancholy musings, an English vessel appeared off Point Levi. He now received the summons to surrender as a relief. He stipulated that he, with such of his people as were unwilling to remain under English rule, should be conveyed to France. Then, for the first time, the **red cross flag** was hoisted above the rock of Quebec. Louis Kirkt remained in command. At Tadoussac the Admiral received Champlain with the greatest courtesy, but refused to believe that there was peace between the two countries. He had been at very great expense in equipping his fleet, and he hoped that the capture of Quebec would indemnify him. When he ascended the river to view his prize, and saw some fifty half-starved people on a bare rock, and a few pieces of cannon and some old arms and armour, he could not conceal his chagrin.

9. **Peace** had been concluded between France and England at the Convention of Susa,<sup>1</sup> on the 24th of April 1629; so the capture of Quebec was an act of piracy, and not of war. But the Royal Council was little disposed at first to demand its restitution. There was a party strongly prejudiced against the country, who held that Canada was no acquisition to France. It required all Champlain's influence and most vigorous representations of the immense value of its furs, its fisheries, and its forests, to meet these objections. He fortified his material arguments by showing that Canada offered a glorious field for proselytism; and that if England were allowed to occupy both banks of the St. Lawrence, she would become all-powerful in America.

10. Considerations of religion and national honour turned the scale. Louis XIII. demanded restitution of all the places captured by the English since the war. Out of the negotiations that ensued grew the treaty that was signed at **St. Germain-en-Laye**,<sup>2</sup> on the 27th of March, by which **1632** King Charles I. restored to the French Crown Canada A.D. and Acadie.

11. The attempt of Sir William Alexander to settle Nova Scotia under his grand scheme was **utterly unsuccessful**.

<sup>1</sup> *Susa*.—A town in the north of Italy, 81 miles west of Turin.

<sup>2</sup> *St. Germain-en-Laye*.—A town in France, 10 miles north-west of Paris.

His knights-baronets did not carry out the object of their creation. When Claude de la Tour was brought to England by David Kirkt (1628) he was caressed and flattered by Sir William, and persuaded, not only to change his own allegiance, but to engage that his son should do the same. Both the La Tours appear to have been men of enterprising and energetic character, of fine address and persuasive manners; but personal interest was their first consideration. Claude was

**1629** created a **Baronet of Nova Scotia**, with the title of Sir

A.D. Claude Saint-Etienne, Seigneur de la Tour and Vaure;

his son's name appeared on the roll as Sir Charles Saint-Etienne de la Tour, Seigneur de Saint-Deniscourt and Baigneux. The following year Sir William, then Earl

**1630** of Stirling, made them a free gift of the country from

A.D. Cape Jebogue to La Hève. Sir Claude married a lady of the Court. When he returned to Nova Scotia, he

failed to persuade his son to accept the honours that had been conferred upon him, or to become a subject of King Charles. He consequently lost all credit in England, and was looked on with suspicion by his own countrymen. He was com-

**1632** pelled to accept shelter from his son. After the Treaty

A.D. of St. Germain, Isaac de Razilli was appointed Commandant of Acadie.

12. The New Company did not enter into full possession of New France until 1633. The Caens, who had lost much by the war, were accorded the privileges of the fur-trade

**1633** of the St. Lawrence for one year. Champlain was ap-

A.D. pointed **Governor of Canada**. With joy and thanksgiving he returned to his habitation of Quebec. Wit-

him came two hundred people of varied degree—priests, gentlemen, adventurers, artisans, and labourers. In memorial of the happy recovery, a chapel was erected to Notre Dame de Recouvrance, close to Fort St. Louis.

13. Champlain's days of adventure, discovery, and war were now over. He devoted himself to the interests of the New Company, extended the fur-trade, erected several posts above Quebec, and sedulously endeavoured to exclude the English from Canada. In the intervals of his secular employment he gave himself to religious exercises. The formation of a mis-

onary settlement in the Huron country, which had long occupied his mind, was commenced by Fathers Brebœuf and Daniel. His career was drawing to a close. The result of thirty years' devoted toil was not visibly great. He could not be confident that all danger was averted from his infant colony. He could only hope that Providence, who had watched over it in its darkest days, would preserve it in those to come. When the father and founder of Canada passed away on Christmas-day, every member of the colony felt that he had suffered a personal loss, and mourned for him as for a dear relation. The Indians among whom he had lived remembered with wonder the purity of his life.

1635

A.D.

QUESTIONS. — 1. When did Champlain return to Quebec? For what purpose did he see that decisive measures were required? What effect had the creation of the knights-baronets? What step was taken to reassert the claims of France?

2. Who was then at the head of affairs in France? To whom was a new charter granted? On what conditions were its concessions made?

3. What project did Sir William Alexander form? Give an account of Kirk's expedition.

4. How did Champlain ward off Kirk's threatened attack?

5. What good news soon reached Quebec? By what tale of disaster was it followed?

6. What were Champlain's prospects for the winter? What plan was adopted

to relieve the settlement? What was the fate of Lallemant's expedition?

7. On what mission was Boulay despatched? What befell him?

8. In what circumstances was Quebec surrendered to Kirk?

9. What different views prevailed in France regarding the value of Canada?

10. Which views prevailed? What was the main provision of the Treaty of St. Germain?

11. What was the result of Sir William Alexander's grand scheme? What occurred during La Tour's residence in England? How were his proposals received in Nova Scotia?

12. In what circumstances did Champlain return to Quebec in 1633? How was its recovery commemorated?

13. Give an account of the close of Champlain's career. Where did he die?

## CHAPTER IX.

## THE RULE OF THE CHURCH.

1636 to 1649 A.D.

M. de Montmagny.  
 The Jesuit Fathers.  
 Colleges, Seminaries, Hospitals.  
 The Huron Mission.  
 Founding of Ville Marie de Montreal.  
 Incursions of the Iroquois.  
 Dangers incurred by missionaries.

Maisonneuve at La Place d'Armes.  
 New Company fail to perform obligations.  
 Deceptive truce with Iroquois.  
 Continued prosperity of the Huron Mission.  
 Its total destruction.

1. CANADA NOW entered upon a period of **great trial**. M. Bras-fer Chastefort administered the affairs of the colony **1636** until the arrival of the new Governor, Charles Huault A.D. de Montmagny, Knight of Malta.<sup>1</sup> Both by training and by temperament he was disposed to enter earnestly into the views of the Jesuit Fathers, who had now full sway in the colony. By order of the Hundred Associates, the Recollets had been recalled, on the ground that their vows of perpetual poverty unfitted them for being missionaries in a country from which they could not draw their support. The power of the priest was now predominant. One of the Fathers said, to live in Quebec was to live in Heaven—in the bosom of God. Their small chapel was crowded every morning and every evening. The Governor-General and the gentlemen of birth and fortune who had accompanied him to Canada, with their wives and daughters, attended all the services. Absentees were noted and punished. A placard against blasphemy was posted on a stake near the church, and to the stake were attached a chain and a dog-collar. A wooden horse stood hard by, on which offenders against the strict code of the Church were mounted. The liquor traffic

<sup>1</sup> *Knight of Malta*.—The Knights of Malta, or Knights Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem, were a military-religious order, founded in 1099, during the first crusade, to afford shelter to the pilgrims at Jerusalem. When

Jerusalem fell again into the hands of the infidels, they retired to Acre. After living successively in Acre, Cyprus, Rhodes, Candia, and Sicily, they received Malta from the Emperor Charles V. in 1530.

was strictly forbidden. In these days the temporal and spiritual authorities were united. Against the sentence of the priest there was no appeal. Some of the inhabitants chafed sorely under this rigid control, and appealed to the Court for a mitigation of it. Their grievances were not listened to. The people were restrained by the power of the Church.

2. The letters or "Relations" that Father le Jeune, the superior, sent annually to France aroused the enthusiasm of the pious; and his appeals for aid called forth charitable endowments from the wealthy. Within the following ten years the principal colleges, seminaries, and hospitals of Quebec were founded. The **Jesuit College**, endowed by René Rohault, grandson of the Marquis of Gamache, was established in this year (1636). The next year the institution at Sillery—called after the founder, the Marquis Noel Bruart de Sillery—was commenced on a small clearing in the seigneurie of Beauport. A dozen families of Christian Algonquin Indians were settled there. The Fathers had striven, ever since their arrival in Canada, to found a Hospital for the cure of the sick, and a Seminary for the instruction of young girls. The Duchess d'Aiguillon undertook the foundation of the Hotel Dieu, and engaged for the office of mercy the willing services of three hospital nuns of Dieppe. **Madeleine de Chauvigny, Madame de la Peltrie**, a young and childless widow, who had adopted the religious life, devoted her wealth and her energy (in spite of the remonstrances of her friends) to the work of establishing the Seminary. A worthy coadjutress was found in Madame Guyart, afterwards known as Ste. Marie de l'Incarnation, whom the Fathers chose to be the superior, on account of her remarkable faculty for business and management. Quebec kept holiday when Father Vimond, appointed superior in succession to Le Jeune, with Madame de la **1639** Peltrie and the sisterhood, arrived. The devotion and **A.D.** courage of the nuns were severely tested soon after, when an **epidemic** spread in the town and the country around, and filled to overflowing the rooms of the hospital and of the mission house at Sillery. A school for the instruction of **Indian children** was opened by Father le Jeune on his coming to Canada. He had only two pupils at first, and never more than

a score ; but he said that he would not exchange his post for a seat in the highest university in Europe. The savage instincts of his young scholars rebelled against restraint, and they deserted him. The unwillingness of Indian parents to live separated from their children was an invincible obstacle to the success of the Seminary of Notre Dame des Anges, founded in 1630.

3. The difficulties *in* the way of establishing missions were very great ; and the result, except to the eye of faith, appeared quite disproportionate to the peril incurred and the misery endured. Father le Jeune followed a party of Montagnais to their winter encampment. He endured, half-starved, the alternate scorching heat and biting cold, the blinding smoke and the filth of their wigwams, and returned to Quebec in spring, a wreck of himself, without having made a single convert. The Indians generally were very docile, and gave ready assent to the truths that were told them ; but they quickly forgot them when out of the presence of the priest. Missionaries were in consequence appointed who lived with the wandering tribes, and followed them in all their hunting and fishing expeditions.

4. **The chief mission** was in the Huron country, situated between the great lakes ; a position that made it an admirable centre for trade. Its people were the most intelligent and the most prosperous of all the Canadian tribes. They had a population of 20,000, distributed in thirty-two villages. Fathers Brebœuf, Daniel, and Davoust, settled first in Ihontiria or St. Joseph, near the site of the modern Penetanguishine. A rude cabin of bark served for a chapel, and for a dormitory and refectory, which were separated from each other by a door. This door greatly **puzzled** the savages who daily came to visit the Fathers, only to sit smoking and silent for hours. The Fathers rose at four in the morning, and gave their first hours to devotion in the chapel ; during the forenoon they were accessible to all ; they then went out to speak with the labourers in the fields, and to visit the sick. In the evening they again held service ; and for an hour before retiring consulted over the prospects of the mission, wrote their letters, or instructed one another in the native language. They lived

exiled from everything held dear by men of education and refinement ; they endured persecutions, and abode in the perpetual fear of death from the most frightful tortures.

5. There was an active heathen party in the country who clung to the ancient customs and superstitions, and who regarded prayers, chants, and sacraments as spells that worked them harm. The **medicine men or conjurers** thought that their office was invaded, and were very hostile to the Fathers. They kept alive ridiculous prejudices : if a child that had been baptized fell sick, they whispered that it was in consequence of the rite ; and the parents looked upon the priests with an evil eye. Every misfortune that befell the nation after the coming of the "**black robes**" was attributed to them. But the Fathers, by their courage, their calmness, and their patience under provocation, by their great charity and tender care of the sick, won their way into the hearts of the body of the people. They did not escape the tongue of scandal ; their enemies charged them with making rich profits by the fur-trade. So pointed was the accusation, that the directors of the New Company thought it necessary to issue a refutation of the charge. In a few years Brebœuf and his colleagues were joined by other priests, and missions were established in all the four nations into which the Hurons were divided.

6. During this period of spiritual fervour the foundation of the city of **Montreal** was laid. It owed its birth to religious enthusiasm. The "Relations" of the Jesuit Fathers circulated in France, and awakened among the devout much interest in Canada. It is recorded that a M. de la Dauversiere and Father Olier, a priest of Paris, who had previously been strangers to each other, met in the gallery of the chateau of Meudon,<sup>1</sup> and recognized each other, as by inspiration, as destined co-labourers in a great work. They communed together, and resolved to found on the Isle of Montreal a Seminary, Hotel Dieu, and College, to be consecrated to Christ, St. Joseph, and the Virgin. The zeal of the Baron de la Fauxchamps and other wealthy devotees was kindled ; the **Society of Notre Dame de Montreal**, numbering forty-five members, was formed. They pur-

<sup>1</sup> *Meudon*.—A small town on the Seine ; five miles west of Paris. It has a royal palace and park. It has now a station on the railway to Versailles.

chased the Island of Montreal from M. de Lauson, one of the Hundred Associates. They decided to confine their efforts at first to the establishment of the Hospital. Paul de Chomedy, Sieur de Maisonneuve was appointed Governor, with forty-five men under him. He was a brave and experienced soldier, and a devoted servant of the Church. Mademoiselle Jeanne Mauce was called from the seclusion of a convent to be nurse and housekeeper of the colony.

7. Previously to the departure of the expedition, the Associates met in the Cathedral of Notre Dame in Paris, and consecrated Ville-Marie de Montreal to the Holy Family.

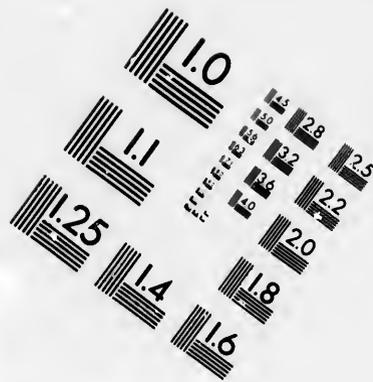
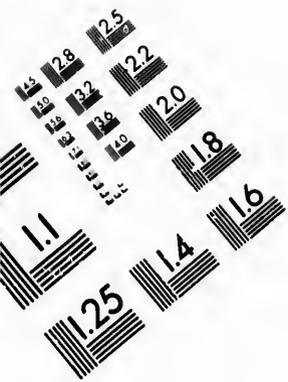
**1641** A.D. Maisonneuve and his band remained a year about Quebec, and M. Montmagny betrayed some symptoms of jealousy at the honours paid to the Governor of Ville-Marie. Attempts were made to deter him from proceeding further, by representing the dangers to which he would be exposed from the attacks of the savages. But he exclaimed, that he had come to found a colony, and he would go **though every tree were an Iroquois.**

8. In the following spring he ascended the river, accompanied by the Governor-General, Superior Vimond, and Madame de la Peltrie, who entered with enthusiasm into the spirit of the work. On the 17th of May they landed on a tongue of land formed by the junction of the rivulet Caiere with the St. Lawrence. Tents were pitched on a meadow, and an altar was erected in the open air. To the north-west rose the mountain, and green forests encircled their camping-ground. M. Montmagny formally handed over the island to Maisonneuve; and the superior commended the colony to the protection of Heaven, likening it to a grain of mustard-seed, whence would spring a tree which would grow until its branches overspread the earth. As the evening closed, fire-flies flickered over the meadow; numbers were caught and strung into a glistening festoon which was hung upon the altar.

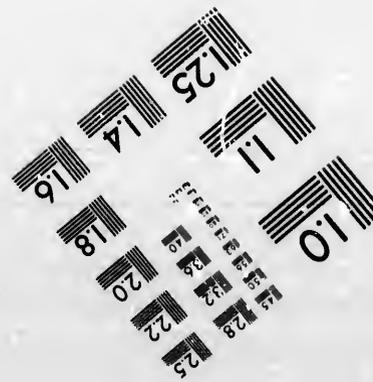
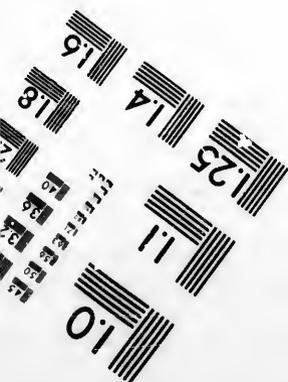
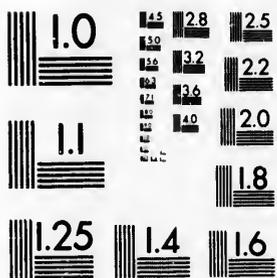
9. When M. Montmagny first arrived in Canada, the **Iroquois** kept comparative peace; but now they commenced to carry terror throughout the colony, and to wage a war of extermination against the tribes allied with the French. The great dread that the fire-arms of the French had first caused them had passed away, and numbers of the Mohawk warriors

were supplied with carbines by the Dutch traders of Manhattan. Their war parties went out generally in the spring; but as their audacity increased with success, and their rage for slaughter grew hotter, they did not wait for the melting of the snow or the breaking up of the ice. The Mohawks, or Lower Iroquois, ascended by Lakes Sacrament and Champlain and the River Richelieu; while parties lay in ambush on the southern bank of the St. Lawrence, and about the isles of Lake St. Peter, and descended at Three Rivers and Quebec, others made their way above the Sault, and crouched perdu on some of the islands of Lake St. Louis, waiting to pounce on the Algonquins and Hurons coming down the Ottawa in their canoes loaded with peltrie for the annual trade. The Upper Iroquois—the Oneidas, Cayugas, Onondagas, and Senecas, on the other side—crossed the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario, and made their way into the Huron country by Lake Simcoe; they ascended by the Georgian Bay of Lake Huron to French River and Lake Nipissing, carrying **havoc** over all the region of the Upper Ottawa. They did not at first declare war against the Hurons; but, on pretence of revenging private insults, cut off detached parties, and destroyed small outlying villages. A general feeling of insecurity was spread over the country; and the people, instead of combining for defence, allowed the insults to pass unavenged.

10. The Iroquois, with a view of detaching the French from their alliance with the Hurons, made overtures of peace. M. Montmagny, anxious to secure repose for the colony, met their delegates at Three Rivers. The orator assured Ononthio, as he called Montmagny (a name which the Indians gave to all succeeding Governor-Generals) that his nations had nothing so much at heart as to live in amity with the French. While he was speaking a **party of Algonquins appeared**; the Iroquois broke up the solemn conclave and made a rush upon the canoes, and, to the intense mortification of Montmagny, despoiled them before his eyes. The Jesuit Fathers were exposed to dreadful dangers in their journeys between Quebec and the Huron country, both from the climate and the foe. Anne de Noue perished in a snow-drift. Father Jogues was captured by a band of Mohawks, and carried to their canton, where he was treated



**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**





with malign cruelty and indignity. By the aid of a Dutch officer he escaped, and made his way to France. The story of his sufferings, to which his body bore testimony, excited lively sympathy at Court. Two years afterwards he returned to Canada. Father Bressani was taken by a party of the same warriors, and abused with **surpassing malice**; their hungry dogs were set to devour their food on his naked body. But he also survived the horrors of his captivity, and lived for many years afterwards, and often thrilled by his eloquence crowded congregations in his native Italy.

11. Ville-Marie enjoyed a brief period of repose. The pious fervour that created it did not subside. Objections were raised by persons who were not in a state of spiritual exaltation that fêtes and ceremonies occupied time that might have been spent in tilling the soil; but they were disregarded. By the treachery of a Huron Indian the weakness of the settlement was disclosed to the Iroquois. Thenceforth there was **no peace** for its people. They could not walk in the meadows, or go into the forest to cut fire-wood, unless at the risk of their lives. They were mewed up within their fortifications. Under the superintendence of M. d'Ailleboust walls and bastions were substituted for the frail wooden palisades.

12. The **weakness of the colony** excited the contempt of the Iroquois warriors. They boasted that they would **1644** carry off the "white girls"<sup>1</sup> and drive the Frenchmen **A.D.** to the sea. Ten war parties went out to cut off the detached settlements at one swoop; but, happily, they were frustrated in their attempt. On the 30th of March the trained watch-dogs of Ville-Marie bayed the alarm, and gave warning to the Frenchmen that **Indians were in the woods**. The French rushed into the presence of M. Maisonneuve, and cried out for him to lead them forth. Against his better judgment, he consented to go and seek the enemy. There was snow on the ground; the road was heavy; few of his people had snow-shoes, and those who had were maladroit in their use. When Maisonneuve and his party penetrated the forest, no foe was to be seen. Suddenly from the coverts there blazed forth

---

<sup>1</sup> *White girls.*—So the Indians called the nuns.

fire, followed by sharp rifle cracks. Then the Mohawk warriors rose with fierce yells, and as suddenly sank out of sight. Unused to the Indian style of warfare, the Frenchmen, as they stood huddled together, only presented a mark for the hostile fire. Several fell, then they grew confused and alarmed, and looked back upon the way they had come. The order was given, and picking up the dead and wounded, crest-fallen they retreated, **the triumphant Mohawks** following covertly on their track. Maisonneuve brought up the rear, holding a pistol in each hand. Two chiefs, eager to take a prisoner of such distinction, rushed forward. He shot one dead; and as the warriors crowded about to carry off the body of their comrade, Maisonneuve and his men gained the shelter of their fortifications. The spot where the incident occurred was called "**Place d'Armes,**" and the city grew around it.

13. The New Company, considering the great show of action they made on their incorporation, **neglected Canada** in a most incomprehensible manner. They totally failed to carry out the terms of their charter. They made large concessions of land to individuals, on condition that they would send out colonists; but these grantees were quite as remiss as the Hundred Associates themselves. The fur-trade was the only object of value in their eyes, and they handed it over this year (1644) to the inhabitants of the colony for an annual rent of a thousand beaver skins.

14. **A peace** was concluded at Three Rivers between the French and the Iroquois, and between the Iroquois and the allied Indians, and Canada enjoyed a brief interval of repose. But it was a peculiarity of the Indians that they entered upon a treaty with infinite gravity, concluded it with imposing ceremony, and broke it on the slightest caprice. Not long afterwards, M. d'Ailleboust succeeded M. Montmagny, and the colony was again plunged in war.

15. In the Huron country the **Mission** was now at the height of its prosperity. The chief station was at **Ste. Marie**, on the little river, now called the Wye, that falls into Matchedash Bay. There the Fathers dispensed a bountiful hospitality; there scattered parties of

1645

A.D.

1647

A.D.

1648

A.D.

Algonquins of the region of the Ottawa, that had escaped the rage of the Iroquois, found shelter. No wayfarer was sent hungry or disconsolate away. The priests of the Missions of St. Louis, St. Ignace, St. Jean, St. Joseph, and St. Michel met



THE HURON MISSION.

often in Ste. Marie for grave consultation. The rage of the heathen party had spent its force. The country was peaceful; but the Fathers viewed with alarm the apathy of the warriors, who lived careless and supine, although the security of their villages depended on their constant vigilance.

16. The warriors of St. Joseph descended the Ottawa and left the village defenceless. At Three Rivers they repulsed an attack of the Iroquois. Returning in triumph with several scalps, no crowd of women and children flocked out to "caress" the prisoners, as was the custom. All was silence and desolation. The story is soon told. One sweltering morning in July the little chapel was crowded with devotees. Suddenly a fearful cry arose without—"They kill us, they kill us." Like

ravaging wolves the Iroquois had burst through the palisades, and were slaughtering the children and decrepit old folk. The people crowded round Father Daniel, who cried out, "Fly to the woods; here I shall stay. We shall meet again in heaven." Alone, in his flowing vestments, with gleaming face, the dauntless priest stood by the altar and confronted the yelling fiends. He fell pierced by many arrows, and struck on the breast by a partisan, and his body was consumed in the pyre of the burning chapel. The Mission of St. Joseph was extirpated.

17. During the autumn and winter the Iroquois lurked in the woods. Hours before the sunrise of a morning in March a party surprised the village of St. Ignace, and **1649 murdered the sleepers.** They then stole in the gray A.D. dawn upon St. Louis, and, bursting the palisades, slaughtered the people and burned the cabins. Fathers Brebœuf and Lallemand were seized and sent under guard to St. Ignace. The reflection of the flames at St. Louis warned the Fathers at Ste. Marie of some dreadful calamity; and their fears were too surely confirmed by fugitives from the scene of disaster. A band of Huron warriors threw themselves before the advancing Iroquois. All day the tide of battle advanced to, and receded from, Ste. Marie; and as the night fell the yells of the combatants rose from the dark pine woods. The priests of St. Ignace were **bound to the stake.** The younger Lallemand was forced to witness the tortures inflicted upon Brebœuf. The elder priest stood, firm as a rock, under the most appalling suffering, while the fiends surrounded, mocking him. "You told us," they cried, "that the more we suffered on earth the greater would be our reward in heaven: thank us." Lallemand, after prolonged suffering, was despatched with a hatchet.

18. The destruction of all their chief stations among the Huron and "Tobacco" nations compelled the Fathers to abandon their mission. An attempt was made to reestablish Ste. Marie on the Island of St. Joseph, in Matchedash Bay; but the adventurers were driven from it by famine and the Iroquois to seek security by the banks of the St. Lawrence. At Sorel, near Quebec, the Huron Mission was founded. **Complete desolation** now reigned in the country of the Hurons and

Algonquins. The remnant of the people found shelter and became incorporated with the tribes dwelling by the lakes Erie, Michigan, and Superior.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the new Governor of Canada? With whose views did he sympathize? Describe the mode in which the power of the Church was exercised.

2. What was the result of the appeals to France for aid? Name the different colleges, seminaries, and hospitals founded at this time. What were the causes of the failure of Le Jeune's seminary for Indian children?

3. Describe Le Jeune's experiences among the Montagnais. What plan was adopted in order to keep the truths of religion before the natives?

4. Which was the chief mission? Describe the mode of life of the Fathers.

5. With what difficulties had they to contend? How did they overcome these?

6. Narrate the circumstances which led to the foundation of Montreal.

7. What ceremony took place in Paris before the expedition set out? What opposition did Maisonneuve encounter at Quebec?

8. Describe what took place when he obtained possession of the island.

9. What native tribes began to harass the settlers? Against whom were their attacks first directed? Describe the routes of the Lower and the Upper Iroquois respectively.

10. What overtures did the Iroquois make? Where did Montmagny meet them? What then occurred? Give examples of the sufferings which the missionaries endured.

11. How did the Iroquois become aware of the weakness of Montreal? What was the consequence?

12. Describe the encounter with the Mohawks in the woods and the incident at "Place d'Armes."

13. How did the New Company treat Canada? How did it deal with the fur-trade?

14. What gave Canada an interval of repose? How long did it last? What peculiarity of the Indians in the matter of treaties is noticeable? Who succeeded Montmagny as Governor? What followed?

15. In what state was the Huron Mission at this time? What filled the Fathers with anxiety?

16. Describe the manner of the destruction of the Mission of St. Joseph.

17. Describe the attack on the other chief stations. Give an account of the martyrdom of Brebœuf and Lallemand.

18. What were the Fathers then forced to do? Whither did they transfer their mission? In what state was the country of the Hurons and the Algonquins left? What became of the remnant of these tribes?

## CHAPTER X.

## TIME OF TRIAL.

1648 to 1663 A.D.

The New England Colonies.  
 Proposed Treaty of perpetual peace.  
 Its failure.  
 M. de Lauson.  
 State of Canada.  
 Jesuit Mission in Onondaga.

Viscomte d'Argenson.  
 Insolence of the Mohawks.  
 Portents and signs in the skies.  
 The liquor traffic.  
 The great Earthquake.  
 New Company surrenders its Charter.

1. ABOUT this time the **New England Colonies** sent greeting to Canada. Since the Puritan Fathers had landed at Plymouth on the 11th December 1620, and since the second band of Pilgrims had founded Salem, eight years afterwards, several colonies had taken root between Casco Bay and the Connecticut River. Their people had struggled sorely under an inclement sky, with sterile soil, with pestilence and the Indians. They had been torn by internal dissensions. Though the Puritan Fathers had fled from England to enjoy civil and religious freedom in the wilds of America, they drove from their midst such of their brethren as maintained liberty of conscience. An outcome of this persecution, the colony of Providence was founded in 1636. Community of interests, and the necessity of combining to defend themselves against the Indian tribes, and against the encroachments of the Dutch of New Netherlands, and the French colonists of Acadie, impelled the provinces of Massachusetts Bay (including Maine and New Hampshire) and Plymouth, New Haven and Connecticut, to enter into the confederation of "**The United Colonies of New England**," in 1643.

2. They made a proposal to the Governor-General of Canada, that there should be free trade and perpetual amity between the French and the English **1648-51** colonies, even in the event of the mother countries **A.D.** being at war. M. d'Ailleboust received the suggestion with pleasure, and sent Father Druillettes to Boston to

make a treaty. The negotiations were suspended, resumed, and finally broken off, because the New England Government refused to assent to the condition demanded,—that they should join with the French in waging an **exterminating war** against the Iroquois. The cautious Puritans would not make enemies of that powerful people, whose country lay like a barrier between them and Canada. Instead of a treaty of perpetual peace being concluded, the foundation was laid for **future war**. Father Druillettes won over the Abenaki Indians to the French interest. For over a century that people maintained a firm alliance with Canada, and by their cruel and harassing warfare on the frontiers, they roused a rage in the breasts of the New Englanders that was not calmed until French domination was swept from the American Continent.

3. M. de Lauson succeeded M. d'Ailleboust. Beyond the fortifications of Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers, **1650-58** there was no safety. In the open field the sudden bolt of death sometimes struck the labourer, **A.D.** and with a **loud yell of triumph**, the Iroquois warrior fled into ambush with the trophy of his savage onslaught. In those days of trial, the strength of the people of Canada lay in their religious fervour. Annalists say that they displayed an integrity that contrasted brightly with their conduct in later days. There were no courts of justice in the province: there was no need of them. Fraud and dishonesty were unknown, and it seemed as if all things were in common.

4. A number of Jesuit missionaries, whose field of labour had been narrowed by the destruction of the Huron Mission, now left Canada. But there still remained not a few, who, braving every danger and hardship, **won their way** among the tribes of the far west and of the frozen regions of Hudson Bay. Their mission was religious and secular. They made known to the heathen the name of Christ; they extended the empire of France over distant nations; they promoted commerce by inducing their savage neophytes to carry their peltry to the magazines of Tadoussac, Quebec, Three Rivers, and Montreal.

5. The Jesuit Fathers sedulously strove to gain a foothold among the **Five Nations**. The warlike fury of these nations being now directed against the tribes dwelling by the great lakes, they were disposed to make peace with the French. In the following year they utterly extirpated the *Eries*. Father le Moyne went among the Mohawks, but made no stay, as his life was in constant danger from their caprice. The Onondagas prayed the Governor-General to send them **priests**. Accordingly, Fathers Mercier, Fremin, Mesnard, and Dablon, with a body-guard of fifty soldiers, were deputed to found a mission. The jealous Mohawks attempted to cut this escort to pieces, but only succeeded in capturing a few canoes. Shortly afterwards, a party of the same tribe fell upon a band of Huron men, women, and children, who were working in a field on the Isle of Orleans. They killed six, and took the rest captive. As they passed Quebec, they compelled their prisoners to sing aloud, and **dared** the Governor-General to seize them out of their hands. M. de Lauson tamely allowed this insult to pass unpunished. The audacious insolence of the Iroquois increased.

1653

A.D.

1654

A.D.

6. The position of the mission in the Onondaga country now became very critical. M. Dupuys, the commandant, receiving certain intelligence that there was a conspiracy afoot to destroy it, ordered several light bateaux to be constructed. The people of the canton were invited to a great feast. When they were completely gorged with food, and slept heavily, the French, in the wan light of a March morning, made their escape by way of the River Chouagen. The Iroquois broke into open hostility soon afterwards, and spread themselves over the colony.

7. Ville-Marie did not prosper in the hands of the Society of Notre Dame de Montreal. The aid sent out was insufficient for its pressing necessities. To the great joy of the colony, the society ceded the island to the superiors of the Seminary of **St. Sulpicius**, a society of great repute and power, which numbered among its members many men of talent and energy. Under their auspices, L'Abbé de Quelus founded the Seminary. Under the superintendence of Marguerite Bourgeois—of whom it is said that her religion manifested itself in an intense devotion to duty—the Institution of

1658

A.D.

the Filles de la Congregation was opened, to give religious and superior secular education to the young girls of the colony.

8. **Viscomte d'Argenson** succeeded M. de Lauson, and arrived in Quebec on the 11th of July. As if to show **1658** their contempt, the Mohawks, on the following morning, A.D. fell on and massacred a party of Algonquins under the cannon of the fort. The cry "**To arms !**" rang out, and two hundred men rushed out in pursuit, but failed to find the enemy. Shortly afterwards, the Mohawks approached Three Rivers with hostile intent. Under pretence of holding a parley, they sent eight delegates to take note of the state of the place. M. de la Potherie, the commandant, caused the spies to be seized. He shut one in prison, and sent the others to Quebec, where they were promptly executed. This decisive action induced the Iroquois to **leave Canada in peace** for a season.

9. Certain abuses having crept in, it was deemed desirable to make some changes in the government of the Church in the colony. M. François de Laval, L'Abbé de Montmigny, Vicar-Apostolic and titular Bishop of Petrea, was appointed Ecclesiastical Superior. Several persons in orders accompanied him to Canada. For a long time those curés were appointed to the parishes by commission, and were removable by the superior. Afterwards, when the appointments of the curés were made permanent in the rest of Canada, those of Montreal and the island remained on the old footing, under the jurisdiction of the Seminary of St. Sulpicius.

10. Five years after the coming of M. de Laval, the **Seminary of Quebec** for the instruction of the priesthood **1662** was instituted. Into the hands of its superiors were A.D. paid the tithes levied for the support of the clergy of the colony. They amounted at first to one-thirteenth of the produce of the land ; but on account of the poverty of the country, they were afterwards reduced to one-twenty-sixth, on condition that the tithes should be paid in grain, and not in the sheaf. The King supplemented the tithes by an annual grant of 7,600 livres from the royal treasury. The stipend of the curés was fixed at 400 livres annually. Eleven years afterwards (1670), the Church in Canada was erected into a

bishopric, in dependence on the Papal See, and M. de Laval became the first bishop. The chapter of the cathedral consisted of a dean and grand chorister, appointed by the King; and of an archdeacon, theologian, and twelve canons, appointed by the bishop.

11. The Iroquois now resumed their warfare, and Canada was reduced to a state of **dire distress**. The Ursulines and Hospital nuns were compelled to fly from their **1660** convents and seek safety in Quebec, which was held A.D. in a state of siege all summer and autumn. Many thought that it would be necessary to break up the colony and cross the sea. To add to their trouble, a **mortal epidemic** broke out. The alternate states of excitement and depression in which the people lived seem to have affected the minds of many. Imagination lent horrors to the time. Portentous signs of flaming crowns, burning canoes, and men entwined with fiery serpents, appeared to them in the skies; and in their ears strange voices cried lamentably. D'Argenson, pained at beholding the unhappy state of the colony, and unable to procure it relief, demanded his recall.

12. His successor, **Baron d'Avaugour**, was an energetic veteran officer, but of an irascible and obstinate temper. He visited all the posts, and expressed his sur- **1661** prise that so grand a country should be so much ne- A.D. glected. Vigorous representations of its urgent need of aid were drawn up by him, and M. Bouchet was despatched to France to present them at Court. In answer, the King sent out a small reinforcement of forty soldiers, and a commissioner, M. de Monts, who was instructed to draw up a report of the state of the colony. The joy caused by this mark of royal consideration died away amidst the excitement of fierce dissension.

13. The **liquor traffic**, which had been kept in check in the time of Montmagny, was surreptitiously carried on during that of his successors. To sell brandy was made a penal offence. A woman was convicted of breaking the law, and was condemned to suffer. The Jesuit missionaries interceded warmly with the Governor-General in her behalf. Baron d'Avaugour, irritated by their persistence, declared that, if the culprit were

allowed to go free, no one should afterwards be punished for a like offence. He refused to retract his hasty words, and they were understood as giving permission to the traffic. With grief the priesthood beheld a **flame of dissipation** overspread the colony, and the demon of drunkenness invade the cabins of the Christianized Indians. Their painful labours of over twenty years were destroyed in an hour of reckless debauchery. In vain they attempted to interpose the barrier of their authority against the flood. The colony was now divided into the Ecclesiastical and "Libertine" parties. Certain wild French youths, who had lately come out, joined themselves with the residents, who had always impatiently borne the strict rule of the priests. They raised the cry that their free will was fettered, that their consciences were constrained. The thunder of the Church was launched at their head. In the fury of the moment, admonitions and threatenings were disregarded. Unable to bring the malcontents to reason,

**1662** A.D. M. de Laval crossed the sea to lay his complaints at the foot of the throne.

14. The annalists of those days give remarkable accounts of atmospherical phenomena and physical disturbances. To their minds heaven appeared visibly and sensibly to display its anger at the sins of the times. At Montreal a **globe of fire** was seen to detach itself from the moon, burst in mid-air with a report like that of a caannon, and disappear in blazing fragments behind the mountain. In the month of

**1663** A.D. January, a strange mist rose from the river, and three suns stood parallel with the horizon, each encircled by an iris which momentarily changed its varied hues. Twice was this strange appearance seen. These portents were the precursors of a **fearful earthquake**. On the 11th of February, a mighty rushing noise was heard throughout Canada, and the people rushed in terror from their houses to see the walls cracking, the chimneys swaying to and fro, the roofs falling in, and to hear the bells of the churches ring out. They were attacked by a strange giddiness and qualmishness: when they essayed to walk, the earth seemed to rise and strike the soles of their feet. The accounts given (mainly on the authority of the "habitans" and Indians) of the convulsions of the land

are very extraordinary. **A huge mountain**, they said, was torn from its place and cast into the river, where it took root and became an island; a forest slid from the banks into the St. Lawrence; fearful chasms of unknown depth disclosed themselves; several rivers disappeared, others changed their beds; gentle streams were changed into falls and rapids, and falls and rapids into gentle streams.

15. The Jesuit Fathers, who give an account of these too strange incidents in their letters, state that not a single soul perished during the terrible convulsion; and they dwell with satisfaction on the salutary effects of the terror it created in calming dissension and reclaiming many from their evil courses.

16. In February of this year, the New Company of the Hundred Associates, then reduced to forty-five members, surrendered all their rights and property in New France into the hands of the **King**. They totally failed to carry out the terms of their charter. All lands granted by them, and still uncleared, were recalled by a Royal Edict.

QUESTIONS.—1. What colonies about this time sent greeting to Canada? By what difficulties had they been harassed? What led to a confederation of these States in 1643?

2. What proposal did the United Colonies make to Canada? How was it received? Why did the negotiations fail?

3. Who succeeded D'Ailleboust as Governor? Where alone was there safety? In what did the strength of the colonists lie?

4. Where did missionaries labour after the destruction of the Huron Mission?

5. Among whom did the Jesuit Fathers strive to gain a foothold? To which of them was a mission sent? How did the Mohawks insult the Governor-General?

6. How did the missionaries to the Onondagas escape?

7. To whom was the Island of Montreal transferred? Who superintended the Institution of the Filles de la Congregation?

8. Who succeeded De Lauson as Gov-

ernor? What decisive action checked the incursions of the Iroquois?

9. What ecclesiastical changes were about the same time introduced?

10. How was the Church in the colony supported? Who was the first bishop?

11. How was Canada once more reduced to a state of dire distress? What effect had this on the minds of the people? What did it lead D'Argenson to do?

12. Who was his successor? What was the result of his representations to the Court?

13. What was the cause of the dissensions which followed? Into what two parties was the community divided? What step did De Laval take?

14. When did a great earthquake visit Canada? By what portents is it said to have been preceded? Mention some of the incidents of the visitation.

15. What do the Jesuit Fathers say of these occurrences?

16. What step did the New Company take in 1663? What had they failed to do?

## CHAPTER XI.

## ACADIE.

1632 to 1670 A.D.

D'Aulnay and La Tour, lieutenants under Razilli.  
 Their feuds.  
 La Tour disobeys royal command to appear in France.  
 D'Aulnay's Fleet at Partridge Island.  
 La Tour and wife visit Boston.  
 D'Aulnay makes Treaty with New England.

Madame La Tour's heroism and death.  
 Death of D'Aulnay.  
 His widow marries La Tour.  
 Emmanuel le Borgue.  
 The English seize Acadie.  
 Grant to La Tour, Temple, and Crowne.  
 Acadie restored to the French.

1. It has already been stated, that after the cession of Acadie to France by the Treaty of St. Germain, **Isaac de Razilli** **1632** (who had been commissioned by his relative, Cardinal A.D. Richelieu, to take possession of the country), was appointed Commandant. He received an extensive grant at St. Croix, comprising the river and the bay. He held his residence at Cape la Hève, and he built his fort at the head of the harbour, on a hillock of land. To this place he brought several families of French settlers. Along with Nicolas Denys, Sieur de Fronsac, he carried on the shore fishery at Port Rossignol. Under him Charles de Menou, Seigneur d'Aulnay Charnisay, acted as lieutenant of the western district, which included all the country north of the Bay of Fundy to the Kennebec in the west. Charles de la Tour was lieutenant of the eastern district, which comprised the peninsula.

2. On the death of Razilli, **Nicolas Denys** was appointed Governor of the country from Canceau along the Gulf **1636** shore to Cape Rosieres.<sup>1</sup> Fourteen years afterwards he A.D. received a grant of this territory. There was now **bitter strife** between the lieutenants of the western and eastern districts. D'Aulnay, of an imperious, harsh, and ambitious character, strove to assume authority over the whole country. He obtained from Claude, brother of Razilli, a grant

<sup>1</sup> *Cape Rosieres.*—Now Cape Gaspé.

of the St. Croix, of Cape Sable, and La Hève. He afterwards removed the French settlers of the place to Port Royal, which he made his residence. He thus maintained several posts in the district under command of La Tour. But La Tour held as his own possession the forts at the mouth of the St. John and at the Gensic,<sup>1</sup> within his rival's command. D'Aulnay vindictively sought to make himself **master** of these positions, which would have given him the command of the valuable fur-trade of the river, and in effect of the whole country. He received the royal instructions to live at peace with **1638** La Tour, and to confine himself to one district, the A.D. limits of which were definitely laid down.

3. La Tour's antecedents and connections were not such as were likely to be viewed favourably by the Catholic Court of France. He was the son of a Huguenot; though he professed the Catholic faith himself, his wife was of the Huguenot persuasion, and he held commercial intercourse with the merchants of Rochelle, the stronghold of Protestantism in France. He sought to enter into an alliance with the Puritans of Massachusetts, and made overtures to them proposing that they should aid him in dispossessing D'Aulnay of his fort on the Penobscot; on the left bank of which river the English had a settlement. D'Aulnay, through his relations, had powerful influence with Cardinal Richelieu, and he succeeded in **undermining** his rival's credit at Court. He received the royal orders to command La Tour to embark for France, there to answer to the King certain charges that had been preferred against him. La Tour, disobeying the mandate on the ground that it was given on false accusations, fortified himself within his fort on the St. John, and defied the malice of his enemy. The King in council **revoked his commission**. The efforts of his enemies to crush him completely were not successful. He also had many friends at Court. The charges preferred against him were not supported by any strong proofs of guilt. They derived their importance from the influence of the parties who pressed them. The quarrel between the lieutenants was a personal matter, in which the authorities in France had little

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Gensic.*—The Jemseg.

interest. Though under a cloud at Court, La Tour was not debarred from drawing his supplies from France.

4. D'Aulnay appeared in the spring of 1643, with two ships and four pinnaces carrying five hundred soldiers, at the **1643** mouth of the **St. John River**, and blockaded the harbour. The position of La Tour was critical; he was hemmed in, and ran the risk of being starved into surrender. He was daily awaiting the arrival of a ship from Rochelle with one hundred and forty immigrants, and with supplies on board. It might sail into the jaws of danger, as D'Aulnay's two ships lay to the south-west side of Partridge Island and his pinnaces on the south-east. When the long-expected ship appeared on the coast, a warning signal was made. Under cover of a dark night in June, La Tour and his wife were conveyed on board. They sailed for the village of **Boston**, where their appearance at first created some alarm. Governor Winthrop received them courteously. The contentions of the two French lieutenants caused the New England Fathers some anxiety. Both sought their alliance, but to aid the one was to make an enemy of the other. The Governor and his Council debated the proposal made by La Tour that they should assist him, and concluded that they could not do so as a Government; but they gave him permission to hire a naval and military force.

5. La Tour chartered, for two months, five vessels, furnished with thirty-eight pieces of ordnance and a crew of fifty sailors. He enlisted ninety soldiers, and armed and victualled the force. As security for payment, he mortgaged to Major Gibbons all his property in Acadie. On the 11th of July he reached the mouth of the St. John, and attacked the ships of the enemy. D'Aulnay spread his sails for flight, and crossed the Bay of Fundy. In the basin of Port Royal he ran his two ships aground, and landed near a mill not far from his fort. La Tour having followed him, assailed the position. After a brief combat, in which both sides lost three men each, the captain of the hireling soldiers refused to join in any further operations, and with a rich booty of furs he returned to Boston within the time for which his services had been engaged.

6. The mortification of D'Aulnay at this check was intense, and he renewed, in France, his intrigues against his rival.

The transactions of La Tour with the Puritans were represented in such a light as to make him appear a **traitor** to his nation and to his religion. He procured from the King a letter intimating the royal desire that the English and the French in America should live in peace. He despatched this document, with others prejudicial to the character of La Tour; and through his commissioner, M. Marie, commenced negotiations for a treaty of peace with the New England States.

7. Amidst the difficulties with which he was surrounded, La Tour had in his wife a valuable help-meet. Madame la Tour went to London to procure supplies for the fort. On the return voyage the captain of the vessel broke the terms of the charter, and instead of taking her direct to St. John, **1644** A.D. landed her at Boston after a devious voyage, in course of which the lady narrowly escaped capture by her husband's inveterate foe. She brought the captain to trial, and he was mulcted of £2,000 damages. After expending this money in stores and munitions, she sailed for St. John. In the following spring D'Aulnay **attacked the fort**, but was repulsed with some loss by Madame la Tour at the head of her garrison.

8. D'Aulnay now concluded a definite treaty of peace with the New Englanders, and detached them from all alliance with his rival. Hearing that La Tour, with **1647** A.D. the greater number of his men, was absent on a distant trading voyage, he sailed for the St. John and besieged the fort, which was situated on the western side of the harbour. For three days Madame la Tour **kept him at bay**, until, through the treachery of a Swiss sentry, he gained access to the place. The lady at the head of her soldiers was prepared to defend the ramparts. D'Aulnay, to avoid the disgrace of a possible defeat at her hands, offered such honourable terms that Madame, willing to avoid bloodshed, consented to capitulate. The victor basely broke his plighted word on viewing the weakness of the garrison. Sparing the life of one man on condition of his becoming the executioner of his comrades, he ordered all the captive soldiers to be hanged, and subjected the lady to the cruel indignity of witnessing the brutal sight with a halter around her neck.

9. The ruin of the husband broke the wife's heart. The fortunes of La Tour appeared now to be **completely shattered**. While his rival enjoyed his triumph and ruled over all Acadie, he led a wandering life in Newfoundland, Canada, and around Hudson Bay. At Port Royal, D'Aulnay reigned as a feudal lord over a body of serfs. He did nothing to increase the settlement of the country. His establishment was maintained at great expense, and he was plunged in debt.

10. On the death of D'Aulnay, La Tour emerged from obscurity into the sunshine of fortune. Not meeting the malign influence of his rival at Court, he easily cleared himself of the **1651** charges against his character. He received a commission A.D. as Lieutenant-Governor of Acadie, and D'Aulnay's widow restored to him the St. John fort. The position of Madame D'Aulnay was very difficult. Her estate was in debt some 260,000 livres to one Emmanuel le Borgne, an eminent merchant of Rochelle, and La Tour claimed jurisdiction over her possessions in Acadie. She entered into a compact with the Duke of Vendôme, Superintendent of Commerce and Navigation in France, by which his Grace, on condition that he sent out annual supplies, became co-seigneur with her, and co-partner in the fur-trade. This arrangement did not last long. To settle the question of the jurisdiction of La Tour, **the widow married him**. The Duke (who had a personal antipathy to D'Aulnay's successor) was much displeased with his fair business partner for taking that way of getting over a difficulty. His Grace was in debt 65,000 livres to Le Borgne for goods supplied to her. Through his influence, their mutual creditor obtained authority to seize on Acadie, in order to satisfy the claim he held against the D'Aulnay estate.

11. **Nicolas Denys** then possessed several fishing and trading posts. Le Borgne's first act on coming to Acadie was to attack his settlement at St. Pierre, Cape Breton, and to carry him off a prisoner to Port Royal. After a rough confinement Denys obtained his release, and sailed for France. His claim to the country was reestablished by the New Company. Returning to Cape Breton, he compelled the officer in command at St. Pierre to deliver up the post to him. Le Borgne was at Port Royal making preparations to dispossess La Tour of his

fort on the St. John when he heard this news. He was on the point of setting out to recapture St. Pierre when new actors appeared on the scene.

12. **Oliver Cromwell** was at war with the Dutch.<sup>1</sup> He sent out an expedition to seize on their colony at Manhattan on Long Island, and he demanded aid from Massachusetts. While the Government was slowly raising a force of five hundred men, peace was proclaimed between the two countries. Secret orders were then given to Colonel Robert Sedgwick **to take possession of Acadie**. The restitution of that province to the French by the Treaty of St. Germain had been displeasing to the Puritans, and they gladly seized the opportunity to regain it. They maintained that the French never had had a just title to it, as it had always formed part of English dominion. Colonel Sedgwick easily made himself master of the forts at Penobscot and St. John. At Port Royal Le Borgne was strongly posted, and had a garrison of one hundred and fifty men, well supplied with munitions of war; but he was a man of unwarlike character, and had no officer of experience to command. A party which he sent out to resist the landing of the English being defeated, he surrendered on condition of receiving honourable treatment. The captors then turned round and mocked him for his pusillanimity. Sedgwick afterwards took Fort la Hève, where a son of Le Borgne commanded. The English now were **masters of Acadie** for the third time. **1654** A.D.

13. Peace was restored between France and England by the Treaty of Westminster,<sup>2</sup> 3rd November. The French Ambassador at London pressed Cromwell to restore to France the forts taken by Sedgwick. The officers acting on behalf of the Lord Protector maintained that they ought to remain in possession of the English. The ques- **1655** A.D.

<sup>1</sup> *War with the Dutch.*—This war began in 1652 in consequence of the Navigation Act (1651), which forbade the importation of goods into England in any but English ships, and thus ruined the Dutch carrying trade. The Dutch Admirals were Marten Tromp (father of Van Tromp), and De Ruyter. The chief battles were off Portland (south of England), and off Texel (an island in

the north of Holland), in 1653, in both of which the Dutch were defeated. In the latter Tromp was killed. Peace was concluded in 1654.

<sup>2</sup> *Treaty of Westminster.*—Negotiated by Cardinal Mazarin, the powerful minister of Louis XIV. of France, with Oliver Cromwell. It secured for France the cooperation of England against Spain.

tion was referred to commissioners. La Tour now displayed that **enterprising audacity** for which he was noted. On the strength of the grant made in 1629 to his father and himself by Sir William Alexander, he proceeded to London and made his claim clear to the satisfaction of Cromwell. He was a man who liked to sail with the tide. He made no account of this grant when in 1630 his father urged him to become an English subject, for he had some expectation then that Acadie would soon be restored to the French Crown ; now he was willing enough to change his allegiance.

14. By letters-patent given by Cromwell, La Tour, in conjunction with Sir Thomas Temple and William Crowne, **1656** came into possession of Acadie, including the country  
 A.D. along the coasts, and a hundred leagues inward from Merliguesche to St. Mary's Bay, and along the shores of the Bay of Fundy to the little River St. George beyond the Penobscot. La Tour soon afterwards disposed of his interest in this grant to Temple, and retired to the fort of St. John, where he lived and died in obscurity before the complete restitution of the country to the French Crown was made. **For a period of eleven years** Acadie remained in the joint possession of the English and the French. Sir Thomas Temple was appointed Lieutenant to his Majesty of Great Britain. He built fortifications, and carried on an extensive commerce. Emmanuel le Borgne was Governor under Louis XIV. The Acadians were allowed to remain in undisturbed possession of their lands. During this time Nicolas Denys removed to Miramichi, where, and also at Nepisiguit on the Bay Chaleur, he established trading and fishing posts.

15. **By the Treaty of Breda**<sup>1</sup> Charles II. restored Acadie to Louis XIV. M. Morillon de Bourg was sent to take **1667** possession. The French then claimed that Acadie in-  
 A.D. cluded not only the peninsula, but also the country between the Bay of Fundy and River St. Lawrence, and west to the Kennebec River. Sir Thomas Temple memorialized the King, and argued that Acadie was only a small part of that extensive territory called Nova Scotia, and that his forts of

---

<sup>1</sup> *Treaty of Breda.*—Between Eng- | in 1667. Breda is in North Brabant,  
 land, France, Holland, and Denmark, | in Holland.

Penobscot, St. John, Cape la Hève, and Cape Sable were in Nova Scotia, and consequently were not included in the cession of Acadie. It was not till three years after the signing of the treaty that the King sent positive commands for the surrender of the forts. On the 1st July, Temple 1670 ordered his officers to deliver them into the hands of A.D. Chevalier de Grand-Fontaine. Charles II. promised Sir Thomas £16,000 as an indemnification for his losses. The money, it is said, was never paid to him.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where did De Razilli hold his residence? Who were lieutenants under him?

2. Who succeeded Razilli? What relations existed between the eastern and western lieutenants? What orders were sent to D'Aulnay?

3. Why was La Tour not likely to be a favourite at Court? What alliance did he seek to form? For what purpose did D'Aulnay use his influence at Court? With what success?

4. What hostile step did D'Aulnay take? How did La Tour escape?

5. From whom did La Tour get assistance? What use did he make of it?

6. How did D'Aulnay avenge himself on La Tour? With whom did he open negotiations for a treaty of peace?

7. How did Madame la Tour aid her husband? What was the result of D'Aulnay's attack on the fort of St. John?

8. What was the result of D'Aulnay's negotiations with the New Englanders? Of what perfidy was he guilty towards Madame la Tour?

9. In what position were La Tour's fortunes? What effect had this on his wife? What was D'Aulnay's position at the same time?

10. When did La Tour's fortunes change? How did he settle the question of jurisdiction with Madame D'Aulnay? What authority was given to Le Borgne?

11. Narrate the doings of Le Borgne and of Denys.

12. What led the English again to take possession of Acadie? Relate the circumstances.

13. What claim did the French make in 1655? To whom was the question referred? What audacious step did La Tour then take?

14. To whom was Acadie given? What was the end of La Tour? In what peculiar position was Acadie during the next eleven years? Who was the English lieutenant? Who was the French lieutenant?

15. When was Acadie again restored to France? What point of difference remained to be determined? When and how was it settled?

## CHAPTER XII.

## CANADA A SOVEREIGN COLONY.

1663 A.D.

M. Gaudois, Royal Commissioner.  
 The Sovereign Council.  
 Governor-General—Bishop—Intendant.  
 Courts.  
 Character of the French Canadians.  
 The West India Company.

The Feudal System.  
 The Fur-trade.  
 Commerce.  
 The English at New York.  
 Their Alliance with the Iroquois.  
 Rivalries between French and English.

1. **A new era** now opened for Canada. Its state of utter enfeeblement and exhaustion touched the heart of the King. The conflict between the civil and the ecclesiastical authorities moved him to take the colony under his direct protection. By an Edict dated March 1663, a Sovereign Council was erected. M. Laval, L'Abbé Montigny, returned to Canada in September. With him came M. de Mesy, late commandant of the citadel of Caen, the first Governor under the new constitution; M. Gaudois, the Royal Commissioner; several military and law officers; and one hundred families of colonists. **M. Gaudois** took possession of the country in the King's name, received the oath of fidelity of its inhabitants, and made certain regulations regarding the law courts and the police. He drew up a report of the state of the country, and returned to France. Baron d'Avaugour was exculpated from all blame, except for a somewhat harsh enforcement of the laws and a too great obstinacy in adhering to his prejudices. He welcomed release from his post. On his return to Europe he entered the service of the Emperor of Germany, then at war with the Turks, and was killed at the siege of Serin, on the frontiers of Croatia.

2. **The Sovereign Council** was composed of the Governor-General, the Ecclesiastical Superior (or the Bishop, when in 1670 the Church in the colony was erected into a bishopric), and the Intendant. They had joint power to appoint four Councillors (who held office during their pleasure), and a Chief Clerk

and Attorney-General. The number of Councillors was afterwards increased to eight, and finally to twelve. One of the number received the title of Chief Councillor, an honorary distinction, to which a small salary was attached. The emoluments bestowed by the King on the principal officers of the colony were extremely moderate. This parsimony was sometimes the cause of corruption, as it induced the unscrupulous to enrich themselves by unlawful means.

3. **The Governor-General** was the representative of the King; he had power to make war and peace, and played an active part in the general government of the country. **The Bishop** had jurisdiction over ecclesiastical affairs; on the question of taxation for the support of the clergy, however, as on all temporal matters, he had only a single vote like the other members of the Council. **The Intendant** was an officer of great authority. The Governor-General and the Bishop took precedence of him; but he was President of the Council: he collected the votes, and gave the final decision on all subjects that came under discussion. The meetings took place every Monday in his "palace." In his hands remained the Registers in which all the Acts of the Council were recorded. All matters relating to the administration of justice and of police, to finance and marine, came under his direct supervision. Several Governor-Generals betrayed great jealousy of the powers intrusted to the Intendant. The prosperity of the colony depended in a great measure on the character, ability, zeal, and integrity of this officer. If he were like Talon—the first who held the office, a man of honourable principles and enlightened views—he had scope to promote the happiness of the colony; if he were like Bigot—the last, selfish and luxurious—he had many ways of enriching himself, and of oppressing and impoverishing the people.

4. The Sovereign Council was constituted a **Supreme Court** to try civil and criminal cases. Justice was administered according to the laws of France and the custom of Paris, a body of unwritten laws established by long usage. These laws were modified when not found applicable to the circumstances of the country. From time to time the King issued Ordinances: they were entered on the Registers of the Council, and became the

chief code by which the colony was governed. Inferior courts of justice were established at Quebec, Three Rivers, and Montreal, composed of a Lieutenant-General, Sub-Lieutenant, and Attorney-General. For a long time the Superiors of the Seminary of St. Sulpicius maintained jurisdiction over the Island of Montreal.

5. The system of government was **autocratic**—the people had no voice in the direction or management of affairs. It suited the character of the French Canadians, who were a hardy, light-hearted, social race, with a very good opinion of themselves; very fond of pleasure, but remarkably free from vice; obedient to authority; devoutly attached to their Church, and rigid observers of all its rites and festivals; somewhat credulous and uninstructed, wedded to old customs and usages, and averse to harassing their minds with book lore.

6. The urgent demands for aid to Canada were made at a time when the financial affairs of France were under the direction of a great minister, **M. Colbert**,<sup>1</sup> who was alive to the importance of extending the commerce and of adding to the strength and glory of the parent state by sustaining its colonies. On the extinction of the New Company, Louis XIV., by an Edict dated May 1664, established the **West India Company**; to which was granted for fifty years the monopoly of the territory and the trade of all the French colonies on the coast of Africa, in South America, and among the West India Isles, and of Canada, Acadie, and Florida. It was specially decreed that noblemen might take shares in this Company without derogation to their rank. The obligation to send out settlers and maintain priests was similar to that undertaken by the late New Company. All the rights and privileges that the West India Company possessed over this vast domain were held on the tenure of fealty and homage to the King.

7. **The Feudal System**<sup>2</sup> then prevailed in France, and it was

<sup>1</sup> *Colbert*.—He gained the favour of Mazarin by the dexterity with which he managed some business on which he was sent to Rome. Mazarin recommended him to Louis XIV. for the post of Comptroller-General of the Finances. Some of the most important

buildings in Paris were erected under his superintendence. Born 1619, died 1683.

<sup>2</sup> *The Feudal System*.—The system under which the rent or price of land was paid, not in money, but by military service. The feudal laws varied in

transferred to Canada, but not in its extreme rigour. Lands were granted by the Company in large blocks to families of the Crown, to officers of the army, to gentlemen, to communities (like the Seminary of St. Sulpicius), who held them *en seigneurie*; that is, on condition of paying fealty and homage to the King. The ceremony of **doing homage** was annually observed, and took place in the Castle of St. Louis in Quebec. The seigneur or his representative, kneeling before the representative of the King, delivered up his sword; which was graciously returned. All the most fertile lands on both banks of the St. Lawrence for three hundred miles—from below Quebec to above Montreal—were soon granted away, and held *en seigneurie*. The seigneurs enjoyed rights and privileges; they had also obligations to meet and duties to perform. They exercised legal jurisdiction within their domain, except in cases of murder and treason. When any portion of the seigneurie was sold, a fifth of the purchase-money, called a **quint**, was paid to the King; and the purchaser was entitled to a *rabat*, or reduction of one-fifth on prompt payment. These *quints* were a source of revenue to the colonial treasury. When lands passed in direct hereditary succession no fines were paid by the heirs.

8. A portion of the land was granted on a sort of **freehold tenure**, *en franc alleu*. Grantees under this tenure held their lands direct from the King, but enjoyed none of the rights possessed by the seigneurs. Very little land was held *en franc alleu*. The seigneurs not being able to cultivate their extensive grants, divided them into lots having generally a frontage on the River St. Lawrence of three acres, and an extension backward of eighty acres. These lots were granted *en roture*, or villenage, and the holders were called **Censitaires**. They paid a small annual rent in money, and some article of provision, such as a goose or a pair of fowls, or it might be a bushel of wheat. They were obliged to grind their grain at the seigneur's

---

different countries, but their essential principle was everywhere the same—they regarded the whole land as the property of the king, who divided the greater part of it among his barons, who subdivided it among their vassals. Each baron was bound to bring to the royal

standard a certain number of men-at-arms, who gave their services in return for their lands. The royal revenue was derived partly from the proceeds of the crown lands, and partly from feudal incidents: such as fines, reliefs, forfeitures, aids, wardships, marriage.

mill, and to pay to him a fourteenth of the produce; to give a tithe, or the value of a tithe, of the fish caught in their waters; also to open up and repair the roads and build the bridges. They were also compelled to do military service. The seigneurs, on the sale of lands within their seigneurie, were entitled to **lods et ventes**; that is, a twelfth part of the purchase-money, which was exclusive of the sum paid by the purchaser to the seller. Though the value of the land to be sold might have been increased in value a hundredfold by buildings and improvements, the seigneurs were still entitled to a sum equivalent to a twelfth part of the purchase-money.

9. **By the law of inheritance**, on the death of a seigneur his estate was divided among his children. The eldest son, along with the title and manor house, received a somewhat larger share than the rest of the family. This law of subdivision left, in time, some of the seigneurs with little besides their titles and their houses. By the same law the lots of the censitaires were parcelled out till each individual owner possessed only the "shred of a farm." This extreme subdivision of the land became, in time, a crying evil. In 1664 the complaint was made that the habitans were too much scattered, and that they were exposed, in their detached farms, to the attacks of the Iroquois. **A Royal Ordinance** was passed, commanding them to settle closely together for mutual protection. As the colony increased, however, the evils of this close settlement became palpable, and the French King issued a mandate in 1665, forbidding, under a penalty, any one to erect houses and barns on lots of less than an acre and a half frontage and forty acres backward extension. This order had for a time a beneficial effect.

10. The monopoly granted to the West India Company excited the greatest dissatisfaction. All the people of Canada were interested in the **fur-trade**. It was their distinguishing occupation, and it directed the more active minds into a particular channel, and had much influence in determining the future of the colony. It aroused and kept alive a spirit of adventure. As the beaver, the sable, and the mink became scarce in the country nearest the French settlements, it became necessary to penetrate far and wide into the wilderness. The

necessities of trade promoted discovery, and extended the domain of France over an immense stretch of territory, and made known to the world the magnificent resources and the splendid scenery of the northern part of the Continent of America. The active life of the fur-trader had the greatest charms for the French youth. It inured them to habits of endurance, and disciplined them for war. It created a distinct class.—the **Coueurs du Bois**, or “Runners of the Woods,”—who, breaking away from the restraints of civilization, adopted the savage life. They became a scandal and a source of weakness to the Province. Through them the country was drained of its strength;—the sober toil of agriculture, the foundation of a nation’s wealth, was neglected; the natural defence of Canada was weakened. Hundreds of her sons, instead of being settled on farms by the St. Lawrence, were, in the hour of danger, living in wigwams by the distant shores of lakes Michigan and Superior.

11. The Company had the exclusive privilege of importing from France all goods used in the colony. It not only bought the furs which were brought to the magazines at the value it chose to put upon them, but it compelled people to purchase necessary articles at enhanced prices. A great outcry was raised. M. Talon, the first Superintendent under the new constitution, urged upon M. Colbert the necessity of permitting greater **freedom of trade**, if he expected to make anything of Canada; a country which, he thought, might, under wise government, become infinitely useful to the kingdom. Upon these representations the people were allowed, a few years afterwards (in 1671), to import their own goods, and to buy the peltry from the Indians, on condition that they should pay a fourth of the beaver skins and a twelfth of the buffalo robes to the Company.

12. The West India Company showed no greater interest in the colony than the Hundred Associates had shown. **Its charter was rescinded** by a Royal Edict in 1674, ten years after its creation, and all the vast domain that had been ceded to it became the direct possession of the Crown. The people of Canada were still allowed freedom of trade upon the conditions already mentioned. The collection of the “fourths” and “twelfths” of the beaver and buffalo skins was leased out to

officers called **Farmers-General**, who in time came to unite the duty of collecting the taxes with the profitable speculation of buying the rest of the furs at a moderate price. About thirty years afterwards (1701) the people became dissatisfied with the **Farmers-General**, and they were abolished by a Royal Edict, and a **New Company** was then formed, open to all who chose to take share in it. In consideration of the privileges of trade granted by the King, it paid 60,000 livres annual rent into the colonial treasury.

13. An event happened simultaneously with the erection of the Sovereign Council and the creation of the West India Company, which not only affected the current of the fur-trade, but which had the most important influence on the course of political events in Canada. Charles II., claiming possession of the territory including the Delaware Bay and River, Long Island, and the Hudson, by right of the discoveries of the Cabots, coolly granted it to his brother the Duke of York and Albany. For fifty years, undisturbed by foreign claim, this country had been in the hands of the Dutch, who called it the New Netherlands. There was peace between England and Holland, and the governor, Petrus Stuyvesant, looked for no enemy.

**1664** To his dismay, one day in August, **four English**  
 A.D. **frigates** anchored within range of Fort New Amsterdam. Being summoned to surrender, he was strongly tempted to reply by the cannon's mouth. But the clergy and principal inhabitants gathered about him and induced him to forego his fell intent, and to accept the terms offered by the English commander. So the Dutch became free English subjects. They retained their property, their laws and customs, and their own mode of worship. In honour of the Duke, the town of New Amsterdam was named **New York**; and Orange, on the Hudson River, Albany.

14. The first English Government formed in New York entered into a treaty with the Five Nations; and that people submitted to Corlear,—as they called the **English King** and his representative,—and placed their lands under his protection. The importance of securing the alliance of the Iroquois became very soon apparent both to the English and to the French; and that astute people were quick to see the immense advantage

the position of their country gave them, lying as it did between the rival colonies. Its proximity to Albany and New York compelled them to depend on the English for gunpowder and shot and other indispensable supplies. Though their interest induced them to keep the treaty with the English pretty faithfully, natural inclination drew them towards the French, who flattered their self-love by the consideration that they showed to their feelings, and by their good nature and familiarity. The Indians generally were repelled by the haughtiness of the English, who often scarce concealed contempt for their persons and scorn for their habits. The Iroquois, with great shrewdness, played the English against the French, and the French against the English. When offended with their "brother" Corlear, they professed great regard for their "father" Ononthio. If a Governor of New York, presuming on the treaty, assumed the airs and acts of a master, their chiefs retired within themselves, and haughtily declared they were free and independent, and the subjects of no monarch upon earth, and they sent delegates to Quebec to speak of peace with the Governor-General. On more than one occasion, when their hearty support would have enabled the English to drive the French into the sea, they grew cool, and failed to fulfil their engagements. They instinctively feared that their doom would be sealed if the English became sole masters in America.

15. The English strove to divert to the Hudson River the current of the fur-trade that passed down the St. Lawrence. The Iroquois were not blind to the advantage they derived from the transit of so profitable a traffic through their country. At the instigation of the Governors of New York they intrigued with the tribes of Canada to induce them to sell their peltry to the English. When persuasion failed, they made war. The French, apprehensive that their trade would be ruined, sought by every means to humble or conciliate them. In trading for furs with the Indians, the English under-sold the French by giving higher prices, and selling better articles at lower rates. Many of the vagabond "Runners of the Woods" carried their peltry to New York in preference to Montreal, as they were not met by tax-gatherers there. **The rivalries and jealousies created by the fur-trade were a principal cause of the wars**

that desolated Canada and the frontiers of the New England settlements.

QUESTIONS.—1. To whom did the King intrust the government of Canada in 1663? Who went out as Royal Commissioner? For what only was Baron d'Avaugour blamed?

2. Of whom was the Sovereign Council composed? How many councillors had they ultimately joint power to appoint?

3. What powers had the Governor-General, the Bishop, and the Intendant respectively? On which of these did the prosperity of the colony chiefly depend?

4. By whom, and how, was justice administered? Where were inferior courts established?

5. What was the nature of the system of government? What may be said in its favour? What was the character of the French Canadians?

6. When was the West India Company established? Who was French Minister of Finance at the time? By what tenure did the Company hold its rights?

7. What system then prevailed in France? How, under this system, were lands held in Canada? Describe the ceremony of doing homage. What were *quints*? When were they paid?

8. What other tenure was there besides that of *seigneurie*? How did seigneurs subdivide their lands? What were the holders of these lots called?

What duties were required of them? What were *lots et ventes*?

9. What was the law of inheritance? To what great evil did it lead? What was done to check it? What mandate was issued in 1645? Why?

10. What feeling did the monopoly granted to the West India Company excite? In what trade were all the people of Canada interested? What benefits did that trade confer on the colonists? How did its pursuit weaken the colony?

11. What proceedings of the Company excited discontent? What suggestion did M. Talon make? What was consequently done?

12. When was the charter of the Company rescinded? To whom was its domain transferred? Who were the Farmers-General? When were they abolished? What was the nature of the New Company then formed?

13. When and how did the English obtain possession of New York? To whom had it previously belonged? How did the change affect the Dutch settlers?

14. With whom did the English form an alliance? What advantageous position did the Iroquois occupy? What use did they make of it?

15. How did trade rivalries arise between the English and the French? Which did the Iroquois favour?

## CHAPTER XIII.

## DOMINION OF FRANCE EXTENDED.

1665 to 1672 A.D.

M. de Mesy.  
 Marquis de Tracy, Viceroy.  
 Joy in Quebec.  
 The Forts on the Richelieu.  
 Defiant attitude of the Mohaw's.  
     paign against them.  
     de Courcelles.  
 Peace.

Missions at Ste. Marie and Michillimackinac.  
 The labours of M. Talon.  
 The Tribes of the west, and the Crown of France.  
 The Mississipi.  
 Hudson Bay.  
 Newfoundland.

1. **M. de Mesy** was not long in Canada before the flames of dissension again burst out. M. de Laval believed that in the new Governor-General he had a man after his own heart, one who would sustain him in all his acts; for the King had graciously permitted the Abbé to select whom he pleased to fill the office, and his choice had fallen on his old friend, the Commandant of the citadel of Caen, who had given proofs of exalted piety and of devotion to the Church. But no sooner was M. de Mesy in possession of power than he opposed himself to the Superior and all his ecclesiastics, and sustained the party that clamoured for a reduction of the tithes for the support of the clergy, and that favoured the liquor traffic. He set his face against the Jesuits. Under the New Company the Fathers had exercised **supreme authority** in the colony; they had performed signal service to it, and by aid of resources drawn from France had helped to sustain it in its darkest days. Under the new regime they still sought to maintain their rule; but they were opposed by a party who deemed it too rigid and severe. To such lengths did the disputes at the Council proceed, that M. de Mesy caused two of its most respectable members—Sieur Villaray and the Attorney-General Bourdon—to be arrested and shipped off to France. He even marched with a body of soldiers to the residence of the Superior, as if he meant to lay violent hands on him. M. de Laval was amazed at the impetuous temper of his pious friend, and promptly sought a

remedy for the mistake he had made. He memorialized the Minister of France, made serious accusations against the Governor-General, and requested his discharge from office.

2. At the time when the complaints against M. de Mesy reached the minister, troubles were occurring in other French colonies. **Alexander de Prouville, Marquis de Tracy**, was commissioned by the King as his Lieutenant-General and Viceroy in America, with plenary power to settle all disorders. He was directed, after visiting the Antilles and San Domingo, to proceed to Canada and place its government on a sure foundation, to restore internal quiet, and to reduce the Iroquois. Daniel de Remi, Seigneur de Courcelles, the new Governor-General, and M. Talon, Intendant, were appointed with him members of a commission to investigate the charges against M. de Mesy, with authority to bring him to trial. But before they arrived in Canada De Mesy died at peace with his old friend the Abbé, and the complaints were allowed to drop into oblivion.

3. There was unwonted stir among the people of Quebec when the Marquis de Tracy landed. Their eyes glistened and their courage rose when the **splendid regiment of Carignan Salières** (which had acquired glory in Hungary against the Turks, and had come to conquer the Iroquois) paraded, and the town rang with the clangour of military music. The habitans gazed with admiration on the casques, and flowing plumes, and shining breastplates of the body-guard of the Viceroy, and on his footmen and pages in their gorgeous liveries. All this splendour was a visible manifestation of power, and it reassured them. With the soldiers came families of honest, industrious, pious peasants from Normandy and Picardy, and artisans and labourers, with horses, and oxen, and sheep. "It was a colony more considerable than that which it had come to replenish." The Indians stared at the horses—the first that had been seen in Canada; to them the mounted officers seemed inseparable from the animals they bestrode—veritable centaurs.

4. The Viceroy acted with promptitude. Detachments of soldiers, with a force of artisans and labourers, under Colonel Salières and two officers—Messieurs Chambly and Sorel—were

despatched to the Richelieu River. With great rapidity **three forts were constructed**; they were called St. Therese, Sorel, and Chambly. They were not of much avail as checks against the inroads of the Iroquois, for there were many by-paths through the woods by which they could reach the St. Lawrence unsuspected by the garrisons.

5. The report of the arrival of the Carignan regiment made a great impression upon the upper cantons of the Five Nations. The Cayugas, Onondagas, and Senecas in haste sent deputies to make peace with the Viceroy. The Oneidas, after a struggle with their sullen dignity, also sought conciliation; but the Mohawks, the fiercest and most implacable of all, stood proudly aloof. A company of soldiers was sent to chastise one of their parties. It fell into an ambushade, and **three officers**—one of them M. de Chazy, the young nephew of the Marquis de Tracy—**were killed**. The news of this disaster reached Quebec when the deputies of the Oneidas were on the point of concluding a treaty. At the same time two Mohawk chiefs, who pretended they were ambassadors, made their appearance. Notwithstanding the angry feeling that the death of the officers had created, there appeared to be a prospect that peace would be concluded with all the Five Nations without further bloodshed. The Viceroy invited the Mohawks to his table. During the course of the dinner mention was made of young De Chazy, when one of the chiefs electrified the company by raising his arm, and crying out, "**This arm cut off his head.**" In furious rage the French officers dragged the braggart from the hall, and handed him over to an executioner, who strangled him in sight of his brother chief. This incident determined the Viceroy to wage war, and preparations were made for a campaign against the Mohawks.

6. On the 24th September, a **force of 1300 men**—comprising 600 of the Carignan soldiers, as many Canadians, and 100 Indians—was ready. The Viceroy, though **1666** well stricken in years, was full of mental energy, and A.D. he resolved to command the expedition in person. He took the centre of the line of march. Accompanied by a brilliant suite of officers, surrounded by his body-guard, tended by his pages, and sitting in his easy-chair, he was borne

through the wilderness. As if in an open country the Frenchmen in all their bravery strode on, and startled the primeval silence by the flourish of their trumpets. In the course of the long and toilsome journey provisions failed, and they plucked the green nuts from the trees as they encamped in a forest of chestnuts. By the treachery of an Algonquin scout the Mohawks had been warned. So when in order of battle, with ensigns flying and drums beating, the soldiers entered their chief bourgade, they found only a few old men and women left in the cabins. Before burning the bourgade to ashes they rifled the deep pits in which the Mohawks had stored immense quantities of corn. Spreading themselves over the canton, they found only solitude ; for, dismayed at the clamour and clangour of the Frenchmen's advance, the inhabitants fled to the covert of the woods. In after years the French dared not show the bravado they displayed on this expedition, for it would only have betrayed them to the Iroquois, who were not long deceived into thinking there was danger in drums and trumpets.

7. The Viceroy would have punished the Oneidas but for the lateness of the season. The bleak winds, the cold rains, the falling leaves, and the morning frosts that "candied the streams with ice," warned him of the approach of winter. So **the expedition returned to Quebec**. He was blamed for not making an assured peace by building a fort and leaving a strong garrison in the Mohawk country ; but, unfortunately, he believed that if the posts on the Richelieu River were well defended, the inroads of the Iroquois would be effectually checked. The Marquis de Tracy, soon after he had established the West India Company in its privileges, left for France with six companies of the Carignan regiment. **M. de Courcelles** assumed the functions of Governor-General.

8. Canada now entered upon the first period of real quiet that it had enjoyed since its foundation. The punishment the Mohawks had received produced a salutary effect not only upon them, but upon the other four nations. Unable, however, to restrain their passion for slaughter, they turned their arms against the Andastes and Chouanons, tribes living to the south and west of their cantons, and the fiercest of all the people they had as yet encountered. They petitioned Ononthio to send

them **missionaries**. Fathers Bruyas, Fremin, Garnier, Carheil, and Pearron went to labour among them. There were persons in France who doubted whether any good was effected by missions among the Indians. The untutored savages were naturally courteous ; they could not withhold their assent from any proposition earnestly stated, though they did not in the least understand it. They often went to chapel merely out of consideration for the priest, in order to swell the number of his congregation. The Fathers did not think that all who sought baptism were real converts ; they believed that among the Indians, as among all other nations, God had his elect.

9. In the exploration of different regions the priest preceded the soldier and the trader. Nothing as yet was certainly known of the country of the west and north. Thirty years before this time, **Father Mesnard** had followed a band of Ottawas to the borders of Lake Superior, and perished in the woods from the effects of ill treatment and starvation. Undeterred by his tragic fate, Father Allouez accompanied a party of the same ferocious and superstitious savages to the Sault which was then first called Ste. Marie, at the strait between Lakes Superior and Huron. From thence he started along the shores of Lake Superior, until at its eastern extremity he came upon the Island of Chagouamigon, called by the French St. Michel. There he met a band of the Christian Hurons who had fled from the wrath of the Iroquois, and eight hundred warriors of the numerous tribes dwelling about that region, as far northwest as Lake Winnepeg, and as far south as the Illinois River. There he erected a chapel and made many proselytes. At Lake Nipegon he found a wretched remnant of the once powerful tribe of the Nipissings. Moved by the sad condition of the Christianized Indians, he and Father Nicolas shortly afterwards founded **two missions**, and settled the Algonquins at Sault Ste. Marie, and the Hurons at Michillimackinac at a point on the south shore of the strait between Lakes Michigan and Huron.

10. Great attention was now given to the **general improvement** of the country. On his first coming, M. Talon, the Intendant, applied himself with energy to find out both its necessities and its natural resources. Hitherto the outlay on the

colony had been greater than the return it had made ; and he was very desirous to justify to the Court of France the opinion he had formed of its great capabilities, by showing that it was able to sustain itself. He had several objects in view : to add to the permanent strength of Canada by settling in it an industrious agricultural population, and to further this purpose by an enlightened system of colonization ; to develop the resources of the country, so as to create an external commerce with other French colonies ; to bring under the authority of the Crown of France the northern and western regions of the continent ; to extend the fur-trade, and to give the people generally an interest in it by breaking down the monopoly of the Company.

11. To encourage the people who had come out with him, and to show them the best way of settling in the wilderness, he obtained a grant of land below Quebec, to the east of the River St. Charles. He caused the land to be stripped of its wood, the rough fields to be sown, and houses and barns to be erected. In this way were formed the villages of **Charlesbourg** and **Louisbourg**. After the people were pretty comfortably settled on their own farms, he set them to work to prepare adjacent lots for the reception of coming colonists. At his suggestion the Carignan regiment was disbanded in the colony. Grants of land were made "en seigneurie" to the officers on the Richelieu River, and the common soldiers became censitaires under them. When the six companies that had accompanied the Marquis de Tracy to France returned, there were about twelve hundred military settlers in Canada. It cannot be said that they turned their swords into pruning-hooks ; for in those days every man was required to be a soldier, and to carry his rifle with his implements when he went to work in the fields. Talon placed soldiers on the frontier, to form a **barrier against the Iroquois**. They did not, however, give Canada the complete protection that was expected from them. They could not be constantly under arms watching for the enemy, and ploughing at the same time. If they had not raised corn and wheat the colony would have starved ; and, after all, the risk of being attacked by the Iroquois was less than the danger of dying of famine.

12. The accounts that had been given by travellers of the

great mineral resources of Canada prompted M. Talon to take steps to verify them. On his first sailing up the Gulf, he landed at Gaspé, where, he was told, silver was to be found ; but seeing no traces of the precious metal, he reëmbarked disappointed. He despatched M. Tesserie to explore the coasts of the Bay of St. Paul, opposite the Isle of Coudres. **Traces of iron and copper** were found, but no silver. Being satisfied that there were indications of mineral riches in the country about Three Rivers, Talon sent out a mineralogist, M. de la Potherie. After a careful examination he reported very favourably as to the fine quality and abundance of the iron ore to be found there. It was not, however, till many years afterwards that anything was done to turn the discovery to account.

13. In the midst of his labours, M. Talon returned to France on urgent private business. He was dissatisfied with the conduct of the Governor-General, who in personal intercourse with him was reserved. Though M. de Courcelles was very active in military affairs, he was indolent in conducting civil matters. He rather obstructed than encouraged the work of internal improvement. Talon had also causes of complaint against the Ecclesiastical Superior and the missionaries. The Court of France expressed a desire that **the young Indian children** should be instructed in the French language, and introduced into French modes of living, as a means of consolidating and strengthening the colony. M. Talon urged on the Fathers the propriety of carrying out these instructions. They contended that it was impossible ; and that, even if it were possible, it would be inconvenient to do so. The Intendant was not satisfied with these statements, and attributed their unwillingness to Frenchify the Indians to a desire to retain their power over the savages, and to make themselves, as being the only power that could manage them, indispensable to the colony. He lent his ear to the grievances of the Libertine party, who still cried out that their consciences were constrained under the rigid rule of the Church. He obtained from the King an Edict reëstablishing the Recollets in Canada. The following year **1670** he arrived in Quebec with Father Germain Allard, and A.D. three other priests of the order, and settled them in their old convent by the River St. Charles. The arrival of the

"gray gowns" was hailed with satisfaction by the enemies of the "black robes." With the Recollets there came back to Canada the six companies of the Carignan regiment that had accompanied De Tracy to France; and a number of **young women**, who were sent out to be wives for the settlers. On their marriage they received a considerable present. In his anxiety to people the country, M. Colbert did not always send out persons of the best character.

14. Active measures were now taken to establish French dominion in the northern and western parts of the continent. Nicolas Perrot, an intelligent and experienced traveller, who possessed an intimate knowledge of the native languages, and great influence among the tribes, received instructions to call a **General Assembly** of Indian delegates, to hear a message from Ononchio. He followed in the track of Father Allouez, and from the north-eastern shore of Lake Superior made his way to Chicago, the chief bourgade of the Miamis, at the southern extremity of Lake Michigan. Thence he journeyed to Sault

Ste. Marie, which he fixed upon as the place of gathering. There, in the month of May, delegates of nearly **1671** all the tribes dwelling in the region around the great A.D. lakes met M. de Lousson, the Royal Commissioner.

In a few words Lousson made them understand that he wished them to place their country under the protection of the French King, and to become his subjects. When Father Allouez translated his speech into the Algonquin tongue, the delegates, properly instructed, answered with cries of "**Vive le Roi.**" While choristers sung a solemn chant, a trench was dug in which a cedar cross and post were planted. When the royal arms were affixed thereto, M. Lousson proclaimed that the ceremony was concluded, and that the country and people were under the protection of the Great Ononchio.

15. At Sault Ste. Marie the Indians told Perrot of a great river—the Mechasepé, or, as others called it, **the Mississippi**—that flowed neither to the north nor to the east. The importance of ascertaining the direction of its outlet was at once seen by M. Talon; for whether it flowed south to the Gulf of Mexico, or west to the Pacific Ocean, a channel of navigation to the sea would be secured. He intrusted to Father Marquette,

and M. Joliet, a merchant of Quebec, the task of discovery. They made their way to Green Bay at the north-western extremity of Lake Michigan. The Indians of whom they sought information as to their route, drew frightful pictures of the dangers they would encounter. Treating with contempt this childish attempt to deter them from proceeding, they, with a crew of six men, launched two small canoes on the Fox River. Forcing a way with infinite toil up its numerous rapids and past its falls, they reached the source, and made their way across a difficult country to the Wisconsin River. After a prosperous voyage the adventurers reached, on the 14th of June, **the main stream of the Mississippi**, the **1673** "Father of Waters." For many a league the river A.D. flowed through the richest country they had as yet seen. They saw flowery meadows, forests of stately trees, and prairies dotted with countless herds of buffaloes. They passed the mouths of its great tributaries—the Illinois, the impetuous and turbid Missouri, the Ohio, the beautiful river—and were heartily greeted and hospitably entertained by the native tribes. When they reached the Arkansas River the Indians were not so friendly. There they received information that convinced them that the Mississippi did not, as they had at first hoped, flow towards the Pacific. Fearing that if they pursued their course to the Gulf of Mexico they would fall into the hands of the hostile Spaniards, they retraced their way. When they reached Chicago, Father Marquette remained to minister among the Miamis, and Joliet proceeded to Quebec.

16. M. Talon took active steps to assert the right of France to the **Hudson Bay Territory**. Both the English and the French laid claim to it, on the strength of the voyages of Cabot and Verazzani. Henry Hudson,<sup>1</sup> an Englishman, was the first who entered the Bay and viewed the awful desolateness of its rugged rock-bound coasts. He gave his name to the bay and strait. Other explorers—Buttons, Nelson, and Luxfox—

<sup>1</sup> *Henry Hudson*.—Born about 1560; made several voyages in search of a north-west passage; on the last, rediscovered Hudson Bay (1610); on his way home, some of his crew mutinied, and forced him, his son, and the sick and

frost-maimed into a small boat, which was cut adrift, and was never more heard of (1611). The River Hudson (New York) was also named after this navigator, who discovered it in one of his earlier voyages.

followed him, and gave their names to certain harbours and ports, but made no settlement. In 1656, M. Bourdon **took possession of the country** in the name of the King of France, and opened up a trade with the Indians. Seven years afterwards two renegade Frenchmen—Grosellière and Radisson—conducted a party of Englishmen, by way of the River Nemisceau, to the southern extremity of St. James Bay, where the expansive sheet of the main bay is contracted. There, at the mouths of the rivers now called Rupert, Moose, and Albany, forts and trading-posts were established.

17. In pursuance of the instructions given by the Intendant, to find a short route to Hudson Bay by the Saguenay, **1671** Father Albanel, with M. de Simon and M. Denys—A.D. ascended to the source of that river in the Lake St. John. They encamped all winter by its borders, and made friends of the wandering tribes. When spring came, they explored Lake Mistissin, and descended the River Nemisceau to its mouth. Delegates from a dozen tribes assembled at the point where it discharged itself into the bay; and in their presence Father Albanel took formal possession of the territory.

18. About this time the French established themselves more firmly than they had hitherto done in **Newfoundland**. After the death of the brave Sir Humphrey Gilbert, the English neglected the settlement of the island for many years. Their vessels, in common with those of the French, the Italians, the Spaniards, and the Portuguese, frequented its coasts for the cod-fishing. In 1610, the "Company of London and Bristol Adventurers and Planters" was formed. Among its distinguished members was the famous philosopher, **Francis Bacon**.<sup>1</sup> John Guy, acting on their behalf, founded a settlement at Conception Bay in 1616. This Company, like other famous companies of those days, promised a great deal more than it performed. Five years afterwards the population of this settlement num-

<sup>1</sup> *Francis Bacon*.—Born 1561, died 1626. In 1618 he became Lord Chancellor; but a few years afterwards he was charged with corruption in his high office, was degraded and heavily fined, but was afterwards pardoned.

His fame as a writer, and as the "Father of Experimental Philosophy," rests on his great works, the *Novum Organum*, the "Advancement of Learning," and the "Essays." Of these works the "Essays" are the most popular.

bered sixty-two souls, of whom fifty-four were males. The cod-fishery was in a flourishing state; two hundred and fifty sail of English ships, great and small, were employed in it. At this time Captain Whitburn received a commission from the Admiralty that authorized him to impanel juries, and correct abuses and disorders committed by fishermen on the coast. He was the first of the "**Fishing Admirals**," as they were called, who governed the island from their vessel's deck. In 1622, Sir George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, obtained a grant of land in the south and east of the island—from St. Mary's Cape to the Bay of Bulls—and erected there the **Province of Avalon**. The English had then several settlements on the eastern coast, from Cape Race to Conception Bay, the principal of which was St. John's. The French occupied a post on the southern coast, at the Bay of Plaisance. This beautiful and commodious harbour was entered by a narrow strait, and defended by Fort St. Louis, which stood at the foot of a rocky height. The settlement remained in the hands of private individuals until the troubles in Canada awakened a fresh interest at Court in all the French possessions in North America. The King sent out Sieur de Poypys with a commission as his Lieutenant-Governor to take command of Plaisance.

19. The French now claimed all the North American Continent from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to the Pacific Ocean, and south to the Gulf of Mexico. The English occupied a stretch of country along the Atlantic coast, from Maine to Florida. They were hemmed in by the Alleghany Mountains. As yet they did not feel that their energies were cramped within these narrow bounds.

QUESTIONS. — 1. Who had selected De Mesy for the office of Governor-General? Why? How were his expectations disappointed? How did De Mesy threaten De Laval? What step did the latter take?

2. To what office was the Marquis de Tracy appointed? How did the quarrel of De Mesy and De Laval end?

3. What event caused great joy in Quebec? Why? What means were taken to replenish the colony? What excited the wonder of the Indians?

4. What measure did the Viceroy take to check the Iroquois? Why were the forts of little use?

5. What led many of the Iroquois to seek for peace? Which tribe held aloof? How did De Chazy die? How was his death revenged? On what did the Viceroy then resolve?

6. With what force did he advance against them? What bravado did the French display? How did the Mohawks escape? What damage did the French do?

7. What forced the expedition to return to Quebec? For what was the Viceroy blamed? Who returned to France with him? Who was the new Governor-General?

8. Against whom did the Mohawks turn their arms? Whom did they ask to be sent to them? Why did certain persons in France doubt the efficacy of missions to the Indians?

9. Describe the expedition of Father Allouez. What two missions did he and Father Nicolas found?

10. To what did great attention then begin to be given? What objects had M. Talon in view?

11. What led to the formation of Charlesbourg and Louisbourg? Why did Talon place soldiers on the frontier?

12. What steps did Talon take to ascertain the mineral resources of Canada? What was the result?

13. What causes of complaint had Talon against Courcelles? To what did he attribute the unwillingness of the Jesuits to Frenchify the young Indians? What edict did he obtain from the King? Whom did he take to Quebec when he returned from France?

14. For what were active measures then taken? Where did a general assembly of Indian delegates meet? What took place there?

15. Of what river did the Indians tell Perrot? To whom was the expedition in search of the Mississippi intrusted? What route did they take? Describe their journey.

16. What territory was Talon anxious to secure for France? What other power claimed it? Who had taken possession of it in 1656? What footing had the English obtained there?

17. Whom did Talon send to the Hudson Bay Territory? By what route? Describe the scene at the mouth of the Nemiseeau.

18. Where, about this time, did the French establish themselves more firmly than before? Who was the first of the "Fishing Admirals"? Where were the English and the French settlements respectively? Whom did the French King send out as Lieutenant-Governor of Plaisance?

19. What portions of North America were at this time claimed by the French and by the English respectively?

## CHAPTER XIV.

## THE MISSISSIPPI.

1672 to 1685 A.D.

Firm rule of M. de Courcelles.  
 The Fort at Cataracoui.  
 Count Frontenac.  
 M. Duchesneau, Intendant.  
 Sieur la Salle.  
 The *Griffin* on Lake Huron.

Salle reaches the mouth of the Mis-  
 sissippi—His sad fate.  
 Frontenac in disgrace.  
 Governor Dongan of New York.  
 M. de la Barre.  
 The Bay of Famine.

1. CANADA, under the rule of M. de Courcelles, continued to enjoy **rest from war**; but it required all his vigilance and vigour to preserve it in that happy state. He acquired a great ascendancy over the Indians by the haughty resolution with which he enforced his commands, and by the justice of his dealings with them. He promptly met the first threat of danger. He heard that the Iroquois were intriguing with the Ottawas to induce them to carry their peltry to New York. Fearing that the commerce of the country would be ruined, he ascended the River St. Lawrence in a bateau, and confronted them in their own country. He succeeded in putting a stop to their scheming, but so impaired his health that he demanded his recall to France.

2. The late influx of emigrants had let loose some bad characters in the colony. Three soldiers **waylaid a Mohawk chief**, who was carrying a number of valuable beaver skins. They gave him too much brandy, and then robbed and murdered him. Three other Frenchmen treated six Mahingans in a similar manner. These crimes inflamed the Indians, and Canada trembled on the verge of a desolating war. The officers of justice traced the murder of the chief to the three soldiers. M. de Courcelles called on the Iroquois to send deputies to meet him at Montreal. After showing them that it was their interest to remain at peace, he commanded the culprits to be beheaded in their presence. This prompt stroke of justice satisfied them; and the Mahingans were pacified

by a promise that the murderers of their people would receive a like punishment. Shortly afterwards the Senecas suddenly attacked the Pottawattamies, and took a number of prisoners. M. de Courcelles made a fiery and imperative demand for their instant restitution. The Senecas fiercely declared that they were not the vassals and slaves of Ononchio, and then sent him a few of the captives. He pretended to be satisfied, for he knew it would be dangerous to press that fierce nation too hardly.

3. **The labours of the missionaries** in the Five Cantons produced some good results. Among the Mohawks a band of neophytes displayed great fervour. The Superior, fearing that they would be exposed to danger from their own people, removed them to Prairie de la Madelaine, opposite to Montreal. M. de Courcelles the more heartily approved of this step, as he hoped that, in the event of war, they would be a check against the inroads of their pagan brothers.

4. The condition of the Indians, on the whole, was not improved. The poor red men in Canada dwindled away. Brandy and the small-pox made woful havoc. Whole tribes in the north were swept away. At Tadoussac and Three Rivers, where hundreds had been wont to assemble, only a few wretched individuals came to trade. **The Iroquois**, having exterminated the Andastes, grew restless for want of employment for their arms. M. de Courcelles, fearing that sooner or later they would break the peace, conceived a scheme to keep them in check. He invited their chiefs to meet him at Cataracoui, at the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario. The great calumet was passed from mouth to mouth, and the tree of peace was planted. After making gracious speeches and handsome presents, he told them it was his intention to **build a fort** there, so that they might come and trade more conveniently with the French. They were delighted with the project, and expressed a hope that it would be soon completed. It did not strike them at first that the Governor-General would throw in soldiers when the fort was completed, and that, instead of its being a favour, it was meant to be a menace. De Courcelles returned to Quebec, and met **Count Frontenac**, who had been sent out to relieve him. The new

Governor-General heartily adopted his scheme, and gave instant orders for the construction of the fort at Cataracoui. When completed, it was called Fort Frontenac. This name was also given to the great lake.

5. **Louis de Buade, Count de Frontenac**, was a nobleman of high birth and powerful family connections. He was grandson of a friend and comrade of Henry IV. His spirit was as lofty as his birth. There were some strange contradictions in his character. He was regular in his life, and devoted in his religious duties, and he was adored by the people for his acts of kindness; but he was imperious, jealous, violent, and vindictive. He possessed the power of commanding men in times of difficulty and danger, but could not command his own temper. He was actuated by a desire to promote the public good, and gave his countenance to all schemes for the extension of the power of France in North America. He was opposed to all commercial restrictions, and was disposed to allow the people some voice in the management of their local affairs. If everybody, from the bishop to the bailiff, had bowed submissively to his will, matters might have gone on pretty smoothly. M. Talon would not submit to his imperious manners, and demanded his own recall. Thereafter Canada began to languish.

6. Count Frontenac soon raised a **great turmoil**. He embroiled himself with the Bishop. He favoured the Recollets, and opposed the Jesuit missionaries. He countenanced the liquor traffic, contending that it was necessary to permit it in order to gain over the Indians, and that the evils growing out of it had been very much exaggerated. Its prohibition had, he held, been made a handle for persecuting those who opposed the domination of the priesthood. He threw Father Fenelon into prison, because he dared to preach against his acts.

7. **With M Duchesneau**, the new Intendant, he was soon at open and violent war. He was exceedingly jealous of the powers intrusted to that officer, who, as President, kept in his possession the book in which all Acts of the Council were registered, and who on every subject that was discussed gave the final judgment. The Count was not content with his position as head of the Council, but he strove to invest in himself all its powers. In the spirit of his King, Louis XIV., he was

disposed to say "that the Council was himself." M. Duchesneau, as fond of power, and nearly as self-willed as the Count, refused to make the slightest concession. The lengths to which the Count carried his violence grieved even his warmest partisans in the colony, embarrassed his friends at Court, and drew forth a remonstrance from the King.

8. At this time a young gentleman adventurer, **Robert Cavalier, Sieur la Salle**, arrived in Canada, with his imagination aflame with the dream of finding a way to Japan and the East Indies by penetrating the western wilds of the continent until he reached a northern sea. He was formed for arduous adventure. He was intelligent, ambitious, and daring, and had been disciplined by the severe training of a Jesuit college. No difficulty could daunt, no disappointment could depress him. In Quebec he heard Joliet's tale of the discovery of the Mississippi. A great opportunity to accomplish the object of his desire seemed to present itself to him. He flattered himself that by descending the great river he would certainly reach the Gulf of Mexico, and by ascending its tributary the Missouri to its source he would find the north sea of which he was in search, or that fortune would meet him whichever route he took. He unfolded his project to Count Frontenac, and won his heart by offering to rebuild his favourite fort at Cataracoui of stone, and on a larger scale. Armed with letters of introduction to persons of interest at Court, he passed over to France. Through the influence of M. Saignelay, Minister of Marine, and of the Duke of Conti, he obtained a grant of the seigneurie of Cataracoui, and the exclusive privilege of commerce in the west, and unlimited liberty to make discoveries. With Chevalier Tonti, a veteran officer, and Father Hennepin, a Flemish Recollet, and thirty men, he returned to Canada.

9. For a year La Salle busied himself in clearing land, building forts at Cataracoui, building ships on Lake Ontario and above the Falls of Niagara, and trading with the  
**1679** Indians. On the 9th of August, with Father Henne-  
A.D. pin, he entered Lake Erie, on board the "**Griffin**," the first ship that had ever ploughed its waters. Traversing its length, he passed through the Detroit Strait into a beautiful lake, which he called St. Clair. A furious wind struck the

*Griffin* on Lake Huron. The sailors, dismayed by the storm, dropped on their knees; but the pilot swore at La Salle for enticing him to leave the ocean, which he had navigated safely for many a year, only to perish in a horrible lake. A calm came, and Michillimackinac was reached. Their voyage came to a close in the green bay of Lake Michigan. La Salle sent the *Griffin*, freighted with a rich cargo of furs, back to Niagara. **It was never seen afterwards.**

10. Chevalier Tonti went to live among the Illinois. The good-will of that people was necessary for the success of the enterprise. La Salle secured the commerce of the west and the great lakes by Fort Crevecoeur on the River Illinois, by fortified posts at St. Joseph and at Chicago, at Sault Ste Marie, at Michillimackinac and at Detroit, and by his remote forts at Niagara and Cataractou.

11. For two years La Salle, keeping his great project constantly in view, worked on encompassed by enemies. There were merchants in Canada who called him a creature of Count Frontenac, and who, envious of his trading privileges and of his success, attempted to destroy his credit. The Iroquois, instigated by the English at New York, invaded the Illinois country, and murdered his allies. His men murmured, mutinied, and attempted to poison him. But he bore a stout heart through all. He despatched Father Hennepin and M. Daccan to find the source of the Mississippi. They ascended as far as the 45th degree of north latitude. They were stopped by the beautiful falls, which the Father called "St. Anthony." There they fell among **the Sioux**, who held them captive a long time.

12. At length La Salle **launched his canoes** on Illinois River, and on the 11th of February entered the broad stream of the Mississippi. Sometimes receiving a friendly **1682** greeting, sometimes saluted by a shower of arrows, he **A.D.** passed the mouths of the Missouri, the Ohio, and the Arkansas, and through the country of the Chickasaws, Taencas, Natchez, and Quinipissas. As he descended, flat, dreary, marshy meadows, exhaling the miasma of rank vegetation, extended as far as eye could reach. On the 19th of March **he gained the mouth of the "Father of Waters."** He celebrated his im-

portant discovery by great rejoicings. He took formal possession of the country drained by the Mississippi, and named it **Louisiana**, in honour of Louis XIV. He then hastened to carry to Quebec the news of his success. His return voyage was very toilsome and dangerous, and he did not reach the capital until the spring of 1683.

13. La Salle was received with great distinction at Court. In the following year he sailed from Rochelle, with his nephew Moranger, and two hundred and eighty men, **to find the mouth of the Mississippi by sea**, and to found a settlement; but having altogether miscalculated its longitude, he sailed two hundred miles past it. Intense was his disappointment when he discovered his mistake. Misfortunes accumulated on his head. The ship bearing his chief supplies was wrecked in the Gulf of Mexico. The men grew mutinous. In exploring the interior of the country, a party of them, exasperated by privations and by the haughty temper of Moranger, **murdered** both nephew and uncle. Chevalier Tonti descended to the mouth of the Mississippi in expectation of meeting La Salle: he did not learn his sad fate until long afterwards.

14. For many years after La Salle's discovery, the French took no steps to establish themselves on the Mississippi. During his absence his patron fell into **temporary disgrace**. The King supported the Bishop, and prohibited the sale of liquors to the Indians. Count Frontenac was rebuked for attempting to centre all the powers of the Council in himself, and M. Duchesneau was censured for the strong temper he had displayed when opposing the Governor-General's pretensions. Both were recalled. M. de la Barre, an old soldier, and M. des Meules were appointed in their room. Pending their arrival, events took place that boded ill for the future peace of the colony.

15. Colonel Dongan was appointed Governor of New York in 1682, and he commenced to intrigue with the Iroquois, in order to divert the fur-trade to the English. A Seneca chief was murdered by an Illinois warrior, and all the Five Cantons rose in arms, to take revenge on the tribes in the west friendly to the French. Count Frontenac invited the Iroquois to send delegates to Cataracoui, with the view of settling the quarrel peaceably. Incited by Colonel Dongan, who wished to break off

all negotiations, the Onondagas sent him word that he must come to the Chouagen River if he wished to speak to them. Frontenac then assumed his haughtiest air, and, in answer to their repeated insolence, formally declared that all the western tribes were under his direct protection, and that, if the Iroquois had anything to say to him, they must come to Montreal, where he would await them for a stated time. This proud bearing seemed to have an effect, for shortly afterwards a deputation of chiefs went to Montreal to confer with the Count. They made fair promises to keep peace with all his allies, and departed loaded with presents, and satisfied that they had amused Ononchio.

16. **M. de la Barre, the new Governor-General**, found Canada in a state of great disquietude. A grand Council, composed of every person of note and position in the colony, met in Quebec, to consult with him on the best measures of defence to be taken. Acting on its unanimous advice, he made an urgent appeal to the King for three hundred soldiers, and for thirteen hundred labourers to till the soil, while the Canadians were left free to do military duty. He also prayed his majesty to make such representations to the English Court as would deter Colonel Dongan from aiding the Iroquois. The "Council of Notables" was convinced that Canada could not exist unless they were completely humbled. In answer to his petition, the King sent De la Barre **two hundred men**, and an assurance that Dongan had been instructed to forbear from hostilities. The aid was insufficient, and the neutrality imposed on the Governor of New York did not prevent him from giving secret encouragement to the Five Nations.

17. The Governor-General, not feeling confident that he could crush his enemies, **made overtures of peace**. The wily savages were very willing to send their deputies to smoke the great pipe with the French at Cataracoui; but their insincerity was made too apparent by their acts to deceive any one but De la Barre. His policy was very generally condemned, and people about him said to one another that old age had made him credulous. The course he pursued was calculated to excite the contempt of the Iroquois, who attributed it to a consciousness of weakness. The Onondagas, Cayugas, and Oneidas amused him by entering into separate treaties of peace with

him. De la Barre then flattered himself that he would be able to attack the Senecas alone, and crush them. That "nation" had made itself particularly obnoxious to the French and to their allies the Illinois. A force of nine hundred soldiers, militia and Indians, was raised. De la Barre lingered so long on the way that much of his provisions was consumed before he reached the enemy's country. He crossed Lake Ontario, and encamped by a bleak cove, which the Frenchmen, in memory of their miseries, called **the Bay of Famine**. There De la Barre still lingered, while sickness and death wasted his force.

18. At this juncture the fortune of Canada trembled in the balance. If the Five Nations had united their forces, they could have destroyed its feeble guard. Governor Dongan, luckily for it, alarmed their proud spirit by an act that plainly showed that he considered them English subjects. He caused **the arms of the Duke of York** to be affixed to the cabins of their principal bourgades. The Jesuit missionaries used this act as an argument to convince the Iroquois that it was not their interest to drive the French from Canada; for, if the English became sole masters, they would not long be a powerful people. The astute savages saw the danger of allowing either English or French to become the dominant power.

19. All the "nations" adopted the cause of the Senecas as their own. Their deputies visited the French camp, and bore themselves as men who knew their power. M. de la Barre received them in state. He sat in his easy-chair, surrounded by his officers and the Indians. He told the deputies that he had come to make peace; but he threatened them with destruction if they persisted in their perfidious courses. The chiefs, perceiving the weakness of the French, listened scornfully. **Garrangula**, the Seneca orator, after gravely walking five or six times around the circle, faced De la Barre, and said that he saw a great captain who spoke as if he were dreaming; who spoke of his having come to smoke the great pipe with the Senecas, but Garrangula knew that he would have knocked them on the head if sickness had not weakened the arms of his soldiers. De la Barre was intensely mortified at this sarcasm. He demanded that the Senecas should refrain from warring against the Illinois. "**Not while a**

warrior of either nation remains alive," was the bold reply that crimsoned with rage the faces of the French officers. The deputies would only promise that their people, when fighting with the Illinois, would not "drop the hatchet on the head of any Frenchman." They demanded the instant departure of the French from their country as the preliminary condition to their signing a treaty of peace. M. de la Barre complied with the arrogant request. The mortification of the French officers at the ignominious termination of the campaign was made more intense by the arrival, soon after, of Captains Montorlier and Desnos with a reinforcement of troops. M. de la Barre was recalled the following year. The report of the peace he had made caused an unfavourable impression at Court. No one in Canada believed that it would be of long continuance.

QUESTIONS.—1. How did De Courcelles preserve peace in Canada? How did he check the Iroquois?

2. What crimes, perpetrated by Frenchmen, inflamed the Indians? How did De Courcelles pacify them?

3. Which of the Mohawks were removed to Prairie de la Madelaine? Why? Why did De Courcelles approve of the step?

4. What was the condition of the Indians generally? Why did the Iroquois grow restless? What plan did De Courcelles form for keeping them in check?

5. Sketch the character of Count Frontenac. What was the state of Canada during his administration?

6. What was Frontenac's quarrel with the Bishop? What were his views regarding the liquor traffic?

7. Who was the new Intendant? What was the cause of Frontenac's quarrel with him? How did the Count suffer for his violence?

8. What young adventurer about this time arrived in Canada? What great project did he form? How did he win Frontenac's heart? What success had he in France?

9. How did La Salle busy himself after his return to Canada? Where did he then go? What became of the *Griffin*?

10. How did La Salle secure the

commerce of the great lakes and of the west?

11. What great difficulties encompassed La Salle? What befell Father Hennepin and M. Daccan?

12. When did La Salle reach the Mississippi? Describe his voyage down the river. When did he reach its mouth? What name did he give to its bed?

13. What expedition did La Salle undertake the following year? What was his sad fate?

14. How did the quarrel between Frontenac and Duchesneau terminate? Who were their successors?

15. What brought the French once more into collision with the Five Cantons? How did Frontenac deal with them?

16. What advice did the "Council of Notables" give De la Barre? What was the result?

17. What policy did De la Barre resolve to adopt? What was thought of it? Whom did he resolve to attack? Where did his men endure great miseries?

18. What act of Colonel Dongan's excited the jealousy of the Iroquois?

19. Describe De la Barre's meeting with the deputies of the Iroquois. What did they demand as a preliminary of peace? What intensified the mortification of the French officers?

## CHAPTER XV.

## THE AGONY OF CANADA.

1684 to 1689 A.D.

Marquis de Denonville.  
Treaty of Neutrality.  
Seizure of Iroquois Chiefs.  
The Senecas punished.  
Pestilence.  
Intrigues of Governor Dongan.

Cataracoul besieged.  
Kondiaronk "the Rat."  
Peace killed.  
M. de Callières in France.  
The Massacre of Lachine.  
Hudson Bay.

1. M. DE LA BARRE was succeeded by the **Marquis de Denonville**, an accomplished cavalry officer. With him came **M. de Callières**, Governor of Montreal,—a better soldier France never sent to Canada. The new Governor-General was not long in the country before he saw the dangers that threatened it from without and from within. He concluded that it was impossible to conciliate the capricious Iroquois, to win them over entirely, to make Frenchmen of them, as he had been instructed to attempt. A Frenchman readily became an Indian, but an Indian never became a Frenchman. The numbers of young men who adopted the savage life brought opprobrium on the French character. Royal Edicts were launched in vain against the "**Runners of the Woods.**" By their reckless, vagabond conduct, they injured the trade and weakened the military force of the colony. The evils resulting from their wild course of life caused the Governor-General much anxiety.

2. With the aid of soldiers from France, the Canadian militia, and the friendly Indians, **De Denonville resolved to humble the Senecas.** The time appeared favourable. There was perfect peace now between the Crowns of France and England. The Duke of York, as James II., had succeeded his brother Charles, "the merry monarch." He concluded with Louis, his magnificent friend, a **Treaty of 1687 A.D. Neutrality**, by which the two Kings agreed that perpetual peace should subsist between their colonies in North America. National antipathies and commercial jeal-

ousies, however, could not long be restrained by such an agreement. It did not prevent Dongan from endeavouring to thwart the policy of the Governor-General.

3. While De Denonville made vigorous preparations for war, he all the time professed anxiety for peace. In pursuing this course, he, acting on the command of the King, who wanted slaves to man his galleys, was guilty of treachery. He took advantage of the implicit faith that the Iroquois reposed in the missionaries. Without disclosing to them his object, he required the Fathers to persuade **certain of the first men** to visit him at Cataracoui. When the chiefs were in his power, he caused them to be seized, and, loaded with irons, **to be shipped off to France.** It was an act both impolitic and cruel. It destroyed faith in French honour, and aroused the Iroquois from the sloth into which they were falling, to recommence their warfare. Before intelligence of the perfidy reached their cantons, De Denonville arrived at the mouth of the Genessee with a force of two thousand men in two hundred bateaux. On the same day, (the 10th of June), M. Duvantye, Commandant at Michillimackinac, met him with a band of Frenchmen, Hurons, and Ottawas. The Indians drew auguries of success from this happy rencounter.

4. The united force then marched through the country of the Senecas. Unopposed it passed through two deep and dangerous defiles. When it emerged into the more open country, and was within pistol-shot of the chief bourgade, **eight hundred Iroquois** rose from their coverts and opposed its advance. Two hundred stole through the woods and fell on the rear of the French advance guard. Attacked on both sides, the regular soldiers, unaccustomed to forest warfare, fell into confusion. The Canadians and Indians remained firm, and gave them time to recover their coolness. After some brisk firing, the Iroquois broke and fled in all directions through the woods, leaving forty-six dead and sixty wounded warriors behind. The Ottawas, who had shown less bravery than the other Indians in the battle, mangled and tortured the dead and wounded with fearful ferocity when it was over. For ten days the French remained in the country. Though they ravaged it all around, they took no prisoners, for all the inhabitants had fled

to the eastern cantons. The principal bourgade was burned to ashes, over a million bushels of corn were destroyed, and an enormous number of hogs killed. Sickness broke out among the invaders, the allied Indians grew impatient to return home, and so De Denonville marched west to the River **Niagara**. There he caused a fort to be built, and left a hundred men to garrison it. He had done the Senecas grievous harm, from which they never fully recovered. When they returned to their desolated country, famine and pestilence swept them off in great numbers.

5. During the summer Canada was visited by **small-pox**. It made victims in every household, and committed fearful ravages among the domiciled Indians. Canada, in its time, had experienced great suffering, but it had never passed through darker days than those that now descended on it. The chastisement inflicted on the Senecas united all the Five Nations **to revenge it**. Like packs of famished wolves, bands of warriors spread themselves over the settlements. The habitans dwelling on the southern shore of the St. Lawrence were held in a state of siege; in every seigneurie there was a fortified enclosure, to which, with their household movables and cattle, they fled for safety. When they went to work in the fields, bands of armed men kept watch on the skirts of the woods for the savages who might be lurking there.

6. **Governor Dongan** encouraged the Iroquois to maintain a hostile attitude towards the French, and instructed them to listen to overtures of peace except on the terms dictated by himself, —namely, that the Governor-General should restore to liberty the chiefs whom he had sent to France, that he should raze the forts at Cataracoui and Niagara, make good the damage he had done the Senecas, and restore the Christian Mohawks at Sault St. Louis to their nation. A thousand warriors assembled in the chief bourgade of the Onondagas, as if determined to force the French to accept those hard terms. Through the influence of Father de Lamberville, the Onondagas were induced to send deputies to Montreal to treat with the Governor-General. Five hundred warriors insisted on accompanying them. Arrived at Cataracoui, the deputies demanded that the Commandant, M. d'Orvilliers, should send an officer to accom-

pany them. So, with Lieutenant la Perelle they descended to Lake St. Francis, where the deputies found another band of Iroquois as numerous as their own escort. They were now left to go to Montreal alone. In the presence of De Denonville, Haaskouan, their orator, spoke proudly. Much as he loved Ononthio, he said, he could hold out to him no hope of peace unless the terms dictated by "**Corlear**" were accepted. But the Governor-General was not to be brow-beaten by braggadocio. He had several Onondaga prisoners. Giving them their liberty, he confided to one the conditions on which he was willing to treat with his nation, and then politely bowed out the deputies.

7. In the meantime the impatient Iroquois had **blockaded Fort Cataracoui**, killed all the cattle in the fields, and burned all the hay by shooting into it arrows tipped with burning tow. When the Governor-General's envoy ascended to Lake Ontario, he saw a **French barque** surrounded by hundreds of canoes. Two, filled with the most daring warriors, made a dash to board it. Several shots from its swivel gun scattered the whole flotilla; and a favourable wind springing up, bore the vessel safely to Fort Niagara.

8. The Indians never kept long to one course of action. Their capricious temper caused those who dealt with them much anxiety. At one time they would be all eager for war; then, on a sudden, they would grow cool and seek for peace. The Iroquois now showed a disposition to treat with the Governor-General on his own terms. The Onondagas, Oneidas, and Cayugas sent delegates to Montreal. [A truce was agreed to,] on condition that hostilities should cease at once; that the Mohawks and Senecas should join with the other nations, and that all the Indian tribes friendly to the French should be included in the treaty; that the Iroquois should allow Cataracoui to be revictualled; and that the Governor-General should raze Fort Niagara. [The delegates left hostages behind, and departed with a promise that accredited ambassadors should be sent to conclude the **treaty of peace**.]

9. A new danger sprang up to harass M. de Denonville. The friendly Indians heard of the proposed peace with displeasure. They said that the French had sacrificed their allies to save

themselves; and that the Iroquois would take advantage of the peace to make war upon them. The Hurons of Michillimackinac descended to Cataracoui in expectation of war. When M. d'Orvilliers told Kondiaronk, their chief, that there was a truce, and that the wisest course he could take was to return home at once, "**the Rat**" (as he was surnamed) listened gravely, and departed without saying a word. [He had heard, however, that the ambassadors of the Five Nations would descend the River Chouagen on their way to Montreal.] So he and his warriors lurked about the Bay of Famine, and fell upon, and after brief fight, captured them.] The Rat then proceeded alone to Cataracoui, and spoke mysteriously to the puzzled Commandant, saying that they had **killed the peace**, and he should like to see how Ononthio could get out of the scrape. He then hastened away to his prisoners. They asked him indignantly why he had so rudely stopped them on the errand of peace. With well assumed surprise he pretended to be utterly ignorant of their mission, and said that it was the French themselves who had set him on. To prove his sincerity, he released them, with the exception of one whom he kept to replace a Huron who had been slain in the skirmish. Kondiaronk then journeyed with all speed to Michillimackinac, and reached it before the news of the truce arrived. He delivered up his prisoner to the Commandant as one who had been taken in regular battle. In vain did the unfortunate Iroquois, when taken to the place of execution, protest that he was an ambassador. When he screamed out about the peace, the Rat gravely shook his head, and said that fear of death had turned the prisoner's brain. [When his victim lay dead, the crafty wretch went away and secretly released an Iroquois chief who had long lain in bondage. He spoke in terms of indignation of the sacrilege committed on the sacred person of an ambassador of peace, and told him to fly to his country and warn his people against the treachery of the French.]

10. [These machinations had their effect.] Governor Dongan, however, had as much to do with killing the peace as the Rat. He maintained that the Governor-General had no right to enter into treaties with the Iroquois, who were British subjects, without his intervention. It was not difficult for him to create

suspicion in the mind of that capricious people, that the French in seeking peace were merely meditating some act of treachery. Dongan, who had not acted to the spirit of the treaty of neutrality, was now recalled. His successor, Governor Andros, very soon intimated to M. de Denonville that peace could only be secured on the terms Dongan had dictated.

11. About this time M. de Callières passed over to France. He was indignant that the peace of so grand a country as Canada should be at the mercy of a "**handful of savages,**" who, he believed, were incited to war by the English for the purpose of destroying its trade. Both he and De Denonville agreed in thinking that the presence of French and English on the American Continent was incompatible with peace. He laid before the King a scheme by which he proposed to seize on Albany and **New York**, which was then an unfortified town, containing only four hundred inhabitants capable of bearing arms.

12. While Canada had been struggling for its existence, a great event had transpired in Europe. **The Revolution**<sup>1</sup> had taken place in England. The despot James had fled to France. Louis XIV. was preparing to do battle with the combined powers, and had declared war against England. He lent a willing ear to any scheme that would destroy her power in America. He recalled M. de Denonville in order to **1689** give him a command in one of his armies, and reappointed **Frontenac** in his place in Canada. The weight that the Count's high rank gave him, his experience in war, his resolute and daring character, and the intercession of his friends, induced the King to overlook the past.

13. M. de Callières' scheme was set aside for a project that combined an attack on New York by sea and by land. Two great war-ships and a number of lesser vessels were detached for the enterprise, and the naval command was given to M. de la Caffinière. It was resolved that the attack should be made in early autumn, that Caffinière should blockade the harbour

<sup>1</sup> *The Revolution.*—The great English Revolution of 1688, by which the Stuarts were finally driven from the throne. James II. was then succeeded by William III. (of Orange), whose foreign policy was guided by uncompromising hostility to Louis XIV. of France and all his schemes.

of New York, and hold himself in readiness to bombard the town as soon as he received certain intelligence that Frontenac and Callières, with all the available troops of Canada at their back, were in a position to coöperate with him. Much precious time was lost in fitting out the war-ships. Winds and waves were hostile. When the expedition reached the entrance of the Gulf of St. Lawrence a calm and a heavy fog descended on it. It was the middle of September before all the ships met at Chedabucto, the place of rendezvous, and the enterprise was abandoned.

14. M. de Denonville waited long and anxiously for the appearance of the peace ambassadors. On the 25th of August, while the Island of Montreal was hushed in repose, **twelve hundred Iroquois warriors** burst on the neighbourhood of Lachine, and massacred, in their first rage, men, women, and children. Happy were those who were killed by the first stroke. Hundreds of prisoners were tortured with appalling cruelty. The fiends spread themselves over the country, and advanced within a league of Montreal, burning houses and barns, wasting fields, slaying the people, and perpetrating the most abominable cruelties. On the first news of the invasion, the Governor-General ordered **M. de Robeyre**, with a small body of soldiers, to throw himself into Fort Roland, as he feared the enemy would seize upon it. Robeyre held out until his last man was killed, and himself was mortally wounded. The Iroquois remained on the island till the middle of October.

15. M. de Denonville was reduced almost to despair by this dreadful catastrophe. While the alarm and excitement were at their height, his successor arrived in Quebec. With a sense of infinite relief he handed over his command to old Count Frontenac. One of his last acts had been to command M. d'Orvilliers at Cataracoui to **abandon and destroy the fort** if relief did not come before November. The Count, considering the position of much importance, despatched an officer to countermand the order; but before he arrived the solid stone works were ruined, and he heard the report of the explosion. All the munitions of war were thrown into the lake.

16. During M. de Denonville's time the French gained

several successes in **Hudson Bay**.<sup>1</sup> The English in 1683 occupied all the trading posts on its coasts. In the following year, Radisson and Grosellière, who had helped to establish them, commenced to work against their interest. They returned to France, and were received with favour by the King. Through their instrumentality the **Company of the North** was formed in Canada, and they established a post which they named Fort Therese. It was not very long before mutual dissatisfaction grew up between them and the Company. The renegades again changed their allegiance, and transferred the fort to the English. The fur-trade of the Bay was very rich and profitable, and was a prize worth contending for. The Company applied to De Denonville for aid to regain possession of their post. He sent Chevalier Troyes, **M. d'Iberville**, and eighty Canadians. They marched on snow-shoes from Quebec, reached the further end of the Bay, and surprised, and took in succession, the three English forts on the Rupert, Moose, and Albany rivers.

17. When the treaty of neutrality was ratified (1687), the English and French monarchs intimated their desire that the trade should be free to both nations, and that Fort Nelson should be constituted a common port. National jealousies could not be restrained by royal decrees. When war was declared (1689), Frontenac received instructions to support the Company of the North. King William sent an officer to retake the forts captured by De Troyes. The English ships were caught in the ice in the Bay. D'Iberville, using stratagem, captured the greater part of the English force (which had landed), and compelled the officer to surrender. Freeing most of his captives, D'Iberville sailed with his prizes to Quebec.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the new Governor-General? What did he perceive to be impossible? Whose conduct increased the difficulties of the French Government?

2. Whom did De Denonville resolve to humble? Why was the time apparently favourable for his project?

3. Of what treachery was De Denonville guilty? What was done with the

chiefs? What were the effects of this conduct? With how many men did the Governor-General advance? Whom did he meet at the mouth of the Genessee?

4. Whose country did they then invade? How did the Iroquois attempt to surprise them? What was the issue of the battle? What damage did the invaders do in the country? What

<sup>1</sup> *Hudson Bay*.—"The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England Trading to Hudson Bay" obtained a charter from Charles II. in 1670.

forced them to leave it? What fort was built on their way back?

5. By what pestilence was Canada visited during the summer? How were the habitants on the right bank of the St. Lawrence harassed?

6. On what terms of peace did Governor Dongan advise the Iroquois to insist? Where were these terms pressed on De Denonville? How did he communicate his own terms?

7. What offensive measures had the Iroquois meantime taken? How did the French barque on Lake Ontario escape from them?

8. What temper of the Indians made them troublesome to deal with? On what conditions did they agree to a truce?

9. Whom did the news of this truce alarm? How did the Hurons "kill the peace"? Of what treachery was Kondiaronk guilty?

10. What position did Governor Dongan take up? Who succeeded Dongan?

What did he intimate to De Denonville?

11. What was M. de Callières' scheme for giving peace to Canada?

12. What great event had meantime transpired in Europe? Who was re-appointed Governor-General of Canada?

13. How was De Callières' scheme modified? How was the expedition retarded? When was Chedabucto reached? What then?

14. What terrible catastrophe occurred while the Governor-General was waiting for the peace ambassadors? What was the fate of the garrison of Fort Roland?

15. In what circumstances was Fort Cataracoui destroyed?

16. For what purpose was the "Company of the North" formed? What aid did De Denonville send them? What was accomplished?

17. What was the fate of the English expedition sent out to retake these forts?

## CHAPTER XVI.

## THE STRUGGLE COMMENCED.

1690 A.D.

Canada in extremity.  
The three war parties.  
Schenectady.  
The first Congress.  
Acadie.

Capture of Port Royal.  
Montreal threatened.  
New England Fleet off Point Levi  
The rage of Frontenac.  
*Kebeca liberata.*

1. **The great struggle** for the possession of the continent now commenced. It continued for sixty years. Though between the first and the final efforts of the French and the English there occurred a long interval of peace, the feeling of national enmity never lost its bitterness. At the commencement of the struggle, the mother countries were too much engaged in mutual war in Europe to take active part in the strife in America. For a long time the war between the colonies was a series of useless attacks and counter attacks and cruel frontier skirmishes.

2. M. de Denonville left Canada in a more distracted state than that in which he had found it. Count Frontenac had now an opportunity to display his great powers and the better qualities of his character. He had been well advised by his friends at Court to curb his temper. It was no time to indulge selfish interests, or to give way to jealousy and suspicion, for Canada appeared to be on the point of a collapse. From Quebec to Montreal the people were almost paralyzed by terror; the French had no hold on the country west of Lake St. Louis. After the destruction of the fort at Cataracoui, the people in the settlement around it fled to Montreal. The fort at Niagara was deserted. In the west, the Indians dwelling by the great lakes derided the military power of the French and contemned their allegiance, and made overtures to the triumphant Iroquois. The Count had the great task set before him to restore security to the colony and redeem the honour of the French arms. He was well stricken in years, but though over three-score and ten, his vigour was unabated.

3. After the miscarriage of the expedition against New York, M. de Callières submitted a second scheme for its capture. Louis was too much engaged with war in Europe to send men and ships to America. He counselled Frontenac to remain on the defensive; and instructed the inhabitants to abandon all the detached settlements and gather in contiguous villages, for mutual defence against the Iroquois. The royal mandates were totally disregarded. The habitans could not, like the peasants in old France, confine themselves within a narrow space; the nature of the country and the necessities of trade forbade them. The fiery old Count **would not remain on the defensive.** He knew that if he did not attack the New Englanders they would attack him, and he determined to strike the first blow. Besides, he felt compelled to do something to win back the respect of the savages for French prowess.

4. In January, Count Frontenac despatched **three war parties**, from Montreal, Three Rivers, and Quebec, to **1690** carry fire and sword through the English settlements.

**A.D. 1689** A number of the members of the "noblesse" in the paint and feathers of Indian braves accompanied them. Though they were only witnesses of the atrocious deeds committed by their savage allies, in the hearts of the English who suffered by them there was stored up bitter hatred to their nation and class. The party from Montreal, commanded by Lieutenants Mantel and St. Helène, had a general commission to ravage the colony of New York. After a harassing march through snow and shell-ice and water up to the knees, it arrived where two roads diverged right and left, to Schenectady and Albany. The French cried out to march to Albany, but the Indians refused, asking, with a touch of sarcasm, how had their brothers become so bold all of a sudden; so the road to the right was taken. At midnight of a piercingly cold Saturday the party rushed through the unguarded gates of **Schenectady** and with a horrid yell fell upon the inhabitants as they started aghast from their slumbers. A few soldiers threw themselves into a small fort, and defended it until they were all cut in pieces. For two hours the Indians tortured and murdered their captives. At the first dreadful warning many of the people fled half naked in the direction of Albany, and were

caught in a snow-storm : some perished, and others lost the use of their limbs. Leaving Schenectady in burning ruins, loaded with plunder, the party next day commenced its homeward march. Before it reached Montreal it was reduced to the direst distress ; but the survivors entered the town as victors, and were rewarded for all their sufferings.

5. Fifty men under M. Hertel left Three Rivers, and after two months' painful marching reached the village of Salmon Falls, on the eastern border of New Hampshire. The place was taken utterly by surprise. Its three forts were carried by assault ; houses, barns, stables were wrapped in flames ; and two thousand head of cattle perished in their stalls. Fifty prisoners were taken. Hertel sent them off to Quebec under guard, and descended to the sea-coast by the route of the Kennebec River. There he joined M. Portneuf, who had left Quebec with the third party. They besieged the fort that protected the settlement at Casco Bay. For three days the Commandant held out, but surrendered at discretion when the French were on the point of firing his palisades. Scenes of rapine and ruthless destruction were enacted. **A crowd of frantic prisoners** was given over to the tender mercies of the Indians. The surrounding country was laid waste. While the white flag of France floated from the fort, four vessels that had been sent from Boston to relieve the place appeared off the coast : when that sign of conquest was seen, they sheered off to carry back the news of the disaster.

6. In the meantime, Count Frontenac took measures to win back the tribes of the north-west to their French allegiance by flattery and presents. A grand convoy was despatched to Michillimackinac. On the way it was attacked by the Iroquois, who were defeated with loss. This was a fortunate encounter for the French, for it revived their credit among the people whom they were most anxious to propitiate. When Frontenac sent one of the prisoners taken in the fight to the Ottawas, they were delighted with the singular compliment paid to them, and burned the Iroquois warrior at the stake in order to show that they were determined to break off all negotiations with the Five Nations. The tribes dwelling by the great lakes sent their delegates to meet the convoy. To show

their respect for Ononthio, they despatched to Montreal, under guard of three hundred of their warriors, one hundred and ten canoes loaded with peltry, valued at 100,000 crowns. The success of this negotiation raised the spirit of the French. But soon the alarm of invasion spread from Montreal to Quebec.

7. The New England colonists had in the previous year determined to drive the French from New France. A valiant captain, Sir William Phips, went to England to seek assistance. King William had no forces to spare; he required all he had nearer home: for James II., resolved to strike for his crown, had landed in Ireland, and was then marching north to Derry.<sup>1</sup> After the murderous attack on Schenectady, a meet-

ing of delegates from all the British colonies was **1689** hurriedly called, and on the 1st of May the first Congress ever held met at Boston. The Governments of **A.D.** Massachusetts and New York then determined to essay the conquest of Acadie and Canada at their own risk and charges.

**1690** 8. Acadie, after it was restored to the French by the Treaty of Breda, was very much neglected. Its only posts of any consequence were the forts on the rivers Penobscot and St. John. Within a period of six years they were twice seized by New England adventurers, and twice restored to the French. About the year 1680 a settlement was again made at **Port Royal**, which became the capital of the province. It was subordinate to the Government of Canada, and Count Frontenac appointed M. Chambly the first Governor. The value of Acadie was well known to the Intendants, MM. Talon and Meules, who personally visited the country, and drew up reports of its condition and resources. With proper management it was capable of becoming the most valuable French colony in North America. The inhabitants devoted themselves principally to the fur-trade. They held close intercourse with the Indians,

<sup>1</sup> *Derry.*—Londonderry, on the River Foyle, in the north of Ireland. It was the stronghold of the Ulster Protestants, and was besieged by James II. after his dethronement in 1689. The siege lasted three months, during which the citizens, encouraged by the Rev.

George Walker, endured the worst miseries of famine. At last three ships from England broke the boom which the besiegers had stretched across the Foyle, and carried food to the starving garrison. The siege was raised the very next day.

and fell into reckless habits. They occupied the best marsh lands; acquired great skill in building dikes; and raised, without much labour, corn, hay, and cattle; but they totally neglected the rich uplands. The people of Massachusetts drew all the profits from the **rich fisheries** on the coasts. The Governors of Acadie, though the practice was expressly forbidden, issued licenses to them, and in this way increased their own miserably small salaries.

9. In the time of M. de la Barre, 1682-1685, an effort was made to effect a reformation in the affairs of Acadie. Missionary labours among the habitans and Indians were pursued with greater zeal. The claims of the New Englanders (who then established themselves at Pemaquid) to the River St. Croix as their line, were resisted, and strict orders were given to exclude them from the fisheries on the coasts. M. Bergier formed a company to prosecute the shore fisheries, and to bring the uplands into cultivation. Specimens of the grain, vegetables, and fruits raised on Acadian soil were sent to Paris for exhibition, and were much admired by competent judges. But the avarice of the Governors, who still sold licenses, and their jealousy, interfered with the operations of the company. The principal fishing-station of Bergier and his associates was at **Chedabucto**. They obtained a grant for twenty years of Cape Breton, the Island of St. John, and Magdalen Isles. At the time when the New Englanders threatened war, the population of Acadie did not exceed 900 souls. Its capital, Port Royal, was a small village defended by an insignificant fort, which had not a cannon placed on its batteries, and which was miserably in want of stores of all kinds.

10. In the beginning of May, a fleet of eight small vessels, bearing eight hundred men, and commanded by Sir William Phips, entered the basin of Port Royal. When the alarm-gun was fired in the fort to notify to the inhabitants that an enemy was in sight, only three men answered the summons. M<sup>r</sup> de Menneval, the Governor, had eighty men with him, but they could neither mount his cannon nor work them. Resistance was out of the question. When Sir William Phips sent him a summons to surrender, he assumed so bold a tone that he was granted most **honourable terms**. The New England General,

however, thought that he had been overreached when he saw the wretched state of the fort, and he repented his generosity. He soon found a pretext to break his word. Hearing that a few French soldiers had in a riotous manner entered the Governor's store and appropriated some articles, he declared that they had stolen the property of the English King and broken the terms of capitulation. He caused M. de Menneval and his garrison to be arrested and held as prisoners, and then sent them to Boston: he allowed his soldiers to plunder Port Royal, and compelled the inhabitants to take **the oath of allegiance** to William and Mary. Leaving an officer with a few men in the fort, he sailed off to pillage Bergier's station at Chedabucto, and to destroy the post on the harbour of the St. John.

11. On Phips's return to Boston, preparations were made for **the conquest of Canada**. A force of two thousand men were raised in Massachusetts, and thirty-five vessels, great and small, were collected in Nantucket harbour, for the capture of Quebec. Eight hundred New York volunteers, under Colonel Winthrop, marched from Albany to take Montreal. Five hundred Iroquois were expected to join them at Lac Sacrament. Count Frontenac held his forces in readiness, about the mouth of the Richelieu, to repel the invasion. He waited, but Winthrop did not come. At length a scout brought him intelligence that **small-pox** had broken out in the English camp; that three hundred of their Indian allies had been carried off by it, and that the rest had refused to advance further. The report was partly correct; but the real trouble among the English was the bad faith of the Iroquois, who had not joined them with the number of canoes and men that they had promised; so Winthrop had marched back to Albany. Frontenac was hardly assured that Montreal was safe before he was startled by the news that an English fleet was ascending the St. Lawrence. He hurried up to the post of danger, leaving the militia of Montreal and Three Rivers to follow him. He arrived in time to see that Quebec was placed in a posture of defence. The line of fortifications around the Upper Town was strengthened; a battery of eight cannons was thrown up on the height on the side of the Castle of St. Louis; the gates of the Lower Town were barricaded by barrels of stones and beams of wood.

12. On the 5th of October, the English fleet appeared off Point Levi. The following day Sir William Phips sent an officer into Quebec to demand, in the name of King 1690 William, its instant surrender. He was conducted A.D. to a chamber where sat the Governor-General and all the members of the Council. The officer read his haughty message, and when he had finished he placed his watch upon a table, to mark the hour he would consent to wait for an answer. The august assemblage was transported with rage. The fiery old Count was cut to the quick, and spoke angrily, inveighing against Sir William Phips as a dishonourable and dishonoured General, and a traitor to his liege lord, King James. A man of his quality, he exclaimed, was not to be insulted with impunity; he would give his answer by the cannon's mouth.

13. On receiving this rebuff, Phips ordered an attack on Quebec by land and water. Twelve hundred men, with six cannons, were landed on the low, marshy Beauport shore.<sup>1</sup> The St. Charles ran between them and the fortress. Count Frontenac, with the regular soldiers, was posted on the right bank of the stream; on the left bank the militia, behind bushes, boulders, and trees, kept up a galling fire on the invaders. In the evening of the 8th, four English ships sailed up the river and opened fire upon the town. Their canuonade did little execution, but the batteries on the height and on the shore tore up their planks and cut up their rigging. Next night they dropped down with the tide and were moored again in the basin.

14. The land force, under Major Whalley, remained inactive during the bombardment. The difficulty of marching and hauling cannon over boggy and miry ground was very great. The New Englanders were encompassed by invisible foes, who blazed away at them with deadly effect from their coverts; and they cried out, in their rage, that the French fought like cowards and savages, behind hedges and fences. On the 10th they made a desperate effort to cross the St. Charles, and advanced to its left bank, driving back the skirmishers. A body of Canadian militia made a sudden attack upon their flank, and threw them into confusion. They retired to their camping

---

<sup>1</sup> Beauport shore.—See Map, p. 214.

place. The evening closed in with rain and gloom. They were sick and half famished, and they ached all over from sleeping out, two bitterly cold nights, on the cold ground. The tocsin of the cathedral in Quebec rang out with startling vehemence. Imagining that some great danger was approaching them in the dark, they lost courage and rushed precipitately to their boats, leaving their cannon and ammunition behind. Sir William Phips, utterly discomfited, sailed away. A furious storm arose as he descended the St. Lawrence, and nine of his vessels sank amidst the waves, or were shattered against the rocks. On the 9th of November he entered the harbour of Boston with the remnant of his fleet. He had the inexpressible mortification of being the bearer of the report of his own defeat and disgrace.

15. The joy of the people of Canada over their deliverance was very great. In commemoration of the triumph of the French arms at Quebec, Louis XIV. commanded a medal to be struck. It bore this inscription:—**Francia in Novo Orbe Victrix; Kebeca liberata A.D. MDCXC.** The inhabitants mingled thanksgiving with their rejoicing, and erected in the Lower Town a chapel dedicated to “Notre Dame de la Victoire.”

QUESTIONS.—1. What great struggle now commenced? How long did it last? What for long was the nature of the war?

2. In what state did Frontenac find Canada on his return? What was the condition of the French power?

3. What was Louis's advice to Frontenac, and to the colonists? Was it followed? Why not?

4. How many war parties did the Count despatch against the English? Where did the first party march? What did it effect?

5. What did the second and third parties accomplish? What was done with the prisoners taken?

6. What tribes did Frontenac then endeavour to win back? What success attended his measures?

7. When and where was the first New England Congress held? What expedition was resolved on?

8. What causes retarded the pros-

perity of Acadie? Who drew the profits of its fisheries?

9. What effort was made in the time of De la Barre? What success had Bergier's Company?

10. What was the result of Phips's attack on Port Royal? On what pretext were the terms of surrender violated?

11. For what new scheme were preparations made at Boston? What caused the failure of Winthrop's expedition? What measures were taken to defend Quebec?

12. What demand did Phips make through one of his officers? How was it received?

13. What did Phips then order? Describe the attack by water.

14. What great difficulties did the land force encounter? Why did the attempt to cross the St. Charles fail? What disaster befell the expedition?

15. How was the French victory commemorated?

## CHAPTER XVII.

## THE BATTLE DRAWN.

1691 to 1698 A.D.

The Iroquois Chiefs.  
Frontenac's policy.  
Expedition against the Onondagas.  
Naval fight in the Bay of Fundy.  
Baron St. Castine.  
Fort William-Henry captured.

The Nachouac.  
Newfoundland and Hudson Bay.  
Peace of Ryswick.  
Death of Frontenac.  
M. de Callières.  
Marquis de Vaudreuil.

1. THE war continued. For seven years there was **perpetual skirmishing**. Boston again threatened Quebec; and Quebec in return threatened Boston. The Iroquois gave Canada no peace. In Acadie, Hudson Bay, and Newfoundland, French and English mutually harassed each other, capturing and recapturing forts, and destroying the fruits of each other's industry.

2. Count Frontenac, on his second coming to Canada, set his heart on winning the friendship of the Iroquois. The chiefs whom De Denonville had sent to France returned with him. They had been treated, not as slaves, but as guests. They had seen the "lions of Paris," and the splendours of the Court of Versailles.<sup>1</sup> But grander to them appeared the woods, the rivers, and the lakes of their own country, and dearer to them was its wild liberty. On the voyage out, Frontenac exerted his remarkable powers of pleasing, in order to win their confidence, so that, when they went back to their own people, they might induce them to make a firm and solid peace. He was the more confident that his diplomacy would be successful, as he flattered himself that the Iroquois really esteemed him. He had frequently invited their chiefs to his table; he had often met them in conference. The Indians, ever great respecters of the visible signs of power, were impressed by his proud bearing, and admired the splendour of his body-guard. They were

<sup>1</sup> *Versailles*.—A town 10 miles south-west of Paris, famous for its palace, completed by Louis XIV. in 1687, and other magnificent buildings.

flattered when they saw him arrayed like one of themselves, gravely moving in the measures of the dance, while singing his war song, after their fashion. But even among untutored savages self-interest was the main motive; compliments went for very little. It was their interest to prevent the tribes in the west from trading with the merchants of Montreal, and to oblige them to carry their peltry through their country to New York.

3. Count Frontenac was mortified when he found that all his diplomacy had been thrown away. He took stern measures. **1696** He collected at Lachine two battalions of regulars A.D. and militia, each four hundred strong, commanded by M. Callières and M. Vaudreuil, and a crowd of savages of every tribe friendly to the French. In bateaux and canoes the force ascended to Cataracoui and crossed the lake. Up both banks and in the stream of the narrow and rapid Chouagen the party advanced, until one evening an impetuous fall barred the way. Hundreds of torches were lighted, and threw a glare on the wild scene. **Soldiers and savages** rushed into the water, and lifting the heavy canoes, bore them above the obstruction. As they penetrated the country, they abandoned the course of the river and struck into the woods. At an opening they saw suspended from a tree **two bundles of rushes**, of four hundred and thirty pieces. This was a challenge, according to the Indian fashion, and signified that four hundred and thirty warriors awaited them to do battle. But when they advanced upon the great bourgade of the Onondagas, they saw it in flames, and found only a crowd of women and children. One old sachem, of over a hundred years, alone had refused to fly. As the Indians crowded around, mocking, he wrapped his robe about his shoulders, taunted them as slaves of the French, and died defiant of their tortures.

4. The country of the Onondagas was laid waste. Count Frontenac was urged by Callières and Vaudreuil to complete the work he had come to perform, by destroying the other cantons; but he refused. He thought he had done enough to humble the Iroquois, and so he returned to Montreal. **His enemies**—and he had many—said that he had stopped half way in his vengeance, because if he had given peace to Canada

by completely crushing her inveterate foes, the King would have withdrawn the regular troops; and his love of power and show, and concern for his own glory, were too strong to allow that step to be taken.

5. The condition of the colony called forth, from time to time, the remonstrances of M. Ponchartrain, the Minister of France. He attributed the troubles to abuses growing out of the **fur-trade**. The "Runners of the Woods" at the distant posts in the west fomented feuds among the Indian tribes, and involved the French in constant trouble. The old complaint was made that Canada was drained of its strength, and that its progress was retarded by the numbers of its young men who followed the wild life. The Minister argued that the cause of the hostility of the Iroquois was their jealousy at seeing the fur-trade drawn down the St. Lawrence instead of the Hudson, and that peace would be secured if that cause were removed. Count Frontenac was instructed to abandon all the trading posts west of Montreal. **Royal Edicts** were promulgated forbidding the inhabitants, under heavy penalties, from trading in the west; recalling the "Runners;" and commanding the people to settle closely together, and to devote themselves to agriculture. Frontenac resisted these Edicts. He thought they tended to diminish the glory of the empire, and to contract the bounds of the dominion over which he ruled. He persisted, against all counsel, in rebuilding his fort at Cataracoui. The Edicts against the fur-trade could not be carried out. There was not a family in Canada that was not interested in it. The King, on urgent representations, permitted a few forts to be maintained in the west. The result of the concession was that the fur-trade was pursued with greater activity than ever.

6. In Acadie, Newfoundland, and Hudson Bay, the course of the war turned **in favour of the French**. After the capture of Port Royal by Sir William Phips, the Government of Massachusetts was not long able to maintain a garrison there, though it continued to claim the right of possession. Acadie passed again into the hands of the French, and under the jurisdiction of the Governor-General of Canada. M. Villebon was appointed Lieutenant-Governor. He, considering that Port Royal was too much exposed to the attacks of New England cruisers, re-

moved his head-quarters to the St. John. The fort at its mouth had been destroyed by Phips, but the French had long possessed posts at the Nerepis and at the Jemseg, below Freneuse<sup>1</sup> or Grand Lake. For greater security, Villebon built a fort several leagues higher up the St. John, at the mouth of its tributary the Nachouac.<sup>2</sup>

7. Here, in this fastness of the wilderness, for seven years floated the white flag of France. Here Villebon was safe, at least from sudden attack. He had as much to fear from the freshets of spring, which flooded his fort, and piled great hummocks of ice against his palisades, as from the foe. His garrison might in winter sit round the blazing logs, and in summer doze in the shade, for the trained watch-dogs gave the alarm at the least sign of danger; and agile scouts at the mouth of the river brought him swift intelligence of the appearance of English ships in the Bay of Fundy. He held correspondence with the Governor-General in Quebec, and constant communication with the Indian village at Medoctec, where Father Simon taught his neophytes in peace and led them in war. At the Nachouac, the Abenakis from the Kennebec, the Canibas from the Penobscot, the Oupack Milicetes from the Grand Lake, and warriors of Medoctec and Madawaska, assembled to feast and dance and hold council with Villebon, and concoct schemes to destroy the New England settlements on the frontiers of Acadie that would give to war the aspect of midnight murder. Villebon was often visited by **Baptiste**, a noted privateer, who, after a successful cruise among the New England merchantmen, would bring his prizes into the harbour of St. John, and take his prisoners to the Nachouac for safe keeping. M. Bonaventure, the naval commander on the coasts of Acadie, brought him despatches from M. d'Iberville, a famous Canadian captain who was much employed in harassing the English settlements of Newfoundland and Hudson Bay.

8. The Government of Massachusetts, in 1692, built a stone fort at Pemaquid, east of the Kennebec, on the sea-coast. It was a strong quadrangle, with four towers, and at high tide was surrounded with water. The Abenakis viewed it with jealousy;

<sup>1</sup> Lake Freneuse.—See Map, p. 76.

<sup>2</sup> Nachouac.—The Nashwaak.

and the French, to propitiate their faithful allies, resolved to destroy it. The plan of attack was arranged by Villebon and D'Iberville.

9. On a June day two French frigates from Placentia<sup>1</sup> were anchored in the Bay of Fundy, in a fog. When the thick mist rose, they were descried by three small New England war sloops, under Captain Eams, that were making for the mouth of the St. John. As the *Newport*, the foremost craft, bore down on D'Iberville in the *L'Envieux*, the Frenchmen opened their ports and poured in a broadside, within musket range, that crashed in its timbers and brought its fore-mast tumbling over the deck. Its consorts sheered off and escaped amid the again descending fog. D'Iberville, with his prize, entered the harbour of St. John. Taking Villebon and a troop of soldiers aboard, he sailed for Fort William-Henry at Pemaquid.<sup>2</sup> When he reached Penobscot Bay, he was joined by Baron St. Castine and a band of Indians. This Baron was a notable example of the ease with which a Frenchman could adapt himself to savage life. Born a nobleman of Oleron in the Pyrenees, he accompanied his regiment, the Carignan Salières, to Canada in 1665. He afterwards settled on a peninsula at the mouth of the Penobscot; married, as one of his wives, the daughter of Madockawando, the great sachem of the eastern Indians. He acquired great ascendancy over the simple savages, who, in return for the presents he gave them, made him a free gift of their richest furs. In this way he acquired heaps of gold. The Lieutenant-Governor of Acadie often received instructions from the Minister of France to restrain him in his evil courses. But this interference had little effect on the old Baron.

10. M. d'Iberville, on the 14th of August, summoned Fort William-Henry to surrender. Captain Chubb, the Commandant, sent back a most valiant defiance. Besides the honour of his flag, he had a strong motive to defend his position to the last. A short time before, he had wantonly shot four chiefs whom the Abenakis had sent to him on a mission of peace. He knew the Indian nature too well not to fear their revenge.

<sup>1</sup> Placentia.—On the south coast of Newfoundland, 70 miles from St. John's. | <sup>2</sup> Pemaquid.—Between the mouths of the Penobscot and the Kennebec.

D'Iberville landed his cannon and bombs before the dawn of the following morning. Priest, soldier, and savage worked zealously, and by noon the cannon were mounted. The hearts of the New England soldiers began to sink when the great shells exploded in the square, and when they heard the fierce yells of the beleaguering Indians. They became thoroughly alarmed when Castine sent a messenger to inform the Commandant that he would not be able to restrain the fury of his savages if he persisted in a useless defence; but he promised to guard his men from vengeance if he promptly yielded. Influenced by the clamour of his soldiers, Chubb capitulated. All the garrison were liberated save four, who were delivered into the hands of the Indians, one for every chief who had been murdered; for D'Iberville was compelled to gratify their savage spirit of revenge. The walls and towers of Fort William-Henry were blown down.

11. The Government of Massachusetts, on hearing of the capture of the *Newport* in the Bay of Fundy, despatched seven vessels to cruise in search of the French frigates. D'Iberville, from Pemaquid, very nearly sailed into their midst, and only escaped by hugging the coast towards Mount Desert. Villebon reached the St. John in safety. The destruction of Fort William-Henry determined the New Englanders to take instant revenge. Colonel Benjamin Church, a noted partisan, with a flotilla of whale-boats full of armed men, put forth from Piscataqua, and ravaged the Acadian coasts from Passamaquoddy to Beaubassin. On his return up the bay he was superseded by an officer sent by the Government to meet him with two vessels, in order to make an attack on the fort at the Nachouac. Old Church was sorely displeased.

12. M. Villebon, timeously warned by his scouts of the threatened attack, looked to his defences, and summoned to his aid Father Simon and the warriors of the Medoctec. On the evening of the 18th of October the garrison assembled on parade, and the Governor, in a stirring speech, flattered their pride and aroused their courage. That night they slept **under arms**, warned by the restlessness of their watch-dogs, that seemed to scent danger. The night passed quietly. Early in the morning the alarm-gun was fired; and Villebon was called out of chapel

*Fort on Nachouac or Nashuak  
Site now occupied by Gibson Lathrop Co.  
building.*

by the report that strange sails were rounding the bend of the river. As soon as **the red flag** was distinguished, a brisk cannonade from the fort commenced. The vessels tacked about, and were brought to anchor behind a sheltered point of the left bank. The Nachouac stream was between the French and their foe, and they made no attempt to resist his landing.

13. The Medoctec warriors, lurking along the right bank, skirmished with hostile Indians who appeared on the left. When the New Englanders were heard cheering as they advanced through the woods, the French answered them by counter cheers. As soon as they came within range of the fort they hastily threw up side-works to protect themselves from the fire, and placed three cannons in battery. Evening closed on the besiegers without their having gained the least advantage. As they crowded around their newly lighted camp-fires, a discharge of grape-shot from the fort forced them to quench the flames, and they lay **without shelter** through the chill and dark October night. In the early morning they were saluted by a volley of musketry from the fort. When the French opened fire in earnest one of their guns was dismantled, and another was made useless. It was evident that the fort could not be taken by the fire of one disabled cannon across the stream. **Old Church** was in the worst of tempers, and would propose no bolder measures. Five officers and twenty men had fallen, and half the force were suffering from the effects of the previous night's encampment. When the shades of another evening fell the solitary cannon was dragged from the battery, and the New Englanders retreated to the point where their vessels were anchored, and lighted their camp-fires undisturbed. By noon next day they were past the Oromocto on their downward voyage.

14. After the capture of the fort at Pemaquid, M. d'Iberville sailed for **Newfoundland**. Before his arrival, a French fleet, under M. Brouillan, Governor of Placentia, bound for Ferryland,<sup>1</sup> chased a solitary **English man-of-war** into the Bay of Bulls.<sup>2</sup> Placing all his cannon on the broadside next the

*This attack failed*

<sup>1</sup> *Ferryland*.—On the south-east coast of Newfoundland, 35 miles from St. John's.

<sup>2</sup> *Bay of Bulls*.—On the east coast of Newfoundland, 12 miles south of St. John's.

enemy, the gallant English captain fought furiously, until overpowered by surrounding fire. He abandoned his vessel in flames. He was followed to the land and compelled to surrender. Brouillan destroyed Ferryland. D'Iberville joined him; and an attack was made by land on the settlements of the eastern coasts. Advancing through the woods from Ferryland, they fell on St. John's on the rear, plundered and burned it, and sent off the principal inhabitants to England. The others made their way to Carbonnear and Bonavista, which were the only posts left uninjured by the French.

15. M. d'Iberville next year encountered three small English ships amidst the drifting ice of Hudson Bay. He compelled them to strike their colours. A storm arose, and A.D. drove his vessels on the coast. In the pitchy dark one of his prizes was crushed against the rocks, and the English sailors escaped to Fort Nelson, only to fall again, with the place, into D'Iberville's hands. The French had now **possession of Hudson Bay**, and the command, for a time, of the rich fur-trade of that frozen region.

16. The war<sup>1</sup> was concluded by the **Peace of Ryswick**,<sup>2</sup> signed on the 20th of September. By the seventh article **1697** France and England mutually restored to each other all A.D. their possessions in North America which had changed hands during the strife. All the murder, the pillage, the wreck and the suffering of eight years, had decided nothing. The struggle was as far from settlement as ever.

17. **Count Frontenac died** next year, in his seventy-eighth year. His last act was a vigorous resistance to the claim put forth by the Governor of New York to English sovereignty over the country of the Iroquois. He passed away when these formidable foes seemed on the eve of placing themselves under the protection of France. On his second coming to Canada, he had found the French in a state of terror and prostration; he left them with the bounds of their territory unimpaired, and with a sense of security such as they had never before enjoyed.

<sup>1</sup> *The war.*—Called by the English in America, King William's War.

<sup>2</sup> *Ryswick.*—In the Netherlands, 2 miles south-east of The Hague. By

this treaty, to which England, France, Spain, Holland, and Germany were parties, William III. was acknowledged King of England.

18. M. de Callières was the next Governor-General. With great patience and prudence he succeeded in patching up a peace between the allied tribes in the west and the Iroquois. The final ratification of **the treaty** was made the occasion of a great ceremony. A wooden structure was erected in a plain on the Island of Montreal. As in a theatre, the Governor and his suite, and all the fashion and the beauty of the colony, sat in the boxes; while within the railed arena habitans, Coureurs du Bois, and Indian warriors, in motley and gaudy garbs, stood in groups or squatted on the ground. The orators of all the tribes that were parties to the peace addressed Ononthio, and presented their wampum belts. The mirth of the gay and fair assemblage broke forth in rippling laughter as some stately sachem rose to speak, with an old powderless peruke on his head instead of his native flowing hair and feathers. The council was followed by a grand feast.

19. **The peace between France and England** was of short continuance. Intelligence reached De Callières that England, Austria, Portugal, and other lesser powers, were leaguering themselves against Spain, France, and Bavaria. On the death of Charles II. of Spain, Louis XIV. proclaimed Philip of Anjou, his grandson, King. The claims of the Archduke Charles,<sup>1</sup> of the House of Hapsburg, were supported by the other side. War<sup>2</sup> was formally declared on the 15th of May. It is known as the War of the Spanish Succession. Through it the French and the English colonies were embroiled. De Callières died before active hostilities commenced. The King appointed the **Marquis de Vaudreuil** his successor, in answer to the prayer of the people of Canada.

QUESTIONS.—1. How long did the war continue? Where was it carried on?

2. Whose friendship had Frontenac set his heart on winning? What policy did he adopt towards them? By what was it frustrated?

3. What measures did he then take? Describe the advance of his forces.

4. Whose country was laid waste? What did Frontenac's enemies allege?

5. What Royal Edicts were issued? What rendered them necessary? How did Frontenac treat them? What con-

<sup>1</sup> *The Archduke Charles.*—He was second son of the Emperor Leopold, who was grandson of Philip III. of Spain.

<sup>2</sup> *War.*—Known in America as Queen Anne's War. In this war the

Duke of Marlborough gained his great victories:—Blenheim (1704), Ramillies (1706), Oudenarde (1708), Malplaquet (1709). It was terminated by the Treaty of Utrecht, 1713.

cession enabled the fur-trade to be actively pursued?

6. Who gained the upper hand in Acadie? Who was appointed Governor-General? Where did he remove his head-quarters? Why?

7. How long did the French hold the St. John? What made their position there a secure one? By whom was Villebon visited there?

8. What fort did the French resolve to destroy? Describe it.

9. Give an account of the naval fight in the Bay of Fundy in 1696. Sketch the career of Baron St. Castine.

10. Who was commandant of Fort William-Henry? What motive had he for holding out to the last? What led him to capitulate?

11. What did the Government of Massachusetts do on hearing of the capture of the *Newport*? What, on hearing of the fall of Fort William-Henry?

12. What preparations did Villebon make for receiving the attack? Where did the New Englanders land?

13. In what circumstances did they spend the first night? What took place the following day? How did the expedition end?

14. Where did D'Iberville sail for, after taking the fort at Pemaquid? Describe the conduct of the English man-of-war. What further damage did the French do in Newfoundland?

15. Where did D'Iberville go the following year? What success had he there?

16. When was the war concluded? By what treaty? What effect had its terms on the colonies of North America?

17. When did Frontenac die? What was his last public act? In what state did he leave Canada?

18. Who was the next Governor-General? What treaty did he succeed in concluding? Describe the ceremony at which it was ratified.

19. What was the cause of a renewal of the war? When was war declared? Who died before hostilities commenced? Who succeeded him?

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## PEACE AND WAR.

1703 to 1740 A.D.

Canada and New England.  
 Port Royal.  
 The Bostonians enraged.  
 The French destroy Haverhill.  
 Invasion of Canada checked.  
 Nova Scotia.  
 Annapolis Royal.

Canada again threatened.  
 The English Fleet shattered on the Egg  
 Islands.  
 The Treaty of Utrecht.  
 Internal condition of Canada.  
 Father Charlevoix.  
 Marquis de Beauharnois.

1. THE French in Canada were now in a more favourable position to sustain a conflict than they had previously been. Success in arms had made them more confident than ever of their own prowess. The insolence of the Five Nations was much abated. The politic measures taken to arouse their jealousy of the English induced them to lean towards the French, and to maintain a sort of neutrality in the war. Canada was relieved from the inroads of these terrible barbarians. Never again did they perpetrate such atrocities as have made the name of Lachine memorable in the annals of the colony.

2. **The English Colonies** were now far more wealthy and populous than Canada. They could bring four men into the field for every one Canada could muster. They were divided into several separate governments, which were jealous of one another, and they were ruled over by men not always capable of governing discreetly. The advantage that union would give them was early apparent. **A scheme of confederation** was about this time proposed by Colonel Francis Nicolson, who had been at different periods Governor of Virginia and of New York. It received the approbation of King William, who looked upon it as a measure well calculated to consolidate the military power of the colonies ; among their people it met with no favour.

3. Soon after the repulse of the New Englanders at Nachouac Fort, the French abandoned that place, and again made **Port Royal** the capital of Acadie. **M. Brouillan**, Governor of

Placentia, succeeded M. Villebon in 1700. The fort of Port Royal was built in the form of a regular square, with bastions of earth-work faced with sods and surrounded by high pickets. It had a fine position on rising ground on a peninsula formed by two rivers; it was protected in the rear by marsh land, in which were cut deep ditches. The earthen fortifications were often in want of repair. The importance of the place, and its exposure to attack, suggested to the Governor the necessity of rebuilding it of stone. That, however, was not done.

4. Brouillan was a brave man, but of a very irritable, despotic temper. In old Port Royal, where once the "order of the Good Time" reigned, **hatred and envy** prevailed. Watchful eyes noted, and ready pens described to the Minister of France, the failings of those in authority. The Governor, in self-defence, wrote also, to expose the jealousy by which his detractors were actuated. This system of scandal-mongering and mutual espionage was sufficient to breed distrust and destroy all social harmony.

5. On the outbreak of the war, the French privateers ravaged the coasts of New England. They even entered the harbour of Boston and cut out several vessels. On the other hand, Colonel Church, anxious "to do the enemy all the injury he could," ranged with his whale-boats from the Penobscot to the St. John, and crossed the Bay of Fundy to cut the dikes of the marshes of Minas and the throats of the cattle at Chignecto. Port Royal was several times threatened. The Government of Massachusetts **sent an expedition** under Colonel March to take it. So confident were the people of Boston of success, that they made preparations to celebrate the victory. Sickness weakened the New England forces as they encamped about Port Royal, and the place was strengthened by a body of militia from Canada; so Colonel March was constrained to withdraw from it. Dreading to face the citizens of Boston, who were raging from disappointment, he sailed into Casco Bay. He was commanded by the Government to return to Port Royal. On his refusal another officer renewed the attempt to capture the place, but **was defeated**.

6. M. de Vaudreuil took active measures of reprisal. A **council of war** was held in Montreal, at which the chiefs of

the Abenakis and of other friendly Indians were present. A course of "petite guerre"—of petty warfare—against the frontier New England settlements was inaugurated. Descending the River St. Francis, and advancing by a route almost impracticable, M. Rouville d'Hertel, with a band of a hundred and fifty French and a "tail" of savages, surprised and captured the village of Haverhill on the Merrimac. This foray aroused the countryside. At the call of the trumpet and the roll of the drum the people seized their arms, and rushed in a disorderly manner to cut off the retreat of the French. D'Hertel escaped, and carried his prisoners and spoils to Quebec.

7. The people of Massachusetts now resolved to conquer Canada. Two officers of merit—Colonels Nicolson and Vetch—energetically pressed on preparations. **Vetch** had long brooded over the project. A few years previously he had visited Quebec on a mission regarding an exchange of prisoners, and had found an opportunity to sound the most difficult passages of the St. Lawrence. He went to England, and by the forcible representations he made of the importance of the conquest, and of the ease with which it might be made, he induced the Imperial Government to promise aid.

8. On the first rumour of the **intended invasion**, M. de Vaudreuil, who had his forces assembled at Chambly to protect the head of the colony, resolved to anticipate it by an attack on New York. Through misunderstandings between himself and the Governor of Montreal, much delay occurred; when the expedition set forth, it was frustrated by the insubordination of the soldiers.

9. Colonel Nicolson, with two thousand men, advanced from Albany. **Four of the Iroquois nations** had promised him aid. Following out their astute policy, never to allow either French or English to gain a decided advantage, they showed themselves so remiss in fulfilling their engagement, that Nicolson could not but doubt their sincerity. As his army encamped by the bank of a stream flowing to Lake Champlain, an epidemic broke out. His treacherous allies, it is said, had poisoned the water of which the soldiers drank, by throwing a quantity of raw hides into it near its source. There he heard news that forced him to retreat, and caused his exasperated soldiers to

heap maledictions on the head of Vetch, though he was not responsible for the circumstance that aroused their ire. **The English fleet** that had been prepared for the expedition against Quebec did not cross the Atlantic. The Imperial Government suddenly despatched it to Lisbon to aid the Portuguese against the Spaniards.

10. This check only made the New Englanders more determined to accomplish their purpose. Colonel Nicolson **1710** went to England to make renewed applications for aid. **A.D.** The Government again promised to send a fleet and an army to Boston. From her private purse **Queen Anne** defrayed the expense of arming four regiments raised in Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, and Rhode Island. Through dilatoriness in fitting out the ships, they were detained in the English ports until the season was too far advanced. The attack on Quebec was postponed; but there was time enough left to capture Acadie.

11. M. Subercase was now Governor at Port Royal. Since the attacks upon it in 1708 nothing had been done to strengthen its fortifications or to reinforce its garrison. It was miserably supplied with war material. Two successive bad harvests had much diminished the means of subsistence. When Colonel Nicolson appeared with thirty-five sail at the entrance of the basin, M. Subercase found himself caught in a trap. He could receive no assistance, either by land or by sea. He held out long enough to give him a pretext to demand honourable terms. The fort was invested on all sides; when the fire from the New England batteries commenced in heavy earnest, he hung out **the white flag of surrender**. Nicolson accorded him the conditions he asked; but when he saw two hundred and fifty emaciated and ragged French soldiers file out of the fort, drums beating and colours flying, and found on entering it that he would be obliged to furnish the inhabitants with food to keep them from starvation, he, like Phips, felt that he had been over-reached,—but, unlike Phips, he religiously kept his word.

12. **The conquest of Acadie** was final. It now became an English possession, under the name of Nova Scotia. In honour of Queen Anne, Port Royal was called **Annapolis Royal**. Colonel Vetch, with four hundred and fifty men, remained to

hold it. The French Acadians complained bitterly to M. de Vaudreuil of his harsh rule, and prayed to be removed from the country. The Governor-General, being unwilling to abandon it, appointed Baron St. Castine (son of the old Baron) his Lieutenant in Acadie, and gave him instructions to drive out the English. During the war the garrison of Annapolis was sorely harassed, and barely escaped extermination.

13. Colonel Nicolson again visited England. He wished to crown his success in Acadie with the conquest of Canada. The times were not unpropitious. England was slackening her war efforts on the Continent of Europe. A Tory Ministry, at the head of which was Harley,<sup>1</sup> Earl of Oxford, was in power. Seven of the regiments which had gained fame in the battles of Ramilies, Oudenarde, and Malplaquet, were selected to take part in the enterprise against Quebec; and the great captain, the **Duke of Marlborough**,<sup>2</sup> was left to conduct a campaign in the north-east of France with diminished forces. The command was given to Brigadier-General Sir John Hill, brother of Mrs. Masham,<sup>3</sup> the then confidante of Queen Anne. A fleet of fifteen war ships and forty transports, under Admiral Sir Hoveden Walker, bore the land force and a number of Scottish settlers to Boston. A French privateer descried it when it was some sixty leagues from its destination,

<sup>1</sup> *Harley*.—Robert Harley, born 1661, died 1724. He was introduced into the Godolphin Cabinet through the influence of Abigail Hill (Mrs. Masham), afterwards mentioned. He was created Earl of Oxford in 1704, and became Premier in 1711. In 1715 he was impeached for holding treasonable correspondence with the Pretender, and was detained in the Tower for two years. On his release he spent his leisure in collecting the famous "Harleian Library," containing 7000 manuscripts, besides many rare printed books. It was afterwards purchased for the British Museum for £10,000.

<sup>2</sup> *Duke of Marlborough*.—John Churchill, born 1650, died 1722. He served for some time under the French Marshal Turenne. He was a favourite of James II., who made him Viscount

Churchill; but on the arrival of William of Orange in England, he went over to his party. His brilliant career from 1702 till 1711 is well known. In 1711 he was dismissed from his employments, and was charged with speculation. He went into voluntary exile till 1714. He was buried in Westminster Abbey.

<sup>3</sup> *Mrs. Masham*.—Abigail Hill; she was cousin of Sarah, Duchess of Marlborough, who obtained for her the place of waiting-maid to Queen Anne. She ere long supplanted the Duchess in the Queen's favour, and obtained a powerful ascendancy over her royal mistress. She intrigued with the French for the succession of the Pretender to the English throne. After the death of the Queen she retired into private life, and died in 1734.

and carried the tidings to Plaisance, Newfoundland. Costabelle, the Governor, had in the meantime heard from an English prisoner of warlike preparations in Massachusetts, and he despatched a swift-sailing pinnace to warn Vaudreuil of the coming danger. In all haste the Governor-General placed Quebec in a state of defence, and then ascended to Chambly, where, with three thousand men, he awaited the invasion by way of Lake Champlain.

14. On the 28<sup>th</sup> of August, Colonel Nicolson, with two thousand volunteers, left Albany: a month before, the English **1711** fleet had sailed from Boston for Quebec. He had not A.D. advanced far upon his way when disastrous news overtook him, and compelled him to retrace his steps. In the darkness of a stormy night, Sir Hoveden Walker, though warned of the danger by a skilful pilot, had sailed too close to the northern shore of the St. Lawrence. Eight of his great ships were shattered to pieces among the Egg Islands. The corpses of hundreds of soldiers, sailors, and settlers, and broken timbers and bales of goods, were strewn along the coasts. This disaster dissipated the danger that threatened Canada. Admiral Walker returned with the remnant of his fleet to England.

15. Next year, on a rumour reaching Quebec that the New Englanders were preparing another enterprise against **1712** it, the principal inhabitants presented five thousand A.D. crowns to the Governor-General, to be expended on strengthening the fortifications. A most confident spirit now prevailed in the colony. The more devout, reviewing the many dangers that had been averted from Canada, attributed its preservation to the especial guardianship of Providence.

16. As the war was drawing to a close, a new danger for Canada sprang up in the west. The French in 1701 had settled at Detroit. The possession of a fort in that fine country gave them the command of the commerce of the great lakes, and placed in their hands the key that opened up to them the routes to the Mississippi and to their new and vast province Louisiana. The English of New York, eager to possess themselves of a position of so much importance, incited the Ottigamies or Foxes to seize on Detroit. The Hurons, Ottawas, Sacs, and many

other tribes, rallied for its defence. An interminable contest ensued. Long after the centre of Canada reposed in profound peace, the Foxes and kindred tribes made the western country dangerous to the French, and infested all the routes to the Mississippi and the Illinois.

17. The final terms of peace between France and England were ratified by the "**Treaty of Utrecht**,"<sup>1</sup> on the 11th of April. Louis XIV. ceded to the British Crown all **1713** claim to possession of Acadie, Hudson Bay Territory, A.D. Newfoundland, and the Island of St. Christopher. He retained Cape Breton and the islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence; and reserved to the French fishermen the right to cure their fish on the coasts of Newfoundland, from Bonavista to Cape Rich.

18. Cape Breton was now called "**Royal Island**." English Harbour, a sheltered and commodious bay on the south-western coast, was constituted the chief port. On a tongue of land on the eastern side, the French commenced to fortify themselves, and to build a town, which they named "**Louisburg**." They also began to settle on the Island of St. John, which hitherto had been neglected.

19. To Royal Island were removed the French of Placentia. The British Government contemplated transferring the Acadians in Nova Scotia to it. But the time was allowed to pass by when the removal might have been made with ease. In fact none of the parties concerned were anxious that it should be carried out. The English, jealous of the settlement in Royal Island, were unwilling to increase the power of their rivals; the Acadians, being under a mild government, in the undisturbed possession of their property and in the enjoyment of their religion, were loath to leave their marshes, their fields and orchards, and their chapels; the French authorities, who fully realized the magnitude of their loss when Acadie passed out of their hands, sought to maintain a hold upon it, and by means of the priesthood to keep the simple habitants true to their allegiance to the French King.

20. Canada now entered on a long period of peace. Fortu-

<sup>1</sup> *Utrecht*.—A city of the Netherlands, 21 miles south-east of Amsterdam.

nately, the office of Intendant was at this time in good hands. The Messieurs Raudot—father and son—divided the duties between them. They sought to reform disorder, to create internal industry, and to promote commerce. The habitans were **excessively litigious**: when they quarrelled, instead of fighting, they sought redress in the courts of justice. Law was cheap, and frivolous suits multiplied fast. While they disputed about the bounds of their farms, they neglected to till their fields; and so the progress of the country was retarded. The Raudots settled summarily a number of cases, to the general contentment of parties concerned. The spirit of litigation being abated, the attention of the habitans was directed to the manufacture of articles of domestic use and daily wear. Hitherto they had in a very great measure depended on the mother country for their supply of such goods. The high price of these “home” articles prevented the poorer people from buying; many were, like the savages, compelled to wear skins in winter, and to go half naked in summer. A disaster that had occurred in 1701 caused the Government to see the necessity of encouraging the inhabitants to grow flax and hemp, and to manufacture coarse linen and woollen fabrics. The “**Seine**,” a large French store-ship, carrying M. Saint Vallier and a number of ecclesiastics as passengers, had been captured by the English as it was making for Quebec.

21. Attention was given to ship-building; war ships and merchant vessels were constructed. Commerce with the old country and with the French West Indies was encouraged. Ships laden with lumber, masts, oils, flour and pork, were now cleared from the port of Quebec. The shore fisheries of the St. Lawrence were prosecuted by a company established on the southeastern coast at Mount Louis River, within view of the Mountains of Notre Dame. The fur-trade continued to be the principal pursuit of the enterprising people of Canada. The great want of the colony was **population**. There was no free emigration. The Government of France did not now encourage the sending out of large bodies of settlers, as it had done in the days of Colbert and Talon. A scheme proposed by M. Vaudreuil to settle convicts in the country was not entertained by the King. At this time the French made settlements in Louisiana.

22. Canada, in population and wealth, ranked below the English colonies. At the Peace of Utrecht its fighting force amounted to 4444 men; that of her rivals to 150,000. The fur-trade, which was the chief object of the Canadians, was with the English only an accessory. The wealth gained by that pursuit was ephemeral; it did not permanently enrich the country. It was different with **agriculture**, which was the great occupation of the English. Year after year there was an influx of energetic men, who came to push their fortune in the English colonies. There, land was far more easily obtainable than in Canada, and was held under an absolutely free tenure. Further and further the hardy pioneers penetrated into the wilderness, leaving smiling fields and hamlets in their track. The commerce of these colonies with England and foreign countries was already great.

23. The long peace gave curious observers an opportunity to visit Canada, then truly a land unknown. **Father Charlevoix**, "Historian of New France," dashed off his **1742** impression of the country in a series of letters; and no **A.D.** doubt he did something to dispel the prejudice against it in France. The first voyagers had visited Canada (and Acadie) in the hope of finding gold and silver: when no precious metals were found, people had ignorantly contemned it as a poor, barren country; holding as of no account those true mines of wealth—its teeming fisheries, its fertile soil, its grand forests. Exaggerated accounts of the inclemency of its climate, and stories about the Indians, had created an impression that it was a region of perpetual snow and savagery. The Court had looked upon the colony as unprofitable, because the cost of its maintenance exceeded the amount of the revenue derived from it. Charlevoix ascribed the backward state of the colony to a want of persistent energy in the people. Either they had commenced projects for developing the resources of the country, which they had not carried out; or they were discouraged by the jealous opposition which their schemes encountered. They preferred a life of adventure and excitement, and the quick profits of the fur-trade, to the sober toil of agriculture.

24. Though Canada was far less wealthy than the English colonies, it made a greater show with the riches it had. Quebec

was a much gayer place than Boston ; there lived in it a greater number of persons who seemed to possess fortunes, and who spent them in maintaining handsome establishments. In the capital there was a Court in miniature ; and in society there were all the gradations of rank that were maintained in France. The love of amusement was as great among the habitans of the country as among the officials of the city. Quebec then had 7,000 inhabitants, Montreal 3 000, while the population of all Canada was about 26,000 souls.

25. During the long peace, the **rivalry** between the French and the English colonies continued as active as ever. The French now by every means sought the friendship of the Iroquois. In 1717, the Tuscaroras, a tribe dwelling about the head waters of the Susquehannah River, entered the league, which was thenceforth known as the **Six Nations**. Missionaries were sent among the Senecas, and then a company of soldiers were stationed in a fort on the Niagara, within their country. The English remonstrated in vain with the Governor-General for occupying a post in a territory which was under the protection of their Sovereign. Governor Burnet of New York then boldly caused a fort and trading post to be built at the mouth of the Chouagen, now called the Oswego. The English were then in a better position than ever to intercept the fur-trade of the west.

26. The New Englanders pushed forward their settlements along the eastern banks of the Kennebec, in the country of the Abenakis. For many years **Father Rasle** held a mission at Norridgewalk, and ruled the people at his will. The warriors stole around the English settlements, and bore off many a horrible trophy of murders done. The Government c

**1722** Massachusetts declared war against all the eastern tribes. For three years there were slaughters, and

A.D.

burnings, and cruelties perpetrated along the frontiers. Norridgewalk was burned ; Father Rasle was killed with many wounds and indignities. M. de Vaudreuil at first opposed overtures of peace made by the Indians to the English, when the deputies of both appeared at Quebec. A

**1725**

A.D.

treaty, known as Dumner's, was afterwards signed at Boston, by which the Indians east of the Kennebec and those of Nova Scotia acknowledged King George's sovereignty.

27. This same year Canada was overcast with grief. **The royal ship "Le Chameau,"** bringing to Quebec M. Chazel, the newly appointed Intendant, and military officers and ecclesiastics, was wrecked off Louisburg. Not a soul escaped alive. Dead bodies and bales of merchandise were strewn along the coasts. Shortly afterwards, to intensify the sorrow that overspread the colony, **M. de Vaudreuil died.** His memory was long cherished by the Canadians. When in after years dark days fell upon them—when they were robbed and oppressed by corrupt officials, and threatened by their ancient enemies—they remembered the peace and prosperity they had enjoyed under his administration, and, fondly believing that there was virtue in a name, prayed the King to allow his son to rule over them.

28. **The Marquis de Beauharnois,** a natural son of Louis XIV., succeeded Vaudreuil. For twelve years Canada enjoyed rest from actual war. It was the time of its **1726** greatest happiness; it was growing, though slowly, and A.D. it felt its strength. But it advanced not by peaceful arts and industry. France held and extended her dominion by military power and by the influence of the Church. Beauharnois' policy was by all means to confine the English behind the Alleghanies, and not to permit them to advance towards the St. Lawrence. On the western shore of Lake Champlain, at the foot of the Narrows between it and Lac Sacrament, he erected the fort of **Crown Point,** and overawed the advancing settlers of New York.

QUESTIONS. — 1. In what position were the French in Canada now? What were their relations with the Iroquois? What position did they maintain?

2. In what respects were the English colonies superior to the French? What scheme did Colonel Nicolson propose? What did King William think of it?

3. Who succeeded Villebon as Governor of Acadie? How was Port Royal strengthened?

4. What were the causes of the jealousy that prevailed in Port Royal?

5. How was the war carried on by the colonists? What was the result of March's attack on Port Royal?

6. What kind of warfare did the French adopt? Describe the exploit of d'Hertel.

7. On what did the people of Massachusetts then resolve? Under whose direction were the preparations made? What valuable information had Vetch acquired? When?

8. On what plan did De Vaudreuil determine? How was it frustrated?

9. What caused the failure of Nicolson's expedition? What had become of the English fleet?

10. Where did Nicolson go for help? What aid did Queen Anne herself supply? Why had the attack on Quebec

to be postponed? What was there still time to capture?

11. In what state was Port Royal then? What was the result of Nicolson's attack on it? How did he act when he was over-reached?

12. What change in the possession now took place? What name was given to the colony? And to the capital? What effort did the French make to recover it?

13. What scheme did Nicolson go to England to promote? What forces were sent out to America? How were the French forewarned? What steps did the Governor-General take?

14. What disaster dissipated the danger that threatened Canada?

15. How did the inhabitants of Quebec show their patriotism? What spirit prevailed in the colony?

16. Why was the fort at Detroit so important to the French? What struggle took place for its possession?

17. When was peace concluded between England and France? What possessions were ceded to England? What did France retain?

18. To what was the name of Cape Breton changed? What was its new capital called?

19. Who were removed to Royal Island? Why were the English unwilling to remove the Acadians? How did the French seek to maintain a hold on Acadie?

20. On what did Canada now enter? What retarded the material prosperity of the colony? What disaster led the

Government to encourage manufactures in the colony?

21. What branches of industry were pursued? What was the great want of the colony?

22. What shows the difference in population between the English and the French colonies? Wherein did they differ in the occupation of the people? Wherein did they differ in the means of growth?

23. For what did the long peace afford opportunity? What was one effect of Charlevoix's letters? What prejudices against the colony existed in the French mind? To what did Charlevoix ascribe the backward state of the colony?

24. In what respect did the French excel the English colonies? What was then the population of Quebec? of Montreal? of the whole of Canada?

25. To what did the long peace not put an end? What means did the French adopt to secure the friendship of the Iroquois? How did the English try to counteract their influence?

26. In what direction did the New Englanders push forward their settlements? What led to war between them and the eastern Indians? When was peace concluded?

27. What calamity occurred in the same year? Who died shortly afterwards?

28. Who succeeded Vaudrèuil? In what state was Canada during the next twelve years? What was Beauharnois' policy?

## CHAPTER XIX.

## LOUISBURG.

1744 to 1748 A.D.

The War of the Austrian Succession.  
 The Acadians.  
 Du Vivier's stratagem.  
 The siege of Louisburg.

The great French Fleet.  
 Duc d'Anville.  
 A series of casualties.  
 The Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.

1. ENGLAND and France now again engaged in war.<sup>1</sup> They took opposite sides in the question of the **Austrian Succession**. The Emperor Charles VI., by the Pragmatic Sanction, had solemnly declared that it was his will that his daughter should succeed to the crown of the Austrian dominions. On his death Maria Theresa ascended the throne. But Charles Albert, Elector of Bavaria, was elected Emperor, and France and other powers drew their swords for him. England, Austria, Holland, and Saxony entered into an alliance against this coalition. The peace which the colonies had so long enjoyed was now broken. Canada was not disturbed by the events of the next four years. The brunt of the war was borne by Nova Scotia.

1744  
 A.D.

2. **Nova Scotia**, after the Peace of Utrecht had transferred it to England, remained virtually a French province. Outside of Annapolis, besides the fishing station of Canso, there was no English settlement. The Acadians of Annapolis River, Minas, Piziquid, Beaubassin, and Chignecto had steadily refused to take the oath of allegiance to George I., without the reservation that they should not be compelled to bear arms against the King of France. They sought to establish for themselves a position of **neutrality** in the event of the mother countries going to war. The British Government would not recognize their claim, but took no steps to compel them to become British subjects in reality. The Acadians, generally amiable and tractable, lived content under the mild British Government, but their sym-

<sup>1</sup> War.—Called by the English colonists "King George's War," from George II.

pathies were with France. If they were inclined to waver, they were kept true to their allegiance by their priests, who looked to Louisburg and Quebec for instructions.

3. During the long interval of peace the French had fortified the harbour and town of **Louisburg**: so strong did the place seem, that it was called the Dunkirk<sup>1</sup> of America. On the surrounding heights were erected batteries; and batteries on a small rocky islet near the mouth of the harbour protected the entrance. Lofty ramparts of stone, with bastions and parapets bearing one hundred and fourteen cannons, enclosed the square and streets of the garrison town. A wide, deep ditch lay around the walls. Louisburg was the place of refuge for the French naval squadrons and fishing fleets. In time of war, privateers were fitted out there to prey on the commerce of the New England colonies. To their merchants and fishermen it was a constant menace. To the Acadians it was a visible sign of the power of France; and in it they found a market for their corn and cattle, though the traffic was forbidden by the Governor of Nova Scotia.

4. Immediately after the declaration of war, Du Quesnel, the Governor of Royal Island, sent M. du Vivier with nine **1744** hundred men to seize Canso and Annapolis. Canso was A.D. burned, and its small garrison were sent as prisoners to Louisburg. Returning thence, Du Vivier landed at Chignecto, and made a painful inland march to **Annapolis**. On their way, the French soldiers levied on the store-houses of the unfortunate Acadians, who cried out against the harsh exactions of their friends. It was their fate to suffer. For weeks a band of Micmacs had invested Annapolis. The fort was in a ruinous condition; its garrison was small, and poorly armed. Mascarene, the Governor, was an intelligent and resolute officer. Du Vivier harassed him by night attacks, and skirmishes by day, till his soldiers were worn out by want of sleep. Unable to take the place by assault, the French captain tried **stratagem**. He sent in a flag of truce, and informed Mascarene that a naval

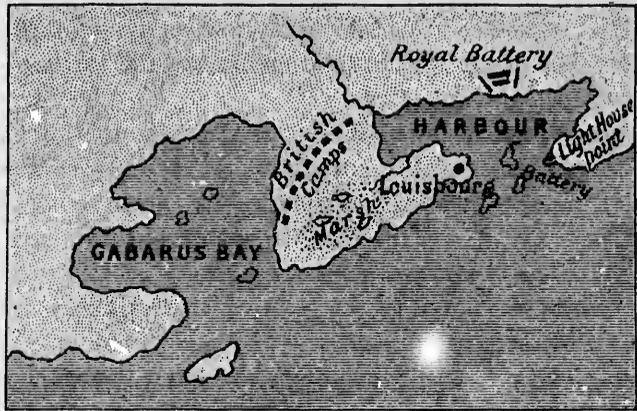
<sup>1</sup> *Dunkirk*.—Or Dunkerque, a strongly fortified sea-port of France, 45 miles east of Dover. It was taken by the English in 1658, but in 1662 it was sold to Louis XIV. by Charles II. for £500,000. Louis then restored its fortifications at a vast expense, and made it a great stronghold.

force was coming from Louisburg which he could not resist. He offered him honourable terms if he would sign the articles of capitulation at once, but until the fleet arrived they were not to be carried out. He knew that the garrison was reduced to extremities, and anticipated that if Mascarene signed the articles he would be compelled to surrender immediately. The majority of the officers, despairing of succour, and anxious not to be sent prisoners to Quebec, urged the Governor to accept the terms. Mascarene, perceiving that Du Vivier wished to create dissension, firmly refused, and succeeded in convincing them that the Frenchman was practising a ruse. No fleet from Louisburg appeared. A furious rain-storm made his camp so uncomfortable that Du Vivier **marched off** without tap of drum, under cover of night.

5. Incensed by the attacks on Nova Scotia, by the capture of their fishing vessels, and the destruction of their commerce, the people of Massachusetts took the bold resolve **to capture Louisburg**. It was a venture that an experienced general might have hesitated to undertake; but Governor Shirley, a lawyer, troubled his head very little about technical difficulties. He resolved to have the place, and thought that boldness would carry it. There were many citizens who remembered the events of the previous war,—how bold enterprises had been defeated when success was confidently expected,—how the proudest armaments had been shattered,—and they might well have their fears.

6. A force of four thousand men, mechanics and labourers for the most part, and without discipline, was raised. The command was given to **William Pepperell**, a mer- **1745**  
chant and colonel of militia, who had been very active **A.D.**  
in pressing forward the enterprise. Preparations were made with all secrecy and despatch, in the hope that the French would be taken by surprise. The British Government ordered Commodore Warren on the Newfoundland station to cooperate with his fleet; and, much against his will at first, he sailed for Canso, where the New England force landed to wait until the coasts were clear of ice. Here he conferred with Colonel Pepperell, and perfect harmony, so necessary to the success of a combined movement, was established between them.

7. The expedition sailed on a Sunday. When the ships reached **Gabarus Bay**, where the landing was to be made, the wind lulled. All hope of taking the French by surprise vanished; alarm-guns along the coast were fired, the bells of Louisburg rang out, and all the people of the outlying settlements fled to the fortress for shelter. A heavy sea rolled into the bay, and the surf broke with a sound of thunder on the iron-bound coast; the path from the landing-place was steep, rugged, and difficult, and a French force stood ready to dispute the ascent. But with a cheer the English sailors swept the crowded boats



LOUISBURG.

through the surf; with a rush the New Englanders carried the height, and gained the ground in rear of Louisburg. With infinite difficulty the siege guns and ammunition were landed from the ships; with heavy labour they were drawn in long sledges over the morasses, the men sinking knee-deep in water. The work was severe, the weather raw and gloomy, the bivouacs wet and cold, but a spirit of audacity and rollicking good humour pervaded the force.

8. A party marched through the woods, and in sight of the fortress saluted it with defiant cheers. A number of store-houses, filled with pitch, tar, turpentine, and brandy, on the north-east of the harbour, were fired. The thick smoke stifled the garrison of the Royal Battery, and hastily spiking their guns, they fled into Louisburg. The New Englanders seized on this commanding post, drilled out the touch-holes, and

opened a destructive fire upon the town. Nearer and nearer they pushed forward their trenches towards the southern ramparts. Great breaches were made in the walls. On the 7th of May, Warren and Pepperell summoned M. Duchambon to surrender. The brave French Governor answered defiantly. His soldiers were sulky; they had been shamefully used by the Intendant Bigot, who had kept back their pay. A frigate from France, carrying a regiment and a quantity of stores, was captured when making for Louisburg. The New Englanders dragged cannon up to the Light-house Height on the <sup>south</sup> west of the harbour, and silenced the battery on the islet that defended its mouth. Encompassed on all sides by a fire that swept destruction through the town, Duchambon was forced to capitulate on the 15th of June. **So Louisburg was taken.** While the French flag still floated above it, two French East Indiamen making for the harbour were captured, with cargoes valued at £60,000. The garrison and inhabitants, numbering 4,130 persons, were conveyed to France. Commodore Warren and Colonel Pepperell were promoted; the one was made an admiral, the other a baronet.

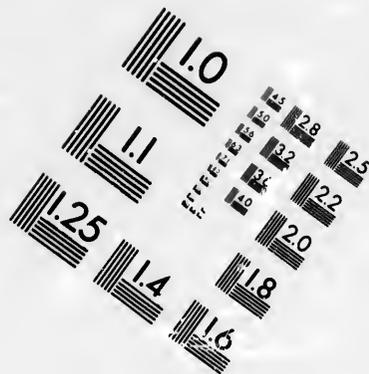
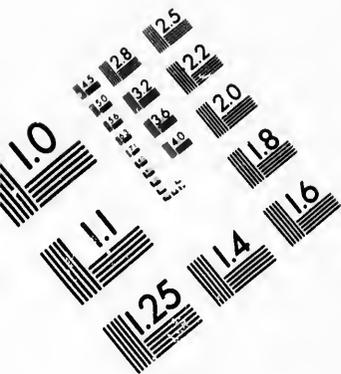
See  
page  
189

9. The capture of Louisburg was a glorious success for Massachusetts. A greater enterprise now busied the minds of Shirley and Pepperell. In the phrase of Cato,<sup>1</sup> **1746** the Governor exclaimed, "**Delenda est Canada.**" The A.D. British Government could not spare a naval squadron, and the New Englanders were soon compelled to look to their own defence.

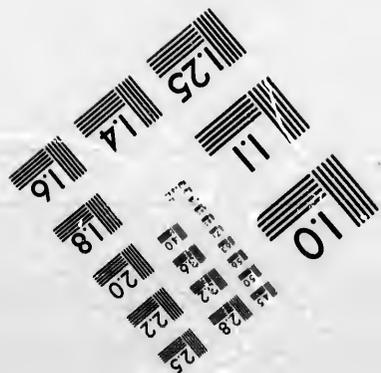
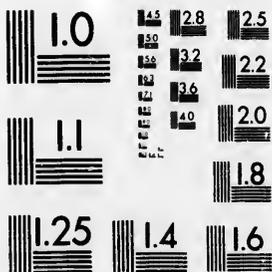
10. The French King would not submit to the loss of Louisburg. **A great armament** was gathered in the port of Rochelle with the avowed purpose of recapturing it, taking possession of Nova Scotia, burning Boston, and ravaging all the New England coasts. Fifteen ships of the line, twenty-four frigates, several fire-ships, and a crowd of transports bearing over three thousand trained soldiers composed it. Duc d'Anville commanded. When the citizens of Boston heard of the sailing of

<sup>1</sup> *The phrase of Cato.*—Cato the Censor, an illustrious Roman (146 B.C.), feared so much the rivalry of Carthage, that he was accustomed to conclude every speech he made in the Senate

with the words, "Delenda est Carthago,"—Carthage must be destroyed. At his instigation the Third Punic War was undertaken, and Carthage was razed to the ground.



**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**





this grand fleet they crowded to the churches, and prayed that the great danger might be averted from their country. Duc d'Anville's first destination was Chebucto harbour. Governor-General Beauharnois despatched a force of Canadian militia to Chignecto with the view of attacking Annapolis, when the French soldiers arrived to coöperate with it. On their way they defeated a party of English who were fortified at Minas.

11. Before **D'Anville** was well clear of the French coast two of his ships were captured off Brest by the English. A furious wind dispersed others. Some convoyed merchantmen to the West Indies. When he entered the harbour of Chebucto in his flag-ship the *Northumberland*, with the *Renommée*, he found only one vessel of his great fleet at the rendezvous. His disappointment was intense. He died suddenly from a stroke of apoplexy; but it was whispered that he had poisoned himself. Scurvy and dysentery broke out among the soldiers and sailors; numbers landed to wander and die in the woods. Rear-admiral **D'Estourelle** arrived with three ships on the afternoon of the day on which D'Anville died. He counselled the abandonment of the enterprise, but the majority of the officers opposed him. Excited to delirium, when he retired to his cabin he **fell upon his sword**, and was found dead, weltering in his blood. M. de la Jonquière (who had come out to succeed Beauharnois as Governor-General) took the command. With thirty vessels, great and small, he sailed to capture Annapolis; but encountering a heavy storm off Cape Sable, he returned to France. The Bostonians held thanksgiving for their signal deliverance. Baffled but not discouraged, the French prepared another great fleet, under the command of M. le George. Off Cape Finisterre<sup>1</sup> he met a British fleet under Admiral Anson.<sup>2</sup> After a hot engagement Le George struck his flag. Several of his vessels escaped, but a rich booty fell

<sup>1</sup> *Cape Finisterre*.—A promontory of Spain, forming the north-west angle of the peninsula.

<sup>2</sup> *Admiral Anson*.—George Anson, born 1697, died 1762. In 1739 he commanded an expedition against the Spanish settlements in South America. In 1741 he doubled Cape Horn, and

three years later returned to England by the Cape of Good Hope, with only one ship, but that laden with immense booty. He had circumnavigated the globe. For his victory off Cape Finisterre he was made Lord Anson. He was afterwards Commander-in-chief of the British Fleet.

into the hands of the foe. M. de la Jonquière was made prisoner and taken to England.

12. After these repeated disasters the French King thought no more of recapturing Nova Scotia or of burning Boston. Though defeated in America, he had gained advantages over the English in the East Indies. The capture of Madras was an offset to that of Louisburg.

13. On the 18th of October peace was concluded by the treaty signed at **Aix-la-Chapelle**.<sup>1</sup> England gave back C. Breton to France; France restored Madras **1748** to England. The restoration of Louisburg to the French **A.D.** was a sore mortification to the people of Massachusetts, and to all in England who were interested in the New England trade. In its capture Old and New England had expended blood and treasure freely. The sacrifice had been made in vain. The British Government reimbursed the State of Massachusetts for the money it had expended; but money was no complete compensation for its losses. Peace and security to commerce were as remote as ever.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did war again break out between England and France? What was the cause of the war? Which of the colonies bore the brunt of it?

2. What position did the Acadians seek to establish for themselves? With which power were their sympathies?

3. Describe the fortifications of Louisburg. What uses did it serve?

4. On what expedition was Du Vivier sent? By what stratagem did he attempt to take Annapolis? How did it fail?

5. What bold resolve did the people of Massachusetts take? By whom was it chiefly promoted?

6. Who commanded the expedition? How many men had he? What naval force was ordered to cooperate with him?

7. Where did the New Englanders land? What difficulties did they encounter?

8. How did they gain possession of the Royal Battery? How did they silence the islet battery? In what spirit were the French soldiers? What was Duchambon at last forced to do? What prizes were taken soon afterwards?

9. What new enterprise engaged the thoughts of Shirley and Pepperell? Why had it to be delayed?

10. What steps did the French take to recover Louisburg? What success had the Canadian militia?

11. What befell D'Anville's fleet? What was his fate? Why did D'Estourville kill himself? How was De la Jonquière's fleet scattered? What befell Le George's armament?

12. What gain in the East did the French regard as an offset to the loss of Louisburg?

13. When was peace concluded? How did its terms disappoint the people of Massachusetts?

<sup>1</sup> *Aix-la-Chapelle*.—In German called *Aachen*, a city of Rhenish Prussia, 40 miles south-west of Cologne. It takes its name from its mineral springs (Aix =

aquas), and from the church or cathedral of Charlemagne, who was born and who died in the city. It has been the scene of two treaties (1668 and 1748).

## CHAPTER XX.

## CONTEST APPROACHING.

1749 to 1754 A.D.

Territorial pretensions of France.  
 Count de la Galissonnière.  
 Boundary Commission of Paris.  
 M. de la Jonquière.  
 Official corruption.

Halifax.  
 Abbé de Loutro.  
 Fort Beauséjour.  
 Preparation for the coming struggle.  
 Collision in the Valley of the Ohio.

1. **The Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle** was merely a truce, a breathing time, during which the combatants prepared themselves for the final struggle. The question to be decided was, Whether the greater portion of the North American Continent should belong to France, or whether the rule of England should extend over it? whether it should be possessed by a race of people subject to an absolute Government that concerned itself but little with their material progress, or belong to a nation imbued with the spirit of independence, enjoying liberty of conscience and of political action, and devoted to all the peaceful arts by which nations grow and flourish?

2. **The aim of France** was to confine the English (if it could not drive the stubborn people to the sea) to the tract of country lying east of the Alleghany Mountains, and stretching from the Kennebec in the north to St. Mary's River in the south. All the rest of the continent, from the mouth of the St. Lawrence to the source of the Mississippi, and south to the Gulf of Mexico, France claimed as its own by right of discovery and conquest. Its magnificent territorial pretensions extended even to the Pacific. Though its claims were vast, its power in America was not strongly seated. The population of Canada, its chief possession, was only about 60,000; that of the English colonies was 1,200,000, while their wealth and developed resources were forty-fold greater than those of their rival. The strength of France in Canada lay principally in the military skill of its officers, in the aptitude of the people for forest warfare, in the vastness of the territory, and in the extreme diffi-

culty that an enemy found in conducting military operations in it. The want of unity of action among the Governments of the English colonies, as it weakened their power for offensive war, was an advantage to the French.

3. In consequence of M. de la Jonquière having been taken prisoner by the English, **Count de la Galissonnière** was appointed Governor-General. In person he was diminutive and somewhat deformed ; in mind he was most intelligent and alert. He resolutely upheld the territorial pretensions of France. He wished to form a **living barrier** against the advance of the English pioneers into the valley of the Ohio. He advised the King to send out ten thousand peasants from the inland counties, and to locate them along the frontiers of what was called "**the debatable territory.**" It was thought unadvisable by the Court to depopulate France in order to people the wilds of America. Unable to carry out his policy, Galissonnière took steps to assert, at least, the sovereignty of France over the vast country claimed by it. Acting on instructions from him, M. de Célérin de Bienville, with a company of three hundred soldiers, traversed the region from Detroit to the Alleghanies, and deposited at intervals beneath certain marked trees **lead** **plates**, on which were engraved the royal arms. He sent a regular record of his proceedings to the Governor-General, who transmitted it to the King. This ostentatious assumption of right to the territory alarmed the Indian tribes, and aroused the jealousy of the colonists of Pennsylvania ; the feeling was inflamed into rage when M. Célérin formally notified their Governor that all English merchants found trading west of the Alleghanies would be seized and their goods confiscated.

4. Count de la Galissonnière also took steps to assert the right of France to the country north of the Bay of Fundy and west to the Kennebec. His officers held posts on the River St. John and in the Isthmus of Chignecto. The English stoutly opposed this assumption of authority over territory which they claimed as forming part of Nova Scotia. M. de la Jonquière, when released from captivity by the peace, shortly **1749** afterwards assumed the functions of Governor-General. A.D. Galissonnière, on his return to France, was appointed a member of a Board to which was submitted the question of

the disputed boundaries. It was composed of French and English commissioners, and it met at Paris. Each side submitted long historical arguments in support of the claims of their respective countries. **The chief debate** was over Nova Scotia. The French commissioners maintained that it was confined to the peninsula, and that the country north of the bay and west to the Kennebec formed part of the old Acadie, which had not at any time been ceded to England. After arguing for three years nearly (1750-3) over the questions that arose, the English commissioners withdrew from the Board leaving them unsettled.

5. **M. de la Jonquière** was a brave and experienced naval officer, but he was ill fitted for the high position he held. On his first coming to Canada he was disposed to cultivate friendly relations with the English. He was instructed to carry out the policy of his predecessor, to guard the valley of the Ohio, and to keep possession of the country north of the bay. Jonquière then strengthened the guards on the St. John, and sent officers to hold posts on the Peticodiac, Memramcook, and Chepody rivers. He was not actuated by the patriotic spirit of Galissonnière, who had been solely anxious to uphold the grandeur of French empire in America. Jonquière was old, and avarice had eaten out the noble passions. In his time the tide of **official corruption** set in, which sapped the internal strength of Canada and hastened its downfall. The salaries of the high officers were inadequate to maintain their rank. The Governor-General received about £300 a year, and he was expected to support out of that sum a guard composed of a sergeant and twenty-five soldiers. His position gave him opportunities to enrich himself illegally. Jonquière pushed this advantage to the utmost. **In his lust for gold** he showed himself cynically disregarding of the welfare of the people. He appropriated to himself the profits of the licences for the liquor trade. The evil of drunkenness spread widely. He surreptitiously entered into the fur-trade. In conjunction with other officials, he sent, under the pretext of wishing to make an exploration of the country west of the Mississippi to the Pacific, a party to barter with the Indians for furs. By this one speculation alone he netted an enormous sum. While he amassed an

immense fortune by such means, he denied himself the ordinary necessaries of life.

6. **M. Bigot** had been appointed Intendant in 1743. He was <sup>see page 183</sup> more corrupt, if possible, than his chief; but, unlike Jonquière, he lived prodigally, and mocked the misery of the people by his ostentatious licentiousness. He had his palace in Quebec, and his chateau at the foot of the Charlesbourg Mountain, where he aped the sensual extravagance of his royal master, Louis XV. Bigot was not only unprincipled himself; his example encouraged his subordinates to follow in his course.

7. The inhabitants sent petitions to the Court, bitterly complaining of the conduct of the Governor-General. Jonquière, conscious that he had acted in an indefensible manner, asked to be recalled. **He died** before an investigation of the charges against him could be held. In his last hours, when the shadow of death cast its gloom over his bed-chamber, his penurious soul was disquieted by the sight of wax tapers burning. He ordered tallow candles to be substituted; "they were less expensive, and they gave sufficient light." He was succeeded by the **Marquis du Quesne**.

8. To turn to Nova Scotia. Before Louisburg was handed over to the French, "the Lords of Trade and Plantations" in England perceived the necessity of founding a settlement at some point more convenient and accessible than Annapolis Royal. **Chebucto**, a harbour on the south-eastern coast, was pronounced by naval officers to be the finest that they had ever seen. It was now chosen to be the site of the English power in Nova Scotia. A notification appeared in the *Royal Gazette*, London, holding out, on the part of the King, liberal inducements to half-pay officers, and soldiers and sailors disbanded after the war, and also to artificers and labourers, to become settlers at Chebucto. Grants of land ranging from fifty to six hundred acres, free passages, arms, ammunition, working utensils, and sustenance for a year, were offered. The protection of a regular government and representative institutions were promised. The Hon. Edward Cornwallis was appointed Governor.

9. On the 2nd of July the "**Sphynx**," bearing Governor Cornwallis and his suite, entered Chebucto harbour, and was soon followed by a fleet of thirteen

1749  
A.D.

transports, having on board 2,500 persons, of various conditions and occupations. The country was an unbroken forest. On the western arm of the harbour the woods descended in a gentle slope for half a mile to a gravelly beach. † On this commanding and sheltered position the foundation of the town of **Halifax** was laid; a name given to it in honour of the Earl of Halifax, President of the Board of Plantations.‡

10. Halifax presented a busy and a stirring scene. In the magnificent harbour rode men-of-war and the fleet of transports. Between ship and shore crowded boats passed and re-passed. On board the *Beaufort* the Governor and his Council met. They took measures to proclaim the sovereignty of England over the entire Province: they despatched Captain Rous to drive the French from the River St. John: they summoned deputies from the Acadian districts to appear before them. When these deputies protested that they could not take the oath of allegiance to King George, without the reservation that they should not be compelled to bear arms against the King of France, the plain-spoken Governor reproached them with ingratitude to the British Government, which had extended acts of kindness to them, and plainly told them that they must take the unconditional oath if they wished to continue in the possession of their property and their privileges.

11. The settlers worked steadily and laboriously. A few were carried off by excitement, and loafed about drinking success to the rising town of Halifax; for which the Governor abused them roundly. The Indians, hostile at heart, came to gaze on the scene. By the end of autumn three hundred log-houses were built: they were surrounded by a palisade of brushwood, and defended by two forts.

12. The jealousy of the authorities in Quebec was aroused. Nova Scotia appeared very precious to them when they saw that the English were taking decisive steps to prevent their ever regaining it. They kept it in a state of disquietude. They used Abbé de Loure as their instrument for this purpose. The Abbé was ambitious, vain, and restless. By the English he was detested as the instigator of the attacks that the Micmacs of Shubenacadie commenced to make on Halifax, on Dartmouth, and on the new German settlement of Lunenburg. By

the Acadians he was regarded with fear and trembling; for on the least sign of swerving from their allegiance to France, he from the pulpit launched anathemas on their head, and more privately hinted to them that he would not be able to restrain the Indians from ravaging their farms. By his ecclesiastical superior he was looked upon coldly, for abusing his power as a priest for political purposes; but he enjoyed the favour of the Governor-General. While the Board of Boundary Commissioners was sitting in Paris, De Loutre asserted that they would decide in favour of the French claim, not only to the country north of the bay, but to the Isthmus of Chignecto, and to the country from Minas to Malagash Bay. A number of Acadians on the peninsula were induced by him to leave their farms and to settle north of the Missignash stream at Tantramar, and on the Island of St. John, in the belief that they were not abandoning their possessions for ever. The English called them the "**deserted inhabitants.**"

13. The French fortified themselves on the isthmus, and built **Fort Beauséjour** on a gentle elevation in the marsh. It was the Abbé's head-quarters, from which he held correspondence with Quebec by the River St. John, and with Louisburg by way of Bay Verte. The Acadians of the peninsula sent their corn and cattle to Louisburg, and brought back from thence supplies of French goods. The English had never been able to prevent this traffic. Governor Cornwallis now sent Colonel Lawrence to establish a settlement at Chignecto on the route by which the Acadians conveyed the produce that they intended to ship to market. **Fort Lawrence** was built within sight of Beauséjour. At first mutual courtesies were interchanged between the two Commandants, Mr. How and M. de la Coine. How, anxious to redeem some English prisoners out of the hands of the Indians, held interviews with De Loutre. While this affair was still pending, a French officer (or, an Indian dressed like a French officer) appeared in sight of Fort Lawrence, and waved a **white handkerchief**, the usual signal for a conference. How, advancing to meet him, was shot dead by a party of Indians lying in ambush. The English attributed the murder to M. de la Coine; the French officers indignantly disavowed the dastardly deed, and accused De Loutre.

14. In Canada affairs were now approaching a crisis. The policy inaugurated by Galissonnière could only be carried out by force of arms; the English would not consent to be excluded, by a mandate from Quebec, from the grand country between the western slopes of the Alleghanies and the Mississippi. In anticipation of an early rupture, M. du Quesne organized as efficiently as he could the fighting force of the colony. All the male inhabitants were then compelled to do military duty, and were liable to be called upon at any time for active service. The habitans were required to make great sacrifices, and to endure severe hardships, and were treated with little consideration by their officers and feudal superiors. At the requisition of the Governor-General, the militia officers made a draft on the parishes. Each of the men chosen was furnished with a gun, a blanket, a cap, a pair of moccasins, a cotton shirt, a pair of leggins, and a capot,<sup>1</sup> before being marched off to the scene of his duty.

15. The Indians in "the debatable territory" viewed with alarm, not unmixed with wonder, the efforts made by the French and the English to supplant each other in a country which they fondly believed belonged to themselves. A Shawnoe chief sarcastically likened his people to a piece of cloth between the blades of a sharp pair of shears. French and English made unceasing efforts to win **the alliance of the Indians**, especially of the Six Nations. After the Peace of Utrecht the Iroquois (the three upper cantons more particularly) inclined more and more to the French side. In order to form a barrier against the approach of the English to the St. Lawrence, the Mission of **La Presentation**, at the mouth of the Oswegatchie River, was formed. There in his fortified bourgade—where were gathered people from all the cantons—Father Paquet, half soldier, half priest, ruled with a high sway. The efforts of the French to win over the Iroquois in a body were counteracted by **William Johnson**. In his wild youth he fell into trouble, and from Ireland crossed over to America. He settled on the Mohawk River. He studied the language and the character of the Indians. By his honourable dealings, by the respect he

---

<sup>1</sup> Capot, a military frock-coat.

paid to their customs and their prejudices, he acquired a wonderful ascendancy over the Lower Iroquois. He married **Molly Brant**, the sister of a Mohawk chief, and ruled like a potentate. The British Government had made him Superintendent of Indian affairs.

16. The French sought to defend their extensive frontiers by a system of connected forts, and grew bolder and bolder in their encroachments. Some men of capital in London and Virginia formed "**The Ohio Company**," and purchased a large tract of land within the "debatable territory." They commenced to build a post at the junction of the Monongahela and Alleghany Rivers.<sup>1</sup> Ere the work was well finished, M. Contrecoeur, Commandant of Venango Fort, with an overpowering force drove out the garrison, and, completing it, named it **Fort du Quesne**, in honour of the Governor-General. Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia despatched a body of militia to demand restitution of the place, and to warn Contrecoeur against persisting in seizing English traders and disturbing the operations of the Ohio Company. **George Washington**<sup>2</sup> (who afterwards became famous for great actions), on the sudden death of his superior officer, assumed the command. Contrecoeur, hearing of his approach to Fort du Quesne, sent M. Jumonville, with thirty-three soldiers, to warn him against trespassing on French soil. Washington, then in his hot youth and burning for action, on being apprised of the approach of the party, at once assumed that its intent was hostile. Guided by a friendly Indian, he, with forty men, marched through the dark of a rainy night in May, and at break of day surprised the Frenchmen as they lay encamped in a secluded valley. One account says that he fell upon them without warning; another, that he ordered his men to fire while the French officer was reading a formal protest against his trespass. However it came about, Jumonville and others were shot dead, and the rest taken prisoners.

17. Washington then encamped on the Little Meadows. His

<sup>1</sup> *The Monongahela and Alleghany Rivers.*—At the junction of these two tributaries of the Ohio now stands Pittsburg (in the west of Pennsylvania).

<sup>2</sup> *George Washington.*—Afterwards first President of the United States; he was then in his twenty-second year. Born 1732, died 1799.

men threw up a line of intrenchments which he named **Fort Necessity**. There, with four hundred militia, he held his ground for over a month. M. Villars, with one thousand troops, advanced from Fort du Quesne to drive him off. The French, though much superior in numbers, did not attempt to storm the rude work, but surrounded the Virginians, and kept up a galling fire from behind trees and bushes. Owing to the heavy rains the trenches of Fort Necessity were filled with water. Washington surrendered the now untenable position on honourable terms. He knew not, when Villars read to him the articles of capitulation in French, that his attack on Jumonville was termed "assassination." He did not understand the language.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the real question at issue as regarded the North American colonies? \*

2. What was the aim of France? Why was its power in North America not so strongly seated as that of England? Wherein did the strength of France lie?

3. What plan did De la Galissonnière suggest for checking the westward progress of the English? By what device did he assert the claim of France to the western territory?

4. In what other quarter did he assert French claims? To whom was the question of disputed boundaries referred? What was the chief subject of debate? How long did the Commission sit? What was the result?

5. Wherein did De la Jonquière differ in character from his predecessor? What mal-practices did he encourage? What did he neglect?

6. How did Bigot improve on his master's example?

7. What led to Jonquière's recall? What proof of his penuriousness did he give in his last hours?

8. What site was fixed on for the new capital of Nova Scotia? What inducements were held out to settlers?

9. When did the Governor arrive? How many persons accompanied him? What name was given to the new city?

10. Where did the Governor and his

Council meet? How did they deal with the Acadians?

11. How did the settlers work? What progress had been made before the end of autumn?

12. In what state did the French keep the new settlement? Whom did they use as their instrument for this purpose? How was the Abbé regarded by the English, by the Bishop, and by the Governor-General? What did he persuade a number of the Acadians to do?

13. Where had the Abbé his headquarters? What means did Cornwallis take to stop the traffic of the Acadians with Louisburg? What was the fate of Commandant How? Who was blamed for the dastardly deed?

14. How did Du Quesne act in anticipation of an early rupture? How were the habitants treated?

15. What effect had the rivalry of the French and the English on the Indians? What barrier did the French interpose between the English and the St. Lawrence? By whom were the French schemes among the Iroquois counteracted? To what office had the Government appointed Johnson?

16. What was the origin of Fort du Quesne? Who were sent to demand restitution of the fort?

17. Where did Washington then encamp? How long did he hold out? What compelled him to surrender?

## CHAPTER XXI.

## WAR DECLARED.

1755 to 1757 A.D.

The Marquis de Vaudreuil-Cavagnac.	War declared.
Capture of Fort Beauséjour.	Loudoun Commander-in-Chief.
Braddock at Monongahela.	Marquis de Montcalm.
Battle of Lake George.	Fort Oswego taken.
Expulsion of the Acadians.	Massacre at Fort William-Henry.

1. THE collision in the valley of the Ohio was the signal for a general conflict. The mother countries were drifting into hostilities; no actual proclamation of war was **1754** made, however, for some time. In view of the inevitable contest, the Deputies of the English Colonies held a Convention at Albany, on the 14th of June, to consult on a measure of general defence. This meeting was at first called to ratify a treaty of peace with the Six Nations. In the case of the famous league of the Iroquois, the English had seen that union for a common purpose gave strength. It is said it suggested the first idea of a confederation of the English colonies. The celebrated **Benjamin Franklin**<sup>1</sup> proposed a scheme of union, which would have vested the power of defence in a general government, and which would have enabled the English colonies to use their superior power to advantage. But through imperial and local jealousies it was frustrated.

2. France and England now sent out military reinforcements to their colonies. The Marquis du Quesne, wishing to enter the naval service, demanded his recall. At the prayer of the people of Canada, who remembered his father's happy administration, the King appointed the **Marquis de Vaudreuil-Cavagnac**. The fleet bearing the new Governor-General and **Baron Die-**

---

<sup>1</sup> *Benjamin Franklin*.—Born 1706, died 1790. In the struggle between Great Britain and the colonies he took an active part in the declaration of Independence. He signed, on the part of the United States, the treaty recognizing their independence, in 1783. From 1785 to 1788 he sat with Washington and Hamilton in the Federal Convention which framed the Constitution of the United States. He also won fame by his scientific researches.

skau, with several veteran battalions, was met off the coast of Newfoundland by an English squadron under Admiral Boscawen. But for a thick fog that baffled pursuit, M. de Vaudreuil might never have reached Quebec.

3. About the same time **General Braddock** arrived in America with the 44th and 48th Regiments, to cooperate with the New England forces. A meeting of the Colonial **1755** Governors was held at Alexandria, and the resolution to A.D. capture the Forts Du Quesne, Frederic or Crown Point, Niagara, and Beauséjour, was adopted. The possession of those places would give the English a hold on all the debatable territory.

4. On the 2nd of June a force of two thousand men, under **Colonel Moncton**, arrived at the head of the Bay of Fundy. They crossed the Missisquoi, and erected batteries within six hundred yards of Beauséjour. M. Verger, the Governor, had a garrison of one hundred and fifty soldiers; and twelve hundred Acadians from Chepody, Memramcook, Peticodiac, Bay Verte, and Point de Bute, came at his call. Many of them were "deserted inhabitants," who felt that they had been deceived and mocked by De Loutre. The fort was small, confined, and crowded. When the shells exploded, the Acadians were stifled by the smoke; when they saw several of their people lying dead, they deserted. Verger did not attempt to make a vigorous sally. One morning, as some French officers were breakfasting with an English prisoner, a bomb-shell burst through the casemate, killing some of the party and wounding others. Before the day closed, Verger capitulated. De Loutre, ruined and disgraced, fled to the St. John; and Colonel Moncton and Captain John Winslow supped with the French officers in Beauséjour, which they named **Fort Cumberland**.

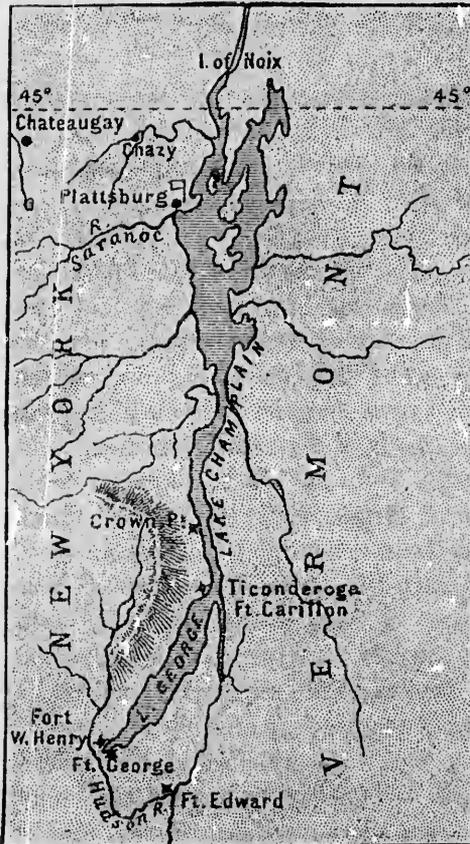
5. In the meantime, **Major-General Braddock** was wending his way through the wilderness to Fort du Quesne. In temper Braddock was haughty, arrogant, and unbending. He knew nothing of the country, or of the mode of warfare proper to be pursued in it; and, worst of all, he despised the counsel of those who could have instructed him. There was discontent among the colonial forces who followed him. The regulation of the service, which gave the officers of the regular army superior

rank over the officers of the militia of the same grade, excited their jealousy, and spread among them a spirit of disaffection: they felt they were depreciated, that their legitimate ambition was thwarted, and they soon exclaimed that they were sacrificed by the glaring incapacity of the generals sent out to command them.

6. Braddock reached the **Monongahela** on the 9th of July. He had pushed forward with twelve hundred men, leaving Colonel Dunbar to follow with the rest of the troops and the heavy luggage. He marched as if he were in the open country, with life and drum and flying colours. He recked not that the Indian scouts might carry the news of his foolhardy advance to the Governor of Du Quesne, nor dreamed that two hundred French soldiers and a band of Indians were lurking among the tall grass in the gloom of the woods through which he must pass. His advanced-guard marched through the river to the inspiring strains of the "British Grenadier," and plunged into a defile. Suddenly from the dark ravine in front there burst forth **a volley of musketry**, and the Indians started up with a fierce yell, then sank again in the coverts. The van fell back in terror upon the main body, which was entering the defile, and threw it into confusion. In vain Braddock stormed and raged, and endeavoured to re-form the broken ranks of his soldiers; in vain the officers exposed themselves with noble gallantry, and urged their men to charge and clear the covert of the lurking foe. Braddock had five horses killed under him, and at length fell **mortally wounded**. Fast dropped officers and men before the murderous fire; utterly demoralized, the soldiers broke into uncontrollable flight, and rested not till they had reached Dunbar's camp, forty miles off. Colonel Washington (who had behaved with great courage and coolness) threw himself with his Virginians across the Monongahela, and checked the enemy from harassing the retreat. The English lost sixty-three officers killed and wounded, and six hundred men. Braddock, the headstrong, as he lay dying, was heard to mutter, "**We shall know better how to deal with them another time.**" - He did not live to profit by his experience.

7. This disastrous defeat spread dismay throughout the English

colonies. The expedition against Fort Niagara was abandoned. By the influence of William Johnson alone, the Six Nations were prevented from deserting in a body to the French. With



LAKE CHAMPLAIN.

five thousand hardy backwoodsmen he advanced to attack Crown Point. Leaving a garrison at Fort Edward, he made his way to the southern extremity of Lake George.<sup>1</sup> While there encamped, his scouts brought intelligence that **Baron Dieskau**, with two thousand men, was advancing to attack Fort Edward. He sent one thousand men to check the French-Dutch General; but they fell into an ambuscade, and were cut up with great slaughter. Dieskau, avoiding Fort Edward, now hastened to surprise Johnson. But that General, though he had never fought a battle, had chosen his ground well. Morasses covered his right and left flanks, his centre was protected by a barricade of felled trees, and he had two or three guns in battery. The French force was so disposed that the Canadians and Indians were placed on the flanks and the regulars in the centre. The flank skirmishers would not advance across the morass in face of the artillery fire. For a time the veteran soldiers stood in line and fired unavailing volleys. They were mowed down as they advanced to charge the barricade, and the few survivors fled. Dieskau was found alone, leaning,

<sup>1</sup> *Lake George*. — Previously called Lac Sacrament. It was called Lake George in 1755, in honour of the English King.

wounded, against the stump of a tree. In the Battle of Lake George the French lost six hundred men. On the scene of the victory Johnson erected Fort William-Henry. In reward for his services the King created him a baronet. The drooping spirits of the English colonists revived; but they did not follow up their success.

8. When the alarm over the bloody defeat of Monongahela was at its height, Governor Lawrence of Nova Scotia was contemplating a stern measure. That disaster decided him. The Acadians, buoyed up with the hope that their loved Acadie would be restored to France, still persisted in refusing to take the unreserved oath of allegiance to King George. As a body, they maintained their position of neutrality; but they were doomed to suffer for the sins of those who gave open aid to the French. Their joy over Braddock's defeat was lively; they could not help crying out, "Vive la France;" it was natural. They were an amiable people, but by no means good British subjects.

9. Governor Lawrence summoned their deputies to appear at Halifax, and commanded them to take the absolute oath. On refusing, they were warned of the very serious consequences, and put in prison to give them time for cool reflection. Still they refused, and were not allowed another opportunity. The final resolution to remove the Acadians was taken on the 28th July. At the meeting of Council were 1755 present Admiral Boscawen and Savage Mostyn. The A.D. measure was carried out with all secrecy and despatch.

A number of transports were collected in the harbour of Boston; Lawrence wrote circular-letters to the Governors of the Colonies, from Maine to Georgia, stating the necessity of the step, and requiring them to detain the people that would be sent to them.

10. The deputies returned home, not dreaming of "le grand derangement"—"the great trouble"—about to befall their people. Not until ships appeared in the Bay of Fundy, and entered the Basin of Annapolis, and were moored off the mouths of the rivers Canard and Gaspereau, was suspicion excited. Then many fled into the woods; then commenced harrowing devastations. In the beginning of September, the prosperous village of

Grand Pre

Beaupré, on the Basin of Minas, rested in autumnal repose. The harvest was gathered in, and the barns were full to bursting. On the 5th, all the male inhabitants assembled in the chapel to hear a mandate from the Governor at Halifax. In firm and feeling words, Colonel John Winslow, standing at the altar, announced the stern decree, that their property was confiscated to the King, and that the ships in the bay were ready to bear themselves, their wives, and their families away to distant shores. Resistance was useless; the men were caged as in a prison, and armed soldiers stood on guard outside. With only their money, and such articles of furniture as the vessels could carry, they were forced on board. With wonderful patience the unfortunate people endured the spoiling of their households and their cruel banishment. In Chignecto, and at Peticodiac, and Memramcook, the habitans resisted the English party, and woful scenes followed: houses, barns, chapels, were given to the flames; men, women, and children fled into the woods,—there some burrowed, others found their way to Miramichi, to Shippegan, to the Nepisiguit, to Quebec, where they were shamefully treated by Bigot and his creature Cádiz.

11. **Three thousand of the Acadians** were distributed among the English colonies. For reasons alike of policy and of humanity, Governor Lawrence's act was injudicious and harsh. It did not accomplish the object of giving security to the Province,—if that alone was his object,—for many found their way back, and, along with the Indians, sorely harassed the English settlers during the war; and it was so contrary to natural feeling, that it aroused a sympathy that altogether overlooked the provocation that the Acadians had really given.

12. War was formally declared by the British Government on the 27th of March. France made a counter declaration in May. The great contest, known as "**the Seven Years' War**," now commenced in Europe. France, Austria, and Russia banded themselves against Prussia. Supplied with the sinews of war by England, Frederick entered into the contest from which he was to emerge with the title of "**the Great**." England encountered France on the high seas, and in India; but America was their chief battle-ground.

13. **Little energy** was displayed on the side of the British in carrying on the war. At the head of affairs was the Duke of Newcastle,<sup>1</sup> notorious for his mingled vacillation and presumption. His spirit seemed to infect all operations. Under his administration men of talent and energy had no scope for action. Political favourites, however incapable, were preferred to positions of the highest responsibility at the most critical periods. The result was disaster and disgrace. The Earl of Loudoun, a competent civil administrator, but of no military capacity, was sent out as Commander-in-chief. In advance of him arrived Major-General Abercrombie, with the 42nd Highlanders—the famous Black Watch—and the 35th Regiment.

14. The French King, although his resources were strained by the war in Europe, sent out considerable reinforcements, and several experienced officers,—**Louis St. Veran, Marquis de Montcalm**,<sup>2</sup> General de Levi, and their aides-de-camp, M. de Bouganville<sup>3</sup> and M. de Bourslamaque. Montcalm, skilled in all the arts of war, had acquired reputation in Italy, Bohemia, and Germany. His mind was cultivated, his manner was refined and courteous. But he was haughty and impetuous; he could brook no interference with his plans, and he was sometimes hurried into actions at variance with his judgment and humanity.

15. The necessity of employing the Indians infused a savage cruelty into the warfare, which cast a stain on the fair fame of the French General. Terrible deeds were committed by the Indians in the open campaign; but the worst aspects of the war were seen in the skirmishing on the frontiers of Pennsylvania, New York, and the New England colonies,—in the midnight surprises of lonely settlements,—in wholesale household slaughters of old men, women, and tender babes,—in scalplings,

<sup>1</sup> *The Duke of Newcastle.*—Thomas Pelham, Duke of Newcastle, became Premier on the death of his brother, Henry Pelham, in 1754. He resigned in November 1756. The King was then compelled, much against his will, to send for Pitt (afterwards Earl of Chatham). He and the Duke of Devonshire held office till April 1757. Newcastle was then recalled, but he was unable to form a Ministry without

Pitt's assistance. The Newcastle-Pitt Administration (of which Pitt was the real head) lasted from June 1757 till May 1762.

<sup>2</sup> *Montcalm.*—Born 1712; died at Quebec, 1759.

<sup>3</sup> *Bouganville.*—Afterwards celebrated as a circumnavigator. He was the first Frenchman that ever made a voyage round the world. This he accomplished in the years 1766–1769.

burnings at the stake, and atrocious tortures. The sight of the mangled victims aroused in the breasts of the white men a maddening desire to wreak vengeance on the red demons.

16. At the opening of the year the English Governors met in New York, and concocted a grand plan of campaign. The forts at Crown Point, Niagara, Du Quesne, were to be captured; and seven thousand men, ascending by the Kennebec and Chaudiere Rivers, were to threaten Quebec. Months passed away and nothing decisive was done. Individual officers, with small parties, performed gallant actions; but the Commander-in-chief seemed to have no determined purpose.

17. The French were very active and enterprising. Oswego, the English naval depôt on Lake Ontario, was their special object of attack. There were two forts on opposite banks of the river. Twice in the course of the year they were threatened. In August, Montcalm advanced in earnest with five thousand men and a numerous train of artillery. He opened fire at midnight on Fort Ontario, and soon compelled Colonel Mercer and his garrison to evacuate it, and cross over to Little Oswego Fort. From the captured post Montcalm directed a hot, continuous shower of balls and shells upon it. Mercer was killed, and the dispirited garrison capitulated. Fourteen hundred prisoners and an immense quantity of stores of all kinds, and many sloops and bateaux, fell into the hands of the French. After causing the forts to be razed to the ground, Montcalm moved with his force to Lake Champlain, and advancing eight miles beyond Crown Point, established himself in the fort on the rocky height of **Ticonderoga**. By this action the English were cut off from communication with the western lakes, and the gate of Canada was closed against them. The attack on Crown Point was abandoned; and the English Commander concentrated the chief part of his forces at Forts Edward and William-Henry.

18. (The following year the Earl of Loudoun confined the operations of the campaign to an attack upon Louis-  
**1757** burg, leaving Montcalm at liberty to assault the forts  
 A.D. on Lake George and the Hudson, and to threaten  
 Albany and New York. A fleet of fourteen great  
 ships of war, under Admiral Holborne, bearing seven veteran

regiments, appeared in Halifax harbour. Much time was lost in **playing at war**, in reviews and sham fights. Troops were at length embarked for the enterprise; but the Earl, hearing that the fortress was defended by six thousand soldiers, and that seventeen line-of-battle ships rode in the harbour, ordered them to land again. The English fleet cruised all summer between Halifax and Louisburg. Encountering a storm that wrecked one of his finest vessels, and drove others, dismasted, to seek the nearest ports, Holborne with the remainder sailed for England.

19. While Loudoun was fooling away his time in Halifax over sham-fights, New York and the English colonies were thrown into a state of alarm. Montcalm, with nine thousand men and siege-batteries, advanced from Ticonderoga and invested **Fort William-Henry**. With two thousand five hundred men, and inefficient guns, Colonel Munro held the post. "**I will defend my trust to the last extremity,**" said the brave veteran, when summoned to surrender. At Fort Edward, Colonel Webb, with four thousand soldiers, remained inactive. Though earnestly entreated, he refused to attempt to succour his beleaguered brother-in-arms. Hundreds of Indians swarmed about the French camp, prowled around the fort, and cut off the English foraging parties. The heights surrounding the pure waters of "Holy Lake" reverberated the thunder of Montcalm's cannon. For six days he poured in a shower of shot and shell. Having fired away all his ammunition, and finding his position untenable, Munro capitulated on honourable terms. He stipulated for an escort of French soldiers to conduct his force as far as Fort Edward,—many of his soldiers, unaccustomed to wilderness war, had a terror of the red men. The temper of the Indians, balked of blood and plunder, was dangerous. As Munro with two thousand men, and the camp-following of women and children, were filing through the woods, a **thousand infuriated savages** burst upon them. The fiends spared neither the tender babe nor the distracted mother: they pulled the soldiers out of the ranks by the skirts of their long great-coats, and despatched them with their tomahawks. There was a horrid clamour of shrieks and yells, and blood flowed like water in the path of the destroyers. The suddenness of the attack paralyzed the troops, and deprived brave men of their

accustomed self-command. Too late to save his honour from stain, Montcalm appeared to calm the fury of his allies. Satiated with blood, they fell to plunder. Twelve hundred British soldiers, it is said, were slaughtered or carried off as prisoners. **The massacre of Fort William-Henry** aroused in the English colonies a feeling of rage and revengeful fury. In England it created intense horror and indignation. It rested in the memory and stung the heart of the British soldiers, and it left with the French an uneasy sense of responsibility.

20. Montcalm was deterred from marching upon Fort Edward by a sudden display of spirit on the part of Webb, who rallied to his aid the hardy militiamen of Massachusetts and Connecticut. He returned with great spoils to Ticonderoga.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the purpose of the Albany Convention? What scheme did Franklin then propose?

2. Why did Du Quesne demand his recall? Who was his successor? By whose desire was he chosen? What narrow escape did he make?

3. What English General arrived in America about the same time? What plan of action was adopted?

4. Describe how Fort Beauséjour became Fort Cumberland.

5. Where, meantime, was Braddock? What was the cause of the discontent among his followers?

6. How did Braddock advance? How was his advance checked? What was the English loss?

7. What effects had this defeat? Who headed the expedition against Crown Point? What befell the body he sent to check Dieskau? Describe the Battle of Lake George. How was Johnson rewarded?

8. What hope animated the Acadians? How did they receive the news of the Monongahela disaster?

9. What were the Acadian deputies at Halifax required to do? To what final resolution did their refusal lead? How was the measure carried out?

10. Describe the scene in the village of Beauré. What occurred in those

places in which the Acadians offered resistance?

11. How many of the Acadians were distributed among the English colonies? Why was this measure a failure?

12. What war began in 1756? Who were engaged in it? Where was the chief battle-ground?

13. Who was at the head of affairs in England? Who was appointed Commander-in-chief in America?

14. Who was the chief officer sent out by the French King? What was his disposition?

15. What introduced a feature of savage cruelty into the warfare?

16. Where did the English Governors meet? What plan did they concoct?

17. Describe the capture of Oswego. What was Montcalm's next movement? What part of their plans did the English then abandon? Where did they concentrate most of their forces?

18. How did Loudoun show his incapacity? What was the result of the Louisburg expedition?

19. What fort did Montcalm next attack? What was the result? What terrible tragedy followed? What feelings did it engender in the English, and in the French?

20. What checked the further advance of Montcalm?

## CHAPTER XXII.

## THE CONQUEST.

1758 to 1760 A.D.

Internal state of Canada.  
 William Pitt.  
 Louisburg captured.  
 The Island of St. John.  
 Ticonderoga.  
 The last struggle.  
 Bourlamaque bars the gate.

Fort Niagara taken.  
 Wolfe before Quebec.  
 Battle of the Plains.  
 Surrender of Quebec.  
 Battle of Ste. Foye.  
 M. de Levi's blockade raised.  
 End of French Rule in Canada.

1. DURING the campaign of 1757 the star of France appeared in the ascendant; that of England was obscured by clouds. The conduct of the war in Europe and America had covered the Newcastle Ministry with disgrace. The temper of the people was gloomy and savage. Pamphlets prophesying the decadence of British power were read with a morbid satisfaction. For committing an error of judgment in not attempting the relief of Minorca when besieged by the French, Admiral Byng was made the scape-goat of an incapable Ministry,—was tried by court-martial, and sentenced to die. So great was the popular fury, that though Pitt, who in the meantime had come to power, pleaded urgently for the unfortunate Admiral, he was shot on the deck of the *Monarque*, March 14, 1757. The return of Admiral Holborne, with his shattered fleet, without attempting the reduction of Louisburg, filled the cup of popular discontent to overflowing. William Pitt,<sup>1</sup> the great Commoner, who proudly boasted that he alone could save England, was called to the head of affairs, June 29, 1757. The influence of his far-seeing, daring, and patriotic spirit was soon felt. Confidence began to revive.

<sup>1</sup> *William Pitt.*—Born 1708, died 1778. He entered Parliament before he was twenty-one years of age, and soon took the lead against Sir Robert Walpole. He was made Earl of Chatham in 1766, and thus sacrificed the popularity he had enjoyed as "The great Commoner."

While he maintained the abstract right of Parliament to tax the colonies, he opposed the American War; but when peace was proposed on the basis of the independence of the States, he was equally opposed to the dismemberment of the empire.

2. While the arms of France were victorious in Canada, Montcalm knew but too well that the colony had little intrinsic strength. It was a mere skeleton. Its places of defence were far distant from one another; and when these were captured, the French had nothing to fall back upon. The vast western region and the valley of the Ohio were held by two key-fortresses; but if they should be taken the country would be conquered. **The internal affairs of Canada were in a ruinous condition.** Symptoms were manifest in society that were portents of some great public calamity. Political corruption and private immorality were rampant. The Head of the Church castigated the sins of the times—the reckless gambling and debauchery. The extremes of licentious luxuriousness and squalid misery existed side by side.

3. The people had looked with hope to the Governor-General for relief from the grinding monopoly of the Fur Company, and from the iniquitous exactions of the officials. M. de Vaudreuil had cruelly disappointed them. Though not chargeable with gross corruption himself, he seemed in their eyes to be an accomplice of those who were, inasmuch as he did not punish or oppose them. They murmured loudly against him. Canada was in the clutches of the Intendant and his creatures. **The rapacity of Bigot** was shameless, and almost incredible. He seized on the supplies sent from France to the colony, and sold them at exorbitant prices for his own profit. His subordinates at the distant trading-posts acted in the same manner with the goods consigned to them. Owing to the occurrence of **bad harvests**, there was at this time **1758** scarcity and dire distress among the people. Yet Bigot compelled them to bring their grain to his granaries, and to sell it at his own prices. He exported great quantities of it to the West Indies, realizing large sums by the iniquitous transaction. When Quebec and Montreal were pinched by scarcity of bread, he relieved them by forcing the farmers to bring all their stock to market, and to sell it at a low rate. He laid the train that exploded in financial ruin, by issuing sheaves of paper money under his own signature, made payable on the Royal Treasury of France. These notes became depreciated, and were eventually repudiated. The

enemies of Canada within were as much to be feared as those without.†

4. There could be no doubt as to the issue of the long-protracted contest between the English and the French in America, when **William Pitt** was at the head of affairs in England, when his mind had grasped the determined purpose of destroying the power of France in America, when in his lavish hands were the immense resources of England, and when he was free to choose the most efficient officers in her service to aid him in carrying out his design. Animated by the assurance that the British Government would back their efforts to the last man and the last shilling, and welcoming with joy the prospect of the decisive conflict, the English colonies raised a large force of militia, and gathered together immense stores of war material. (Pitt projected a bold plan of campaign:—to reduce **Louisburg**, and so deprive France of her only harbour on the Atlantic; to take Fort du Quesne, and gain a hold on the valley of the Ohio; to capture Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and so open up the way to Montreal, and prevent all hostile incursions from Canada against New York.) The military command of the expedition against Louisburg was given to Colonel Jeffrey Amherst,<sup>1</sup> a judicious, brave, and energetic officer; and under him to Colonel James Wolfe,<sup>2</sup> who, though young in years and frail in body, possessed an unconquerable spirit.

5. After the siege of Louisburg in 1745, the fortifications had been allowed to fall into decay. Stones from the ramparts had fallen into the ditches; many of the carriages of the cannon were so rotten that they could not bear the shock of discharge. Repairs had been hurriedly made when M. Drucour, the Governor, heard of the intended attack. (But he trusted more to the bravery of his garrison than to the strength of his works.) He had 3,500 soldiers, militia, and Indians. Five line-of-battle ships rode in the harbour. Three of his five frigates were sunk at its mouth; a strong battery on Goat Island further protected it.

<sup>1</sup> *Jeffrey Amherst*.—Afterwards Lord Amherst; born 1717, died 1797.

<sup>2</sup> *James Wolfe*.—Born 1726, died 1759. Pitt selected him for the command in

Canada, though still comparatively a young man, because of his distinguished services in the campaigns on the Continent of Europe.

6. Early in June a powerful fleet, under Admiral Boscawen, carrying 1,400 British troops, arrived in Gabarus Bay,<sup>1</sup> and lay heaving at anchor enshrouded in thick fog. The wild waves rolled in from the open sea, and broke in angry surf upon the precipitous coasts. The appalling prospect caused even the officers who had been specially selected to do a bold deed to redeem England's honour, to hesitate. The angry state of the water forced them to remain inactive for days, and to look on while the French busily fortified those places on the coast where landing was practicable. At dawn on the 8th, word was given that the attempt might be made. The British force, in three divisions, was rowed through the swell of the waves to different points. Many of the boats were swamped in the surf, and shattered against rocks. Wolfe, on the left, with his Grenadiers and Highlanders, landed in face of a rattling fire from the French above at Cormaron Creek, scaled the rugged path, and seized the opposing batteries. The landing made, the French retreated hastily to Louisburg. M. Drucour commanded the outside batteries to be abandoned, and concentrated all his forces to defend the town.

7. The weather continued stormy, the wind blew furiously, the rain fell heavily. The danger in carrying siege material from the ships to the coast was great, the difficulty of hauling it over the marshes enormous. Wolfe, with 2,000 men, marching north and east around the harbour, erected a battery on Light-house Point; and Whitmore and Lawrence pushed their trenches closer and closer to the western ramparts. Boscawen, pouring shell and red-hot shot into the harbour, burned three of the great ships to the water's edge; a party of sailors and marines, dashing in in open boats, destroyed a fourth, and towed out the fifth in triumph. Surrounded by a fire that continued to grow closer and hotter, M. Drucour, after a gallant resistance of seven weeks, surrendered at discretion on the 26th of July. The inhabitants were conveyed to France; the garrison, with the sailors and marines, numbering 5,637 men, were sent prisoners of war to England. Cape Breton came

<sup>1</sup> Gabarus Bay.—See Map, p. 182.

permanently into the possession of the Crown of England.) Two years afterwards the fortifications of Louisburg were razed to the ground;—not one stone of that formidable stronghold, that had cost two powers so much treasure to build and to destroy, was left standing upon another. Its destruction, happily, ended the era of war between France and England in America.

8. Along with Cape Breton, **the Island of St. John** fell into the hands of the English. The inhabitants then numbered 4,100. They raised corn and horned cattle, for which they found a market in Quebec. After the fall of Louisburg, a part of Boscawen's fleet, carrying Wolfe and his Grenadiers, ravaged the coasts of the Gulf and River St. Lawrence, from Miramichi to Chaleur Bay, from Gaspé to Mount Levi. A number of the unfortunate Acadians, who had fled from Nova Scotia, doomed to suffer on all hands, had to fly from their desolated farms into the woods. (The spirit of the war was remorseless.)

9. The triumph at Louisburg was overclouded by a **dreadful disaster**. At Albany, in June, an army of 5,000 men assembled, under command of General Abercrombie. Over a thousand bateaux bore them to the narrows between Lakes Champlain and George. Montcalm, at Ticonderoga, had early tidings of their approach. With his choicest troops—the Grenadiers—he prepared to defend the breast-work at Carillon that covered the fort on the rocky height. An embankment of earth, eight feet high, sloped gradually down for a hundred feet; trees were embedded in it, with their sharpened branches pointed outwards; a dreary swamp spread out before it. The country all around was covered with a close and thick wood, with tangling brush and underwood. A reconnoitring party under Bourlamaque advanced from Carillon, but fell back on the approach of the English. A company lost their way, and becoming bewildered, turned about, and encountered a division of their foe, who were also astray. A close and fierce contest, face to face, and behind tree, and stump, and prostrate trunk, took place. (The French were routed and almost annihilated.)

10. (The English were very gloomy over their victory; their leader, **Lord Howe**, had fallen at the first discharge.) This young officer was much esteemed and beloved by the army, and his death cast a gloom over it. Nothing went right

after it. Disorder spread through the ranks. The soldiers had no confidence in their General, who seemed to be bewildered, and to have no definite plan of action in his head. Without knowing the strength of the position, without waiting for his artillery, he ordered an attack on **the breast-work of Carillon**. For hours, beneath a burning sun, the 55th and 42nd charged that impenetrable barrier. Scores upon scores of the devoted men were shot dead, or were staked upon the pointed branches. The impetuous and agile Highlanders tried to clamber over the barricades, and hacked furiously at them with their broadswords. In a different part of the field one regiment fired by mistake into another, killing some of their brothers-in-arms, and wounding many others. A panic spread throughout the army. The blood of hundreds of men reddened the pools of the oozy swamps; the bravest had pierced their hearts upon the stakes in vain. Sheltered, and almost unseen, the French met each assault with a withering fire. The soldiers, throwing away their arms, broke into uncontrollable flight, and made for the landing-place. But for the coolness of Colonel Bradstreet, who checked them by the levelled muskets of a few men that retained their coolness, hundreds, in scrambling into the boats, might have perished in the lakes. (Nearly two thousand men fell dead or wounded in the disastrous attack on Carillon.) (By it Abercrombie lost his command and his character as a soldier.)

11. The disgrace of the repulse before Ticonderoga was, from a military point of view, atoned for by the taking of the fort at (Cataracoui by Colonel Bradstreet in August, and of Fort du Quesne) by Colonel Forbes in November. The capture of these two important posts gave the English a hold of the valley of the Ohio, and closed against the French the eastern pass to Lake Ontario.

12. **The death-struggle** was now approaching. M. de Vaudreuil despatched M. de Bouganville to make representations at the Court of France as to the perilous condition of the colony, and urgently to crave aid. But the King, pressed by the requirements of the war in Europe, was unable to send reinforcements to Canada. "When," said M. Berryer, his Minister, "the

<sup>1</sup> Fort du Quesne. — Then named | Minister. It formed the nucleus of  
"Fort Pitt," in honour of the English | Pittsburg.

house is on fire, one does not mind the stables." "That," retorted Bouganville sharply, "will not prevent people from saying that you speak like an ass." He returned to Quebec with stars, decorations, and brevets of promotion for the officers,—but with neither men nor money. All that the King desired was to maintain a foothold in the country. His officers were thrown upon the defensive, and endeavoured to make the best of the means at their disposal. M. de Vaudreuil issued a spirited proclamation, calling on the militia to bestir themselves, and make a bold stand against the foe, whose purpose to conquer Canada was now declared. But there was sore distress in the country, and among the people there was little martial enthusiasm. Though the names of 11,000 men capable of bearing arms were on the muster-rolls, they were much dispirited and miserably equipped. The chief defence of Canada was in the ten skeleton regiments of French veterans, in the skill and energy of the commanding officers, and in the strength of the fortifications at Niagara, Quebec, and Montreal, which were the points now threatened.

13. **Great preparations** were made for what the English Minister sanguinely hoped would be the final campaign. The Governments of the colonies were incited to fresh efforts to raise an adequate force. In the month of June, **1759** three armaments were in movement against different A.D. points. (General Amherst, Commander-in-chief, advanced from Albany with 1,100 men against Montreal; General James Wolfe, with 8,000 soldiers, sailed with a great fleet, under Admirals Saunders and Holmes, from Louisburg for Quebec; while Brigadier Prideaux and Sir William Johnson, with two British regiments, a force of militia, and a crowd of Indians, in bateaux and canoes, made their way through the difficult country between the Schenectady and the shores of Lake Ontario, to attack Fort Niagara.) It was intended, by the plan of campaign, that Amherst and Prideaux, after the reduction of Montreal and Niagara, should advance towards Quebec to cooperate with Wolfe in the reduction of that fortress, in which Montcalm had concentrated the chief forces of the colony.

14. M. Bourlamaque was instructed to stay the advance of the English against Montreal. He mined the works at Ticou-

deroga, and retreated to Crown Point. When General Amherst's advanced-guard was on the point of entering the fort, a tremendous explosion was heard. While the ruins were still hot and smoking, an intrepid sergeant ventured in, and clambering up the height, unfurled **the red-cross banner.** ( Bourlamaque, evacuating Crown Point, took up his position at the Isle aux Noix, at the northern extremity of Lake Champlain. There he was determined to make his stand, and bar the gate of Canada. ) Amherst took possession of the rich country the French had abandoned. He moved forward with great caution; but he was checked in his advance from Crown Point. Four French armed vessels scoured the lake, and his force could not traverse its length in open bateaux unless protected by a squadron fit to cope with them. ( Precious weeks were spent in rigging rafts, in building and equipping tugs and sloops. ) It was the 11th of October before the vessels were launched. Chill, cloudy, and boisterous weather set in. ( When all danger from the French fleet was overcome, a succession of storms prevented General Amherst from venturing to trust his open bateaux on the tumultuous billows of the lake. So he made his winter quarters at Crown Point. )

15. **Fort Niagara**<sup>1</sup> was invested closely. On the 19th of July Brigadier Prideaux had pushed forward his trenches a hundred yards from the covered way. Before the heavy continuous fire the shattered ramparts crumbled away. As he was standing in the trenches, he was killed by a splinter of a shell fired from one of his own mortars. **Sir William Johnson** assumed the command. The situation of the garrison was desperate. One hope the stout Commandant, M. Pouchot, retained—that the siege would be raised. From the forts of Venango,<sup>2</sup> Presqu'isle, Du Bœuf, and Detroit, 1,200 veterans and a great crowd of Indians were advancing swiftly to his aid. Leaving his provincials to guard the trenches and check Pouchot from sallying out on his rear, Johnson advanced with his British infantry and his Iroquois warriors to give them battle. Amid the boom of the cannonade, the rattle of musketry, and the mingled clamour of the field, was heard the muffled roar of the mighty

<sup>1</sup> *Fort Niagara.*—See Map, p. 285.

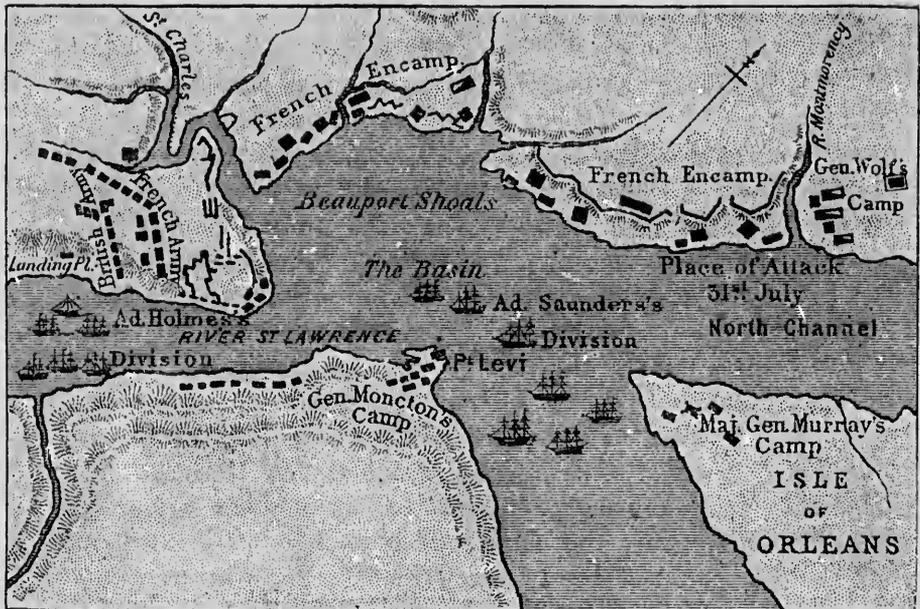
<sup>2</sup> *Forts of Venango, &c.*—See Map, p. 226.

Falls. From the woods the Indians rushed upon the red lines with an astounding yell: swiftly they fled back again before the steady fire of the cool British soldiery, and vanished from the fight. With loud shouts, throwing all their energy into one impetuous charge, the French advanced, only to be driven back in formless rout. ¶ With their defeat, the country of the Great Lakes **passed away for ever** from the dominion of France. ¶ On the 25th, Pouchot and his garrison marched out of Fort Niagara, and laid down their arms on the banks of the lake. ¶ The fierce Iroquois looked on, but stirred not a hand to molest them. Content with the victory, Johnson and his force rested on their arms.

16. **Wolfe, before Quebec**, looked, but looked in vain, for Amherst and Johnson. ¶ Safely the fleet had passed the difficult channel, "the traverse;" unharmed by sudden squall and treacherous fire-raft, the ships rode at anchor in the basin, and off the west point of the Isle of Orleans. From his camp upon the isle the young General surveyed the grand scene, and the difficulties of his enterprise crowded on his mind, and for a moment depressed him. On the right of the French line rose the rugged fortress. Stretching from the River St. Charles—whose mouth was guarded by sunken ships and hulks bristling with cannon—to the Falls of Montmorency, there ran an irregular crest of land, fortified at all points. Behind these works, and in the villages above, were gathered 12,000 men. Bands of savages lurked in the woods. The shoalness of the water on the Beauport shore, and the wide mud-flats, made landing on the face of the coast all but impossible. ¶ But Wolfe decided to land a force upon the coast, attack the enemy behind his fortifications, and bring on, if possible, a general engagement. ¶

17. **The English army** was disposed in three divisions. Brigadier Moncton, with four battalions, occupied Point Levi, from which he had driven the French; a brigade under Generals Townsend and Murray occupied a camp on the west point of the isle; Wolfe was posted, with his Louisburg Grenadiers, on the left bank of the Montmorency, close to the Falls, and at a height overlooking the enemy's intrenchments. ¶

18. During the month of July the batteries from Point Levi poured shot and shell into Quebec. The lower and upper towns



SIEGE OF QUEBEC.

were wrapped in flames,—hundreds of houses, churches, and public edifices were destroyed: the fortifications remained unharmed. The position seemed impregnable. But within Quebec the people lived in continual alarm: they fainted for want of bread, and in their hearts all courage died out. There grew up estrangement between the Governor-General and the Commander. They disagreed over the plan of defence. (The haughty Montcalm contemned the military skill of M. de Vaudreuil; he deeply mistrusted the ability of the dispirited and miserably armed militia to cope with the British soldiers; he would remain on the defensive, would not be drawn out of his intrenchments to fight, but would hold on and wait until approaching winter should drive off the besiegers.)

19. Watchful eyes within his own army criticised the movements of General Wolfe. The extreme favour shown him by the great English Minister, in appointing him, over many of his seniors in the service, to the command of so important an enterprise, excited jealousy. Much was expected of him; increasing anxiety and activity affected his feeble health. He spared himself no fatigue, no danger. Passing under the guns of the

fortress, he ascended the river to find some point on the precipitous coast by which he might land; but he returned unsuccessful.

20. **On the 31st of July** Wolfe at length essayed to attack Montcalm in his intrenchments. The soldiers detailed from Moncton, Murray, and Townsend's brigades, waited in boats on the north-western point of the Isle of Orleans for the word of command. Admiral Saunders in the *Centurion* frigate, Wolfe in one of his transports, pushed in as far as possible to the shore. At a preconcerted signal, the ships, the batteries from Point Levi, and the height east of Montmorency, opened fire. The air was sultry, and the lowering clouds threatened a storm. The place of landing was a ford a little west of the Falls, defended by a redoubt. Montcalm moved up troops from the west to the east of the intrenchments where an attack was threatened. As the English sailors swept the foremost boats to the shore, the shot from the French batteries sank one or two; the rest grounded on a sunken ledge of rock. This accident produced great confusion. By the energy of Wolfe they were rescued from their dangerous position, and a safe passage through the rocks to the ford was found. The thunder growled ominously, and rain fell in torrents, as the Louisburg Grenadiers and Royal Americans jumped ashore. Without waiting for the support of the remainder of the force, they charged, irregularly and impetuously, the intrenchments on the crest of the rising ground; but they stumbled on the slope, now slippery from the wet. In their ardour they had much under-estimated the strength of the enemy's position. They fell fast before a galling fire, and then they retreated. Over four hundred lay dead or wounded on the fatal slope. The General sternly rebuked the survivors for their unsoldier-like conduct.

21. **This disaster** broke down the health of Wolfe. His eager and ambitious spirit was housed in a sensitive, frail body. For days he lay in burning fever on his bed. He knew that his country expected much from him. He had been specially chosen by Pitt to command, in the expectation that no danger or difficulty would daunt him. As he tossed restlessly about, the burden of his unaccomplished task oppressed him sorely. As if in sympathy with their beloved General, sickness broke out

in the army. For a time the gloom of discouragement rested upon it. \

22. When the fever began to leave him, Wolfe wrote to his Generals requiring them to consult over future operations. The obstacles to a successful attack by the Beauport shore were too great. \ Another plan, suggested, it is said, by General Townsend, was adopted; but it was kept a profound secret. \ Health returned to the army amid the bustle of preparation. \ At the end of August, Wolfe, now recovered, withdrew from his camp on the left bank of the Montmorency, and concentrated his forces at Point Levi. \ On the **12th of September** his batteries opened on Quebec, and Admiral Saunders anchored some of his great ships within firing range of the Beauport shore. Montcalm could see the British sailors and marines entering the boats, and he stood ready to repel another attack on his intrenchments. \ His army was now somewhat diminished in numbers. \ A mutinous spirit breaking out among the militia, he hanged some "to encourage the others:" \ many he had been compelled to send away to gather in the harvest. The reports of the capture of Fort Niagara and of the movements of Amherst from Crown Point had disquieted him. M. de Levi was then at Montreal with a large force; and Bougainville, with 1,500 men, watched, above Cap Rouge, the movements of Admiral Holmes and his fleet.

\ 23. While the cannon were thundering over the Beauport shore, the English army marched by the southern bank of the St. Lawrence eight miles above Quebec, to where the fleet was stationed. Thrilled with the expectation of a great action, and silently, the soldiers of the first division stepped into the boats. Wolfe was in the foremost. The night was starry and still. As the flotilla dropped softly down the tide, he relieved his excitement by **reciting Gray's Elegy**;<sup>1</sup> adding, when he had finished, "Now, gentlemen, I would rather have been the author of that poem than take Quebec." He was soon to prove how true it is that "the paths of glory lead but to the grave." On the beach of a cove, three miles above the city, Wolfe and the officers with him leaped. Fast as the boats arrived the soldiers

<sup>1</sup> *Gray's Elegy*. — "Elegy written in | perfect poems in the English language;  
a Country Churchyard," one of the most | by Thomas Gray; born 1716, died 1771.

landed and formed in rank. All night the boats passed between the cove and the fleet, which had now dropped down opposite it, bringing over the other divisions. A narrow path, hidden by the boscage, ran tortuously from the beach up the face of the precipitous rock. Swinging themselves up by the branches, holding on by tufts of grass, the agile Highlanders clambered to the top, and captured a French guard. Wolfe and his whole army followed. When the gray dawn turned to a burning red, streaked with glittering golden bars, 4,828 British soldiers were falling into order of battle on the billowy and bouldered **Plains of Abraham.**

24. From the city an officer rode swiftly to Montcalm with the startling intelligence that Quebec was threatened on the west. Obeying only the impulse of his chivalrous spirit, he resolved to give battle to the daring foe. Loudly the reveillé rang out, and roused his soldiers from their slumbers. Fast they were hurried over the bridge of boats across the St. Charles, and were formed for battle on a slope on the north-west of the fortress. In his precipitation Montcalm threw away the advantage that a superior artillery would have given him. He had only two light field-pieces; but his foe had only one. He mustered 7,520 men under arms; but hardly half of them were proved soldiers. Wolfe had none but veterans under his command. But his position was perilous: while a superior force faced him, Bouganville was advancing from Cap Rouge to attack him in the rear.

25. The French advanced with great show and bravery. Strong parties of their skirmishers drove in upon the British main lines,—the light infantry which were posted in front. Wolfe, who was on foot near the centre of the battle, with the Louisburg Grenadiers, strode along the ranks and counselled his soldiers not to fire until they saw the eyes of the foe. The French skirmishers retired, and with loud shouts the army advanced in columns, Montcalm in the centre with the regiments of Bearn and Guienne. Before their sharp fire the British soldiers fell fast. Wolfe was wounded in the wrist. When within forty yards the red lines poured forth one simultaneous volley of musketry. It was decisive,—the militia fled. The French columns, shattered and reeling, wavered. Wolfe gave

the word to advance. As he led the way a shot struck him in the body; wounded again, in the breast, **he staggered and fell** into the arms of a Grenadier officer, and was borne to the rear. Montcalm and his officers strove in vain to re-form their columns to withstand the charge of the British. Before their advancing fire, and the rush of the Highlanders with their keen claymores, the French soldiers broke into irretrievable flight, and sought safety under the cannon of the ramparts. **Montcalm fell mortally wounded**, and was borne through the St. John's Gate into Quebec. "See, they run!" cried out the Grenadier officer.—"Who run?" asked Wolfe.—"The enemy, sir; they give way everywhere."—"Now, God be praised;—I die happy."

26. When the battle was lost and won, Bouganville, too late, appeared on the field. Before the firm front of the victorious host he hastily retired. In the short and sharp conflict of "the Plains" the English lost 55 killed and 607 wounded; the French, 1,500 in all. **Wolfe was dead.** Generals Murray and Moncton were severely wounded. General de Senezergues, the second in the French command, was killed. Montcalm died on the morning after the battle, consoled, as a soldier, by the fact that the spotless flag of France still waved over Quebec.

27. On the first alarm of the utter rout of the French army, M. de Vaudreuil abandoned the line of fortifications on the east, and fled with the militia to Jacques Cartier. On the 18th of September M. de Ramezay received instructions from M. de Levi and M. de Vaudreuil to hold out to the last extremity, as they were preparing to march to his relief. But it was too late, —on that day **the British army entered the capital of Canada.** After an existence of one hundred and fifty years, the city of Champlain passed away from the protection of France, and the British standard was unfurled from the Castle of St. Louis. Under the new rule the inhabitants remained in secure possession of their property and in the free exercise of their religion.

28. M. de Levi determined to strike one blow for the capture of Quebec. By spring he had 10,000 men of all arms under his command. On the 19th of April he advanced to Silléri, and took post at the village of Ste. Foye. The British army, wasted by disease and the suf-

1760

A.D.

ferings of a terribly severe winter, was reduced to a force of 3,000 effective men. General Murray marched out of Quebec, and three miles from it came in sight of the advancing foe. With rashness unaccountable he deserted his strong position on the height, and dashed impetuously on the French in the valley. Outnumbered, overpowered, surrounded, he was compelled to force his way out and retreat hastily to the city. In this second battle for Quebec, the fighting was more severe, the loss was greater than in the first, made immortal by the heroism of Wolfe and the chivalry of Montcalm.

29. The victorious French army sat down before Quebec to besiege it. Trenches were opened, and cannon mounted. But General Murray was not idle. He had now only 2,200 effective men, and his hospitals were crowded with sick and wounded. Every one who could do work went to it with a will. When M. de Levi opened fire from his batteries, Murray replied with one hundred and thirty-two cannon from his ramparts. Both Generals anxiously expected aid from their respective countries. One day in May a war-ship appeared off Point Levi. There was painful suspense in Quebec, for it might be the herald of a French fleet. But when **the Union Jack** was run up there was uncontrollable joy. Officers and men mounted the ramparts and cheered lustily in face of the foe. After the appearance of the English fleet M. de Levi hastily decamped, leaving guns, stores, and ammunition behind him. He joined M. de Vaudreuil at Montreal. All the effective force of the colony was called in. There it was determined that **the final stand** should be made.

30. During the summer and autumn three divisions of the British army, from three different points, slowly but surely converged on the city; General Amherst and Sir William Johnson descending from Oswego; General Murray and Colonel Carleton ascending from Quebec; Colonel Haviland making his way by Lake Champlain and the Richelieu River. All met within forty-eight hours of each other on the **Island of Montreal**. On the 8th of September, 16,000 British troops were encamped around the city. — On the same day M. de Vaudreuil surrendered at discretion. Over 20,000 soldiers, of all arms, were included in the capitulation. The regulars were sent to France; the militia were permitted to go to their own homes.

The civil officers with their families and their movable property soon left the colony. They were only required to leave such public documents behind as were necessary for the government of the country. The people were secured in the enjoyment of their property and the free exercise of their religion.

31. **The reign of French power** in Canada now came to an end, and with it the era of colonial warfare, that had lasted for a century. Canada, ever since its foundation, had struggled on amid manifold perils. The military instinct of the French had been fostered and encouraged by the necessity of constant conflict with blood-thirsty savages. Their genius led them to adventure, to make discoveries in the distant regions of the continent. They opened up and prepared the way. But it was reserved for another people to make those discoveries fruitful. Under the military and absolute rule of France, Canada had not grown strong. That rule had proved a failure. A new era now began to dawn slowly on its inhabitants. But strife was not ended,—it only took another form.

QUESTIONS.—1. In what state was public opinion regarding the Newcastle Ministry? What filled the cup of popular discontent to overflowing? Who was then called to the head of affairs?

2. What made the position of Canada really very weak? In what condition were its internal affairs?

3. What was the complaint of the people against Vaudreuil? And against Bigot? How did the latter pave the way for financial ruin?

4. What bold plan of campaign did Pitt project? To whom was the military conduct of the expedition intrusted?

5. In what state were the fortifications of Louisburg?

6. What caused the English fleet to remain inactive for several days? Whose division first effected a landing? What did the French then do?

7. Describe the progress of the siege. How long did it last? How did it end? What was done with Louisburg?

8. What other island fell into the hands of the English besides Cape Breton? How was part of the English force occupied after the fall of Louisburg?

9. Describe the defences of Carillon. Describe the conflict in the wood.

10. Why were the English gloomy over their victory? What rash order did Abercrombie give? What was the result?

11. How was the disgrace of the repulse at Ticonderoga atoned for?

12. What prevented the French from increasing their forces in Canada? What was the result of Bougainville's mission to France? To whom did De Vaudreuil appeal? In what did the chief defence of Canada lie?

13. What was the plan of the campaign of 1759?

14. Where did Bourlamaque make his stand for the protection of Montreal? What prevented the advance of the English from Crown Point?

15. What was the last hope of the Commandant of Fort Niagara? How was it shattered? What did Pouchot then do?

16. Describe the position of the French army at Quebec. What did Wolfe decide to do?

17. Explain the disposition of the English army.

18. What parts of Quebec were soon destroyed? What seemed impregnable? About what did the Commander and the Governor-General differ?

19. What made Wolfe's position uncomfortable?

20. What did Wolfe attempt on July 31? What caused its failure?

21. What effect had the disaster on Wolfe?

22. What was the result of his conference with his Generals? What difficulties disturbed Montcalm?

23. Where did the English army embark? How did Wolfe relieve his excitement? Where was the landing effected? How many men formed on the Plains of Abraham?

24. How was the intelligence carried to Montcalm? Where did he draw up his forces? What advantage did he throw away? Why was Wolfe's position perilous?

25. Describe the course of the battle. Describe the last moments of Wolfe.

26. What were the losses on each side? What consolation had Montcalm at his death?

27. When did the British enter Quebec? How did the change affect the inhabitants?

28. What led to the second battle for the possession of Quebec? What was the result?

29. What induced De Levi to abandon the siege? Where was it resolved to make the final stand for France?

30. How many divisions of the British army converged on Montreal? When did they meet there? When did the city capitulate? What became of the garrison and the officials?

31. How long had the war between the rival colonies lasted? What had been done by the French in Canada? What remained for the British?

## CHAPTER XXIII.

1760 to 1763 A.D.

## PONTIAC.

Military Government.

Canada left bankrupt by the French.

Close of the Seven Years' War.

The Treaty of Paris.

Influence of the Noblesse.

The Royal Proclamation.

The Pounds of the Province of Quebec.

Civil Government.

Surrender of the western forts.

Pontiac.

The rise and defeat of Pontiac's Conspiracy.

1. **A Military Government** was formed in Canada after the conquest. General Amherst, on departing for New York, appointed General Murray commanding officer in the **1760** colony. It was divided into the three districts of **A.D.** Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers. Murray ruled in the first-named district; in the latter two, **General Gage** and Colonel Burton. Councils, composed of military officers, met twice a week, and dispensed justice in all matters brought before them. This form of government was a despotism tempered only by the integrity and good nature of those who enforced it. It was the best possible under the circumstances. While the war continued, the Canadians were buoyed up with the hope that the country might be restored to the Crown of France, and a firm hand was necessary to keep down "**the new subjects**" of King George, as they were called. The new order of things was very galling to "the noblesse," accustomed to enjoy the privileges of their rank. The body of the inhabitants, in a state of despair and distraction, looked upon themselves as a conquered people. Confidence grew up among them when they experienced the general forbearance and generosity of their new masters. Accustomed to live under arbitrary rule, the military government was infinitely less distasteful to them than to the few English who now settled in Canada, and came to be known as "**the old subjects.**" If the Canadians found cause to complain of the government, they were pacified by the assurance that after peace was made they would have

the supreme happiness of becoming full British subjects, and of enjoying all the privileges of the same. —

2. The English found Canada a **bankrupt colony**. Financially the people were ruined. The paper, founded on the responsibility of the King of France for the support of the civil and military establishments, and issued on authority of the Intendant far in excess of the authorized amount, was dishonoured at the Royal Treasury of France. The holders of it lost a sum equal to **three hundred thousand pounds sterling**. The whole paper currency—over three millions sterling—was so depreciated as to be worth only four per cent. of its original value. To the last Bigot and his creatures had pursued their unprincipled course of enriching themselves at the expense of their King and country. At the siege of Quebec by M. de Levi, the army contractors made out estimates in which they put charges for work that had not been done, and for stores that had not been supplied; which were paid by the Intendant, who had his profit from the fraudulent transaction. M. de Vaudreuil, Bigot, and the other chief officials, were, on their return to France, thrown into the **Bastille**. Vaudreuil was acquitted of the charge of fraud, but Bigot and the rest were condemned to disgorge plunder to the amount of three hundred and thirty thousand pounds sterling, and to be banished from the country. Under the circumstances, considering that in addition to their state of bankruptcy there was great general distress among the people, and that several had died of absolute famine, it must be concluded that the conquest of Canada by the English was no misfortune to its people. —

3. "**The Seven Years' War**" came to a close in 1762. On the 3rd of November the preliminaries of peace were signed at Fontainebleau. On the 10th of February the definitive **Treaty of Peace was signed at Paris**. By the fourth **1763** article the King of France abandoned all his pretensions **A.D.** to Nova Scotia, and in the amplest manner made over to the Crown of Great Britain, Canada, Cape Breton, and all the islands in the River and the Gulf of St. Lawrence, excepting St. Peter and Miquelon. Thus were settled for ever the conflicting claims of England and France (founded on the discoveries of Cabot and Verazzani) to the possession of the northern

part of America. By the same article King George covenanted to grant to the inhabitants of Canada the liberty of the Roman Catholic religion, and to permit all subjects of the King of France to sell their property—but only to British subjects—and to retire in all safety and freedom from the country within eighteen months of the date of the ratification of the treaty. Great Britain also acquired from France the Islands of Grenada and the Grenadines, St. Vincent, Tobago, and Dominica; and from Spain, Florida and the possessions south and south-east of the Mississippi.

4. Few of the ancient **noblesse** remained in Canada; most of them went to France and to the French West Indies. A sufficient number, however, stayed, and exerted an influence that helped to determine the future of the country. Though, compared with the body of the habitants, they were but one in the hundred, their national pride, their tenacious adherence to feudal customs, which constituted the privileges of their rank, their hostility to the introduction of English law, their mortification at being excluded from public employment and places of trust on account of their religion, caused them to hate English rule, and to make the Anglification of the Province impossible. Observers remarked, that there would have been no insuperable obstacle met with during the earlier years after the Conquest in introducing English laws and the English language, provided that it had been done gradually and judiciously. The opportunity to effect the change was lost. The determination to preserve French laws, language, and customs, grew strong as successive governors made concessions to the native Canadians. —

5. The King issued a **Proclamation** on the 7th of October. By that instrument His Majesty divided the territory he had acquired into the four Provinces of Quebec, East Florida, West Florida, and Grenada. The Province of Quebec extended along both banks of the St. Lawrence from the St. John River. The peninsula of Gaspé and the Island of Anticosti were included in it. It was bounded on the west by Lake Nipissing and the line of the Ottawa River; and on the south by a line passing through Lake Champlain, along the 45th degree of north latitude, and by the highlands dividing the rivers falling into the St. Lawrence from those emptying themselves into the sea.)

6. As a strong inducement to British subjects to settle in Quebec, the King made a promise that whenever the circumstances of the country would admit thereof, representative institutions, similar to those in the other English-American colonies, should be established; and gave an assurance to all persons inhabiting and resorting to it, that they might confide in the royal protection for the enjoyment of the benefit of English laws. Grants of land, ranging from 50 acres to 5,000 acres, were made to field-officers, captains, subalterns, non-commissioned officers, and privates, on certain conditions of improvement and cultivation. The grantees, after the expiration of ten years, were subjected to "quit rents"—a small tax exacted from the proprietors in token of their subjection to the Sovereign, by the payment of which they were "quit" from all other service. The Crown did not rigidly demand the payment of these rents, and the people were not very willing to pay them. They were allowed to accumulate, and their proposed collection in after years excited the greatest discontent throughout the Provinces. The lands granted to British subjects in Quebec after the Proclamation were, in effect, held on "**the tenure of free and common soccage,**"<sup>1</sup> the sole conditions of which were allegiance to the King and obedience to the laws.

7. A Civil Government was formed, consisting of a Governor and a Council, who had power to make laws and regulations under certain restrictions. Courts were established;—the Supreme Court (or Court of King's Bench), where the Chief-Justice presided, and where all criminal and civil cases were decided according to the law of England; and the Court of Common Pleas, where all matters were determined by equity, subject to appeal to the Supreme Court. Justices of the Peace were appointed, who had power to settle, in a summary way, cases under five pounds currency. The new Government was hardly less arbitrary than the military rule that had preceded it. It made laws and administered them, and pronounced

<sup>1</sup> *Soccage*. — From French *soc*, a ploughshare; soccage was thus originally tenure of land by *ploug. service*, and thence any inferior services in husbandry. The English *socmen* of

Domesday Book (1086 A.D.) were ceorls who had acquired land and freedom, and were allowed to retain both. They became the small freeholders or yeomanry of later times in England.

judgment: the only power not placed in its hands was that of taxation, which was imposed by an Act of the Imperial Parliament. **General Murray** was the first Governor under the constitution of the Proclamation. —

8. In the meantime **stirring events** had taken place in the west. On the 12th of November 1760 Major Rogers of the Provincial Rangers received orders to take possession of the forts still in the hands of the French. His force numbered two



LAKE COUNTRY AND WESTERN FORTS.

hundred men in fifteen whale-boats. Ascending from Montreal, and entering Lake Ontario, the party skirted its northern shore, and then crossed over to Fort Niagara. Hauling their boats over the portage, the Rangers launched them above the Falls. Entering Lake Erie, they kept their course along its southern shore until they reached the mouth of the River Cuyahoga, on the banks of which they encamped. So far their progress had been unimpeded save by boisterous weather. **Pontiac**, an Ottawa chief, then held sway over many of the western tribes. He had served with the French; had been present in the fatal

defile of Monongahela when Braddock fell, at the siege of Oswego with Montcalm, and in other actions of the late war. He impressed all who came in contact with him as being a man of superior force of mind, and of a natural greatness and dignity. Under cover of night, Pontiac with a retinue of chiefs appeared in the camp on the Cuyahoga, and haughtily demanded of its commandant with what intent his armed force had entered his country. During a brief interview, Major Rogers explained to him the situation of affairs, when Pontiac consented, now that the cause of his old friends the French was lost, to live at peace with the English. ^

9. Late in autumn Rogers reached **Detroit**. After some show of resistance that important post was given up, on the 29th of November. The other forts were given up in the course of the winter and of the following spring. Then the **flag of England** floated over the forts in token of her sovereignty over the western wilderness. **The Indians 1761** of that region soon broke into open acts of rage and **A.D.** discontent. Their position was changed, now that the English were masters. They no longer met the courteous treatment which they had been accustomed to receive from the French. The English kept back the usual presents of clothing and arms, and often treated them with contumely. The heart of Pontiac swelled with rage at the cold and haughty behaviour of the English officers, so different from the good-natured politeness of the French. Personal slights alone did not excite his wrath. He saw that a crisis had come to his race. The Indians no longer held a position between the contending French and English colonies that made their alliance worth winning. Now they had either to mingle with English civilization, or to plunge far into the depths of the wilderness. Brooding over the wrongs and insults endured by his people, Pontiac came to hate the English with intense fury. He burned to exterminate them, and to bring back the country to its primeval barbarity. |

10. |He conceived a bold and comprehensive scheme of vengeance. During the winter of 1762, his messengers, bearing the war-belts, scoured the country east, west, north, and south. The Ottigamies and Sacs, the Pottawattamies and Ottawas, the Ojibaways and Wyandots, and all the other tribes dwelling

around the shores of Lake Michigan and the western shore of Lake Huron ; the Shawnees and Delawares, whose bourgades were situated on branches of the Ohio River, and close to the frontiers of Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania, entered into the **Conspiracy**. They received secret encouragement from some French and Canadian fur-traders, who falsely told them that their great Father in France was aroused from his sleep, and was sending out a large army to wrest the country from the English. Over all the allied tribes Pontiac held only such authority as his abilities and personal character gave him. The fickleness of the Indian temper, and its impatience of long-continued effort, made it necessary to strike a prompt and decisive blow. He resolved that a simultaneous attack should be made on all the forts held by the English, that the defenders' settlements on the frontiers should be laid waste, and that all the English should be driven out of the country. Pontiac very much under-estimated the power of the English. Wide as was his influence, there were many tribes in Canada hostile to him : of all the famous Six Nations he only gained over the Senecas. \

11. **The rising of the Indian tribes** was fixed to take place on the 7th of May. Before that day the English **1763** officers had several warnings that " mischief was afoot," A.D. which they disregarded. Pontiac undertook to surprise Fort Detroit. It was garrisoned by one hundred and twenty troops and forty fur-traders, and commanded by Major Gladwyn. Two small schooners—the *Beaver* and *Gladwyn*—gave it further protection, and carried despatches and supplies to and from Fort Niagara. On the 6th, **Catherine, a young squaw**, disclosed the plot to the commandant. Pontiac, she said, would come with a retinue of chiefs next morning and demand a council. Each chief would be wrapped in his blanket, and would carry his rifle (purposely cut short in the barrel) concealed in its folds. At a preconcerted signal the chiefs were suddenly to shoot down the Major and his officers ; and then, along with the Indians in the streets of the fort, fall upon and butcher the unprepared garrison.

12. When Pontiac and the chiefs appeared next morning, the garrison was drawn up in the square, with muskets at rest and

bayonets fixed ; the officers wore their side-arms, and carried pistols in their belts. Pontiac was surprised at the warlike sight, but showed no visible sign of mortification. He finished some pretended business and retired. Next morning he, with the chiefs, again sought admittance into the fort, having signified to the Major his wish to dance "the calumet ;" but he was bluntly told to be gone. He then knew that the plot had been discovered, and his wrath was terrible. He ordered the beautiful traitress, Catherine, **to be scourged** ; and his followers wreaked their vengeance on some unoffending English settlers near Detroit. Pontiac now determined to besiege the fort ; and, to be nearer the scene of action, transferred his camp from the eastern to the western bank of the river. He levied contributions on the Canadian farms to maintain his forces, and he did it in a civilized manner, by issuing promissory notes on birch-bark, to which he affixed his "token,"—the figure of an otter. There was now no rest for the garrison, by day or by night. The Indians did not dare to make an open assault, but from every convenient cover shot into the fort bullets, and arrows tipped with burning tow. Gladwyn, who was anxiously waiting for reinforcements from Niagara, despatched one of his schooners to hurry them. One day the soldiers saw a line of boats sweeping up the river, the foremost bearing the red flag of England. In their joy they fired a salute : it was answered by **the war-whoop of armed Indians**, who started up from the bottoms of the boats where they had lain concealed. Gladwyn afterwards learned that a detachment of ninety-six men, under Lieutenant Cuyler, with plentiful supplies, had started from Niagara in whale-boats. Encamped one night at Point Pelé, at the mouth of the River Detroit, the party had been surprised and almost totally destroyed by the Indians.

13. Alarming intelligence reached Detroit in the course of the month of June, of the capture and destruction, by the Indians, of Forts Sandusky, St. Joseph, Ouatanon, Presqu'isle, Du Bœuf, Venango, and Michillimackinac. The last named fort was taken by a **subtle stratagem**. On the 4th of June, the King's Birthday, a party of Ojibaways invited the officers to come out and witness the game of "la crosse" on the plain in front of the fort, between players of their nation and of the Sacs. It was

a holiday, and the soldiers were off their guard. The gates were open, and a number of squaws entered unnoticed. Captain Etherington and another officer stood outside betting on the match, which was played with great spirit for several hours. The ball, struck with a vigorous blow, bounded against the pickets of the fort. Then the whole body of the players ran **yelling** up to the gates; some of them seized the two officers, the rest, rushing in, snatched their hatchets from the squaws (who had held them concealed when they entered), and in an instant killed an officer and fifteen privates, and took the rest prisoners.

14. During the whole summer the frontier settlements of Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania were exposed to the hostile incursions of the Indians, who ran riot in frightful excesses of cruelty. When General Amherst, at New York, heard of the disasters, he had few effective troops at his command. In all haste he sent as many as he could muster to reinforce Niagara, and to relieve Forts Detroit and Pitt, formerly called Du Quesne. On the 27th of July, the harassed and weakened garrison of Detroit welcomed the arrival of two hundred and eighty men. The commander, Captain Dalzell, against the advice of Gladwyn, resolved **to attack the Indians**. Pontiac was secretly apprised of the intended sortie. To reach his encampment it was necessary to cross a narrow bridge thrown over the deep gully of Parent's Creek, two miles above the fort. Beyond the bridge the ground rose in ridges, and Pontiac had intrenchments dug at the top of them. At two o'clock in the morning of the 29th two hundred and fifty men stole out of Detroit. As they marched along the settled road the watchdogs bayed the alarm. The advanced-guard crossed the bridge—called "**Bloody Bridge**" after that night. It was saluted with yells and volleys of musketry. Supports were hurried up. The furious soldiers charged the intrenchments, and were shot down by an invisible foe. The retreat was sounded. As the baffled force marched back, a party of Indians, posting themselves in a house on its right, galled it sorely. It reached Detroit with a loss of fifty-nine killed and wounded. Captain Dalzell was shot dead in a gallant attempt to carry off a wounded soldier. The next morning the frightened habitants saw his head stuck on a garden picket.

15. Shortly after this disaster, as the "**Gladwyn**," on its return from Niagara, lay at anchor one midnight, it was surprised by a large party of Indians. The wind had failed when the schooner was nine miles below the fort. The warriors killed the captain, wounded several of the crew, and were on the point of taking possession of the vessel, when the mate called out that he would blow it up. The Indians, who had footing on the deck, cast themselves in terror into the river. The *Gladwyn* reached Detroit in safety. General Amherst caused a medal to be struck, and gave one to each of the men who had taken part in its defence.

16. Towards the end of July, **Colonel Bouquet** marched with several companies of the 42nd Highlanders, and of the Provincial Rangers, from Philadelphia. He took with him sixty-six men to reinforce the garrison of Fort Pitt. The soldiers, with their heavy baggage-train, toiled up the heights of the Alleghanies, descended into the valleys, and made their way through deep gorges. At Fort Ligonier the oxen and waggons were left behind, and they pushed on with three hundred and fifty pack-horses carrying flour and other provisions. The difficult defile of Turtle Creek lay in the way of their march, and Colonel Bouquet resolved to push on for Bushy Run, encamp there for the day, and pass it by night. Within a mile of the camping ground the advanced-guard fell into an ambuscade. Shawnee and Delaware warriors raised their war-whoop. A sharp fire of musketry ensued. Two light companies were hurried up to the support of the van; but the Indians appearing in great numbers in all directions, the whole British advanced-guard soon retreated on the main body. The Indians followed, and kept up a fierce attack until darkness came on; then they retired to their coverts.

17. Colonel Bouquet arranged his camp in the form of a circle: he placed the horses in the centre, and protected the sick and the wounded by means of the flour-bags. **No water** was to be had, and the sufferings of this part of the force were fearful. At earliest dawn the Indians awoke the uneasy sleepers. The Highlanders and Rangers sprang up and stood in the circle until the sun rose in the heavens, enduring a thirst more terrible to them than the fire of the foe. Many of the

horses were wounded, and, terrified by the din, they broke out and galloped off through the woods. Colonel Bouquet now drew on the Indians to make an open attack. He ordered two companies at one part of the circle to fall hastily back, and the troops on their right and left to open up their files and fill their place. The retiring companies, and two others, then took up positions in the woods unseen by the Indians. They, imagining that the British were beginning to give way, rushed forward with audacity to the attack. As they were hotly engaged, two of the companies posted in the woods threw themselves on their right flank. Amazed and confused, they stood their ground only for a short time. The Highlanders, charging with spirit, put them to flight, and they received the full fire of the other two companies as they sped past a clearing where no trees intervened. The victory won by Bouquet at Bushy Run had the effect of **raising the siege of Fort Pitt**, and of causing many of the Indians to sue for peace.

18. The blockade of Fort Detroit was still kept up. Late in autumn several tribes departed for the winter's hunting. **Pontiac** seeing the falling away of his confederates, and receiving certain news of the peace between France and England, which cut off all hope of aid, retired in disgust to a camp on the Maumee River. All winter the garrison of Detroit was obliged to keep strict guard, for the Ottawas and Senecas prowled constantly around. In spring several tribes returned to its neighbourhood.

19. Measures were now taken to crush the Indian revolt. General Gage (successor to Amherst) instructed General Bradstreet to relieve Detroit, and put down the tribes in its **1764** vicinity; and gave orders to Colonel Bouquet to compel the submission of the Shawnees and Delawares. Sir A.D. William Johnson, who had in the meantime made successful representations to the British Government on the necessity of conciliating the Indians, called a **meeting at Niagara** of numerous tribes. — When Bradstreet reached that place in July, the Indian Council was sitting. Johnson made separate treaties of peace with the different tribes, and sent them off loaded with presents. Peace was made with the Senecas on condition that they would never again attack the English, and

that they would cede four miles on each side of the Niagara Strait.

20. On his way to Detroit, General Bradstreet was met by a pretended delegation from the Shawnees and Delawares, and, believing their false protestations, he entered into a treaty of peace with them. He received the submission of the Wyandots and Ottawas in the neighbourhood of Sandusky. On the 26th of August his barges entered the Detroit River, and the relief was hailed with the wildest demonstrations of joy by the garrison of the fort, which had been beleaguered for fifteen months.

21. General Bradstreet then returned to Sandusky. Believing that he had made a secure peace with the Shawnees and Delawares, he refused to coöperate with Colonel Bouquet. That officer, not trusting to treaties, marched into the very heart of their country, and compelled them to sue for peace, and **to give up their prisoners**. Among his force were volunteers from the frontier settlements who had lost wives, children, sisters, and sweethearts, and who enlisted in the expedition in the hope of redeeming them from captivity. Mothers and wives, also, dared the perilous journey, to relieve their anxiety about the fate of their sons and husbands. When the Indians brought their prisoners into Bouquet's camp, scenes were enacted that aroused the sympathy of the most callous.

22. The Indian War was now over. Pontiac, seeing the utter frustration of his conspiracy, sought peace from the English, and obtained it. He was a few years afterwards **assassinated** by an Illinois trader at St. Louis. With him died the last hope of the Indian race. The war he raised was its last convulsive effort to throw off the dominion of the white man in the country bounded by the Mississippi, the Ohio, and the Alleghanies. The Indian war in the west was finished before the people of the towns of Canada knew that it had commenced, so slowly in those days travelled news.

QUESTIONS.—1. What kind of government was set up in Canada? Who were the "new subjects" of King George? What reconciled the body of the inhabitants to the Military Government?

2. In what state did the English find Canada financially? What was the

cause of this state of affairs? How were the offenders punished? How should the people of Canada have regarded its conquest?

3. When was the Seven Years' War terminated? What were the articles of the Treaty of Paris which affected the American colonies?

4. What hindered the Anglification of the colonists? What opportunity of effecting the change was lost?

5. How was the newly-acquired territory divided? Mention the boundaries of the Province of Quebec.

6. What inducement was held out to British subjects to settle in Quebec? To whom were grants of land made? To what difficulty did the exacting of "quit rents" lead? On what tenure were lands granted to British subjects in Quebec after the Proclamation held by them?

7. Of what did the Civil Government consist? What courts were established? What was the only power which the new Government lacked? Who was the first Governor?

8. On what mission was Major Rogers sent? What force accompanied him? Who was Pontiac? When did he come to the English camp? What did he demand? What did he consent to do?

9. When did Rogers accomplish his mission? Who were enraged and discontented? Why? How was the position of the Indians altered?

10. What scheme did Pontiac form? Who joined the conspiracy? What was the plan of action resolved on?

11. What date was fixed for the rising? How was the Commandant of

Fort Detroit informed of the plot? Give the details.

12. How was the plan frustrated? How was Catherine punished? What did Pontiac then determine to do? How was the garrison disappointed of its reinforcements?

13. What intelligence reached Detroit in June? Describe the stratagem by which Michillimackinac was taken.

14. When was Detroit relieved? By what disaster was the relief followed?

15. What narrow escape did the schooner *Gladwyn* make? How was it saved?

16. Describe Colonel Bouquet's march. Where did he encounter the Indians?

17. Describe the battle. What effects had the victory?

18. What led Pontiac to withdraw from Fort Detroit?

19. What measures were then taken to crush the Indian revolt? What was the result of the meeting at Niagara?

20. When was Fort Detroit at last relieved? How long had the blockade lasted?

21. Why did Bradstreet refuse to cooperate with Bouquet? What did the latter accomplish? What touching scenes were enacted?

22. What was the end of Pontiac? What died with him?

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## THE CONFLICT OF LAWS.

1766 to 1774 A.D.

The "New" and the "Old" Subjects.  
 English and French Law.  
 Governor Guy Carleton.  
 The Remedies for the conflict of laws.  
 The Feudal Tenure.  
 Marriage and Mortgage.  
 The discontents in the English Colonies.

The Quebec Act.  
 The dissatisfaction in "Quebec."  
 The first Assembly of Nova Scotia.  
 The French on the Miramichi.  
 The Loyalist Refugees.  
 Maugerville.  
 The Island of St. John.

1. THE great dissimilarity of character between the "new subjects," the Catholic French Canadians, and "the old subjects," the British Protestants, was soon shown. The latter body, who were a small minority of the population, assumed the air of masters, and thought to bend all the ancient laws and customs to their will. Several had settled in the country on the strength of the promise of the Proclamation that free representative institutions would be established in it. They did not wish to hold a lower grade as British subjects than their brother colonists in America. This part of the population was composed principally of half-pay officers, merchants, and disbanded soldiers, and they mostly inhabited the towns.

2. The great mass of the Canadian population, who lived in the country, were naturally strongly prejudiced in favour of their ancient laws and customs. They were generally of a mild, submissive character, and looked with awe to those placed in authority over them. They were rather indifferent to the form of civil government. They were inclined to think "what'er is best administered is best." All were not of that opinion. The better instructed had no objection to popular assemblies, provided that the Roman Catholic population had fair representation, and that they were not disabled from filling places of honour and trust on account of their religion. As matters stood they were debarred from enjoying any office. Before they could be eligible they were compelled to take two oaths;—

that of abjuration of the Pope's control of spiritual matters in the realms of the King of England ; and that against transubstantiation, a doctrine especially renounced by the Church of England and all Protestant sects. The Canadians were very willing to swear allegiance to King George, but they could not take oaths against their religion. <

3. By the Proclamation, ~~the criminal law of England with trial by jury~~ was established in the colony. / It was accepted by the Canadian people without much dissent, as its superiority over the French criminal law was apparent. Under it no one could be arbitrarily arrested, or secretly tortured, tried, and sentenced. But to trial by jury in civil cases the Canadians generally objected. The noblesse were opposed to it, because their pride was offended that Protestant mechanics should sit to determine matters in which they were interested. The habitans complained of the burden and expense of juries. They ridiculed the unanimity demanded in their verdict. They said it was a trial of strength among the jurymen to determine **who could fast the longest.** But they might have been reconciled to juries if jurymen had been paid for their services, and if a majority of votes had decided the verdict. They preferred to have the judge decide all cases directly, according to ancient practice. The prejudice against juries was natural enough. The noblesse hated them because they made them amenable to law, to which, in their pride, they deemed themselves superior ; to the habitans brought up in ignorance, and unaccustomed to think for themselves or manage their own affairs, they were wearisome. The British population, on the contrary, deemed trial by jury to be the palladium of liberty, and in all cases the most prompt, secure, impartial mode of obtaining justice, and of assuring to them the possession of their property. In the absence of free general assemblies, they looked upon trial by jury as their best security against the undue exercise of arbitrary power.

4. The government of Canada was no easy matter, the character and the political education of its French and of its English inhabitants were so very different. The English held that English laws and forms of judicature were infinitely superior to those of France. The question was, Whether their

will and pleasure should prevail, or whether concessions should be made to the feelings and prejudices of the great majority of the inhabitants?

5. The Governor, General Murray, showed favour to the French Canadians, and thereby incurred the displeasure of his Protestant fellow-countrymen. They sent home petitions stating their grievances, and he was called to answer the charges against him. But he was not found worthy of blame. In his absence, Brigadier-General Guy Carleton administered the government. He had distinguished himself under General Wolfe, and at the Battle of the Plains received a very severe wound on the head. As General Murray did not return to Canada, he was appointed Lieutenant-Governor. He showed himself even more favourable to the majority than his predecessor had done. He entered into their feelings, and seemed to adopt their prejudices. He thought them a very decent people, and much more easily ruled than the more turbulent English. He abolished the jurisdiction of the **Justices of the Peace**, several of whom had acted tyrannically. Some of them were disbanded soldiers who kept tippling-houses—not the best class of persons, he thought, from which to form a magistracy. He introduced as much French law as possible, and in the **Court of Common Pleas** it was left to the option of parties to a suit to have it tried by a jury. Confusion arose in the courts owing to the mixture of laws. The judges were Englishmen, and little conversant with French law: to have made themselves masters of it they would have been obliged to study closely a small library of thirty volumes. If a case was tried by the French system, the suitors stood a chance of not obtaining justice, owing to the ignorance of the Judges (with the integrity of the Bench the Canadians were well satisfied). On the other hand, if a case was tried by English law, the Canadians were dissatisfied, because it was conducted in a mode and in a language which they did not understand, and because the process was more expensive.

6. The remedy proposed for this conflict of laws was the restitution to the Canadians of the whole body of their civil jurisprudence. Governor Carleton inclined to this view of the question; but Chief-Justice Hey and Attorney-General Maseres

were of opinion that an arrangement might be made satisfactory to both English and French. They would have restored those parts of the French civil laws relating to the tenure and conveying of lands, and altered those portions regarding inheritance, dower, and mortgage, that more especially affected commerce, which was almost altogether in the hands of the British, and that tended to retard the progress of the country.

7. **Several views** were taken of the best way of settling the difficulties in Canada. There were those who held that the prejudice of the great majority of the inhabitants ought to be consulted, and that Canada ought to be allowed to remain French in its system of government, and in its laws, customs, and religion; others maintained that Canada, being a conquered country, should be ruled by the law of the conqueror, and be transformed into an English Province; and again, there were those who considered it as injudicious to keep Canada a French Province as to attempt to make it English by force, and who thought that those parts of the laws of both countries most suitable to its circumstances should be retained, and that all changes to the English mode of government and system of laws should be made gradually.

8. It is necessary to state, however briefly, some of the objections that the British had to French law. They decidedly objected to the **feudal tenure**. By it, as has been already stated, the mass of the people were kept in a state of vassalage. The condition of this tenure that bore most hardly on the British was, the obligation forced on them, when they purchased lands, to pay to the seigneur in whose seigneurie they lay the *lods* and *vents*—a mutation fine of a twelfth of the purchase-money, over and above the sum they paid to the seller. The land might have been improved a hundredfold by the erection of houses and buildings, still the seigneur had a right to demand a twelfth of its increased value. This heavy tax naturally discouraged the improving of lands, and retarded the growth of towns within the seigneuries.

9. **The law of inheritance**, by which the property of the parent was equally divided among the children, was not generally repugnant to the British; the people of the English colonies in America were on the whole opposed to the law of

primogeniture, as it obtained in the mother country. The minute divisions of properties were a great evil among the French Canadians; but Englishmen did not, like many of them, pine on mere shreds of farms when there was plenty of land to be obtained. The British (except perhaps the lawyers) did not object to the French system of conveyancing—the transferring of land from one party to another—as they considered it more expeditious and less expensive than the English mode. The portions of the French law that affected them most were those relating to **marriage and mortgage.** \

10. A man, before entering the holy state of matrimony, might make a contract devising in which way he wished his property to go after his death; but if he neglected to do that, there were certain inevitable legal consequences to marriage which Englishmen who had not taken the trouble to make themselves acquainted with the French law sometimes found very inconvenient. A wife was entitled to *dower*; that is, to the enjoyment, after the death of her husband, should she survive him, of one half of the real property of which he was possessed before marriage or might have acquired after it. After her death this property went to the children. The wife was entitled to another right, that of “**communauté,**” or partnership, which gave her half of the personal property of her husband. If she died before him this portion went to the children even in the lifetime of the father; if there were no children, it went to the wife’s nearest relatives, who might be strangers to the husband. \

11. A man, by taking proper precautions, might prevent his property from going to strangers; he found it more difficult to prevent himself from being cheated in purchasing lands, and in taking security for debts owing to him. By the French law of “**hypothèque**” (or mortgage), a man might go to a notary, who was sworn to keep the transaction secret, and raise money by a mortgage on his land; he then might go to another notary with another party from whom he wished to borrow money, and effect another mortgage, and then he might sell the land without the purchaser knowing anything of these prior claims upon it until the mortgagees presented them. In this way Englishmen, in some cases, were forced to abandon the land they had

purchased, when the claims against it exceeded the sum they had paid for it ; and an English merchant who sold goods to a Canadian, taking security on his property for payment, was sometimes defrauded when that property was sold, as holders of secret mortgages came in before him. The cases of deliberate fraud on the part of Canadians were probably not numerous, but those that did occur made a great noise. These secret mortgages had the effect of preventing English merchants, who had made money in Canada, from investing it in land, and they were hurtful to the prosperity of the country. In the course of time the British agitated for the institution of **offices for the registration of deeds**, where all mortgages might be entered, and left open to the inspection of parties about to purchase or lend money on landed property. The French Canadians long objected to registration, on the ground that it would be tyrannical to impose on the poor habitants the expense and trouble of entering the deeds of their little properties in such offices ; and, as they were very generally a people who could neither read nor write, to expose them to be cheated by the agent whom they would be forced to employ. \

12. Notwithstanding the difficulties of government, and the little intercourse that existed between the British and the French population, Canada was tranquil, prosperous, and happy, compared with what it had been some time previous to the Conquest. The population increased faster than it had ever done before. A number of Acadians driven from Nova Scotia, and flying from the English colonies to which they had been sent, settled in Canada. The settlements along the St. Lawrence were extended backward, and a great extent of new land was brought under cultivation. Quantities of grain were now exported. Commerce increased ; the British engrossed seven-eighths of it ; though few in number, their capital and enterprise gave them the lead. \ They looked anxiously for the establishment of a **free representative government**, but the King seemed loath to fulfil his promise. \ He was hostile to turbulent free assemblies. After the issuing of the Proclamation, His Majesty was long too much occupied in battling with Parliaments in England, in order to assert the royal prerogative and his personal influence over their deliberations, to think

much of his new territorial acquisition in Canada. The question of giving a Constitution to the Province of Quebec was under consideration in 1766, but it was deferred owing to the dissolution of the Rockingham Ministry,<sup>1</sup> which was too liberal and independent to suit its royal master. Amidst the excitement of home politics, the rise and fall of ministries, Quebec was forgotten for **four years**. Lord North, a stanch Tory and a subservient friend of the King, was then called to the head of affairs. The law officers of the Crown—Attorney-**1770** General Thurlow, Solicitor-General Wedderburn, and A.D. Dr. Marriot, King's Advocate—were commissioned to draw up separate reports on the best form of government for the Province. General Carleton was recalled to England to give information on its condition; and Mr. Cramahé, member of the Council, was appointed Administrator. No action was taken on the reports of the Crown officers for other four years. In the meantime events of the utmost importance to the English colonies in America were taking place.

13. Soon after the advent of George III. to the throne (in 1760, almost simultaneously with the conquest of Canada), a repressive colonial policy was adopted. The people of the English colonies loved the mother country, and gloried in its past achievements; but they had been so long accustomed to virtual freedom of commerce, that they would not bear the restrictions that were now placed upon it. By the Navigation Laws (passed in the time of the Commonwealth 1651, and confirmed by Charles II. 1660) certain enumerated articles,—the product of territories under the Crown of England,—were prohibited from being carried from thence to any country except to England, and in any but English-built vessels, including those built in her colonies. The colonial merchants could not thus, if they observed the laws, import sugar, tea, spice, cotton, and other articles, direct from the country producing them; for these articles had first to be carried to England and thence shipped to them,—a proceeding that caused both delay and

<sup>1</sup> *The Rockingham Ministry.*— This Ministry succeeded that of Mr. George Grenville in 1765. Grenville's Ministry had passed the obnoxious "Stamp Act." Rockingham's, acting on Pitt's advice, repealed it. The latter gave place to the Ministry of the Earl of Chatham and the Duke of Grafton in 1766.

expense. But colonial merchants very generally did not observe the laws, and grew rich by smuggling. Having been long suffered to break the law with impunity, they grew rebellious when the King's custom-house officers entered their warehouses to seize their smuggled goods, and when their vessels with their contraband cargoes were captured by English war-ships. **Riots occurred**; custom-house officers were roughly treated, and the mob grew very angry indeed. The Imperial Government also restricted labour in the colonies. The people were not permitted to manufacture certain specified articles, or to build certain mills, or to cut down trees in the forest that were marked by the King's officers as being suitable for masts for the Royal Navy. They had also political grievances. The governments of the colonies were in the hands of oligarchies, of English Crown-appointed officials and members of old colonial families, who frowned down all who were without their pale; and the different religious sects were offended by the dominance assumed by the Church of England. Very similar political discontents prevailed in Canada in after years.

14. The "**Stamp Act**" was passed (1765), imposing a tax upon the colonies for the general purposes of the Empire. The people exclaimed that their dearest liberties were destroyed if the British Parliament could vote away their money without their advice being taken or their consent asked. The obnoxious Act was repealed, but Parliament formally declared its right to tax the colonies by laying light duties on glass, paper, painters' colours, and tea. The anger of the people broke out, and they vowed that they would use no articles imported from Great Britain. Parliament repealed the impost on three of the articles, but maintained **the duty on tea**, in order to help the East India Company, which had an immense quantity on hand. Threepence a pound was laid upon it, to be collected at the port of entry. The Bostonians might have drunk their tea in a legal manner and more cheaply than they had ever done so before, but a principle was at stake. So, when the East India Company's ships arrived in their harbour, a party disguised like Indians went on board, broke open the chests, and **threw the tea into the dock**. Parliament, deeply displeased at this act of "flat rebellion," closed Boston port, cutting off the people

from commercial intercourse with the outer world, and passed other Acts abridging their liberties.

15. It was under these ominous circumstances that the Earl of Dartmouth, on the 2nd of May, introduced into the House of Lords a Bill "for making more effectual Provision for the Government of the Province of Quebec." 1774<sup>1</sup> A.D. By it the boundaries<sup>2</sup> of the Province were greatly extended, and included the territory from the coast of Labrador in the east to the Mississippi in the west, north to the sources of the rivers emptying themselves into Hudson Bay, and south to the Ohio. Over this vast extent of country an arbitrary Government—consisting of a Governor and a Council of from seventeen to twenty-three members—was placed. The Roman Catholic religion was established, and the whole body of the French Civil Law introduced. Quebec was in effect constituted a **French Province**, all the difference being that the Canadians had George III. instead of Louis XVI. for King. During the debate upon the Bill in the House of Commons, Charles Fox and Edmund Burke denounced it as a despotic measure, that threatened the liberties of the English colonies. **William Pitt**, now Earl of Chatham, rose from a sick-bed to raise his voice against it, when the Bill was sent up again to the House of Lords. "It is an Act," he exclaimed, "that tears up justice by the roots, destroys the liberty that ought to be the foundation of every Constitution, and that will lose His Majesty the hearts of all his American subjects." The merchants of London petitioned against it. The Lord Mayor and Aldermen waited on the King with an address praying that His Majesty would not give his assent to the Bill; but the King would not receive them. He believed that the measure was founded on the clearest principles of justice and humanity, and he was determined that it should be carried.

16. The British population of Quebec felt much aggrieved. The hopes held out to them had been utterly falsified. They

<sup>1</sup> 1774 A.D.—In this year the Jesuits were suppressed in Canada; but they remained in possession of their property until the death of Joseph Casot, the last member of the order, in 1800, when it reverted to the British Crown.

The Jesuit estates were then valued at £12,000 a year. The Imperial Government directed that this revenue should be applied to promote the general education of the colony

<sup>2</sup> *Boundaries.*—See *Map*, p. 36.

found themselves under a despotic foreign Government. The criminal law of England was retained, but the Act of Habeas Corpus was abrogated, and they were subjected to arbitrary fines and imprisonment. They were not called upon to pay tithes to the Roman Catholic clergy ; the lands granted to them were not subjected to feudal exactions ; but they held their property under the ill-understood terms of the French law.

17. Among the Canadians there was a party which would have liked a larger degree of liberty than that accorded by the Quebec Act. The position of the noblesse was not improved by it ; they were still excluded from places of trust, honour, and emolument, on account of their religion. The majority of the members of Council were of British birth. But the new Constitution was calculated to please the clergy and the mass of the people ; and if that government is the best that gives contentment to the greatest number, then the **Quebec Act of 1774** may be considered a successful piece of legislation. The Act is cited as 14 Geo. III. cap. 83. At the same time was passed another Act, 14 Geo. III. cap. 88, to raise a revenue. It imposed a graduated scale of duties on the brandy, rum, and spirits of Great Britain, the British West Indies, and foreign countries ; and regulated and protected the commerce between the mother country and her colonies by placing heavy duties on foreign articles. The duties were collected by royal custom-house officers, and deposited in the Exchequer of England. The amount went to the support of the Civil Government ; but it was at first, as it always continued to be, insufficient for the purpose, and it was supplemented from other sources of revenue, such as that derived from the sale of Crown lands and the lease of mines, commonly called **the casual and territorial revenue**.

18. **Nova Scotia**, during the continuance of the war (1755-60), remained in a precarious state. The lands of which the Acadians had been dispossessed were not quickly taken up, as settlers upon them were exposed to attacks from parties of that outraged people and of their allies the Micmacs. Another cause retarded the settlement of the Province. — There was as yet no regular Government. No Assembly had been called, and, wanting the sanction of the popular branch of the Legislature, the laws passed by the Governor and Council were deemed

invalid. Governor Lawrence pleaded the disturbed and scattered state of the country as an insuperable objection to calling an Assembly of representatives of its people ; but the Lords of Plantations urged upon him the necessity of doing so, as the only means of permanently establishing the Province.

19. **The first General Assembly** ever convoked within the territory of the present Dominion met in the Court-House of Halifax on the 2nd of October 1758. The House consisted of twenty-two members, twelve of whom represented the Province at large, and the other ten the townships of Halifax, Lunenburg, Dartmouth, Annapolis, and Cumberland. The Church of England was established by law ; liberty of conscience was allowed to the other sects. The first Assembly lasted for upwards of a year ; the second met on the 4th of December 1759.

20. During the war, the French inhabitants of Miramichi, Restigouche, Nepisiguit, Shippegan, Caraquetle, and the Bay of Gloucester, were visited by **great calamities**. The English cruisers intercepted their vessels from France, and as they were dependent on the mother country for many necessaries, they suffered immensely. The settlement on Beaubair's Island in the Miramichi—once in a thriving condition, and numbering over a thousand souls—was carried off by pestilence and famine. La Petite Rochelle, a settlement of some importance on the Restigouche, was destroyed by an English squadron under Captain Byron in the summer of 1760. In the following year the Indians entered into a treaty of peace with Governor Belcher at Halifax. Father Manach, with a number of French families from Miramichi, appeared at Fort Howe, on the St. John, to take the oath of allegiance.

21. After the peace (1763), **Cape Breton and the Island of St. John** were annexed to the Government of Nova Scotia. An attempt was made to induce a party of disbanded soldiers to settle on the River St. John ; but so eager were the men in Fort Frederick (which stood near the site of the ancient Fort la Tour) to leave the country, that one hundred and fifty of them abandoned it and made for Machias in two open boats. The military station at St. John was not so pleasant then as it afterwards became. In this year James Simonds, James White, and Francis Peabody, from Massachusetts, established a fishing-

station on the St. John harbour. Their houses and stores were built near Portland Height, under the guns of Fort Howe. To this fort parties coming from the woods were wont to haul for protection the masts and spars they had cut.

22. When the restrictive colonial policy of the Imperial Government provoked disorder and excited tumult in the English colonies, existence was made unhappy to many **1766** people. The Government of Nova Scotia offered tracts A.D. of land to **Loyalist refugees**. In 1766, a party from the parishes of Rowley, Andover, and Boxford in Massachusetts, received a grant of land of twelve miles along the River St. John. The settlement was called **Maugerville**, from an island which bore the name of its grantee, Colonel Maugers. The people came of Puritan stock, and professed the Presbyterian faith. They escaped none of the trials incident to a settlement in the wilderness. The Indians treated them as intruders on the red man's domain. Their first scanty crops failed, and they suffered excessively from the winter cold. They were shut up by the ice and snow from all succour. The warm breezes of spring came to their almost despairing hearts like the whispers of hope; and the arrival of a sloop from Boxford was hailed with gratitude as a deliverance sent by Heaven.

23. Two years afterwards (1768) all the Acadian French were removed from St. Anne's Point and from other places on the St. John to Madawaska. Maugerville was erected into the **county of Sunbury**, in which was included all the country between the Bays of Fundy and Chaleur. Courts of justice were established, and the sittings were held at Oromocto.

24. A survey of the Island of St. John<sup>1</sup> was commenced by Major Holland in 1764. It was found to contain 365,400 acres, of which only 10,000 were computed to be unfit for settlement. By order of Lord William Campbell, then Governor of Nova Scotia, most of this fertile domain was, in one day, raffled away in lots to officers of the army and navy, on the conditions that they paid quit rents, and that they actually settled one person to every two hundred acres. Many of the grantees sold, surrendered, or alienated their property, so that most of the land fell

---

<sup>1</sup> *Island of St. John.*—Now Prince Edward Island.

into the hands of a few absentee proprietors. The prosperity of the island was thus "**stifled in the cradle of its existence.**" When its population numbered only five resi-**1769** 1770  
 dent proprietors and one hundred and fifty families, A.D. it was separated from Nova Scotia and made a distinct Government. The first General Assembly met in 1773.

QUESTIONS.—1. What air did the "old subjects" in Quebec assume? What had induced some of these to settle there?

2. What was the general feeling of the "new subjects" towards their rulers? What oaths did they decline to take?

3. To what custom of English law did the French Canadians object? Why? How did the British population regard trial by jury?

4. What question had the Government to consider in dealing with their French subjects?

5. For what was General Murray called to account? What policy did his successor adopt? Whose jurisdiction did he abolish? How did confusion arise in the administration of justice?

6. What proposed remedy was favoured by Governor Carleton? What was the opinion of Hey and Maseres?

7. What different views prevailed regarding the best way of settling the difficulties?

8. What was the chief objection of British settlers to feudal tenure?

9. What parts of the French law were not repugnant to the British? What portions affected them most seriously?

10. What were some of the hardships of the marriage law?

11. Describe the system of secret mortgages. For what remedy did the British agitate? Why did the French oppose it?

12. What was the effect of the Conquest on Canada, on the whole? How did it affect agriculture and commerce? What promise did the King seem loath to fulfil? Why? What step was taken in this direction in 1770?

13. What colonial policy had been adopted soon after the accession of George III.? What were the Navigation Laws? How had colonial merchants treated them? To what did their enforcement lead? On what besides were restrictions put?

14. When was the Stamp Act passed? Mention the subsequent events. How was Boston punished for its "flat rebellion"?

15. When was the Earl of Dartmouth's Bill introduced? What were its main provisions? On what grounds was it opposed? By whom?

16. What complaints did the British Canadians make?

17. Whom was the new Constitution calculated to please? When was the Quebec Act passed? What other Act was passed in the same year?

18. What causes retarded the settlement of Nova Scotia? What was suggested to Governor Lawrence as the only means of establishing the Province?

19. When and where did the first General Assembly ever held on Dominion territory meet? Of whom did it consist? What Acts did it pass?

20. Where did the French suffer great calamities during the war?

21. What islands were annexed to the Government of Nova Scotia after the war? Where was a fishing-station established in 1763?

22. Who were the "Loyalist refugees"? Who settled at Maugerville? What trials did they encounter?

23. What changes were made in 1768?

24. How was the prosperity of the Island of St. John checked? When was it separated from Nova Scotia?

## CHAPTER XXV.

## THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

1775 to 1800 A.D.

The Philadelphia Congress.  
 The "Gates of Canada" secured.  
 The Invasion.  
 General Montgomery.  
 Benedict Arnold threatens Quebec.  
 Montreal Abandoned.

Death of Montgomery at Quebec.  
 Naval fight on Lake Champlain.  
 Burgoyne's Surrender at Saratoga.  
 Sir Frederick Haldimand.  
 Fort Cumberland.  
 The last Rising of the Indians.

1. THE history of the English Colonies was connected with that of Canada from the earliest times. Their constant wars with the French imbued them with a warlike spirit. They grew strong and attained manhood while Canada and Nova Scotia were in their infancy. They were always self-reliant and independent. For many years mutual jealousies had tended to keep them apart. Now that a common danger threatened them, they hastened to unite.

**April 19,**  
**1775**  
 A.D. **War had commenced.** The Battle of Lexington had been fought when the Delegates of the Colonies met at Philadelphia in May to pass an Act of Perpetual Union, to consult over measures for the common safety, and to make a last appeal to the King in defence of their liberties. They wished to manage their own affairs in their own manner; to be freed from the domination of favourites and irresponsible officials; to have the portals to place and position thrown open to men of talent and energy, to whatever family connection or religious sect they might belong; to be able to turn their labour to the best account; to sail their ships the wide ocean over, and to trade at every port, unfettered by regulations or Navigation Acts. The English Colonies were destined to obtain, by war, bloodshed, and the rupture of dear national ties, the objects which the British-American Provinces have gained by comparatively peaceful agitation, and without breaking away from their allegiance to the Crown.

2. **The Philadelphia Congress**<sup>1</sup> looked with alarm to the foundation of arbitrary government in Quebec, and to the extension of the boundaries of that Province, that seemed to gird the English Colonies with a line of despotism. It accounted the Quebec Act as a threat to liberty, the last wrong of many that the Colonies had received from the hands of the King. The alarm was not without cause ; for Lord North<sup>2</sup> had uttered a threat that the Imperial Government would give Governor (now Sir Guy) Carleton authority to arm the Canadians, and to carry war among them. Congress deemed that the wisest course would be to take the offensive. It heard that there was disaffection among the British population, and that the contagion of liberty was spreading among the French Canadians. An armed invasion would, it thought, bring out many sympathizers. Circular letters were addressed to the people of Canada and Nova Scotia, calling upon them to unite against the common tyrant, and to join the **standard of liberty**.

3. While Congress was sitting, Colonels Benedict Arnold and Ethan Allen seized Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and thus secured an entrance by "**the Gates of Canada.**" In the course of the summer an invasion was determined on. About the middle of September two parties of English colonial insurgents, numbering each a little over a thousand men, marched upon Montreal and Quebec. The first party, under command of General Schuyler, advanced by Lake Champlain ; the other, under Colonel Arnold, made its way by the Kennebec and Chaudiere rivers to the southern bank of the St. Lawrence. Montreal was defended by Forts St. John's and Chambly on the Richelieu. On hearing rumours of the threatened attack, Governor Carleton, unconscious that the capital was in danger, sent most of his regular troops to reinforce the garrison of St. John's. General Schuyler fondly hoped that the Canadians would rise and join him. He caused proclamations to be distributed, that set forth that he had come as a friend to restore to them the rights of British subjects ; and that he had received

<sup>1</sup> *The Philadelphia Congress.*—This was the second continental congress. The first met (also at Philadelphia) in 1774.

<sup>2</sup> *Lord North.*—He was Prime Minister of England from 1770 till 1782,—that is, during the whole period of the Revolutionary War.

strict injunctions to cherish them, and to guard their property sacredly. Many of the British population were not proof against his blandishments, for they were utterly discontented with the arbitrary government that had been imposed upon them. Schuyler, finding that St. John's was too strong to be carried by assault, left his force and went to Albany to bring up reinforcements. He fell sick by the way, and the command devolved on **Colonel Richard Montgomery**. Sixteen years before, this officer had served under Wolfe, and he had ever held that hero to be the pattern of all military virtues. Daring in battle, gentle in peace, ever courteous to his comrades and generous to fallen foes, Montgomery was beloved by his own soldiers, and personally esteemed even by those who disapproved of his course.

4. While he was detained before Chambly and St. John's, Colonel Ethan Allen, with three hundred men, rashly attacked Montreal, and was defeated and taken prisoner. He was sent to England, loaded with irons like a criminal. Elated by his victory, Governor Carleton, with eight hundred men, determined to raise the siege of St. John's. Crossing the St. Lawrence, he fell into an ambuscade on its southern bank, and was driven in confusion to his boats by a party of "Green Mountain Boys." In the meantime Chambly had fallen into Montgomery's hands. He found there several cannons and a quantity of gunpowder. He was thus enabled to direct a stronger fire against the more important post, St. John's. On hearing of Carleton's defeat its garrison capitulated. Montgomery then advanced against Montreal, while his naval squadron took up a position below it, in order to intercept the garrison should it attempt to escape to Quebec.

5. **Colonel Arnold** had by this time (10th of November) emerged from the wilderness. For thirty-six days his soldiers had endured the extremities of fatigue and distress. When rocks and shoal-water drove them from the course of the Kennebec, they had carried their canoes over mountains and morasses: in their dire hunger they had devoured dogs and gnawed their shoes and cartridge-boxes. Ragged, foot-sore, hungry and sick, they appeared at Point Levi, and threw Quebec into a state of alarm. Their coming was so utterly unexpected,

that, if Arnold could have crossed the river at once, he might have taken the city by surprise. Boats were not ready, so the opportunity was lost. Three days afterwards he made his way to the opposite shore, and clambering up the rugged path by which Wolfe had ascended, paraded his ragged force on the Plains of Abraham. He found the city too strong to be taken by assault: he had no siege-guns. He descended the path again, and afterwards made his way to Point aux Trembles, eighteen miles up the northern bank, and encamped to await the coming of Montgomery.

6. **Governor Carleton**, in Montreal, heard of the danger that threatened Quebec. He resolved to concentrate his small forces to defend that most important post. On the approach of Montgomery, he ordered the garrison to withdraw to his ships. Unfortunately, General Prescott, several officers, and a hundred and twenty soldiers, were intercepted by the foe. Carleton escaped. He was rowed, in the darkness of night, in a boat with muffled oars, through the American squadron, and after a perilous journey reached the capital. The inhabitants received him with joyful demonstrations. The appearance of Arnold's ragged and hungry rebels had alarmed the comfortable citizens who had property to lose. Carleton expelled some of the mob who had expressed sympathy for the insurgents' cause, put the city in a state of defence, mustered 1,800 regulars, marines, and militia, and awaited attack with confidence.

7. Montgomery met Arnold on the 1st of December. Great was the joy of their meeting. What a contrast these two brave soldiers presented! In the eyes of the British both were rebels. But Montgomery gained their esteem during his life, and their sympathy in his death. The memory of his virtues was cherished by his grateful adopted country. Arnold, selfish, unscrupulous, profligate, earned, by betraying the trust reposed in him, the infamous title of **Traitor**.

Dec.  
1775  
A.D.

8. Montgomery, with nine hundred men and eight cannon, descended from Point aux Trembles to **besiege Quebec**. Winter had set in. The sufferings of his force were dreadful. For a month he directed an unavailing fire against the fortifications. The last day of the year arrived. His desperate situation

prompted him to take a desperate resolve. A double attack on the lower town was made. At four in the morning, amid a heavy fall of snow, Montgomery led a body of New Yorkers along the road under Cape Diamond, over which were piled great blocks of ice. The western gate was defended by **Dec. 31,** a barrier and a battery. The guards in the block-house, **1775** alarmed by the confused murmur made by the advancing foe, fled into the city. Montgomery helped to tear away the pickets of the barrier. A Canadian militiaman, plucking up courage, returned to the battery and fired a cannon. The random shot was fatal. **Montgomery and two of his officers were killed,** and the force hastily retreated. The falling snow covered the dead bodies as with a shroud.

9. On the eastern side, Arnold crossed the St. Charles, and entered the narrow street leading to the fortifications. A fire of cannon and musketry swept it; a shot struck him on the leg, and he was borne to a place of safety by some of his men who saw him fall. Captain Morgan, commander now, and a body of Virginian riflemen, rushed forward, scaled the rampart., and entered the town through one of the embrasures. For hours, amid the storming darkness, they maintained an uncertain conflict. When the gray dawn revealed to them their dangerous situation, in the midst of a hostile town, and exposed to a withering fire from the houses, their hearts sank, and they **surrendered.**

10. Arnold, after this repulse, transferred his camp to a point three miles above Quebec, and during the winter kept the city in a state of blockade. Reinforcements reached him with the breaking up of the winter; but they were hardly sufficient to replace his loss by siege and sickness. The arrival of General Thomas to take the chief command, put him in a bad humour. When navigation opened, English ships, bearing troops for Quebec, appeared. While **General Thomas** was making preparations to break up his encampment, and to retire further up the river, Carleton, with one thousand men, made a sortie, took a number of prisoners, and carried off great quantities of stores. The Americans then retreated to Sorel. There Thomas died, and General Sullivan, who had in the meantime arrived with fresh forces, took the command.

11. During May and June British and Brunswick troops continued to pour in, until Governor Carleton had thirteen thousand men under his command. He now advanced to attack the foe. The Americans abandoned Montreal and places west. When Carleton crossed the St. Lawrence, they retreated slowly from Sorel to St. John's, and then to Crown Point, out of Canada. These movements took up all the summer and autumn. On the 19th of October, two naval squadrons, under Arnold and Carleton, had a fierce encounter at the head of Lake Champlain. Several of the American vessels were captured by the British. Arnold, to escape the disgrace of surrendering his fleet, drove his remaining ships on shore, and set them on fire.

12. The war now receded from the boundaries of Canada. Governor Carleton was ambitious to have an active military command. He resigned his position, and returned to England. He was dissatisfied because General Burgoyne,<sup>1</sup> who had served under him the year before, was appointed chief of the army that assembled early in spring in Montreal, to invade the State of New York, to capture Albany, and hold possession of the line of the Hudson River, with the view of cutting the rebellion in two and of separating the New England States from those lying south of them. Burgoyne advanced, prosperously at first, deep into the country. The hardy militia of New York, Vermont, Connecticut, and Massachusetts, rushed to arms, swarmed around the British army, and cut off its supplies. Defeated in the battles at Stillwater on the Hudson, Burgoyne retreated to the heights of Saratoga. Being completely surrounded, he surrendered<sup>2</sup> himself and six thousand soldiers to General Gates.

13. General Sir Frederick Haldimand, a soldier of severe temper and unconciliatory manners, succeeded Carleton. While the revolutionary war lasted, emissaries from the American States industriously disseminated seditious sentiments. Among the habitans, the priests, clothed with the awful authority of

<sup>1</sup> General Burgoyne. — After his disaster, Burgoyne returned to England, and devoted himself to play-writing. He died in 1792.

<sup>2</sup> Surrendered. — The surrender at Saratoga decided the French to recognize the independence of the United States.

the Church, had more power than those preachers of revolution. The French Canadians had had some experience of the manners of the people of the revolted English Colonies, and they had reason to believe their pastors, who said that small respect would be paid to their national prejudices, their laws, and their customs, if they were amalgamated, under one Government, with that people. The time was rife with excitement and suspicion. It was dangerous to express the slightest sympathy with the revolution. There was no protection against arbitrary arrest and secret imprisonment. The stern rule of Haldimand was repugnant to the British subjects; it outraged all their feelings of freedom.

14. During the war, the settlements on the coasts of Nova Scotia were much exposed to the ravages of American privateers. A party from Machias entered the harbour of the St. John, destroyed Fort Frederick, and fired on the houses and stores of Simonds's fishery station. Emissaries of the Massachusetts Government were active in endeavoring to make converts to the revolutionary cause. **A number of the people of Mau-gerville** were led astray to make an attack on Fort Cumberland.<sup>1</sup> Foiled in the attempt to capture it, the party with whom they acted seized a brig that was lying in the empty bed of the Missignash, and, when the tide came in, sailed off with it. The prize was sold at Machias. A lenient Government overlooked the escapade of the Mougerville men on condition of their indemnifying the owner of the brig.

15. **The Indians** on the St. John and the Miramichi grew restless and troublesome. At their war councils they meditated an onslaught on the British settlements. They entered into a treaty with the Government of Massachusetts, by which they engaged to send six hundred warriors to fight for General Washington. In the spring a numerous party of Micmacs and Milicetes, in their war-paint, appeared at the mouth **1778** of the Jemseg. They sent down the British flag to **A.D.** Captain Studholme at Fort Horne. In response to this action, which was equivalent to a declaration of war, the commandant sent an invitation to their principal chiefs to come

---

<sup>1</sup> *Fort Cumberland, — Formerly Fort Beauséjour.*

down to the fort and meet Mr. Franklin, the Government agent for Indian affairs. Flattered, feasted, and loaded with presents, they broke their promise to Washington, and again took the oath of allegiance to King George. The following year they threatened to break their peace, but were pacified by similar means. The Indians of Nova Scotia never again assumed a hostile attitude.

QUESTIONS. — 1. When and where was the first battle in the revolutionary war fought? For what purpose did the Delegates of the Colonies meet? What were their claims? How were the same objects gained by the British-American Provinces?

2. How did the Colonies regard the Quebec Act? What justified their alarm? On what step did Congress resolve?

3. By whom were "the Gates of Canada" secured? What plan of invasion was proceeded with? Who succeeded Schuyler in the command?

4. How did Allen's attack on Montreal end? What led to the surrender of St. John's?

5. Narrate the proceedings of Colonel Arnold.

6. What plan of defence did Carleton adopt? What personal risk did he run in carrying it out?

7. Where did Montgomery and Ar-

nold meet? Contrast the characters of the two men.

8. On what undertaking did Montgomery at once enter? Describe his attack on the western gate of the city.

9. Describe Arnold's attack on the eastern side.

10. Where did Arnold transfer his camp? What changes in the command took place there?

11. What forced the colonists to withdraw? Where was there a fierce naval encounter? With what result?

12. Where was the war carried on in 1777? Who was the British commander? What disaster overtook him?

13. Who succeeded Carleton? Why did the priests oppose the revolution?

14. What coasts were ravaged by privateers during the war? Describe the escapade of the Maugerville men.

15. What part did the Indians take in the struggle?

## CHAPTER XXVI.

## NEW BRUNSWICK.

1782 to 1790 A.D.

Close of the Revolutionary War.  
 The United Empire Loyalists.  
 The Treaty of 1783.  
 Boundaries.  
 Landing of the Loyalists.

New Brunswick.  
 Governor Thomas Carleton.  
 Frederickton.  
 Lord Dorchester, Governor-General.  
 State of Canada.

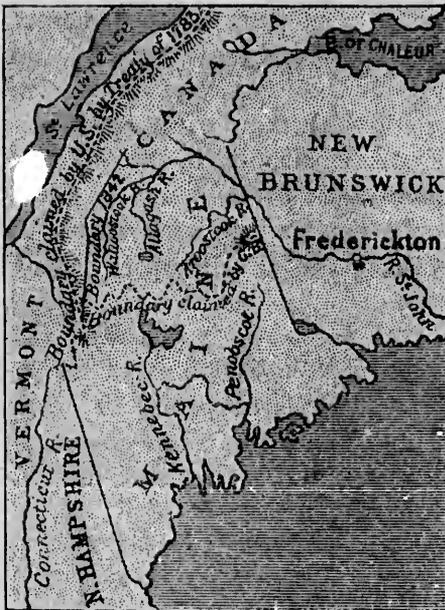
1. EVENTS now happened that gave the British element in Canada greater power, and forced some concessions to political liberty from the King and his Ministry. The last great act of the revolutionary war closed with **the surrender of the British army** under Lord Cornwallis at Yorktown. This disgrace enraged the nation, and aroused in the House of Commons irresistible opposition to the continuance of the war. The stubborn King was compelled to bow to the storm, and to allow his rebellious subjects to depart.

2. General Sir Guy Carleton was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Royal Army in North America. He received instructions to promote peace. American and English Commissioners soon afterwards met at Paris to settle the preliminary articles, which were signed on the 30th of November. The Independence of the Colonies was acknowledged. The conclusion of the war on such a condition was a severe blow to the Tory party—the Loyalists who had fought for the King and for the unity of the Empire, and who had staked their all on a different issue to the conflict. By the preliminaries, Congress was bound earnestly to recommend **the Loyalists** to the generous consideration of the governments and peoples of the several States; but it had no power to make its recommendation effectual. A few generous champions pleaded for amnesty to the vanquished. Nevertheless the tide of popular fury rose over the victims of the war; in the local Assemblies they were denounced as traitors to their country. The fate of the Loyalists weighed heavily on the minds of the King and

the Ministry. The leading men in both Houses of Parliament spoke on their behalf. The honour of the nation demanded that they should not be left to suffer for their patriotism. Among their number there was a large proportion of men of talent and position, who had been possessed of great property, and who had enjoyed private fortunes or the practice of a lucrative profession. They found themselves, with their wives and families, penniless, stripped of their possessions, and in the midst of exasperated foes who threatened to take their lives. In these circumstances the Loyalists could not live on expressions of sympathy, or await the tardy action of Parliament. They applied urgently to General Carleton for assistance. He, acting on his own responsibility, resolved to carry them out of the country, and to grant them lands in Nova Scotia and Canada. General Haldimand in Quebec and Governor Parr in Nova Scotia were instructed to make preparations to receive them.

3. **The final treaty of peace** was signed at Paris on the 3rd of September. By it the Province of Quebec, as constituted in 1774, was stripped of the vast and fertile region **Sept. 3,** between the Mississippi on the west and the Ohio in the **1783** south. The northern boundary of the American pos- **A.D.** sessions was defined by a line drawn from a point—St. Regis—in the 45th degree of north latitude, through the middle of the River St. Lawrence and of the great Lakes Ontario, Erie, Huron, and Superior, and the Lake of the Woods. In the east, British and American territories were divided by the St. Croix River, and by a line drawn from its source to the “highlands dividing the waters falling into the Atlantic from those emptying themselves into the St. Lawrence.” This definition was open to different interpretations, which gave rise in after years to interminable discussions, and nearly brought on a war. The first difficulty was to decide what river was the St. Croix of the treaty. The Americans claimed that the Magaquadatic, the British that the Schoodiac, was the true St. Croix. The decision was given (1798) in favour of the British, and it was then determined that the line to “the highlands” should be drawn from the source of the northern branch of that river. The greater difficulty of determining the situation of “the highlands” remained. The British defined them to be certain de-

tached heights running westward from Mars Hill; the Americans maintained that the high ridges running from Cape Rosieres—thirty miles, on an average, from the left bank of the St. Lawrence—to the north-west branch of the Connecticut River were the true highlands. The article of the treaty respecting the boundaries was framed with the view of leaving within the territory of each country its great rivers and their ramifying branches. The British held that by the spirit of this article they were justified in maintaining their claim, as the country was watered by the Aroostook, Allagash, and Walloostook, which were tributaries of the great St. John, which, without a



MAP OF DISPUTED TERRITORY,

Showing Boundaries claimed by the United States and by Great Britain from 1783, and the line settled by the Ashburton Treaty in 1842.

doubt, took its rise and flowed through their territory. The country in question was called, and long remained, **the Disputed Territory**.

4. By the treaty of 1783 the Americans were accorded the right to fish on all the banks and on the coasts of Newfoundland, in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and on the coasts and in the bays and creeks of all the British-American possessions; and to cure and dry fish in the unsettled bays and harbours of Nova Scotia, Magdalen Islands, and Salvador. The Americans were never willing to relinquish these extensive privileges after they had once enjoyed them. **The fisheries** became, in the course of time, an even more irritating subject of dispute than the boundaries.

5. Early in the year **the exodus of the United 1783 Empire Loyalists** commenced. Ten thousand found their way to Canada. The lands assigned to them

were situated west of Montreal, around the Bay of Quinté, and along the northern shore of Lake Ontario. Great changes now took place in Nova Scotia. Before the final treaty, the Loyalists of New York and New Jersey sent forward agents to explore the country. In their imagination they had pictured it to be a region of perpetual cold and frequent fog. Favourable accounts reached them of the aspect of the land on the St. John and the Kennebecasis. Several parties settled themselves about Halifax, Annapolis, and Port Roseway, where the town of Shelburne was built; but the main body crossed the Bay of Fundy. **On the 18th of May** the ships from New York arrived in the harbour of St. John. The prospect before those on board might have deepened the impression of the sacrifice that they had made for king and country. They might have seen, through a melancholy fog, on the right a promontory of rock, covered with thickets of cedar and spruce to the water's edge; on their left the (Carleton) heights, a few fishermen's huts upon the rocks, and the ruins of Fort Frederick on the strip of land round which the river makes its abrupt turn; and before them the elevated post of Fort Howe, and close to it a block-house, a wood-yard, and a few houses and stores.

6. The Loyalists landed at the upper cove. Rude huts had been erected for the accommodation of the destitute families. In the beginning of November seventy-four refugees from Maryland arrived to swell the number. They had escaped from the wreck of the *Martha*, a ship of the September fleet that sailed from New York for Quebec with eight thousand of the expatriated people. Governor Parr gave his name to the settlement. **Parrtown**, in its earlier days, must have presented a strange scene of combined misery, bustle, work, and political excitement.

7. The Loyalists did not agree very well with the original settlers. They grew angry with the Governor because their grants of land had not been surveyed. He, in his turn, reproached them for refusing to help on the work of surveying, by acting as chain-men, unless they were well paid. Then they claimed representation in the Assembly. Nova Scotia was then divided into eight counties, with thirty-six representatives. **The County of Halifax** included Canso, Cape Breton, and the

country between the St. Croix and the St. John (where several Loyalist families had settled) and along the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Parr opposed the claim to representation on the strength of a clause of the Royal Instructions to him as Governor, which forbade the increase or the diminution of the number of the members of Assembly. A party was then formed among the Loyalists who raised the question of dividing Nova Scotia into two Provinces. The discussion produced a good deal of excitement and ill feeling. The Governor was much opposed to the movement, and caused some of the leaders to be transferred to the other side of the Bay in the hope of settling the agitation.

8. The Loyalists of St. John had powerful friends in England. The division was made. **The Province 1784 of New Brunswick** was created, and the River Mis-  
A.D. signash was constituted the boundary between it and Nova Scotia. At the same time Cape Breton was made a separate government. On Sunday, the 21st of November, **Colonel Thomas Carleton**, (brother of Sir Guy,) the first Governor of New Brunswick, arrived in St. John harbour, and landed at Reed's Point. He had commanded a regiment during the revolutionary war, and was much esteemed by His Majesty's exiled Loyalists. The Province was formally proclaimed the next day.

9. The Government of New Brunswick consisted of a Governor and a Council, that united both executive and legislative functions, and a House of Assembly of twenty-six representatives. The Council was composed of twelve members. They were men of great talent, and had occupied, before the war, positions of influence in their native States. Chief-Justice **Ludlow** had been a Judge in the Supreme Court of New York; James **Putnam** was considered one of the ablest lawyers in all America; the Reverend and Honourable **Jonathan Odell**, first Provincial Secretary, had acted as chaplain in the Royal Army, practised physic, and written political poetry; Judge **Joshua Upham**, a graduate of Harvard, abandoned the Bar during the war, and became a colonel of dragoons; Judge **Isaac Allen** had been colonel of the second battalion of the New Jersey Volunteers, and lost an estate in Pennsylvania through his devotion to the Loyalist cause; Judge **Edward Winslow**, nephew

of Colonel John Winslow who executed the decree that expelled the Acadians from Nova Scotia, had attained the rank of colonel in the Royal Army; Beverley **Robinson** had raised and commanded the Loyal American Regiment, and had lost great estates on the Hudson River; Gabriel G. **Ludlow** had commanded a battalion of Maryland volunteers; Daniel **Bliss** had been a commissary in the Royal Army. Abijah **Willard** had taken no active part in the war. He was one of fifty-five gentlemen who petitioned Sir Guy Carleton to grant them each a field-marshal's allowance of land (5,000 acres), on account of the great respectability of the position that they had held. William **Hazen** and Gilfred **Studholme** were settled in the Province before the landing of the Loyalists. Judge John **Saunders**, of a Cavalier family in Virginia, had been captain in the Queen's Rangers under Colonel Simcoe, and had afterwards entered the Temple and studied law in London. He was appointed to the Council after the death of Judge Putnam. The government of the young Province was conducted with very few changes for several years.

10. The town and district of Parr was incorporated in 1785, and became the city of **St. John**. It was the first, and long continued to be the only, incorporated town in British North America. It was governed by a Mayor and a board of six Aldermen and six assistants. The first two sessions of the First General Assembly (1786-7) met in St. John. On meeting the Legislature at its first session, Governor Carle- **1786**  
 ton expressed his satisfaction at seeing the endeavours **A.D.**  
 of His Majesty to procure for the inhabitants the protection of a free government in so fair a way of being finally successful. He spoke of the peculiar munificence that had been extended to New Brunswick, the asylum of loyalty to all the neighbouring States; and expressed his conviction that the people could not show their gratitude in a more becoming manner than by promoting sobriety, industry, and religion; by discouraging all factions and party distinctions; and by inculcating the utmost harmony between the newly-arrived Loyalists and the subjects formerly settled in the Province.

11. Two years afterwards the seat of government **1788**  
 was removed to **St. Anne's Point, Frederickton, A.D.**

which was considered the most central position in the Province. It is said that Frederickton was chosen to be the seat of government because Albany—the seat of the Legislature of New York (from which State the great body of the Loyalists came)—is situated many miles up the River Hudson, and is thus removed from the distracting bustle, the factions, and corrupting influences of the great commercial metropolis at its mouth.

12. In Canada, after the arrival of the Loyalists, **dissatisfaction** with its form of government increased. When British subjects saw the people of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and the Island of St. John, enjoying political privileges from which they were debarred, they naturally came to hate more and more the arbitrary government under which they lived. It was distasteful to the more intelligent French Canadians. Some change was necessary to give contentment. The unpopular Haldimand was recalled at his own request. Before the coming of his successor the government was administered first by Hon. Henry Hope, and afterwards by Colonel Hamilton.

13. In those days the colonial policy of the Imperial Government divided the Crown territory in British America into a number of separate Provinces. They could thus, it was thought, be governed more easily. The immense extent of the country, the sparseness of the settlements, and the difficulty of intercommunication made such subdivisions almost necessary. The fact that they were bound together by one common allegiance and interest was recognized. Sir Guy Carleton, who **1787** was created Lord Dorchester, was appointed Governor-General of all the Provinces, and Commander-in-Chief of all Forces in British America. The Captains-General of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick were named **Lieutenant-Governors**. The advantages that union would give were then seen. Governor Thomas Carleton, in addressing the Legislature this year, argued that New Brunswick (and all the Provinces) “would acquire greater strength to overcome obstacles in the path of its growth and prosperity as the relations between the sister colonies grew more intimate, and as their interests were more closely entwined.”

14. Lord Dorchester had shown himself a true friend, both to

the French Canadians, and to the United Empire Loyalists who now formed the greater part of the British population. No man was better qualified to unite them in political harmony under one government. The task was one of extreme difficulty, the antagonism of races was so strong. The pretensions of French and English to govern Canada by their own laws were (to use M. de Callières' phrase) incompatible with peace. Until an adjustment of the difficulties could be made, some concessions were granted to the British, to allay the existing discontent. Trial by jury in civil cases was introduced, and the Habeas Corpus Act was restored. The Governor-General caused reports on the state of education, the administration of justice, and commerce, to be drawn up, for the information of the British Parliament in legislating upon the future government of the Province. He divided the great western country into the four districts of Lunenburg, Hesse, Nassau, and Mecklenburg. Their population consisted of Loyalists, disbanded soldiers, and Americans who crossed the line a few years after the peace. They were the pioneers of a **great Province** that was soon to spring out of the wilderness. They found themselves in a forest, unbroken save by the clearings they had made. Settlement was isolated from settlement. The roads were mere Indian trails and bridle-paths. There were no bridges, and no schools. The zealous missionaries,—Episcopal, Presbyterian, and Methodist,—labouring hard in their holy vocation, travelled from place to place.

QUESTIONS.—1. What event closed the revolutionary war in America?

2. To whom was the conclusion of the war a severe blow? Why? How were they treated in the local Assemblies? To whom did they appeal? What did he determine to do?

3. When was the final treaty of peace signed? What vast territory did the Province of Quebec lose? What was the northern boundary assigned to the United States? What difference was settled in 1793? What difficulty remained?

4. What fishing rights were granted to the Americans in 1783?

5. When did the exodus of the United Empire Loyalists commence? How

many went to Canada? What lands were assigned to them? Where did the main body of those from New York and New Jersey go? What prospect awaited them at St. John?

6. Where did they land? By whom were they joined in November? Whose name was given to the settlement?

7. What differences arose between the Loyalists and the original settlers? On what ground did Parr oppose the claim to representation? What question was then raised?

8. What new Province was then created? What colony was at the same time made a separate government? Who was the first Governor of New Brunswick?

9. Of what did the Government consist? Name the members of the first Council. What positions had they held before the war?

10. When did Parrtown become St. John? How was it governed? Where did the House of Assembly hold its first and second sessions? How did the Governor express himself on first meeting it?

11. When was the seat of government removed to Frederickton? Why?

12. What increased the dissatisfaction in Canada? What change in the governorship took place?

13. Why was British America divided into separate Provinces? Who was appointed Governor-General? On what ground were the different colonies urged to maintain intimate relations with one another?

14. What difficult task lay before Lord Dorchester? What were his qualifications for undertaking it? What concessions were made to the British colonists? Why? How did he deal with the great western country? Of whom did its population chiefly consist? What was its condition at that time?

## CHAPTER XXVII.

## THE CONSTITUTIONAL ACT.

1791 to 1798 A.D.

The French Revolution.  
 Fox and Burke.  
 Earl Grenville's Act.  
 Upper and Lower Canada.  
 The Constitution.

The Meeting of the two Legislatures.  
 Governor Simcoe at York.  
 Treaty of Amity, Commerce, and  
 Navigation.  
 Affairs in Lower Canada.

1. IN 1791 the state of Canada came under the consideration of the Imperial Parliament. A Bill to divide the country into two Provinces was introduced by Earl Grenville in the House of Lords. In the seventeen years since the passing of the Quebec Act of 1774, great political changes had taken place in the New as in the Old World. The English Colonies had fought their way to independence, and, as the United States, had assumed rank among the nations. Their example had given an impulse to the **Revolution** in France. Europe was now in the throes of that mighty event. It was creating intense feeling in the British people, and among large classes was exciting a dread of republican principles. Charles Fox<sup>1</sup> and Edmund Burke<sup>2</sup> had voted side by side against the Quebec Act of 1774. Now they were estranged. Fox had repeatedly expressed his admiration of the French Revolution. Burke had as often denounced it with the full force of his eloquence. He now stood alone, separated from the Liberal party, the Whigs. His hostility to the Revolution became almost a mania. When the **Canada Bill** was discussed in the House of Commons, he commenced a speech upon it by a violent philippic against republican principles and the government of France. He wound up by declaring, that if by adhering to the British Constitution he

<sup>1</sup> *Fox.* — Charles James Fox, the great rival of William Pitt (the younger), was born in 1749; died, a few months after Pitt, in 1806. He was one of the most powerful orators of modern times.

<sup>2</sup> *Burke.* — Edmund Burke, born at Dublin, 1728; died 1797. He was a distinguished author as well as a great orator. Chief works: "Essay on the Sublime and Beautiful," and "Reflections on the French Revolution."

would cause his friends to desert him, he would risk all, and, as his public duty taught him, exclaim in his last words, "Fly from the French Constitution." "There is no loss of friendship, I hope," said Fox, *sotto voce*. "Yes," retorted Burke; "there is loss of friendship. I know the price of my conduct. Our friendship is at an end." A scene such as is seldom witnessed in Parliament followed this outburst. Members were visibly affected by the open rupture between those two celebrated statesmen. Fox shed tears, and it was some time before he could sufficiently master his emotion to reply.

1791

A.D.

2. By Earl Grenville's Act, commonly called the **Constitutional Act**, Canada was divided into the two Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada; and the line of



UPPER AND LOWER CANADA.

division between them was drawn from Point au Baudet, on the northern bank of Lake St. Francis, due north to Point Fortune on the Ottawa, and along the course of that river to Lake Temiscaming, and thence to the southern boundary of the Hudson Bay Territory. Upper Canada was constituted an entirely **British Province**. The whole body of the English Law was introduced. Lands were held on the freehold tenure. Lower Canada remained French. The Feudal Tenure and French Civil Law were retained. The option of holding newly-granted lands on a freehold tenure was allowed, subject to

modification by Acts of the Legislature. The Criminal Law of England and the Habeas Corpus Act were introduced into both Provinces.

3. The British population strongly **objected to the division of Canada.** The object of the separation, as avowed by William Pitt,<sup>1</sup> was to avoid forcing on the French Canadians laws and customs to which they were adverse, but gradually to assimilate them "to the manners, habits, language, and constitution of Great Britain." It was maintained that the separation would tend to strengthen national prejudices, and to bring the two sections into collision. The British merchant class opposed the division on the ground that it would place the commerce of Upper at the mercy of Lower Canada. There was no port above Montreal, as ships could not ascend further on account of the rapids, and they could only gain access to the sea by the St. Lawrence, which ran through the territory of the Lower Province. All the imports and exports of Upper Canada, the merchants said, would have to be entered at the port of Montreal or Quebec, and be subjected to such duties and regulations as the Legislature of Lower Canada might think proper to impose.

4. In each Province a Legislature of three branches—Governor, Legislative Council, and General Assembly—was established. The Governor was appointed by the Crown, and was responsible to it. He carried out the instructions of the Imperial Government, transmitted to him in despatches from the Colonial Office, Downing Street. The members of the **Legislative Council** received their appointments from the Crown, and held their seats nominally during pleasure, but practically for life. William Pitt at first contemplated the creation of an order of hereditary noblesse, to hold a similar position in the Colonial to that of the aristocracy in the British Constitution. Fox ridiculed the idea. He said that there was not in Canada, or in the other Provinces, a permanent class of great landholders from which a privileged order could be formed; and that the attempt to establish one would excite jealousy, and cause the

<sup>1</sup> Pitt.—William Pitt (the younger), second son of the Earl of Chatham; born 1759; died 1806. He was Chancellor

of the Exchequer in his twenty-fourth year, and Prime Minister in his twenty-fifth.

people to institute an unfavourable comparison between the form of government under which they lived and that of the neighbouring Republic. In making a Constitution for Canada, Edmund Burke held that it was of importance that its people should have nothing to envy in the Constitution of a country so near their own. Though an hereditary noblesse was not created, the members of the Legislative Council constituted themselves, in spirit, into a privileged order. They were mostly Judges and officials holding places of emolument from the Crown, and quite independent of the people. Objections were raised at the very first to a Legislative Council composed and appointed in that manner. It was said that it would be subservient to the power that created it, and that it would not maintain that independent position which it ought to hold between the representatives of the Crown and the representatives of the People. Fox suggested that the best way to obtain an independent Legislative Council was to make it elective ; but, at the same time, to raise the qualifications both of the persons offering themselves for election and of those who elected them, above the qualifications demanded from candidates for the Legislative Assembly and from their electors.

5. **The Members of the Legislative Assembly** were the representatives of the people. Persons qualified to vote elected them to serve a certain term. In Canada a House lasted four years, unless it was sooner dissolved by the Governor, in whom was vested the prerogative, to be exercised according to his discretion. The Assembly, in conjunction with the Legislative Council, made the laws ; the assent of the Governor was necessary before they became operative Acts. The Assembly had power to raise a revenue for the support of roads, bridges, schools, and other public services.

6. The Governor had a body of advisers called the **Executive Council**. Its members were salaried officials under the Crown, and Judges, and they generally held seats in the Legislative Council. The duties of this body were not very well defined. They held that they were not accountable either to the Governor or to the Assembly for their acts. A Governor might be removed on petition of the Assembly to the Imperial Government, but his advisers were beyond its reach. A Gov-

error, on coming to the Province, was necessarily unacquainted with its affairs ; he had to rely on his Executive Council for information. It is not extraordinary that in some cases he saw with their eyes and judged according to their judgment. He might be recalled, if he acted harshly or injudiciously ; but his advisers held their seats in contempt of censure.

7. By the "Constitutional Act" provision was made for the support of a Protestant Clergy. The land granted by the Crown for settlement was divided into townships. In each township a quantity of land, equal to a seventh, was reserved for the Clergy ; another seventh was retained by the Crown. By these **land reservations** the Act laid the ground for great trouble in the future.

8. The new Constitution of the Canadas was inaugurated in 1792. In the absence of Lord Dorchester, Colonel Alured Clarke was appointed Governor of Lower Canada. The Legislature met on the 17th of December, in the Episcopal Palace, Quebec. The Legislative Council was composed of fifteen members, the Legislative Assembly of fifty members—knights, citizens, and burgesses—of whom sixteen were of British origin. On the first meeting of the Assembly an **important question** was decided. It was necessary to appoint a Speaker, the officer who presides over the Assembly and controls its debates. By a vote of twenty-eight to eighteen, M. Panet, who could speak no language but his native French, was chosen. A rule was made which prescribed the use of both the English and the French language in debate, and in recording the proceedings of the Assembly in its journals. The French Canadians never abandoned the position they took in defence of their nationality, on the question of the election of Speaker : the futility of the hope expressed by William Pitt, that they would be gradually assimilated to the language of Great Britain, was proved. Their addresses to the Governor, in the first session of the Legislature, were replete with sentiments of gratitude and loyalty to their good King George III. The session lasted three months, and the principal work done was the forming of rules and regulations. The majority of the members of Assembly were as yet unused to the proceedings of a deliberative body. The mass of the habitans at first viewed the Assembly as a sort of

machine invented in order to tax them. When a call was made on them to elect representatives, they considered it as a mandate to be obeyed, and not as a privilege to be enjoyed. They looked upon their representatives as officers clothed with authority whom they were bound to obey.

9. **Colonel John Graves Simcoe** was appointed Governor of Upper Canada. He had commanded the Queen's Virginian Rangers during the Revolutionary War. He was a good old Tory, who upheld the union of Church and State, and was in favour of establishing the Church of England in the Province as a means of maintaining ranks in society. The Legislature met on the 17th of September in the town of Newark on the Niagara River. It was on a small scale. In the Legislative Council there were seven, and in the Assembly sixteen members. The foundation of the Constitution was laid by the enactment of the English Criminal and Civil Law. Means for the administration of justice were provided. The names of the four districts were changed into Western, Eastern, Home, and Midland. Newark, being situated close to the American frontier, was considered an ineligible site for the seat of Government. Simcoe proposed to remove the capital west to the River Thames. Lord Dorchester recommended the choice of Kingston, the ancient Cataracoui. As a compromise, **York**,<sup>1</sup> on the north-western shore of Lake Ontario, was selected. The country was then a complete wilderness ; but so eager was the Governor to occupy the new capital, that he removed to the site before a house was erected, and lived in a large canvas tent. The Queen's Rangers accompanied him ; and the men were employed in opening up the northern road--Yonge Street--to Lake Simcoe. It was not the fortune of the Governor to open the first session of the Legislature held in York (1798), as he was removed to the government of San Domingo.

10. When Lord Dorchester returned to Lower Canada the aspect of affairs abroad was lowering. Terrible scenes were being enacted in France. The head of Louis XVI. had fallen beneath the guillotine amid the ribald jeers of a populace drunk with blood. **The Reign of Terror** was at its height. The Kings

---

<sup>1</sup> York.—Now Toronto.

had mustered their forces to crush Liberty in its cradle. The revolutionary Jacobin Government had sent forth armies to do battle against them. It had declared war against England. In the United States the sympathy with the republican cause in France was strong; against England the feeling was bitter. M. Genet, minister from France, sought to embroil the country in the strife and gain an ally. President Washington resented the course he took, and demanded his recall from the French Government, and used all his great influence to turn the tide of passion into the channel of peace. The following year a **Treaty** of Amity, Commerce, and Navigation was concluded between the United States and Great Britain. A great danger was thus averted. Attempts were made by agents from France to sap the loyalty of the French Canadians; but their allegiance to the "best of Sovereigns" remained unshaken. A son of George III., **Edward, Duke of Kent**,<sup>1</sup> at this time held military command in Quebec. Addresses glowing with loyalty were presented to him by the Legislature, the clergy, and the inhabitants of the capital, and of Montreal and Three Rivers. In answering them, the Prince discountenanced the distinction made between "old" and "new" subjects; British and French, he said, were equally the King's Canadian subjects.

Feb. 1,  
1793  
A.D.

11. Lord Dorchester, whose connection with Canada had commenced at the Conquest, finally left the country in 1796. He was succeeded by General **Prescott**. Emissaries from France continued to mingle among the habitans, and attempted to instruct them orally in the doctrines of the Revolution. Proclamations were put forth by the Governor-General to warn the people not to listen to insidious disseminators of false principles; but their best safeguard was their obedience to the instructions of the priesthood. The mass of the people of Lower Canada, when left alone, remained contented and happy; but their leaders and representatives were dissatisfied with the rule of a Government which excluded them from places of power, honour, and emolument. The members of the Legislative and Executive Councils were, with very few exceptions, British.

<sup>1</sup> *Duke of Kent*.—The father of Queen Victoria.

In the Legislative Assembly the case was reversed; there the British were a small minority. The difference between the interests of the two sections of the population gave rise to disputes. The **British** objected to the imposition of duties upon articles imported into the Province, for the purpose of raising a revenue to defray the expense of building jails and court-houses. Commerce, they exclaimed, ought not to be taxed for local works, but the cost of their construction should be met by direct taxation. The agitation of such questions caused ill feeling, which was imbibed by the invectives of the press. The *Canadien*, the French organ, sneered at the British as "intruders and strangers;" the English *Mercuries* and *Gazettes* held up the customs, habits, and laws of the Canadians to ridicule, and contemned them "as an inferior race."

QUESTIONS.—1. What Bill affecting Canada was introduced in the House of Lords in 1791? What great event was being transacted in Europe at the time? What was the cause of the rupture between Fox and Burke? Describe the scene.

2. What was the boundary between Upper and Lower Canada fixed by the Constitutional Act? What differences were made in the Constitution of the two Provinces?

3. On what ground did the British population object to the division of Canada? On what ground did the merchants of Upper Canada object to it?

4. Of what did the Legislature in each Province consist? How were the members of the Legislative Council appointed? What was Pitt's first idea regarding it? What view was taken by Fox? What by Burke? What objection was taken to the Council from the first? What plan did Fox suggest for obtaining an independent Council?

5. What was the popular element in the Constitution? How long did a House last? Who had the power of dissolving it? What special powers had the Assembly?

6. What was the Executive Council?

What was remarkable in the position of its members?

7. For what clergy was support provided by the Constitutional Act? What were the land reservations?

8. When and where did the Legislature of Lower Canada meet for the first time? Of how many members did the Assembly consist? How many were of British origin? What was the first important question decided? What is the peculiar significance of the decision arrived at? In what light did the people regard the Assembly?

9. Who was appointed Governor of Upper Canada? When and where did the Legislature meet? How was the foundation of the Constitution laid? Why was the seat of Government removed from Newark to York?

10. What attempts were made to embroil America in the European strife? How did Washington act? What treaty was concluded in 1794? How did the Canadians evince their loyalty?

11. Who succeeded Lord Dorchester as Governor-General? Why were the leaders of the people in Lower Canada dissatisfied? To what did the British specially object? How was the ill feeling caused by these disputes imbibed?

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

## THE SISTER PROVINCES. (1783 to 1800 A.D.)

## SIGNS OF WAR. (1807 to 1811 A.D.)

Nova Scotia.

Impeachment of the Judges.

Sir John Wentworth.

Edward, Duke of Kent.

Prince Edward Island.

Legislative Disputes in New Brunswick.

Members' pay.

Governor T. Carleton's Administration.

Hostile feeling in the United States.

The Right of Search.

Change of Governors.

Reign of Terror in Lower Canada.

1. DURING the ten years from the close of the American Revolutionary War till the commencement of the French War, **Nova Scotia** was not free from inter- **1783-93**  
 nal strife. Its population was of various origins. A.D.

It included the English, who founded Halifax; the Germans and the Dutch, who settled in Lunenburg; the New Englanders who came in before the American Revolution; a remnant of the Acadians who returned in 1763, and made settlements on the Minudie, in Clare, and about Yarmouth; and last, but not least, the United Empire Loyalists. The Loyalists were in high favour with the King, and among them were men of consideration, education and talent, who assumed the lead in society. Divisions arose between them and the "old inhabitants," as the first English settlers were called. Some Loyalist lawyers, members of the Assembly, created considerable excitement by impeaching two old Judges—Deschamps and Brenton—for **maladministration of justice**. Governor Parr and his Council declared them innocent; but as the Judges were themselves of the Council that pronounced the exculpation, Parr laid himself open to the charge of having been biased by "evil and pernicious councillors." He submitted the case to the British Privy Council, and was supported in the action he had taken. This decision quieted the excitement without restoring confidence in the impartiality of the Bench.

2. Governor Parr died in 1791, and was succeeded by **Sir John Wentworth**, Surveyor-General of His Majesty's Woods

in British America. The new Governor plumed himself on his accurate knowledge of the country. In his opinion Nova Scotia was equal in resources to many, and superior to most, countries. He administered its government for sixteen years. Sir John might have sat for the portrait of a Loyalist Tory Governor. His principles were similar to those held by many Governors before the era of responsible government. He was an accomplished man, and amiable in private life. He was sincerely desirous to make Nova Scotia prosperous and happy. He was a strict upholder of the prerogative of the Crown, and of the principle of aristocracy as represented by the Legislative Council; and he held that the peace, prosperity, and attachment of the British American Colonies depended upon the right selection of the members of the Council, and on the rank which they held among themselves and in society. The persons whom he recommended to the Colonial Office as fit to be appointed were, in several cases, closely related to himself; and some were Englishmen—officers holding appointments under the Crown—who had little knowledge of the Province, and little real interest in its welfare. Sir John was a staunch upholder of the Church of England, and boasted that it had no better friend. Through his influence, and for its benefit, **King's College**, Windsor, was founded, with endowments from the Crown and the Province; and the students of all other denominations were excluded from it by its religious tests. Sir John disliked the expression of any opinion in the Assembly that had the least tendency to create dissatisfaction with the existing state of things—it disturbed the beautiful harmony of the British Constitution. He marked the man who became a leader in the Assembly, and used his influence to stop his promotion. He hated to see people meeting in public to discuss any question—the idea of revolution ever occurred to his mind on any manifestation of popular feeling.

3. Nova Scotia was more affected by the war with France than any of the other Provinces. The people on its coasts were exposed to sudden attacks from French privateers. The danger raised up a military spirit: every man capable of bearing arms joined the militia; and, in addition, the Royal Nova Scotia Regiment, of which the Governor was colonel, was raised. The

people of Halifax were brought into close contact with the power of England—**Chedabucto Harbour** was the rendezvous of her mighty fleets. The streets of the town were often crowded with regiments of her “red-coats” and parties of her rollicking “tars.” A great deal of her money was expended in the Province, and trade was consequently brisk.

4. The Duke of Kent, Commander of the Forces, left Quebec (1794), and made **Halifax** his head-quarters. He was a strict disciplinarian. His presence sustained the martial spirit of the Province. The residence of a “prince of the blood” gave importance to it, and added lustre to the gaiety of the society of its capital. Governor Wentworth had a retreat on Bedford Basin—“Friar Lawrence’s Cell.” The Cell was improved, and became the **Prince’s Lodge**, and there the Duke of Kent dispensed his splendid hospitality. He manifested much interest in the welfare of Nova Scotia and the other Provinces.

In compliment to him St. John was named **Prince 1799 Edward Island**. The following year the royal Duke A.D. finally left Halifax for England.

5. In New Brunswick, soon after the seat of government had been removed to Frederickton, the question of the **appropriation of the revenues** became a serious matter of dispute between the Upper and Lower branches of the Legislature. In fact this was the chronic trouble in all the Provinces. In the right to raise, appropriate, and control the revenues lay the power of the Lower branch. The first quarrel arose on the members of Assembly **voting themselves pay**—7s. 6d. a day—for the session. The Governor and Council objected to the appropriation. The Assembly, in order to constrain the Upper branch to concur in the vote, put it in a bill which they “tacked” to the bill that included all the votes of money passed during the session, leaving the Council the option either of consenting to an appropriation of which it disapproved, or of taking upon itself the responsibility of rejecting the whole Appropriation Bill, and of depriving the people of the money for the support of their roads, bridges, and schools. The Duke of Portland, Colonial Secretary, gave judgment in the case, and declared that it was derogatory to the dignity of members to receive “wages” from their constituents; and that the custom of “tacking” several matters in

one bill was preposterous in the extreme. In spite of official admonition the members of Assembly persisted in paying themselves. For three years (1796-99) there was a dead-lock of the branches of the Legislature. No revenue and appropriation bills were passed. Harmony was then for a time restored, on the Assembly agreeing to include all the items to which the Council agreed in one bill, and to put those to which it had objections in another. The members, however, received their pay.

6. Governor Carleton, after a rule of twenty years, left the Province. In his time the foundation of its educational  
**1802** institutions was laid. Its ship-building and lumber  
 A.D. trades, from small beginnings, grew into importance.

There was then a great demand for masts for the Royal Navy. England, mistress of the seas, maintained her supremacy in many a bloody fight; and pines that had stood for ages in the silent forest of the St. John were shattered in a moment where they rose above her wooden bulwarks. The mother country was then drawn towards her colonies. The **lumber trade** of New Brunswick was fostered by a heavy duty imposed on the timber from the Baltic. Its ships that carried masts and deals to Great Britain returned with immigrants, and in this way population steadily increased. No regular Governor was appointed after Carleton's departure. For five years the government was administered by senior members of the Council: first by the Hon. Gabriel Ludlow, and then by Judge Edward Winslow.

7. The feeling in the United States was now growing very  
**1807** **hostile** to Great Britain. Events happened that portended a speedy rupture. The British maintained their  
 A.D. right to stop American ships on the high seas and search them for deserters from the Royal Navy. Government found difficulty in keeping the fleets manned—many of their sailors were seduced to enter the American service. "**The right of search**" was sometimes carried out in an offensive manner. The U.S. ship *Chesapeake*, sailing out of Hampton Roads, was brought to by H.M. ship *Leopard*, and four men were dragged from its decks as British deserters, after it had been disabled by a murderous fire. This act enraged the American people; their Government issued orders closing all the United

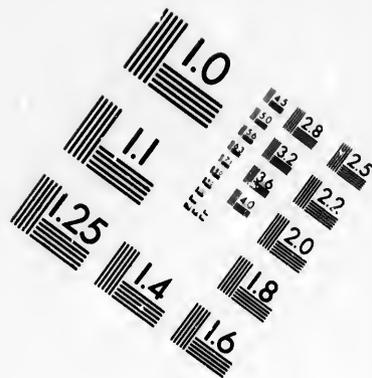
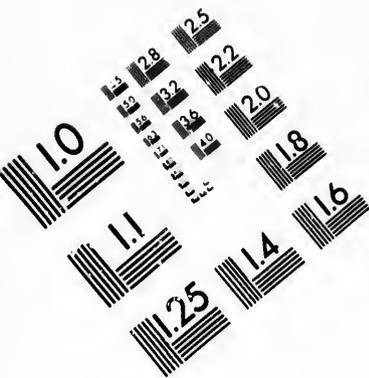
States ports against British vessels, and interdicting commercial intercourse with Great Britain. The course of commerce was much interrupted at this time. By a Decree<sup>1</sup> issued from Berlin, Napoleon declared Great Britain to be in a state of blockade, and forbade all use of her manufactures or colonial produce. In retaliation, the British Government passed Orders in Council prohibiting all commerce with France. The United States and France suffered most during this period of retaliation. Confident in the strength of her navy, Great Britain laughed at the Berlin Decree. Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick flourished under the "Non-intercourse Act;" for they carried on a great and profitable contraband trade with the people of the United States, and their revenues increased largely.

8. **In anticipation of war**, the Imperial Government appointed military governors over the Provinces. In Lower Canada Sir James Craig, a veteran officer, took the place of the Hon. Mr. Dunn, a member of the Executive Council. In Nova Scotia Sir John Wentworth was superseded by Sir George Prevost. Major-General Hunter was appointed President of His Majesty's Council in New Brunswick. In that Province, in less than four years, six changes had taken place in the office, though only four were made in the person of the incumbent. During that time Major-Generals Hunter, Johnstone, Balfour, and Tracey Smythe had held the position. The Legislature was very much annoyed by these frequent changes, and petitioned the Prince Regent (George IV.) to appoint a regularly commissioned Governor. For several years the petition was not answered according to its desire.

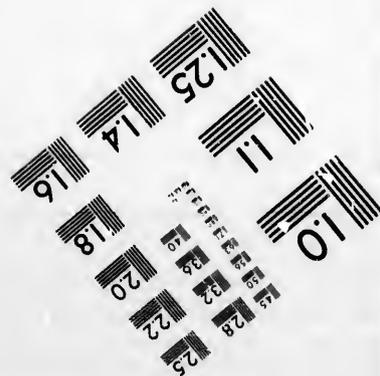
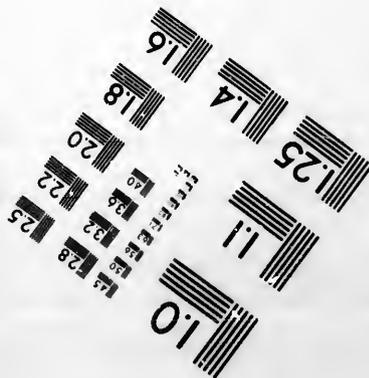
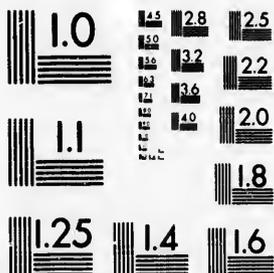
9. **In Lower Canada**, up till this time, the Executive Council, in spite of differences, had been able to command the support

<sup>1</sup> *Decree.*—The "Berlin Decree," issued on November 21st, 1806, was provoked by the strict blockade of the ports between Brest and the River Elbe, effected by the English fleet. Besides declaring the British Isles in a state of blockade, and interdicting, under heavy penalties, all intercourse with them, it confiscated all merchandise and property of every kind belonging to British subjects, and prohibited any vessel

coming from Britain or her Colonies, or which had touched at any English port, from entering the harbours of France. The British "Orders in Council" were issued 7th January, and again 11th November, 1807. Napoleon's attempt to exclude Britain from the commerce of the Continent was a complete failure; but the Orders in Council, which greatly checked the progress of British manufactures, remained in force till 1812.



**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**





of a majority in the Assembly. Violent discussions now arose that arrayed the Upper and Lower branches in direct antagonism to each other. The expulsion of Jews and Judges from the Assembly, and the control of the financial expenditure, were the chief matters of controversy that agitated the Legislature. Judges were then not only members of the Executive and Legislative Councils, they sat also in the Assembly and mingled in the turmoil of politics. Governor Craig sent a mes-

**1809** sage to the Assembly, advising them to take the neces-  
 A.D. sary measures to provide means to place the Province  
 in a state of defence. Instead of attending to this press-

ing business, members wasted five weeks in angry discussions on the Judges. The Governor, in displeasure, **dissolved the House.** The new House, which met in the following January, was hardly less turbulent and intractable. The expenses of the Government had now greatly increased, while the revenues at its command were insufficient to meet them. The Governor called on the Assembly to appropriate a sum to make good the deficiency. The revenues were then in a very flourishing condition. The Assembly, in the plenitude of its generosity, offered to defray all the expenses of (what was called) the Civil List. Its object was to gain control over the expenditure, and to make the officials dependent on it for their salaries. The Council were surprised and offended at the proposal—if it were accepted they would become amenable to a French Catholic majority. Sir James Craig replied coldly and cautiously: he could not accept the offer without the concurrence of His Majesty.

10. The Assembly passed a Bill to disqualify the Judges. The Legislative Council made amendments to it, to which the majority of the Assembly refused to agree. It then proceeded to expel Judge Deboune from his seat, by passing a resolution declaring it vacant. Governor Craig would not sanction this unconstitutional proceeding, and again dissolved the House. The members boasted that they would come back again. The country was much excited during the time of the **general election.** Reports were circulated among the habitans that the Governor had dissolved the House because the French Canadian majority had thwarted his designs, to call out and embody twelve thousand of them as soldiers, and to tax them in a body.

Sir James Craig, in an angry proclamation, pronounced the reports to be atrocious falsehoods; nevertheless, the habitans returned their former representatives. While the elections were being held, six of the most prominent members of the late Assembly were seized and thrown into prison. The office of the *Canadien* newspaper was entered by a squad of soldiers, and its effects were carried away and deposited in a cell in the courthouse. The printer was thrown into jail. People now said among themselves that they were living under a "Reign of Terror." The new House with the old face was rather quiet and subdued in its bearing. Acting on instructions from the Colonial Office, Sir James Craig gave his assent to the Judges' Disqualification Bill. After a busy session he prorogued the House, and made his farewell speech. He was old, and those who did not like him said that his infirmities had made him peevish. His administration had not been successful; but the fault was as much imputable to the Council, which had given him harsh advice, as to himself. Besides, owing to the differences of the habits and opinions of the two sections of its population, Lower Canada was an extremely difficult Province to govern.

11. Sir George Prevost was called from Nova Scotia by the Governor-General. At the same time Major-General Isaac Brock was appointed administrator of the government of Upper Canada. Prevost succeeded in allaying, for a time, the jealousy of the French Canadian party. He increased the number of Executive Councillors, and called some of its members to seats at the Board. He preferred to places of honour a few whom his predecessor had treated harshly: one was called from a prison cell to a seat on the Bench. Soon all thoughts were turned to meet external danger

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the chief cause of the internal strife in Nova Scotia between 1783 and 1793? By whom were the Judges impeached? What was the result?

2. Who succeeded Governor Parr? When? What were his political principles? How did he favour the Church of England?

3. How did Nova Scotia suffer during the French War? What effect had the danger? How was Halifax benefited?

4. Where did the Duke of Kent fix his head-quarters? What effect had his residence there? What island was named after him?

5. What was the cause of legislative disputes in New Brunswick? About what did the first quarrel arise? Narrate the circumstances. How was harmony restored?

6. What institutions and trades were founded in Governor Carleton's time? How was the lumber trade fostered?

7. What question irritated the United States against Britain? What act enraged the people of the States? How was trade at that time much retarded? How did the British-American Provinces flourish?

8. What steps were taken in anticipation of war? On what subject did the Legislature of New Brunswick petition the Prince Regent? How was the petition treated?

9. What controversy divided the Upper and Lower Houses in Lower Can-

ada? Why did Governor Craig dissolve the Assembly? How did the next Assembly respond to his demand for funds?

10. What led Governor Craig again to dissolve the House? What extreme measures did the Governor adopt during the general election? To what is the non-success of Sir James Craig's administration ascribed?

11. What was the effect of Prevost's measures? Towards what were all thoughts soon turned?

## CHAPTER XXIX.

## THE ANGLO-AMERICAN WAR.

1812-1813 A.D.

The Feeling in the United States.  
 President Madison declares War.  
 Defeat of the American General Hull.  
 Death of Brock—Queenston Heights.  
 Ill success of American War operations.  
 Preparations for Campaign of 1813.  
 Ogdensburg burned.  
 General Proctor victorious in the West.

York captured by Americans  
 Fort George taken.  
 Sackett's Harbour.  
 Midnight Attack at Stony Creek.  
 Naval Fight on Lake Erie.  
 Chateaugay.  
 Newark burned by the Americans.  
 Buffalo burned by the British.

1. THE clouds that had long been gathering now burst in storm. The feeling in the United States towards Great Britain was divided. In Pennsylvania and the States south to Georgia there was an eager desire for war. In Massachusetts, Connecticut, Vermont, Rhode Island, and New York the people were strongly in favour of peace, and opposed to the policy of President Madison and the majority of Congress. The avowed cause of quarrel with Great Britain was the determination shown by that power to maintain the "**right of search.**" But ambitious motives impelled the dominant party to make this grievance a sufficient reason for declaring war. A favourable opportunity seemed to offer itself to them to extend the dominion of the United States over the northern part of the continent. Napoleon was then in the zenith of his glory. England alone opposed his march to supreme power in Europe. He would soon, it was thought, make himself master of the Old World. By attacking his great antagonist, the United States would efficiently aid him, and secure to themselves the mastery of the New World. In the British Provinces there was a decided opinion that the American Government designed to take an unfair advantage. In the Eastern States, where French principles were held in detestation, it was said that the Government, though it might not have entered into a direct alliance with "the bloody despot of France," certainly ranged itself on his side, when at his instigation it broke with Great Britain.

2. An incident occurred early in the year which inflamed Congress. President Madison submitted a copy of a **1812 secret correspondence**, which seemed to implicate the Government of Great Britain in an attempt to seduce the people of some of the Eastern States from their allegiance. In 1809, Sir James Craig despatched a Captain Henry to collect information as to the state of feeling in Massachusetts and Connecticut towards Great Britain. In his letters this agent alleged that there was among parties there a desire to withdraw from the Union. Henry, dissatisfied with the reward given him for his services, sold his letters for a large sum to the President. Sir James Craig had acted without authority in sending him on his secret mission. The British Government disavowed it; but President Madison was more anxious to excite a hostile feeling against that Government than to give a fair opportunity for explanation. The reading of the correspondence called forth a loud burst of indignation in Congress. A thousand copies were printed and circulated, and provoked indignation in the country.

3. **War was declared** on the 18th of June. When the news reached Boston, flags were hoisted at half-mast on the vessels in the harbour. Three days after the President took the fatal resolve, Napoleon threw down the gage to Russia;<sup>1</sup> and then, with kings and princes in his train, he marched with his innumerable host towards the region of snow.

4. The Americans proposed to **invade Canada** by way of Lake Champlain, Niagara, and Detroit. Their regular soldiers, under officers who had served in the Revolutionary War, were, with the undisciplined militia, mustered at these points. A requisition was made by the President on each State to raise and equip its quota of 100,000 men, and to hold them in readiness to march at a moment's warning. This call was by no means obeyed with enthusiasm. Some of the Governors denied

<sup>1</sup> *Russia*.—Napoleon invaded Russia with an army of 450,000 men, in July 1812. He reached Moscow on September 14. On the 15th the city was set fire to by order of the Russian Government. Napoleon evacuated it in October, and commenced his disastrous return march over snow-covered plains, constantly harassed by the Russians, who hung on his rear. It was December before the shattered remains of his splendid army reached the Niemen. The French loss is estimated at 350,000 men.

the power of the President to compel the militia to do service out of their own State. The invaders counted on making an easy conquest of Canada. They imagined that when they entered the country, crowds of disaffected people would flock to their standard. They much mistook the spirit of the great body of the Lower Canadians, who bore for the Americans no love. A few of the militia of the district of Montreal showed themselves refractory when called on to march from their parishes; but they were soon brought to a better state of mind. When war became a certainty, **the most loyal and patriotic spirit** was displayed. Political strife was for the time stilled. The Legislature voted all they had—nay, even more than they actually possessed—for the defence of the country, and placed the combined militia at the disposal of the Governor-General.

5. The Canadians were called upon to make great exertions and great sacrifices. In all the country from Quebec to York, and along the frontiers of the Niagara and the Detroit, there were only 4,500 regular British troops. Wellington was then contending in the peninsula of Spain with French armies led by Napoleon's marshals. That war engrossed the chief attention of the British nation, and drained the Royal Army. The defence of Canada was thrown in a great measure on her own sons,—on the Loyalists of Upper Canada, the volunteers of York, the men of Glengarry, the fencibles of Kingston, Prescott, Dundas,—on the militia of Montreal and Quebec,—on the gallant chasseurs and voltigeurs of the Lower St. Lawrence. The domiciled Indians—the Mohawks under Brant, their chief, the warriors of the remnants of the "Six Nations," the Wyandots, Hurons, and Delawares—stood by their white brothers. The tribes north and south-west of Lake Erie were in a state of warlike excitement, and in a temper that made them eager allies of the British. Before the steady onward march of civilization they were being driven from the great valley of the Ohio, west, to the setting sun. The year before (1811), roused by the nervous eloquence of the famous Shawnee chief, **Tecumseh**, and of his brother "the Prophet," they had risen and attacked the settlers of Michigan, Indiana, Kentucky, and Illinois, in the vain hope of recovering their lost hunting-grounds. The alliance with the Indians was a sad necessity. They could not be restrained from committing acts

of ferocious cruelty, of which their white allies were condemned to bear the odium. They could not remain still when war was raging around, and their friendship was better than their enmity.

2 6. The war was opened in the west. To secure the fur-trade, and to create a favourable impression among the Indians, an attack was made on **Fort Michillimackinac**<sup>1</sup> by a party of British regulars, Canadian voltigeurs and savages, under Captain Roberts. In the meantime General Hull, Governor of the Michigan territory, crossed over from Detroit to Sandwich, with 2,500 troops, in the vague hope of conquering Canada at a stroke. He caused a bombastic proclamation to the inhabitants of Canada to be distributed, wherein he promised them the blessings of civil and religious liberty, and protection of their property. He told them that his force "would look down all opposition," and that it was only the van-guard of a greater army. He threatened a war of extermination if one Indian tomahawk were raised to resist him. His words were more decisive than his actions. His invincible force ravaged the country as far as the Moravian village on the River Thames; but when they advanced upon Amherstburg they were checked at the River Canard. He grew uneasy when he heard of the capture of Michillimackinac and the threatened descent of the victors on his rear. He had soon a new enemy on his front. On the first news of the invasion, General Brock prorogued the Legislature at York, and with all the available troops at his command, hastened by way of the Niagara and Lake Erie to relieve Amherstburg. He arrived there on the 12th of August. Quite discouraged now, Hull withdrew his whole force across the river to **Detroit**, followed by the gallant Brock with 1,300 men, of whom 600 were Indians. Perceiving that the British were making preparations to carry his position by assault, the American General surrendered himself<sup>2</sup> and his force. Two

<sup>1</sup> *Michillimackinac*.—Called by the Americans Mackinac (*Mak-in-aw*). It stood between Lakes Huron and Michigan. See *Map*, p. 223.

<sup>2</sup> *Surrendered himself*.—General Hull was subsequently exchanged for thirty British prisoners, and was tried by

court-martial for treason and cowardice. He was acquitted of treason, but convicted of cowardice. He was sentenced to be shot, but was pardoned by the President because of the faithful services he had rendered during the Revolutionary War.

thousand three hundred prisoners were sent off to Montreal ; thirty-two brass cannons and a quantity of stores fell into the hands of the British, who, by the capture of Detroit, held **possession of the Michigan territory.**

7. Soon after the declaration of war, Sir George Prevost received despatches informing him that the British Government had rescinded their Orders in Council that bore so heavily on American commerce. An opportunity, he thought, now offered itself to open negotiations for peace. Early in August he proposed an armistice, to which General Dearborn, commanding the U.S. "army of the north" at Plattsburg, assented. The American Government refused to enter on negotiations of peace on any terms except the abandonment by the British of the right of search. The operations of the war were resumed in September.

8. The Americans had an army, under General van Rensselaer, on the Niagara frontier—between Fort Niagara and Buffalo—confronting a British force much inferior in number, quartered on the line from Fort George to Fort Erie. Before dawn on the morning of the 13th of September 1,200 men, under General Wadsworth, crossed over from Lewiston on the American side. One division landed above **Queenston**; another, in face of artillery fire, made good their footing on the shore close to it. The British force, too weak to make effective resistance, was driven back, and the Americans gained possession of the Heights. **General**



NIAGARA FRONTIER.

**Brock**, at Fort George, seven miles off, heard the sound of cannon ; leaving orders to General Sheaffe to follow him with

reinforcements, in all haste, he hurried, in the gray of the morning, down to the scene of action. Rallying the 49th Regiment and the militia for a desperate struggle, he pressed forward with the Grenadiers to retake the important position which the enemy had gained. While cheering on the brave York volunteers he fell **mortally wounded** in the breast. By his fall the attack on the Heights was stayed. The troops retreated, mourning the loss of their beloved General.

9. The frontier was now alive with men upon the march. General Sheaffe arrived with 300 men of the 41st Regiment and two companies of militia. He was joined by the garrison from Fort Chippewa, and, counting red-skins with red-coats, he had 800 men. Again the Heights were attacked. The nimble Indians rushed forward with their fierce war-whoop, but were driven back. With steady tramp and loud hurrah the British soldiers charged up. For a brief time the Americans made a spirited resistance, during which they suffered much. Then they broke their ranks; many fled, but escape from the hands of the murderous savages was difficult. General Wadsworth delivered up his sword to General Sheaffe on the field of battle; 900 men laid down their arms and surrendered themselves prisoners. **The Battle of Queenston** is more memorable for its disaster than for its victory. The death of the gallant Brock distinguishes it from contests as bloody and decisive. A cenotaph covers the spot where fell the hero whom Canada has delighted to honour. A column marks the Heights as historic ground.

5  
6  
10. All the efforts of the Americans ended in defeat. On the 10th of November Commodore Chauncey sailed with five armed vessels from Sackett's Harbour to attack Kingston and burn the ship the *Royal George*. He was so warmly met, that after wasting much powder and ball he was compelled to haul off. A few days afterwards the "army of the north," 10,000 strong, moved from Plattsburg to Champlain, a village six miles from the boundary line. Sir George Prevost made a call upon the militia, and it was obeyed **with the utmost alacrity**. By the 19th a force of regulars, Canadian voltigeurs and voyageurs, and Indians, had crossed the St. Lawrence from Montreal, and were posted at La Prairie, eager to repel the invasion. Among

the American militia there was no enthusiasm. Many of them stood by their State rights, and insisted that by the Constitution neither President nor General had authority to order them to march across the frontier. General Dearborn made a feeble advance. The invasion ended in skirmishings with the Canadian pickets, and then a hasty retreat over the line to Plattsburg, Burlington, and Albany, where the army went into winter quarters. Another demonstration ended even more disgracefully. Brigadier-General Smyth had succeeded Van Rensselaer in command of the "army of the centre," on the Niagara frontier. A force of 4,500 soldiers and New York militia assembled at his call. In a high-flown address he announced that in a few days he would plant the standard of America in Canada; and he gave them for a rallying cry, to nerve them for the glorious and difficult enterprise, "**The cannon taken at Detroit, or Death.**" When the decisive hour came only 1,500 were found willing to venture across the river, and there was not a sufficient number of boats to convey even that remnant of the force. On the 18th of November 430 men crossed over to the upper end of Grand Island, and dispersed and captured a few British soldiers. But when next morning a larger party in a division of eighteen boats approached the Canadian shore, they were confronted by the united garrisons of Forts Erie and Chippewa, which poured a destructive fire upon them; whereon they turned and fled precipitately. A mutiny broke out in the American camp. The exasperated soldiers blamed their General for the failure of the enterprise. To save his life he fled.

11. While the Americans met with nothing but disaster in their attempts to invade Canada, they gained some **startling successes at sea**. Their frigates the *Constitution* and the *United States* met in single combat and shattered and captured the British *Guerriere* and *Macedonian*. They had completely the advantage of their opponents in the size of their ships, the number and weight of their cannon, and the force of their crews. These glorious victories fired the pride of the nation. Honours were showered on the fortunate commanders. The British people were enraged at unaccustomed defeat on their native element.

12. **Preparations** for the next campaign were prosecuted

with vigour by the Americans. Hitherto the British had held command of the great Lakes Ontario and Erie by their larger squadrons. The Americans determined to obtain a naval superiority. In their ports at Sackett's Harbour, Ogdensburg, Oswego, Black Rock, Buffalo, and Sandusky, strong vessels were rapidly run up, fit for rough service. The British also built vessels, but more slowly. They thought that every part of them ought to be thoroughly finished; and the Government, seemingly of opinion that there were neither craftsmen nor woods in Canada, sent out artisans and material.

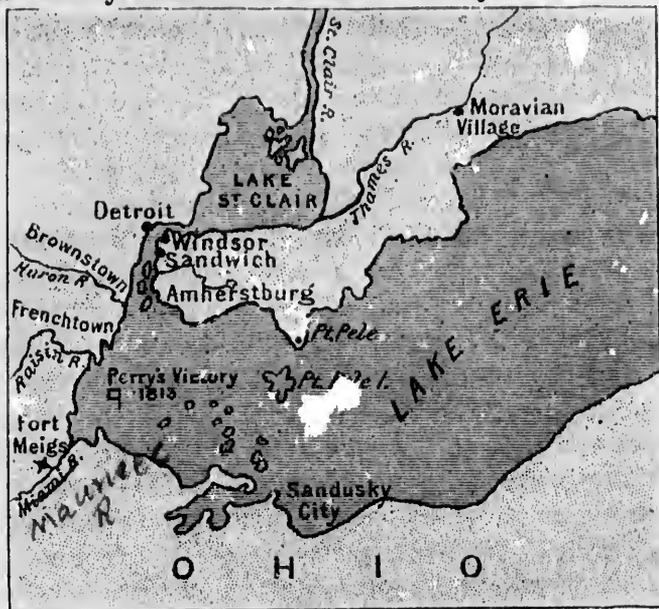
13. Winter did not stay the warfare. Marauding parties from Ogdensburg crossed the frozen river and ravaged the settlements that were distant from any military post.

**1813** One of the first operations of the new campaign was to A.D. take revenge for these predatory excursions. Major

M'Donnel of the Glengarry Fencibles, early on the morning of the 21st February, crossed the St. Lawrence with 480 men to attack the position at **Ogdensburg**. Heavy snow impeded their march. They had to charge a height defended by the fire of a fort; but, in spite of all difficulties, they stormed the place, captured eleven guns and quantities of stores, burned barracks, gunboats, and schooners.

14. In the west the campaign opened early. The people of Michigan and Ohio grew impatient at the occupation of their country by the British, and the consequent interruption to their trade. They called on General Harrison to recapture Detroit, which was held by **Colonel Proctor**. On the 19th of January General Winchester, with over 1,000 men, crossed from Sandusky and advanced to Frenchtown, twenty-six miles from Detroit, and drove out its defenders, who fell back on Brownstown. There a motley force of British regulars, sailors, marines, Newfoundland fencibles, Essex militia, and 600 Wyandots and other Indians, assembled, by order of Colonel Proctor. Under cover of night they advanced on Frenchtown, and at break of day of the 22nd surprised the Americans. Posted in houses and in garden enclosures, they defended themselves bravely for a time, and many fell on both sides. On Proctor intimating that he would be unable to restrain his savage allies if they resisted longer, **five hundred surren-**

dered at discretion. Many, in attempting to escape, were captured by the Indians and massacred. General Winchester was taken prisoner by Roundhead, a Wyandot chief. Deeds of great cruelty stained this decisive victory. President Madi-



LAKE ERIE.

son, in his address to Congress in March, held the British guilty of them, as the Indians, who had perpetrated them, were enlisted in their service. The war threatened to assume a very savage character. Exasperating questions arose that inflamed the passions of the combatants. By British law, subjects of the Crown in removing to a foreign country did not free themselves from their allegiance. The United States Government held that persons freely emigrating from the British Isles to America owed allegiance to the country whose protection they enjoyed. Among the prisoners taken at Queenston there were twenty-three whom General Sheaffe claimed as **British subjects**, and deserters from the Royal Army. They were sent home to England ironed, to stand their trial as traitors. The United States Government claimed the twenty-three as free immigrants, who had taken up arms, as duty obliged them, at the call of their adopted country. By its order, General

Dearborn placed as many British soldiers in prison as hostages, to suffer death, man for man, should all or any of the twenty-three be executed. This threat only called forth a counter threat. In the course of the year Sir George Prevost received orders to execute two Americans for every one of those hostages who might be shot or hanged. The American General then doubled the number of hostages ; whereon Sir George added forty-six American officers to the twenty-three whom he already held. Happily this barbarous course of retaliation was not carried out : the prisoners in the end were exchanged.

15. When the spring of 1813 opened, the harbours from New York to Savannah, and the mouth of the Mississippi, were blockaded by British ships. British privateers preyed on the merchantmen of the enemy. Squadrons appeared on Lake Ontario ; reinforcements arrived in Quebec. The chief efforts of the Americans were directed against Canada. Nearly all the regular troops were withdrawn from the **Lower Provinces**. A loyal and liberal spirit was displayed by their people. Their coasts were open to the attack of American and French cruisers ; but they sympathized with their sister, Canada, in her greater peril. Large sums were voted for war purposes ; seamen volunteered to serve on the lakes, and were despatched to the scene of action at the public expense. At the commencement of the war, **the King's Regiment of New Brunswick**, first raised from among the Loyalist veterans who in 1784 settled in York county, was numbered with the line of the Royal Army as the 104th. The Legislature passed a complimentary resolution to the officers and privates on the occasion, and presented the regiment with a silver trumpet. It was called on to do active service in Canada. A portion of it was conveyed to Quebec by sea, but several companies made their way overland. The march, on snow-shoes, through a wilderness country, in intense cold, tested the endurance of the soldiers, whose gallantry was afterwards displayed in several actions. †

16. At the commencement of the campaign the Americans had proposed to destroy York and Kingston, make themselves masters of the forts on the Niagara frontier, retake Detroit, gain command of Lake Erie and the possession of the western district. They then proposed to attack Montreal by way of

Lake Champlain and the St. Lawrence. Montreal taken, the hold of Great Britain on Canada would be confined to Quebec.

17. **The town of York** was, from its situation, difficult to defend. It was held by General Sir Roger Sheaffe, administrator of the government, and a garrison of 700 men. On the evening of the 26th April, an American squadron appeared in sight of it. Early next morning sixteen ships were ranged on the western side of the harbour. Eight hundred men in boats made a dash to the shore, drove from the woods a small British force which resisted their landing, and stormed the batteries. They were aided by the fire from the ships. A magazine exploded, killing their commander and 100 men; but reinforcements poured upon the shore. General Sheaffe, after destroying a ship upon the stocks and naval stores, retired with his troops upon the town, and then retreated towards Kingston, leaving the colonel of militia to **surrender** the place to General Dearborn. A large quantity of military stores and provisions fell into his hands. He did not attempt to hold York, but sailed to the head of Lake Ontario, and landed above Fort Niagara with 1,300 men. Commodore Chauncey returned to Sackett's Harbour. Leaving the sick and wounded there, and taking reinforcements on board, he sailed to rejoin Dearborn. Colonel Vincent held Fort George, opposite the American Fort Niagara, with over 1,000 British troops. On the 25th of May the squadron under Chauncey, carrying a force of 5,000 men, manœuvred on the lake within his view. The vessels took position in form of a crescent, which enabled the gunners to pour a destructive cross fire on the fort. On the 27th **the grand assault** was made. A large body of riflemen, under Colonel Winfield Scott, was driven back by the British; but 2,000 more of the enemy landed on the beach under cover of a storm of shot and shell that swept the batteries. The fort being untenable, Vincent caused the works to be dismantled and the cannons to be spiked. He withdrew to Queenston. Calling the garrisons from Forts Chippewa and Erie, he retreated to Burlington Heights, at the head of Lake Ontario, leaving the Americans in possession of the **Niagara frontier**, for which they had so vainly fought the year before.

4 2

7

8  
18. The day after the capture of Fort George, Sir George Prevost sailed from Kingston with a flotilla commanded by Sir James Yeo, to surprise and capture the post at **Sackett's Harbour**.<sup>1</sup> The shores were covered with thick woods, and a fort and block-house, armed with heavy ordnance, protected the dock-yard and store-houses. An island lay not far from the mainland, with which it was connected by a narrow causeway. On a dark and rainy night 1,000 men in boats in compact order assembled near the commodore's vessel, and opposite the point where they intended to land. But they drifted down with the strong current. At break of day the Americans were swarming in the woods with their rifles, before they were able to regain their position. Owing to adverse winds, the large vessels of the fleet, and the sloop carrying their artillery, were not within distance to aid them. The boats were pulled to the island; the men of the 100th and 104th, of the King's Regiment, of the Royal Scots and the Glengarries landed, and charged across, ankle-deep in water, clearing the causeway. At the point of the bayonet they drove the Americans through the woods, down the height, and compelled them to take refuge in their fort. The British retired out of reach of its fire to await the arrival of their artillery. Sir George Prevost, believing that no further advantage could be gained, ordered a **retreat**. Enraged and mortified, they retired to their boats. Their loss, in killed, wounded, and missing, amounted to 206, officers and men. Sir George was much blamed: confidence in him as a general was shaken.

19. The Americans seemed to be on the point of gaining **possession of Upper Canada**. Since the opening of the campaign success had attended them. They had plundered York. For too hastily evacuating that capital General Sheaffe had been censured and superseded by Major-General de Rottenburg. From want of determination, Sir George Prevost had converted a probable triumph at Sackett's Harbour into a depressing defeat. Colonel Vincent had been forced to retreat from Fort George. In the beginning of June, a body of 3,500 Americans, with cavalry and artillery, advanced from their

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sackett's Harbour*.—See *Map*, p. 297.

camp at Forty Mile Creek above Fort George, on the lake shore, under Brigadier-Generals Chandler and Winder, to attack him at Burlington Heights.<sup>1</sup> They rested at **Stony Creek**, some seven miles off. At midnight, 704 British soldiers, commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel John Harvey, with fixed bayonets, burst suddenly upon their camp. A fierce and confused combat ensued. The Americans were driven out, and fled to the surrounding heights. Their two generals, and 100 officers and men, fell into the hands of the British, who retired to Burlington before break of day. The Americans returned to their camp, and, after destroying a quantity of baggage, retreated to Forty Mile Creek, where they were joined by a body of 2,000 men. Sir James Yeo and his squadron appeared at the mouth of the creek, and threw shot and shell among them. They thereon fled precipitately to Fort George, leaving behind a great part of their camp equipage, and quantities of stores and provisions.

20. Shortly afterwards the Americans met with **another check**. Lieutenant-Colonel Boerstler, with 570 men, advanced from Queenston to disperse a small body of British at Beaver Dams. As he was passing through a wood he was attacked by Indians led by an English officer. Withdrawing as speedily as possible from this ambushade, he took up a position on a road crossing a mountain. He sent for reinforcements; and as he rested there, he was descried by Lieutenant Fitzgibbons, who was marching in advance of the British with a few men of the 49th Regiment. By a skilful disposition of his small force, he caused Boerstler to believe himself surrounded; and, on receiving a summons, he surrendered himself and his whole party, with their cannon and colours, on the 24th of June. After this "**unaccountable occurrence**," General Dearborn found himself beleaguered in Fort George. Colonel Vincent extended his line from Burlington Heights to Queenston, and harassed him by cutting off his supplies.

21. During summer the combatants inflicted much loss on each other without decisive effect. From Fort Erie, on the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Burlington Heights*.—See *Map*, p. 285.

- 12 Niagara frontier, the British crossed to Black Rock on July 11th, and burned barracks and navy yard ; but their leader, Colonel Bishop, was mortally wounded. To counterbalance this loss,
- 13 the Americans again plundered York and burned the military buildings. In a running fight on Lake Ontario, Sir James
- 14 Yeo captured two of Commodore Chauncey's armed schooners. On Lake Champlain, Major Taylor, commanding at Isle aux
- 15 Noix, captured the American gunboats *Eagle* and *Growler*.
- 16 Lieutenant-Colonel Murray, advancing to Plattsburg, burned the barracks, and destroyed the military stores. About the middle of August, Sir George Prevost transferred his headquarters from Kingston to St. Davids. He made a reconnaissance of the enemy's position at Fort George, and found the place full of men and bristling with cannon. Not being able to provoke the Americans to come out and fight him on the open field, he retired unmolested.

6 22. In the west, during all this time, Colonel Proctor had been active. His ability to maintain a hold on the Michigan territory and on the western frontier of Upper Canada, depended on his crushing the forces that were gathering to attack him. The Americans intrenched themselves at **Fort Meigs**,<sup>1</sup> at the foot of the rapids of the ~~Miami~~ <sup>Proctor's</sup> River, which empties itself into Lake Erie at its south-western extremity. Proctor, with a force of 2,100 men, of whom the greater part were Indians, led by **Tecumseh**, laid siege to this fort on the 1st May ; but his cannon could make no impression on its works. On the 4th, 1,200 volunteers of Kentucky and Ohio, under General Clay, descended the Miami, and, joining the garrison, made a sudden attack on Proctor's batteries early next morning. There was a fierce contest. In the end the Americans were driven back with a total loss of 1,200. But Proctor was forced to abandon the thought of further operations. A number of his militia went home ; his Indians deserted him ; Tecumseh, with twenty warriors, alone remained. He therefore returned to Sandwich, moralizing on his misfortune in being dependent on such fickle allies. But fickle as were the Indians, he could have done little without their friendship. In their way they were

<sup>1</sup> *Fort Meigs*. — See *Map*, p. 289.

faithful, and resisted the enticements of the Americans to withdraw them from their British alliance. They certainly misled him sometimes. Yielding to their solicitation, he attacked the **Fort of Sandusky**; but when the word was given to assault it, the warriors, erst so clamorous, kept warily out of the way of its fire, and allowed the red-coats to take it if they could. They could not, and Proctor returned discomfited. 17

23. A large American army was now assembled in Michigan, under General Harrison, who was impatiently waiting to hear from the naval commander on Lake Erie that its waters were clear of British ships of war. Nine vessels lay in Putin Bay, at its western extremity. When, on the 10th of September, their commodore, Perry, descried a British squadron of six sail approaching, he weighed anchor, and hoisted **the signal of battle**. The contest was hot and decisive. Perry's vessel, the *Lawrence*, was disabled at the outset. In the midst of the firing he was rowed in an open boat to another of his ships. The *Detroit*, the English commander Barclay's flag-ship, was made a complete wreck. The captain of its consort, the *Queen Charlotte*, was killed; and the vessel becoming unmanageable, the crew struck their colours. Perry, bringing his whole fleet into action, passed between the British ships, and poured in a heavy, close fire. Barclay was severely wounded; most of his officers were killed or struck down. He could do nothing but surrender. Perry sent word to Harrison, "**We have met the enemy, and they are ours.**" 18

24. The Americans by this decisive victory regained all they had lost the previous year by the defeat of Hull. The position of the British was now critical, cut off from all succour by way of Lake Erie. General Harrison, having taken Malden, was advancing towards Sandwich. Not until the 24th of September did Major-General Proctor abandon Detroit and Amherstburg, after having burned the principal buildings and dismantled the fortifications. With 450 men, and Tecumseh and his Indians, he retreated up the River Thames to Moravia village, followed by his enemy in overpowering force. There, on the 15th of October, he made a desperate stand. His ranks were broken by a fierce charge of mounted Kentucky riflemen; those who were not killed, wounded, or 19

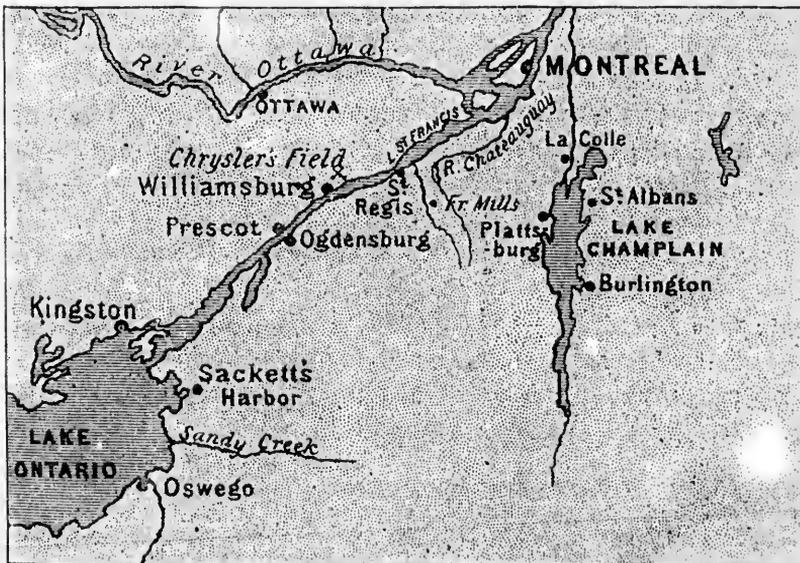
captured, dispersed. Two hundred joined Proctor at Ancaster on the Grand River, and thence made their way to Burlington Heights. **Tecumseh was slain.** The American officers gathered around and viewed with interest his majestic corpse. Living, the chief had done them all the harm he could; but now that he was dead, they remembered that though fierce in battle he was humane to his prisoners. General Harrison, on the 17th of October, assumed the government of the upper district of Upper Canada.

25. The aspect of affairs was gloomy enough now for the Canadians. The Americans had two armies;—one on the Niagara frontier, under General Wilkinson, who was now chief in command; another at Plattsburg, under General Hampton—together numbering 16,000 men, exclusive of 10,000 militia. Their naval squadron, under Commodore Chauncey, sailed freely on Lake Ontario, unhindered by Sir James Yeo. Owing to the large number of American troops in the west, and the increase of the force in Fort George, the British soldiers were withdrawn from the extensive line they had occupied, and concentrated in the camp at Burlington Heights. Early in October, General Wilkinson was instructed by the War Minister at Washington to cooperate with General Hampton in an attack on **Montreal.** There were very few British troops in Lower Canada. The honour of successfully defending their frontiers was to be earned by the Canadians themselves. General Sheaffe, who commanded there, had 3,000 embodied militia under him; Sir George Prevost made a call for 5,000 of the sedentary class. Most cheerfully and gallantly did they obey the call. Sir George said that their zeal and alacrity were beyond all praise.

20 26. General Hampton crossed the boundary line on the 21st with 7,000 infantry, 200 cavalry, and 10 field-pieces. This force advanced along both banks of the **Chateauguay.** Hampton led the division that took the northern route. The country was hilly and covered with woods. His march was stayed by a small body of 300 Canadian voltigeurs and fencibles under Colonel de Salaberry—excellent marksmen all. Throwing themselves behind a breast-work of prostrate trees, they bade defiance to assault. The Americans, who were chiefly raw soldiers, could not be persuaded to charge vigorously. They fired from the

woods, and, in their confusion, into each other, and inflicted much greater loss on themselves than on the Canadians, of whom two were killed and sixteen wounded. The division that advanced by the southern bank of the river was met by a small party of militia and Chateauguay chasseurs, under Captains Daly and Bruyere, and was forced to retreat. Quite crest-fallen, General Hampton led his beaten army into their own country and to their old camp at Plattsburg.

27. If General Wilkinson had followed the plan of the joint attack upon Montreal, he would have commenced his movement down the St. Lawrence on the same day that Hampton crossed the boundary. But he had difficulty in collecting his forces, and a continuance of tempestuous weather retarded his preparations. Not until the beginning of November did his 10,000 soldiers leave the rendezvous, Grenadier Island, in bateaux and small river-craft. In passing Prescott on a clear moonlight night, they sustained much damage from a heavy cannonade from the British fort. In their wake followed Lieutenant-



SACKETT'S HARBOUR AND CHRYSLER'S FARM.

Colonel Morrison, from Kingston, with 800 British infantry and voltigeurs, and a division of gun-boats. From the head of the Long Sault this corps of observation followed the Ameri-

cans on shore. Arrived off Williamsburg, General Wilkinson ordered Brigadier-General Eoyd to **brush away the annoyance**. With 3,500 infantry, and a regiment of cavalry and artillery, that officer encountered the British force drawn up in line of battle on a field on **Chrysler's Farm**, the river on its right, the woods upon its left. It was on the afternoon of the 12th of November. In vain the Americans charged to break the ranks of the red-coats. When the British advanced with firm front and steady fire, the Americans fell back. Two hours after the commencement of the fight they retreated precipitately to their boats, and retired to their own side of the St. Lawrence. They lost 339 of their best soldiers—double the number of the killed and wounded on the British side. When he arrived at Lake St. Francis, General Wilkinson heard with dismay that Hampton and his army were not at St. Regis. They had agreed to meet there, and unite their forces for the attack upon Montreal. The grand plan had been completely disarranged. Wilkinson withdrew with his troops to French Mills on Salmon River, and there rested during winter.

28. **Sir George Drummond** assumed command in Upper Canada in December. He despatched a force under Colonel Murray to take Fort George. General M'Clure hastily abandoned it, and crossed the river to Fort Niagara. He left the town of **Newark** in flames, exposing to the bitter winter cold the young and the tender, the aged and the frail. The barbarity of this act excited in Canada the deepest indignation. The American Government took pains to disavow it. It was very promptly avenged. The British carried Fort Niagara by assault, laid waste the frontier as far as to Buffalo, and burned that town. So in tears and in misery, in hatred, in blood, and in flames, ended the long campaign of 1813.

QUESTIONS.—1. What different feelings towards Britain prevailed in the United States? What was the avowed cause of quarrel? What were the real motives of the dominant party?

2. What incident provoked great indignation against Britain? Explain fully the circumstances.

3. When was war declared? How was the news received in Boston? On

what campaign did Napoleon then enter?

4. What was the American plan of operations? How was the President's call for levies obeyed? What spirit was displayed by the Canadians?

5. On whom was the defence of Canada mainly thrown? Why? What part did the Indians take in the war?

6. Where and how did the war be-

gin? Describe General Hull's attempt on Amherstburg, and its result.

7. What opportunity occurred for opening negotiations for peace? What prevented their success?

8. On what frontier were operations resumed in September? What led General Brock to Queenston? When did his troops retreat?

9. Who renewed the attack on the Heights of Queenston? With what result? What is the most noteworthy thing about the Battle of Queenston?

10. What was the result of Chauncey's attack on Kingston? How did the invasion by the "army of the north" end? What enterprise did Brigadier-General Smyth undertake? What success had he?

11. Where had the Americans some startling successes?

12. What special preparations did the Americans make for the next campaign? In what did the British ship-building differ from that of the Americans?

13. What led to M'Donnel's attack on Ogdensburg? With what success was it attended?

14. What was the object of the American campaign in the west? Narrate its chief incidents. What dispute arose regarding prisoners?

15. Where were the chief efforts of the Americans directed? How did the Lower Provinces behave towards Canada? How was the King's Regiment of New Brunswick distinguished?

16. What different exploits had the Americans proposed to themselves at the commencement of the campaign?

17. Describe the taking of York. What place did Dearborn and Chauncey next attack? Where did Vincent go when he abandoned Fort George?

18. Who commanded in the descent on Sackett's Harbour? Describe it. For what was Prevost blamed?

19. What steps were taken to drive Vincent from Burlington Heights? How was the attempt frustrated?

20. What other check did the Americans meet with soon afterwards? In what position did Dearborn then find himself?

21. Mention some of the exploits which occupied the summer? What movement did General Prevost make in August?

22. Where had the Americans entrenched themselves in the west? Who besieged them there? When did a fierce contest take place? How did it end?

23. Describe Perry's engagement on Lake Erie. How did he report his victory to Harrison?

24. Why had Proctor to abandon Detroit? Where did he make a stand against his pursuers? Who was among the slain? What did Harrison assume in consequence of his victory?

25. Where were the armies of Generals Wilkinson and Hampton posted? In what attack were they ordered to cooperate? On whom was the duty of defending Lower Canada thrown?

26. How was Hampton's advance checked? Where did he then lead his troops?

27. How did Wilkinson fail to follow the plan of joint action? Where did part of his force encounter the British? What was the result? Where did Wilkinson then go?

28. When did the British recover Fort George? Of what barbarity was General M'Clure guilty? How was it avenged?

## CHAPTER XXX.

## WAR ENDED

1814-1815 A.D.

Mediation of the Czar.	Battle of Lundy's Lane.
Impeachment of the Lower Canada Judges.	Halifax.
Position of the combatants.	The "Chesapeake" and the "Shannon."
U.S. General Brown crosses the Niagara.	Washington burned.
General Riall retreats.	Sir George Prevost at Plattsburg.
	Fort Erie.
	Close of the War.

1. THERE was no prospect of peace yet. Early in 1814 the Emperor of Russia, as the friend of both the nations at war, offered himself as a mediator. The British Government declined his proposal: the President accepted it; but owing to the refusal of the other party, nothing was done. The seeming inclination of the American Government to terminate the conflict did not abate their exertions to carry it on with success.

2. In Canada the people could look forward to nothing but a continuation of harassing attacks. The experience gained during the war had taught them that they might safely trust in the protection of Heaven, if they resolutely acted in their own defence. The spirit of the mass of the population was excellent. The Lower Canadians had vindicated their loyalty, and proved their military spirit, against the aspersions of those who denied the one and doubted the other.

3. **Political strife** broke out during the lull of military operations. When the Legislature of Lower Canada **1814** met at Quebec in January, all the branches of it were **A.D.** united in enthusiasm over the victories at Chateauguay and Chrysler's Farm. The sums voted to defray the expenses of the war were passed unanimously. But questions arose that set the members at variance. The harsh acts committed during the "reign of terror" were not forgotten. Old Sir James Craig was in his grave, but those who had advised him were within reach of the members of the Assembly. They sought

to make **Chief-Justice Sewell** of Quebec responsible for the abrupt dissolutions, the arbitrary imprisonment of the members, and for the seizure of the *Canadien* newspaper. He was charged with having been privy to the secret mission of the notorious Captain Henry, and with having instituted rules of practice in his court without the authority of the Legislature. Along with him was also impeached **Judge Monk** of Montreal, who was accused of sundry malversations. The Assembly grew angry with Sir George Prevost when he refused to suspend them from office until the charges preferred against them were proved. Possessing the strong sympathy of the members of the Councils, the Judges were safe from the resentment of the Assembly. Chief-Justice Sewell went to England. He found favour at Court, and was well received at the Colonial Office, of which Earl Bathurst was then head. None of his accusers appeared to confront him. While in London, he submitted a scheme for **the Confederation of the British North American Colonies**. The project found much favour with the Duke of Kent, who took a great interest in colonial affairs; but the proposal was premature. Half a century of political strife had to pass over the colonies before they were ripe for the scheme.

4. The campaigns of the two preceding years had laid waste large portions of Canadian territory, and inflicted deep injury on the people. Many lives had been lost, and the bitterest feelings had been engendered, but no decisive advantage had been gained by either side. The Americans had signally failed to conquer Canada. They, certainly, held possession of the western part of the western peninsula of Upper Canada; they had not a few sympathisers among the people of the district; and their raw militia were becoming inured to warfare: so much they had in their favour. Taxation, however, was being greatly and rapidly increased, and the dissatisfaction of the people of the Eastern States with the unjust and unnecessary war was growing more intense. They feared that it would press more hardly upon them than it had yet done. The Canadians, on the other hand, were elated at having twice beaten back invasion. In two harassing campaigns they had proved their devotion to their mother country. The battles that had been fought on their soil and on their waters had grown out of a quarrel which they

had done nothing to excite, and which they had freely expended their blood and their treasure in maintaining.

2. 5. For the first six months of the year no event of great moment took place. On the 11th of February the Americans hurriedly **broke up their encampment** at French Mills on Salmon River: one body of them, under General Brown, retreated to Sackett's Harbour; another, under General Wilkinson, retired to Plattsburg and Burlington, closely followed by Canadian skirmishers. Towards the end of March, Wilkinson made a feint as if he intended to renew his attack on Montreal. On the 30th his division again crossed the Lower Canadian frontier, and advanced from Odell-town to Burtonville and La Colle Mill. The latter strong position was held by Major Hancock with five hundred men and two guns. The attack was commenced early in the morning. Wilkinson made a show of assaulting it with a force of three thousand, and a battery of three field-pieces. But no determination was shown by the General; no resolute rush was made by his soldiers to carry the position. Discomfited, they retreated in the evening across the border, having suffered severe loss. This affair destroyed Wilkinson's military reputation. He was superseded by General Izzard.

3. 6. Early in May a combined military and naval attack, under General Drummond, was made on **Oswego**. There the Americans built and equipped war-vessels to do duty on Lake Ontario. They had just completed a great sixty-four-gun-ship. The position was strong: it was defended by a well-garrisoned fort on the brow of a hill. But within half an hour from the landing of the British **the fort was taken**, its defenders were slain, wounded, captured, routed; the barracks, the store-houses, and the great ship were in flames. In war, disaster quickly follows on success. On the morning of the last day of May, Captain Popham, with a thousand sailors and marines, ascended Sandy Creek, with the view of intercepting a party of the enemy, which was carrying a quantity of naval stores from Oswego to Sackett's Harbour. They fell into an ambush, and were cut in pieces.

4. 7. From the beginning of summer greater spirit was thrown into the contest. Hopes were raised in Canada that Great

Britain would do in America something worthy of her power. The turn of events in Europe had relieved her from the great strain on her military resources. Napoleon, the disturber of the world's peace, was for the time chained in the little isle of Elba. In June several British regiments arrived in Quebec; and with them commands came to Sir George Prevost **to take the offensive**, and prosecute the war vigorously. The strength of the British naval squadrons in American waters was increased. The Imperial Government proclaimed that the ports from New York to the New Brunswick frontier, as well as those to the south, were closed against neutral vessels. The President declared that the blockade of two thousand miles of coast, from Maine to Georgia, was ineffectual, and called on foreign nations to disregard it.

8. General Drummond, in Upper Canada, had urgent need of reinforcements. The enemy was making preparations for invasion. Among a portion of the people dissatisfaction had shown itself, and had been sternly crushed. Eight persons had been executed in Burlington, in the Niagara district, for high treason. The evil spirit might spread more generally throughout the Province should the invaders gain a decided advantage.

9. On the 3rd of July, six thousand men, under General Brown crossed the Niagara from Black Rock. Fort Erie with its small garrison was captured. As they advanced towards Fort Chippewa, they were met by **Major-General Riall** and a body of fifteen hundred British regulars, and three hundred militia and Indians. The Americans took position of battle. Their right, strongly supported by artillery, rested among the orchards and buildings close on the Niagara River, their left on the woods. General Riall commenced the battle at four o'clock in the afternoon of the 5th. He threw forward his skirmishers, who drove in the riflemen and Indians in front of the enemy's left. He threatened the right and left of the enemy's position, and pushed on an attack on his centre. The troops, met by a hot and galling fire, were checked. This repulse was followed by a general but orderly retreat on the British line. Riall made a final stand at the Fort at Niagara. General Brown took up a position at Chippewa. They both rested about a fortnight.

7  
10. In the meantime reinforcements of British troops had arrived at Niagara: still Riall's force was much outnumbered. So confident in the quality of his troops as to contemn the odds against him, he pushed his division towards the Falls to engage the enemy. On the 24th of July, General Drummond arrived at Niagara from York. With eight hundred soldiers, gathered from the garrisons of the forts, he advanced to Riall's support. When he reached the road to Beaver Dams, over the summit of the hill at **Lundy's Lane**, he found Riall's division in retreat on Fort George, and the Americans in great force posted well on the hill and in the woods. He at once countermanded the retreat, and formed his order of battle. His guns were placed in the centre. The engagement commenced at six in the evening. The Americans made desperate efforts to capture the guns and gain possession of the road. In the close and confused combat, the opposing cannons were brought muzzle to muzzle. For a brief time the Americans held the road. At nine there occurred a pause in the strife. The night had set in darkly with clouds; but through the rifts the moon shed a fitful gleam on the wild scene. Distinctly was heard the roar of the falling Niagara. While General Brown brought up all his available forces, Colonel Scott of the 103rd joined General Drummond with twelve hundred soldiers of different corps. Still the Americans were almost two to one. With fresh force they renewed their efforts to gain possession of the hill. At midnight they desisted, and fled hastily to their camp at Chippewa. They had lost in all fifteen hundred men. Next day, after throwing their heavy baggage into the Rapids, and destroying the bridge over the Chippewa, they retreated to Fort Erie. The Battle of **Lundy's Lane** was the most fiercely contested of any in the whole war.

11. In Nova Scotia and New Brunswick the excitement and anxiety of the war were felt, but their people escaped its actual horrors. American privateers cruised along their coasts, and kept the merchants in fear for their vessels. In **Halifax** the effect of the war was seen most plainly. Its citizens lived amidst scenes of bustle, misery, and feverish gaiety. Ruin and riches came at a blow. Now they mourned the loss of a merchant or fishing fleet captured by the foe; now they rejoiced to see

American ships brought into their harbour as prizes, and sold at a great profit. While some rejoiced, many mourned. Trade was brisk, money plentiful; many new inhabitants came to the town; new houses were built. Farmers found a ready and profitable market for their produce. The citizens saw much of "the pomp and circumstance" of war. British men-of-war were continually entering and leaving the harbour, and the guns of the citadel bellowed forth their salute. Often the town was illuminated in honour of some "glorious victory;" the strains of military music sounded in the streets, and the hearts of the youth swelled to hear of acts of British daring by sea and by land.

12. But events had happened that gave a check to pride. The people of British America had heard with wonder and alarm of the successive defeats of British frigates by American war-ships. The accumulated disasters had aroused in the hearts of British naval officers a burning desire to wipe out the disgrace.

13. One Sunday morning in June (1813) the people of Halifax saw two frigates sail into the harbour, sails and rigging in the most beautiful order. From the top-mast of one floated the British ensign above the "stars and stripes." All to outward view seemed fair; but in their cabins one captain lay wrapped in his death-shroud, the other raved in the agony of a desperate wound. People visiting the frigates saw a fearful sight—decks clotted with gore. Five days before—on the 1st of June—a pleasure party had sailed out of Boston harbour in the wake of the U.S. frigate "**Chesapeake**," to witness a sea-fight and another triumph; for bold Broke of the British "**Shannon**" had challenged the gallant Lawrence to single combat. In fifteen minutes from the time when the frigates were locked in combat, two hundred and thirty men lay dead or fearfully wounded and mangled on their decks; and the *Chesapeake* was a prize. A week after Lawrence had sailed so confidently forth to fight, British soldiers lined the streets of Halifax, as all that was mortal of the hero was borne to its resting-place with funereal pomp, followed by many who had been his deadly foes.

14. From Halifax, in July 1814, an expedition sailed to Passamaquoddy Bay. Moose Island and the town of Eastport

10

8

were captured, and the inhabitants were obliged to swear allegiance to King George. In August a British fleet under Admiral Cochrane, having on board a land force in command of Major-General Ross, appeared in Chesapeake Bay. **The city of Washington was taken**, and the Capitol and other public buildings were given to the flames; Alexandria was compelled to capitulate; the citizens of Baltimore were thrown into mortal terror. Another expedition, in command of Admiral Griffith and the Governor, Sir John Sherbrooke, sailed from Halifax in September for the coast of Maine. It ascended the Penobscot River; the town of Castine was taken; Bangor was surrendered into their hands. The territory between the Penobscot and the St. Croix (anciently part of Acadie) was proclaimed to be under British rule.

15. Sir George Prevost had received commands in June to **invade the State of New York**. Ever slow and cautious, he did not move his army from its encampment between the Richelieu River and the St. Lawrence and cross the American frontier until September. He had under his command thirteen thousand of the choicest troops, splendidly equipped: many of whom were veterans who had fought under Wellington. As he advanced, the enemy abandoned the villages of Champlain and Chazy and retired to a strong position in front of Plattsburg, on the elevated ridge of land on the southern bank of the Saranac, which was held by General M'Comb. A flotilla of armed brigs and schooners and gun-boats, under Commodore M'Donough, was anchored in the Bay of Plattsburg, and gave it further protection. Sir George Prevost sent urgent orders to **Captain Downie**, who commanded the naval squadron in Lake Champlain, to attack it, while his soldiers stormed the intrenchments on the Saranac. The gallant Downie did his duty, but his ship was disabled, and he himself was mortally wounded at the outset of the engagement. His fate decided that of his squadron: all the larger vessels struck their colours, the gun-boats made their escape. On this disaster, Sir George caused all land operations to cease, and retreated in haste, leaving many sick and wounded and much valuable war material in the hands of the enemy. He lost two hundred and sixty in killed and wounded, and several hundreds by desertion. The army was enraged at the **disgrace**

cast on it. Sackett's Harbour was remembered. Grave charges of incompetency were preferred against him. He was recalled to England to answer them ; but he fell sick, and died before he was brought to trial.

16. General Drummond followed up his victory at Lundy's Lane by investing **Fort Erie**—place of dismal remembrance ! His batteries opened fire upon it on the 13th of August, and seriously damaged its works. Two hours before day-break of the 15th an assault was made. Unexpected obstructions presented themselves, disasters uncontrollable occurred. In the darkness confusion arose, and panic set in. The heads of the attacking columns, led by Colonel Scott of the 103rd and Colonel Drummond of the 104th, made their way into the fort. A powder-magazine exploded, killing and fearfully mangling the leaders and many a brave fellow. Nine hundred and two men were reported killed, wounded, and missing on the British side. The investment was kept up. On the afternoon of the 19th of September, while the rain fell in torrents, the Americans made a sudden **sortie**, and drove the right of the British from their intrenchments ; but after two hours' desperate fighting they were compelled to retire and seek the safety of their fort. In maintaining their position the British lost six hundred men. It was a success scarce distinguishable from a defeat. Fort Erie was demolished and finally evacuated by the Americans on the 5th of November.

17. The war was now drawing to a close. British and American Commissioners met at Ghent in August. On the 24th of December the final **Treaty of Peace** was ratified. But for months the people of Canada and of the United States remained in ignorance of the happy turn that events had taken. On the 8th of January the bloody battle of **New Orleans 1815** was fought, when the British General Pakenham and **A.D.** two thousand soldiers fell before the breast-works defended by General Andrew Jackson and his raw militia.

18. Peace was hailed with wild delight in New York and Boston. It was proclaimed in Quebec on the 9th of March. The treaty provided for the establishment of a firm and comprehensive peace, the restoration of all places and prisoners taken during the war, and the appointment of Commissioners

to ascertain by actual survey the boundaries between the possessions of Great Britain and the United States, from the source of the River St. Croix to the Lake of the Woods. No mention was made of the "right of search," or of questions affecting the rights of neutrals—the real causes of the war; they were allowed to rest, to occasion difficulty another day. Nothing had been gained by either party during the contest. To both it had been alike **bloody** and **barren**. They both had seen defeat follow victory, and victory follow defeat, in a most unexpected and surprising manner. During its progress the war had pressed with increasing severity on the American people, disturbing their social happiness and political quiet, and destroying their trade and commerce. The Government of Great Britain was, in 1815, in a position to throw undivided force into the contest; but the extraordinary reverses that had overtaken their choicest veteran troops—as at Plattsburg and New Orleans—were not calculated to create confidence as to the certainty of ultimate victory should the struggle be prolonged. **The Canadians had most reason to be satisfied with the result.** The most brilliant successes of the war—as at Chautauguay and Chrysler's Farm—were mainly due to their prowess; and throughout it they had been the main-stay of their country's defence. At the end of three years the Americans were as far from conquering Canada as ever; and they had found out the impossibility of subduing by force a people who were determined to maintain their allegiance and their nationality.

QUESTIONS.—1. What attempt at mediation was made in 1814? Why did it fail?

2. What had the Canadians learned from the war? What spirit prevailed among them?

3. For what were the Lower Canada Judges impeached? How did the affair end? What proposal did Chief-Justice Sewell make when in London?

4. What encouragement could the Americans gather from the two preceding campaigns? What was there to discourage them? On what could the Canadians congratulate themselves?

5. What movement did the Ameri-

cans make in February? When did Wilkinson again cross the frontier? Where was he defeated?

6. What success had the British at Oswego in May? By what disaster was it followed?

7. What hopes were now raised in Canada? What orders came to Prevost in June?

8. Where were reinforcements urgently needed? What severe measure had been made necessary there? Why?

9. By whom was Fort Erie captured in July? Who opposed his advance northward? What was the result of the skirmish?

10. What reinforcements did the British receive? Where did Drummond meet Riall's division? Describe the Battle of Lundy's Lane.

11. Where was the effect of the war most plainly seen? What effect had it on trade?

12. In what respect had the fame of Britain been seriously tarnished? What were naval men burning to do?

13. Describe the ocean duel between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon*.

14. In what three expeditions were the British successful in 1814?

15. What commands did Prevost receive in June? Where did the Americans take up their position? What duty was Downie ordered to perform?

What decided the fate of his squadron? What did Prevost then do? What charges were brought against him? What was his fate?

16. What was the result of the assault on Fort Erie? What success had the sortie of the Americans? When was the fort evacuated?

17. When was the treaty of peace ratified? What bloody battle was fought thereafter?

18. What feelings did the news of peace excite in America? What were its chief provisions? What subjects were omitted? What had been the character of the war? Who had most reason to be satisfied with its result? Why?

## CHAPTER XXXI.

## THE FAMILY COMPACT.

1815 to 1827 A.D.

State of Canada after the War. The Feeling of the French Can- adians. The Revenues. Disputes in the Legislature. Death of the Duke of Richmond.	The Earl of Dalhousie. Upper Canada. Aliens. Clergy Reserves. Customs Dispute between the two Provinces.
--	---

1. THE years from 1815 to 1827 inclusive may be viewed as a distinctive period in the history of Canada. The system of oligarchical government, which obtained in all the Provinces, remained undisturbed. No startling events took place. Discontent showed itself, but did not reach the dangerous state of violent agitation. All the political changes, however, that afterwards overtook the Provinces were then foreshadowed. The Provinces affected by the war did not return to their normal condition for some time. The lavish expenditure of the Imperial Government ceased; though money was no longer plentiful, and though there was no call for military service, habits of extravagance and disinclination to sober industry remained. In Nova Scotia (in Halifax especially) the difference between a time of peace and a time of war was soon keenly felt. The upward flow of its prosperity, swelled by naval and military outlays, was checked; and its state, it may be said, came to resemble one of its rivers, which looks broad and beautiful when the full tide from the bay is in, but which, as the tide recedes, becomes contracted into a narrow stream.

2. Sir George Prevost having been recalled only to die, **Sir Gordon Drummond**, the victor of Lundy's Lane, ad-  
**1815** ministered the government of Lower Canada. The im-  
 A.D. peachment of the Judges Sewell and Monk failed; and  
 the Imperial Government, in defending them, censured  
 the Assembly for seeking to shake the confidence of the people  
 in the purity of the administration of justice. For a time there

was peace in the Legislature. The harsh acts committed during the administration of Sir James Craig were not, however, forgotten. After the war the French Canadians were warm in their loyalty to the British Crown; but the position in which they were placed with regard to the British minority did not cease to excite their dissatisfaction. They saw favoured members of that minority placed over them in invidious superiority, engrossing all the chief offices of honour and emolument, and assuming the airs of a higher and privileged class. The refined and sensitive among them were cut to the quick and stung into anger. Feelings of **disaffection** arose gradually. When the Upper and Lower branches came into contact, the British minority in the Assembly for the most part sided with the French Canadians; for it was equally concerned to gain control of the government. When, in time, the animosities of race became angrily excited, that minority found it impossible to act with the majority without seeming to forswear its country and its allegiance.

3. **Sir John Cope Sherbrooke** was called from the government of Nova Scotia to be Governor-General. He found the financial affairs of Lower Canada in a dis- **1816**  
ordered state—the revenues were insufficient to pay the A.D.  
expenses of the Civil List. The Assembly in 1809 had  
proposed to assume them; they then amounted to £40,000.  
The offer had then been rejected; now, Sir John Sherbrooke  
received instructions from the Imperial Government to accept  
it. The expenses had in the meantime amounted to £60,000.  
This sum the Assembly, which was in a pretty good humour,  
consented to give; but it would make no permanent appropriation.  
It would only pass an annual Bill, and it reserved to itself  
the right of examining into all the details of the expenditure  
of the Civil List.

4. In order to understand the nature of the dispute that arose among the different branches of the Legislature, it is necessary to state **the sources** from which the revenues of the Province were derived. It has already been said, that when the Province of Quebec was constituted a Government, in 1774, an Act was passed to raise a revenue. The right of the Imperial Government to raise taxes in the colonies was quietly allowed

in Canada and Nova Scotia. When the Declaratory Act of 1778 was passed, abandoning that right as it affected the English colonies then in revolt, it still remained in force in the provinces named. The right of the Imperial Government was not questioned until after the passing of the Constitutional Act of 1791, when separate Governments were formed in the two Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, and when representative institutions were established. The Assembly then claimed the power to raise and appropriate the money necessary to carry on the Civil Government to be its inherent right and privilege, and started objections to the collection of a revenue by the Crown by authority of the Act of 1774. In lieu of that revenue, the Assembly had proposed (in 1779) to appropriate permanently a certain sum, provided that the Imperial Government would repeal the Act of 1774; and it passed a Bill to give effect to the proposal. But the condition was not complied with—the Imperial Government still maintained its right.

5. Besides the amount raised by the Act of 1774, a revenue—the **Casual and Territorial**—was derived from the sale of lands and the lease of mines; and another revenue was raised from duties imposed by the Assembly on articles imported into the Province. The Crown, represented by the Governor-General, maintained that the Assembly had power of appropriation only over the last named source of revenue, while that branch claimed that it had the right to appropriate the moneys raised from all the three sources. The Assembly had, in a manner, placed itself in the power of the Governor-General; for in passing the Act to raise a revenue from customs-duties, it had made that revenue permanent. It might pass annual Bills of appropriation, detailing the manner in which that revenue should be expended. These Bills might be rejected by the Upper branches, but **the supplies** were not thereby stopped; for the money still came into the Treasury, and the Governor-General might expend it without the consent of the Assembly.

6. Difficulties somewhat similar, with regard to the control of the expenditure of the revenues, were occurring at this time in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. In these Provinces the Assemblies had taken the precaution to make the Revenue as well as the Appropriation Bill annual, so that on any disagree-

ment with the Upper branches, it was in their power "to stop the supplies;"—that is, to refuse to vote the money necessary to sustain the Civil Government.

7. In the time of Sir John Sherbrooke the temper of the several branches of the Legislature was not so excited as to cause them to maintain angrily the rights that each claimed. He was succeeded by the **Duke of Richmond**. In the meantime the expenses of the Civil Government had **1819** increased. The £60,000 was now inadequate to make **A.D.** good the deficiency. A demand was made on the Assembly for £16,000 in addition. It grew uneasy, remonstrated, and insisted on examining into all the details of the expenditure, and on cutting down some of the items. The Legislative Council refused to pass its amended Appropriation Bill, and the two branches came into **direct collision**.

8. The administration of the Duke of Richmond was of brief duration, and ended tragically for himself. While on a tour on the Ottawa River he was bitten by a fox, and died in great agony. His son-in-law, Major-General Sir Peregrine Maitland, Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada, was appointed administrator. **A general election** took place in Lower Canada. Sir Peregrine called the Assembly together before all the returns of the newly-elected members were sent in. His act was pronounced to be a dangerous stretch of the prerogative; for, as the Assembly argued, if a Governor could convene a House before the roll of its members was completed, he might deprive the greater part of the Province of representation by calling a House together before that roll was half made up. No estimate of the expenses of the Civil Government was submitted by the Governor, and, altogether, it was an irregular session. Sir Peregrine and the same irate Assembly had not an opportunity of meeting again. The revered and sorely afflicted King, George III., died, and the Prince Regent as **1820** cended the throne as George IV. According to cus- **A.D.** tom, on the death of the Monarch all the provincial Assemblies were dissolved. The new House of Lower Canada met a new Governor-General, the **Earl of Dalhousie**.<sup>1</sup> He

<sup>1</sup> *The Earl of Dalhousie*.—Father of distinguished of the Governor-Generals the Marquis of Dalhousie, the most of India.

had administered the government of Nova Scotia for several years. He had the reputation of being a proud man, refined and courteous in his manner, and a rigid upholder of the prerogative of the Crown.

9. At the commencement of the Earl's rule, though there had been sharp political contention, there was no disaffection in the Province. The idea of establishing "**la nation Canadienne**" in Lower Canada had not yet taken possession of the minds of the majority. The man of most influence over it, **Louis Papi-neau**, Speaker of the Assembly this year, contrasted, with all the force of his eloquence, the happy state of the French Canadians with the miserable condition of their forefathers under French rule. "On the day on which Canada," he said, "came under the dominion of Great Britain, the reign of law succeeded that of violence. From that day its treasures were freely spent, its navy and its army were mustered to afford her an invincible protection. From that day the better part of British laws became hers, while her religion, her property, and the laws by which they are preserved, remained unaltered." A change in a few years came over Papineau's mind.

10. The Earl of Dalhousie soon showed in what spirit he was prepared to meet the Assembly. He demanded that it should make the Appropriation Bill permanent, or at least enact it for the King's life. On the repeated refusal of the Assembly to accede to his demand, he, by the vice of his Council, drew upon the money raised by the permanent Revenue Act, which was in the hands of the Receiver-General. The Assembly denounced his act as unconstitutional. There were other causes of trouble, arising chiefly from the differences between the characters, laws, and customs of the French and British populations. The **feudal tenure** had always been held by the British to be degrading and oppressive. A proposal was now made by the Government to allow holders of land under feudal obligations to change the tenure to that of free and common soccage. As the laws by which property descended in families depended on the permanence of the feudal tenure, the French Canadians became alarmed: they imagined that the proposed change was to be forced upon them, and that it was but the commencement of an agitation for the abolition of all

their laws and customs. Many members, indeed, of the British minority held that unless Lower Canada was made, in fact, a British Province, by banishing the French language from the Legislature, and the French laws from the country, it would not long remain a dependency of the Crown. This extreme section of the British minority, which was well represented in the Councils, advised the Crown to unite Lower with Upper Canada under such conditions as, if they had been fully carried out, might have brought about the result desired.

11. The government of Upper Canada from 1815 to 1820 was administered by a rapid succession of Governors:—by Lieutenant-General Sir George Murray, from April till July 1815; by Major-General Sir Frederick Robinson till September 1815; by the Honourable Francis Gore till June 1817; by the Honourable Samuel Smith till August 1818; by Sir Peregrine Maitland till he was transferred to Lower Canada in 1819, when the Honourable S. Smith again administered the government until Sir Peregrine's return in 1820. In none of the Provinces was power so firmly centralized in the hands of one class as in **Upper Canada**. Its state in its earliest days almost necessarily brought this position about, and the Constitutional Act helped to fix it. Its population was scattered, and possessed little education; the number of persons possessing means and knowledge qualifying them to fill the highest positions was limited. Men naturally defend the privileges which they enjoy, and to which long usage seems to give them a prescriptive right. As the population increased by immigration, the cordon of exclusiveness was drawn around the party in power.—“**the Family Compact.**” Its members held all the seats in the Executive and Legislative Councils for life, and all the offices that had control of the finances and of the lands; and they secretly influenced the Governor. The commerce and the lands of the country were mainly in their hands. Through the amount of patronage at their disposal, they were enabled to fill the Assembly with their adherents; and all legislation tended to maintain the monopoly of power in their hands. They held that to give the press liberty to criticise the acts of the Government, or to allow the people to petition against alleged grievances, or to agitate them at public meetings, was to encourage a

republican spirit ; and that to give education to the children of the poor was to lift them out of their sphere, to make them too independent in thought and action. Such opinions, though they might only be held rigidly by some, had their influence on all the party. As a result of them, a writer for the press who dared to hint at abuses or to suggest reforms had a very hard time of it. He was ruined by actions of libel brought against him : his types were destroyed, and he was thrown into jail. A man who attended a public meeting ran the risk of having disaffection imputed to him, and of being deprived of any position he might hold under Government.

12. **A question** that caused angry feeling was at this time agitated in Upper Canada. It was discovered that many respectable persons—some of them members of the Legislature—who had for a long period enjoyed the privileges of British subjects, were not entitled to them. They had come from the United States and settled in the Province after the Declaration of the Independence of the English Colonies in 1783. The law declared that they were citizens of the United States, and therefore **aliens** in Canada. Some of the persons pronounced to be aliens had served the King during the war of 1812, and held offices and lands under patents from the Crown. They were exceedingly indignant when called upon to take the oath of allegiance again, and to submit to the formality of a seven years' residence in the Province before they were declared entitled to enjoy privileges to which they had never dreamed that they had not a right. Persons emigrating from Great Britain or Ireland, and passing through the United States to Canada, were treated as aliens. This strained interpretation of the law was made in order to cover the case of a Scotchman, Robert Gourlay, a journalist, who had made himself obnoxious to the governing powers, and who was driven from the Province. This alien question caused much excitement, until it was settled according to the dictates of good sense and good feeling.

13. The enduring trouble in Upper Canada, the grievance that excited the deepest discontent and aroused the angriest feelings, arose from the position assumed by the **Church of England**. It was recognized by law ; other sects were tolerated. Its members, among whom were all the chief officials, assumed

that it was the dominant, the State Church. In the hands of the Colonial Secretary was the bestowal of the patronage of the rectories of Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers. When the Ecclesiastical Board was formed (1822), of which the Archbishops of Canterbury and York and the Bishop of London were members, the appointments were made at its suggestion. The clergymen and missionaries of the Church were appointed by the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel in Foreign Countries,<sup>1</sup> whose function was the supply and maintenance of a body of clergymen for the North American colonies. The members of the Church in the colony contributed very little towards the support of their clergy. Compared with other sects they were less numerous than the Presbyterians or the Methodists.

14. The clergy of the Church of England claimed the sole enjoyment of **the Clergy Reserves**, the seventh of the granted lands set apart by the Constitutional Act for "the support of a Protestant Clergy;" and by a clause in that Act provision was made for the erection of rectories in every parish of the Province. They maintained that under the general term, "Protestant Clergy," no other sect was included. The members of the Church of Scotland were indignant at this assumption, and insisted on their right to a share of the Reserves. During the debate on the Constitutional Act in the Imperial Parliament, Charles James Fox said that it would be unjust to impose the Church of England on Canada, and that if any Church had a claim to be established it was that of Scotland. The Methodists and Baptists were displeased at the attempt made to create invidious distinctions between the various religious bodies, and to place them in a position of inferiority. Along with the Roman Catholics they proposed that the Clergy Reserves should be sold, and that their proceeds should be applied to the interests of religion and education, to the building of churches and school-houses, and to purposes of internal improvement in the Province.

15. The clergy of the Church of England took a practical

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Society for the Propagation of the Gospel in Foreign Countries*.—Incorporated by Royal Charter in 1701, in the reign of William III.

step to assert their sole right to the Reserves. **A Clergy Corporation** (of which the Bishop of Quebec and others, 1820 chiefly clergymen, were members) was formed, under a A.D. Royal Charter. It managed the sale of lands, and collected the rents. At first the profits hardly covered the expenses.

16. Besides the troubles peculiar to each of the Provinces, there was a **standing cause of quarrel** between them. It has already been stated that the commerce of the western Province, by way of the St. Lawrence, was controlled by the eastern, as there were no ports of entry above Montreal. The duties for purposes of revenue were imposed by the Legislature of Lower Canada, and distributed in the proportion, first of one-eighth, afterwards of one-fifth, to Upper Canada. The people of the British Province were making great advances in population and wealth, and they complained that they did not receive justice. They grew impatient of the state of thralldom in which they were placed, and sought for a way to escape from it.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is the peculiar character in Canadian history of the twelve years following the war? How was Nova Scotia affected by the return of peace?

2. Who succeeded Prevost as Governor of Lower Canada? How did the impeachment of the Judges end? What were the feelings of the French Canadians after the war? What gradually excited disaffection among them?

3. Who became Governor-General in 1816? What difficult question had he to deal with? What position did the Assembly assume with reference to it?

4. When was the right of the Imperial Government to tax the colonies questioned in Canada? What proposal had the Assembly made in 1779? Why had it failed?

5. What were the different sources of revenue in Canada? What different views regarding the power of the Assembly were held by the Assembly and by the Crown? How had the Assembly placed itself in the power of the Governor-General?

6. In what other Provinces had si ni-

lar questions arisen? What precaution had the Assemblies in these Provinces taken?

7. Who succeeded Sir John Sherbrooke as Governor-General? What brought the Council and the Assembly into direct collision?

8. How did the Duke of Richmond die? Who succeeded him? How did Sir Peregrine irritate the Assembly? What terminated his rule? Who succeeded him?

9. Who was the man of most influence in the majority of the Assembly? What view of the situation of affairs did he take?

10. What demand did the Earl of Dalhousie make from the Assembly? What did he do when the Assembly refused? What followed? What proposal alarmed the French Canadians? What was the opinion of the extreme section of the British minority?

11. How many changes in the governorship of Upper Canada took place between 1815 and 1820? Who possessed the chief power in that Province? How did this arise? Describe

the monopoly of power possessed by the Family Compact. By what opinions was it influenced? How did those who claimed freedom suffer?

12. What was the allen question? How was the law strained in the case of Robert Gourlay? How was the question at last settled?

13. What was the most troublesome grievance in Upper Canada? What

was the position of that Church? By whom were its clergymen appointed?

14. What did the clergy of the Church of England claim? By whom was the claim resisted? In what proposal did the Roman Catholics join?

15. What practical step did the Church of England party take?

16. What standing cause of quarrel was there between the Provinces?

## CHAPTER XXXII.

## THE FIRST APPEAL TO ENGLAND.

1822 to 1827 A.D.

The Union Scheme.	Cape Breton.
Canada Trade Act.	Legislative troubles in New Brunswick.
Failure of Sir John Caldwell.	Death of Governor G. Tracey Smythe.
The Canada Tenures Act.	Sir Howard Douglas.
The Earl of Dalhousie's unpopular acts.	The Great Fire at Miramichi.
The Crown lands.	The Disputed Territory.
State of Nova Scotia	The Duties on Baltic timber.

1. **A Scheme of Union** was proposed by the Imperial Government as a remedy for the evils that afflicted the **1822** Canadas, separately and in their relations with each A.D. other. It met with some favour from the British merchant class in Upper Canada; and from the British population of the townships of Lower Canada. The latter, now about 40,000 in number, were placed in a peculiarly disadvantageous position. A wilderness intervened between them and the anciently settled part of the Province. They had no representation in the Assembly or in the Courts of Justice. They were compelled, when they wished to seek legal redress, to make an arduous and expensive journey to Montreal, Three Rivers, or Quebec, where legal proceedings were conducted according to French law and in the French language. Though they held their lands under freehold tenure, they were uncertain whether their properties were subject to British or to French law.

2. The Union Scheme was almost unanimously **denounced** by the French Canadians; they looked upon it as an insulting measure, and as designed to obliterate their nationality. Two most objectionable features in the scheme were, a provision that the English language should alone be used in the written proceedings, and, at the end of fifteen years, in the debates of the Assembly; and the proposal to give the Government the privilege of placing two members of the Executive Council of each Province in the Lower House, for the purpose of carrying through its measures, but without allowing them to

vote. The Union Scheme was withdrawn, and the **Canada Trade Act** was passed by the Imperial Parliament. It imposed certain duties for the purpose of regulating commerce and of raising a revenue; and Commissioners were appointed to distribute them between the two Provinces.

3. **The disputes** in the Legislature of Lower Canada over the appropriations were now increasing in warmth. The Assembly refused to sanction certain charges for pensions in the estimates laid before it. The Legislative Council threw its Bill, in which those items were omitted, "under the table," and refused to give it any consideration. The Governor-General continued to pay salaries and charges on the Civil List on his own responsibility. The growing discontent was aggravated by the **failure of Sir John Caldwell**, Receiver-General, in whose hands were placed the revenues for safe keeping. He could give no account of £96,000 of the money belonging to the Province which had passed through his hands. The Assembly now had a just grievance. This officer had been appointed by the Crown, and no proper security had been taken that the Province would be indemnified in the event of his failure. Though Sir John Caldwell was convicted of being a defaulter, he still held his seat in the Executive Council. In the Assembly it was said that if the Receiver-General had been obliged to submit annually to it a full and explicit statement of the financial condition of the Province no such loss could have occurred. The continued antagonism of the Legislative Council,—several of whose members were salaried officers, directly interested in maintaining the expenses of the Civil List, and in taking the power to reduce them out of the hands of the Assembly,—provoked in that body a desire to change the composition of the Upper branch by introducing into it members who were independent of the Crown, and whose sentiments were more in harmony with those of the body of the people.

4. This year the "**Canada Tenures Act**" was passed, making legal the proposal to give holders of lands under feudal tenure the option to change that tenure to that of "free and common soccage;" and to establish the operation of English law over them.

5. The Earl of Dalhousie went to England on leave of absence. He had not made himself popular ; but Governor-Generals in those days did not court popularity. **Sir Francis Matthew Burton** was appointed administrator. The signs of a rising tempest disappeared. He conceded the demand that the Assembly had been making for several years—to control the Crown revenues raised by the Act of 1774. Satisfaction was diffused over the Province. Soon, however, the Earl returned, and that feeling died away, or was changed to exasperation. He undid what Sir Francis had done ; denied the right of the Assembly to dispose of the Crown revenues ; peremptorily called upon it to make permanent provision for the Judges and other officials ; and on its refusal, issued, without its sanction, warrants for the payment of their salaries. He showed himself personally hostile to the chief men in the Assembly, who certainly were not chary in condemning his acts. The leader of the British minority—**Mr. Neilson**, editor of the *Quebec Gazette*, an able man and a powerful writer—came under the Earl's displeasure ; and with his favour another Gazette was established on the ruins of the original paper, which bitterly assailed Neilson. **M. Papineau** was now in a state of semi-rebellion against British authority.

6. The House met after a general election. The Earl refused to recognize Papineau as Speaker, though he was the **1827** choice of the majority of the Assembly ; and he violently **A.D.** dissolved the House. This action brought matters to a **crisis**. The Constitution was suspended. Excited public meetings were held in the districts of Montreal, Three Rivers, and Quebec. Petitions, addressed to the King and the British Parliament, setting forth numerous grievances, and praying for the recall of the Governor-General, received 87,000 signatures. Messrs. Viger, Neilson, and Cuvillier were deputed as agents to present them. The British population of the townships also met and drew up petitions, and affixed 10,000 signatures to them. They prayed for a legislative union of the two Canadas as the best remedy for all the troubles.

7. In Upper Canada discontent was not so vivid as in the Lower Province. Still many of its people thought that its state demanded the consideration of the Imperial Parliament. There

never would be peace while the Church of England was allowed to maintain the sole right to the Clergy Reserves, which then amounted to over 3,000,000 acres of land.

8. The general system of **Crown land management** was much complained of, not only in Upper Canada, but in all the British Provinces. Favouritism prevailed in making grants of lands. Extensive tracts were given gratuitously to Executive Councillors and others, which were allowed to remain in a wild state, and which, intervening between settled districts, obstructed their progress. This evil was early seen, and Royal Instructions were issued forbidding the granting of more than 1,200 acres to any one individual. In the Canadas such regulations were adroitly and systematically evaded. A number of associates would apply through "a leader" for 1,200 acres each. In many cases their application was a subterfuge, as the combined grants, amounting sometimes to 50,000 acres, went to the "leader."

9. After the war of 1812, the Prince Regent signified his pleasure that grants of land should be made to the **militiamen** of Upper Canada, in reward for their services. The royal bounty was intercepted or rendered of no avail. Difficulties on account of the routine of the Crown land department, and the amount of fees demanded, met the militiamen when they sought to obtain their grants. In cases where they did receive them, the lands were sometimes inconveniently located and unfit for settlement, and were not unfrequently parted with, it is said, by the disappointed grantee to speculators for a mere trifle—for a bottle of rum, or some such ridiculous non-equivalent.

10. An effort was made to turn the waste lands of Upper Canada to account. **The Canada Land Company** (whose head-quarters were in London) was incorporated by Royal Charter on the 19th of August 1826. It proposed to purchase all the Crown and Clergy Reserves. On an objection being raised by the Clergy Corporation that the price offered was too low, the Company obtained 1,000,000 acres in the Huron country in place of the Clergy Reserves. For 3,300,000 in all, the Company agreed to pay £350,000 sterling, in sixteen annual instalments; and to expend money in opening up roads, and in other works of public utility. The portion of the revenue raised by

authority of the Canada Trade Act being insufficient to pay the Civil List of the Province, the annual payments made by the Land Company relieved the Imperial Government from the necessity of making good the deficiency.

11. **In Nova Scotia**, as already stated, there was a great decline of prosperity after the war. In 1816 the revenue amounted to £96,300, and a surplus of £60,000 over the expenditure was left. In 1820 the revenue was £53,000, and there was a balance of debt of £1,800 against the Province. In these five years changes for the worse took place in **Halifax**. Trade languished, many of the inhabitants went away, leaving tenantless houses. The Imperial Dockyard establishment was much reduced. **Halifax** ceased to be the chief naval station, that distinction having been transferred to Bermuda. Hundreds of workmen out of employment at one time were indebted to the Poor Man's Society for their daily subsistence. The Earl of Dalhousie was then Governor. There was little political excitement, and the thoughts of public men were directed to the improvement of the Province. Pictou Academy and Dalhousie College were founded; the parish school system was inaugurated; an impetus was given to agriculture by the letters of Mr. Young, who assumed the *nom de plume* "**Agricola**."

12. On the appointment of the Earl of Dalhousie as Governor-General, the Assembly voted £1,000 to purchase "a sword and star," as a testimonial of its esteem. The Earl at first accepted the gift with thanks, but afterwards declined it, because, as he stated to the Speaker, the Assembly had neglected to carry out his suggestions for improving the militia and road service, and to provide for a survey of the Province. The Assembly, moreover, had shown a want of respect to the Executive Council, and had preferred charges against one of its members—the Collector of Customs—that affected his character for strict honesty; but above all, the Earl felt sensitive about receiving a costly gift in the low state of the finances. When he went to Quebec he was succeeded by **Sir James Kempt**, a veteran officer, who had served with Abercrombie in Egypt, and with Wellington in the Spanish Peninsula, and who had been wounded at Waterloo.

9th  
13. On the 19th of October 1820, **Cape Breton** was formally incorporated with Nova Scotia, much against the will of a majority of its inhabitants. As a county of the Province it sent two representatives to the Assembly.

14. The petition of the Legislature of New Brunswick to the Prince Regent, praying for a regularly commissioned Governor, was answered in 1818, when **Major-General George Tracey Smythe** was appointed. He had great difficulties with the Legislature, as there was constant collision between the Legislative Council and the Assembly over the question of the control of the revenues. He took a firm stand in 1819, and dissolved the Assembly. The new House showed itself a little more tractable; but on the death of the old King, George III., in 1820, another dissolution took place, and the House that met the following year followed the evil courses of its predecessors.

15. In the midst of the session of 1823 Governor Smythe died, and contention was stayed for a time. Business was hurriedly brought to a close, and the House was prorogued by Chief-Justice Saunders and Judge Chipman, on the authority of a commission under the Great Seal. A series of rather strange casualties followed. The Hon. Christopher Billop (who had renounced his own name, Richard Farmar, and assumed that of his father-in-law, on his marriage with an heiress of Staten Island), presuming on his position as senior Executive Councillor, issued his proclamation as President. Being very old and very infirm, he was not considered to be, as the Royal Instructions in such cases required, the most fitting and proper person for the office. He was superseded by the Hon. Ward Chipman. The new President met the Legislature in seeming good health in January (1824), but died before the close of the session, on the 9th February. On that day the Legislative Council had under its consideration a bill for the interment of Governor Smythe in the parish church of Frederickton. The Hon. James Murray Bliss became President, and continued in office until the arrival of **Sir Howard Douglas** in August. The new Governor was distinguished as a soldier and as a man of science and letters.

16. The population of New Brunswick was now 74,000. The

settlements were chiefly on the banks of the rivers. The roads, few in number, ran "up hill and down dale," in the old Roman fashion, and were ill adapted for travel and traffic. Agriculture was neglected. Large sums were annually sent out of the Province to purchase flour, meal, and farm produce. Labour was high and scarce. The lumber trade was prosecuted with great ardour, and had never been so prosperous. Ship-building was prodigiously active. Sir Howard studied the state of the Province with solicitude. He deprecated the too exclusive devotion to lumbering, and sought to encourage a better system of agriculture and of road-making. Through his influence **King's College** at Frederickton was established. On his first meeting the Legislature the prospect was full of cheer; when he met it again that prospect was overclouded.

17. The summer was unusually hot and dry all over the American Continent. No rain fell in New Brunswick **1825** for over two months. There were many **fires in the** A.D. **woods.** On the 29th of September, Government House, in Frederickton, was burned. The drought, with mid-summer sultriness, was felt in every part of the Province, and continued until October. On the 7th a destructive fire broke out in Frederickton, and at the same time a flaming storm swept over the country between the Nashwaak and the Miramichi, and north to the Bay Chaleur. **A terrible scene** took place in Miramichi. Towards evening a pitchy darkness overspread the sky, through which shot tongues of fire; then a hurricane of flame burst, with a fearful roar, and rushed over **Newcastle and Douglastown**, destroying churches and houses and ships upon the stocks. Many old and infirm persons and many children perished. The people sought the river for safety; wild animals even, which had been driven from their lairs in the burning forest, crept to its bank. The lurid waters were tossed about in wild commotion. Vessels, with their rigging all afire, were torn from their anchorage and driven on shore. Many of the people threw themselves into the river and essayed to cross on rafts of logs, in scows, boats, and canoes. On that fearful night **one hundred and sixty** persons perished from fire, water, and injuries. Hundreds were maimed. Property worth £250,000 was destroyed. The loss incurred by the destruction of the

forests was incalculable. This calamity evoked wide-spread sympathy. Large sums were promptly subscribed in all the British Provinces, in Great Britain, and in the United States, for the relief of the sufferers.

18. The Americans had always shown a disposition to encroach upon the **Disputed Territory**. Governor Lincoln of Maine assumed a threatening attitude, and marshalled the militia of the State upon the frontiers. A fellow named Baker, at the head of a party of filibusters, made a dash into the Madawaska district, and hoisted the "stars and stripes" upon a pole in token that it was under the protection of the U.S. Government. The old Loyalists and French settlers had no idea of being made "free and enlightened citizens" against their will. They appealed to the Governor, and Sir Howard Douglas quietly moved troops to the frontier, and held them in readiness to resist invasion if necessary. A constable drove into the Madawaska settlement, levelled the staff, bundled the American flag under his arm, seized Baker, and carried him off a prisoner, and lodged him in the jail at Frederickton. Governor Lincoln and his militia fumed terribly, but did not cross the frontier. Baker was brought to trial before the Supreme Court, and fined. There was great excitement: when it calmed down, the Governments of Great Britain and the United States, by joint consent, referred the question of the boundary to the King of the Netherlands.

19. About this time Great Britain commenced to throw down commercial barriers. Hitherto she had rigidly protected the commerce of her colonies. **The trade of the West Indies** was finally thrown open to the Americans in 1830; and the people of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick complained that by that concession a great blow was given to their prosperity, the West Indies being one of the best markets for their fish and lumber. Dissatisfaction almost swelled into disaffection when the report reached New Brunswick that it was the intention of the Imperial Government to repeal the **duties on Baltic timber**, and consequently to withdraw from the lumber trade the protection it had always enjoyed. Nothing but ruin seemed to stare the people in the face. The Legislature sent urgent petitions against the contem-

plated measure to the King and the Parliament. Sir Howard Douglas—who was called to England to give information with regard to the Disputed Territory—published a pamphlet in which he stated clearly the impolicy and injustice of repealing the duties. This brochure had a good effect. The Bill for the repeal was defeated in the Imperial Parliament. Joy was diffused over New Brunswick. A handsome service of plate was presented to Sir Howard. He did not return to the Province; for he felt constrained to resign his governorship, as, in opposing the repeal of the Baltic duties, he had acted against the Government which had appointed him. The Hon. William Black, President of the Council, administered the government until the arrival of **Major-General Sir Achibald Campbell**, the new Governor.

**QUESTIONS.**—1. What remedy for the evils of Canada was proposed in 1822? Under what disadvantage did the British population in Lower Canada labour?

2. By whom was the Union Scheme opposed? What were its objectionable features? What was its fate? What Act was passed by the Imperial Parliament?

3. What real grievance had the Assembly of Lower Canada in 1824? What wish did the antagonism of the Council provoke in the Assembly?

4. What was the Canada Tenures Act? When was it passed?

5. When did the dissatisfaction disappear? What occurred on the Earl's return? To whom did he show himself personally hostile?

6. What brought matters to a crisis? What steps were taken by the malcontents? What did the British population of the townships propose?

7. What was the state of Upper Canada?

8. What complaints were made against the system of Crown land management? How were the regulations evaded?

9. To whom were grants of land made after 1812? What difficulties did they encounter?

10. What was the object of the Canada

Land Company? Describe its operations.

11. What was the condition of Nova Scotia, and specially of Halifax, after the war of 1812?

12. Why did the Earl of Dalhousie refuse the testimonial of the Assembly? Who succeeded him as Governor of Lower Canada?

13. With what Province was Cape Breton incorporated in 1820?

14. Who was appointed Governor of New Brunswick in 1818? With what difficulties had he to contend?

15. How was the contention stayed for a time? Who held the office of President until the arrival of the new Governor? Who was he?

16. What was then the population of New Brunswick? What was its condition? What improvements did Sir Howard Douglas encourage?

17. What calamity overtook New Brunswick in the summer of 1825? Describe its details. Whence was relief sent to the sufferers?

18. What encroachment was made on the Disputed Territory in 1827? How did it end? To whom was the question of boundary referred?

19. What measures excited dissatisfaction in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick in 1830? How were these measures defeated?

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

## RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT—LOWER CANADA.

1828 to 1836 A.D.

An Age of Political Reform.  
 Report of the Canada Committee.  
 Recall of the Earl of Dalhousie.  
 The Concessions made by the British  
 Government.  
 Renewed discontents.

Lord Aylmer.  
 Rebellious tendencies.  
 The Ninety-two Resolutions.  
 Lord Gosford.  
 The Commission of Inquiry.  
 A dead-lock.

1. CANADA now entered upon the most trying and the most important period of its history. In the twenty years from 1828 to 1848 the battle of "**Responsible Government**" was fought. The oligarchical system, which had prevailed in all the Provinces since their foundation, was overturned; and the people, through their representatives in the Assemblies, obtained control over affairs. A number of causes helped to bring about this result. The spirit of the age was in favour of **political reform**. In the countries most intimately connected with Canada the people were rising: in fiery France they were preparing to rush through a revolution to a republic; in sober England they were demanding that classes hitherto excluded from the franchise should have the right to vote for representatives in Parliament. A period of protracted commercial distress drove thousands from Great Britain to seek an asylum in the British American Provinces. Many were destitute—not a few were disaffected. Immigrants were not then, as now, welcomed as friends, nor were lands freely provided for them: they found themselves placed under many disadvantages. In Lower Canada they were looked upon as intruders by the French Canadians, who wished to keep the whole Province to themselves, and who threw difficulties in the way of their settlement. In Upper Canada immigrants found themselves in the position of foreigners; they were looked upon as aliens by the old Loyalists and first American settlers; they found that the **avenues to advancement** were closed against them, and that

all legislation tended to keep them in a position of inferiority. Another class—consisting of Americans who had settled in the Province after the war of 1812—found themselves equally disadvantageously placed; and they were imbued with a love of republicanism. The amazing prosperity of the United States—which was attributed to their free institutions—aroused the envy of parties who were neither immigrants nor late American settlers: they drew comparisons very unfavourable to the British American Provinces; they thought that like causes would produce similar results. They were loyal to the King, but their love for the British Constitution did not deter them from seeking to break down the monopoly of power held by the Family Compacts, with the view of infusing more energy into the Government, and of giving freer play to all classes.

2. The petitions from the seigneuries and townships of Lower Canada, and those from Upper Canada, received a favourable hearing from the Imperial Parliament. **A Committee** was appointed, which examined at great length a number of the leading men of both Provinces, and of all parties and sects, on the allegations therein set forth. This Committee drew up a Report in favour of concessions and reforms. It recommended that the Crown duties raised by the Act of 1774 should be placed under the control of the Assembly, on condition that it made permanent provision for the salaries of the Governor-General, members of the Executive Council, and the Judges: it suggested that the Judges, with the exception of the Chief-Justice, should vacate the seats in the Legislative Council; and that the Bishop and the Archdeacon ought to refrain from meddling with politics. The Committee thought it advisable that a more independent character should be given to the Executive and Legislative Councils (of both Provinces), by introducing into them gentlemen who held no offices under the Crown, and who represented all interests; and, in the case of Lower Canada, without making invidious distinctions between British and Protestant, and French and Catholic sects and nationalities. In order to save Lower Canada loss in the future by the defalcation of any Receiver-General, the Committee recommended that proper securities should be taken before the appointment was made, and that all accounts should be regularly examined by a Board of Audit. The

Committee expressed disapprobation of the action of the Governor-General in taking money (£140,000 in all) out of the Treasury without the sanction of the Assembly. Complaint having been made that the proceeds of the Jesuit estates in Lower Canada had been diverted by the Government from their proper purpose, the Committee recommended that they should be applied, as the law directed, to the promotion of education.

3. An extension of representation, based on the principles of population and property, and an enforcement of the clause in the Canada Tenures Act establishing English law over lands held in free and common soccage, were suggested as remedies for the grievances of the British population of the townships; the French Canadians to be left in undisturbed enjoyment of their own laws and customs, with the right to acquire other new properties under the feudal tenure. With regard to the grievances of Upper Canada, the Committee recommended that the unproductive Clergy Reserves should be sold to persons willing to perform the conditions of settlement; that a tax should be levied on the holders of all other unimproved lands; and that the system of granting large tracts gratuitously should be abandoned.

4. "The Report of the Canada Committee of 1828" was received with an outburst of praise and gratitude. In the Assembly of Lower Canada it was pronounced to be an imperishable monument of justice and profound wisdom, and a guide for the future in all disputes among the different branches of the Legislature. It inspired confidence in the impartiality of the British Parliament.

5. In the course of the twenty years after 1828 the party generally termed **Reformers**, who sought to break down the privileges of the Family Compacts, had often occasion to appeal to that tribunal. To Downing Street resorted its delegates, armed with budgets of grievances in the form of reports and petitions, to be laid at the foot of the Throne and submitted to Parliament; there also went the agents of the Compact, official, or **Tory party**, with counter petitions showing forth the utter groundlessness of the complaints of the Reformers. It was no easy matter to decide between two parties each of which claimed that all right was on its side. The British Government evinced

a strong desire to do justice to both,—to redress all real grievances. But sometimes its good intentions were frustrated by the Governors and Executive Councillors of the Provinces. Besides, there often occurred changes in the composition of the British Government. Great Britain was then in the throes of **political agitation**. Tory and Whig Governments succeeded each other; at each change of Administration a new Colonial Secretary was installed in Downing Street, and the acts of one were sometimes nullified by those of another. But in spite of the changes in the Colonial Office, there was one circumstance that tended to give uniformity to its policy,—the Under Secretary was a permanent official. **Mr. Stephen**, who possessed an intimate knowledge of the affairs of the colonies, then held that position. To him the heads naturally looked for information. He was strongly imbued with liberal ideas regarding the government of the Provinces, and in him the Reformers found a stanch friend. It is certain that his influence in Downing Street was felt by the Family Compacts, and that they complained of it.

6. In Lower Canada, while its grievances were under the consideration of the Imperial Parliament, public discontent grew stronger. The administration of the Earl of Dalhousie grew more and more unpopular: arbitrary acts were committed; militia officers were displaced for attending political meetings where these acts were denounced. The Earl was recalled, and **Sir James Kempt** was transferred from the Government of Nova Scotia to his post. A lull came after the storm. When the Assembly met, the Governor-General recognized M. Papineau as Speaker. Animated by the hopes of reform held out by the Canada Committee, the Assembly proceeded quietly to business.

7. The British Government, with an anxious desire to put a stop to all complaints, proceeded to carry out the suggestions of the Committee. It is unnecessary to enter into minute details of all the measures taken to bring about that desirable result; only some of the more important need be mentioned. Instructions were given to the Governor-General to place at the disposal of the Assembly **all the revenues**, save the Casual and Territorial; to call members of the Reform party to seats in the Executive Council; and to give the preference to French Canadians;—

accordingly ten of the new members were persons of that nationality. The Legislative Council, as remodelled, contained thirty-five members, only seven of whom were officers of the Crown. It was considered that a sufficiently independent character was thus given to that body. As a measure of justice to the British population of the townships, the Assembly was left free to increase the number of their members so as to give them a fairer representation. The proceeds of the Jesuit estates were placed at the disposal of the Assembly, to be applied to purposes of education. An improved system of **Crown land management** was inaugurated. General orders, forbidding the granting of land gratuitously, and commanding that in future all lands should be sold by public auction to the highest bidder, were issued to all the Provinces.

8. The satisfaction caused by the Report of the Canada Committee soon died away in the Assembly. It showed that it considered that the concessions that had been made were only half measures. The reservation of the Casual and Territorial Revenue aroused its displeasure. Though it obtained the control of the Crown duties on the express condition that it should make satisfactory and permanent provision for the Judges, it refused to do so unless the reserved revenue was handed over to it.

9. **Lord Aylmer** of Balrath succeeded Sir James Kempt in July 1830. On meeting the Legislature, he found that the Assembly was as full of grievances as if the Canada **1830** Committee had never made a report, and as if the **A.D.** British Government had never acted upon it. In the most candid and conciliatory manner he implored the Assembly to make a full and explicit statement of its grievances, and promised it ample redress. But its demands reached a height beyond what the spirit of concession in the British Government would go. It refused to surrender the Casual and Territorial Revenue. The Government saw clearly that the aim of the Assembly in demanding the disposal of all the revenues was to place the Judges and Executive Councillors, and even the Governor at its mercy. The Reformers in the Executive and Legislative Councils by no means pleased the Assembly. It complained that the appointments made were hostile to the

interests of the French majority, and that, in fact, these bodies were as exclusively British as ever they had been. It demanded that the Legislative Council should be made elective—that is, that its members should be elected like those of the Lower branch—and that all officers receiving appointments from the Crown should appear before the people for reëlection. By these means the Assembly sought to gain the entire **control of the Government**: for as the French Canadians composed the great bulk of the population, they would have carried all the elections for the Legislative Council; and if the possession of office had depended on their votes, the great majority of Crown officers would have been of their nationality.

10. The national jealousies, the determination of the French Canadian majority to gain control of the Government, and the resolute defence of its privileges by the British minority, were the real causes of all the difficulties in Lower Canada. All other causes of complaint were of comparatively little moment. If only the French Canadians could gain control of the Government, they could make such laws as they pleased regarding schools and roads, and the management of waste lands; they could, if they chose, decree that all properties must be held under the feudal tenure, and be subject to all the incidents of French law; and they could hamper the commerce of the British population by imposing what duties they liked. In carrying out the suggestions of the Canada Committee the British Government left much in the hands of the Legislature; but the Assembly wilfully neglected to do its part. To be sure, it remodelled the electoral districts of the Province and added to the number of representatives, but in such a way as to increase its large French Canadian majority. Out of a total representation of eighty-eight members only eleven were British. The pretensions put forth by that majority tended to consolidate the British party; even those members of it who had acted with the majority up till 1828, when the question became one of nationalities, swallowed their own political predilections and sided with their countrymen.

11. For three years (from 1831 to 1834) the **contest** between the branches of the Legislature grew in intensity. The Assembly refused to vote the supplies unless the Casual and Terri-

torial Revenue were surrendered to it. The Governor-General was precluded from drawing upon the Receiver-General without its sanction, as the Earl of Dalhousie had done. The money at his command was totally insufficient to pay the expenses of the Civil List. The consequence was that the salaries of Judges and officials were not paid, and the excitement of the time put an end to all useful legislation. Bills coming up from the Assembly to the Legislative Council were thrown out, or so amended that they were rejected when sent down again. In the Assembly the time was chiefly spent in passing resolutions condemning the Governor-General and the Councils.

12. **M. Papineau** from the Speaker's chair launched forth his invectives against the arrogant tyranny of British power, and inflamed the mind and heart of his party against it; yet ten years before, no one had been so enthusiastic in praise of it. Seized with the revolutionary spirit that possessed his brethren in old France, he held up monarchical institutions to execration, poured praises on the Government of the United States, and expressed a fervent hope that it was the destiny of that great country to give republics to America. In the passion of the hour he was hurried into saying a great deal more than he meant; for, according to his own after-statement, he had no serious idea of rebelling, with arms in his hand, against British power. But his violent words were committing him to violent actions. The *Canadien* newspaper, which had been suppressed during the administration of Sir James Craig, was revived at this exciting time, and added fuel to the fire. It returned to its old role of denouncing the British as usurpers, foreigners, intruders. On the other hand, the British press stigmatized the French Canadians as rebels, ungrateful to the authority that had treated them too generously. Such recriminations exasperated the always strong antipathies of race. Seventy years had passed away since the Conquest, and French and British stood as distinctly apart as when they were enemies ranged against each other in the ranks of war. They did not meet at all in society, and not much in business; in the towns and counties, where there was a mixed population, they formed distinct parties. There was no disposition on either side to make concessions. The French Canadian majority would not submit to the arro-

gance of the British Councils, and the British minority would not endure the tyranny of a French Canadian majority.

13. **A crisis came.** The Assembly poured forth its griefs in Ninety-two Resolutions. Drawn up by Judge Morin, **1834** they were moved by Judge Bechard, and supported A.D. by Papineau in one of his most inflammatory and revolutionary speeches. They reiterated all the complaints that had been made by the Assembly since Dalhousie's time. The substance of this fearful volume of complaint may be given in one sentence:—"We, the French Canadians, have been treated with contumely; shut out from all offices of honour and emolument; defrauded by dishonest British officials, and denied all compensation; attempts have been made to change the tenure under which the body of our people hold their property, and to introduce laws foreign to our habits and customs; our lands have been recklessly given away: let justice be done; let the will of the majority rule; throw open to us all the seats in the Councils; give us entire control of all the revenues and all the lands; let us establish the authority of our own laws and customs all over the Province;—or we shall rebel."

14. **The Ninety-two Resolutions**, which made a great noise in their day, were embodied in the form of an address to the King and the Parliament. The British passed counter resolutions and drew up a counter address. Both parties received a patient hearing in England. The Imperial Government, disregarding the covert threats of rebellion couched in the French Canadian address, pursued a conciliatory course, to the mortification of the British official party, which thought that the time for concessions was past, and which had hoped to hear a decided refusal given to the demands of the majority. Lord Aylmer was recalled. **Lord Gosford** was appointed Governor-General, and the head of a Commission—whose other members were Sir Charles Grey and Sir James Gipps—to inquire into the grievances set forth in the addresses. This **Commission of Inquiry** arrived in Canada in 1835. It did not propitiate the French Canadians, and their papers continued to inveigh as strongly as ever against British tyranny.

15. Lord Gosford, an amiable, good-natured nobleman, found

himself in a difficult position. By his "Instructions" he was debarred from granting the majority the only conditions that would have pacified it. On meeting the Legislature his lordship used language that was calculated to assure the members of Assembly that he had full power to settle their grievances to their satisfaction, and laid himself open to a charge of duplicity. On the strength of the assurance he had given, his lordship called on them to vote the supplies. They were not satisfied, and the utmost concession they would make was to vote them for six months; they absolutely refused to pay the arrearages of the four preceding years, or to vote the full expenses of the Civil List, except on the condition that a fundamental change was made in the Constitution; that is, unless the Legislative Council were made elective, and the Executive Council were converted into a ministry responsible to the people. They also demanded that the Canada, Tenures, and Land Company Acts should be repealed; that all the Crown revenues should be surrendered to them without any conditions; and that the management of all the waste lands should be placed under their control. Affairs had now come to a **dead-lock**.

QUESTIONS.—1. On what struggle did Canada enter in 1828? When and how did it terminate? How was the movement affected by the spirit of the age? How by the position of immigrants, and of American settlers?

2. What was the general tenor of the Report of the Canada Committee? What did it recommend with reference to the Crown duties? to the constitution of the Executive and Legislative Councils? to the position of the Receiver-General? to the proceeds of the Jesuit estates? Of what action of the Governor-General did it disapprove?

3. What remedies were suggested for the grievances of the British population of the townships? What for the grievances of Upper Canada?

4. How was the report received in Canada? In what did it inspire confidence?

5. What two parties were accustomed to appeal to Parliament? How did the political agitation in England affect the Colonies? What circumstance gave

uniformity to the policy of the Colonial Office? What were Mr. Stephen's political leanings?

6. What led to Lord Dalhousie's recall? Who succeeded him?

7. What instructions did the British Government give to the Governor-General? Of whom did the Legislative Council, as remodelled, consist? What change was made in the mode of granting land?

8. What aroused the displeasure of the Assembly? On what condition only would it make permanent provision for the Judges?

9. In what state did Lord Aylmer find the Assembly? What were its demands? What end did it seek to obtain?

10. What were the real causes of the difficulties in Lower Canada? What would have been the consequence of making the Assembly supreme? Of what neglect had the Assembly been wilfully guilty? How were the two parties represented in the Assembly?

What was the effect of the pretensions put forth by the French party?

11. What was the state of affairs from 1831 till 1834? How was the time of the Assembly chiefly occupied?

12. To what sentiments did M. Papineau give expression? What part did the press take in the contest? In what attitude did the two parties stand towards each other?

13. What form did the complaints of the Assembly take? Give the substance of these resolutions.

14. In what were the resolutions embodied? What step did the British party take? What course did the Imperial Government pursue? Whom did this displease? What steps were actually taken? When did the Commission of Inquiry arrive?

15. How did Lord Gosford lay himself open to the charge of duplicity? What was the utmost concession the Assembly would make? What were its demands? Into what state had affairs now come?

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

## RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT—UPPER CANADA.

1828 to 1836 A.D.

William Lyon M'Kenzie.  
 The Family Compact.  
 William IV.—the People's Friend.  
 M'Kenzie expelled from the Assembly.  
 The People's Agent in Downing Street.  
 The Result of the Mission.

M'Kenzie dragged from his seat.  
 Lord Goderich.  
 The Fifty-six Rectories.  
 Sir Francis B. Head.  
 The Reformers deceived.  
 The Tories triumphant.

1. IN Upper Canada, Major-General Sir John Colborne succeeded Sir Peregrine Maitland. Great expectations were entertained by the Reform party that the suggestions of the Canada Committee would lead to some change in the composition of the Executive and Legislative Councils; but their hopes were doomed to be disappointed. The Governor-General adopted the views of the Family Compact. The question of the Clergy Reserves remained as exasperating and as unsettled as ever. **1828** A.D.

2. At this time **William Lyon M'Kenzie** gained notoriety. He had, when a poor lad, emigrated from Dundee, Scotland; after a few years' engagement in ordinary business in different towns in Upper Canada, he undertook the office of journalist, and became editor of the *Advocate* in York. Robert Gourlay, a precursor in the stony and thorny path of reform, had some years before been tried for libel, thrown into prison, and then, with ruined fortunes and shattered nerves, driven from the Province. It demanded much moral courage to be a political reformer in those days. It is difficult now to realize the fact that the existing form of government, which is accepted as a matter of course, was reached through furious storms of passion and obloquy, and at the cost to individuals of mental peace, social happiness, and private fortune. From the time that any one commenced to criticise the acts of Government he became a marked man: old friends fell away from him; he was subjected to outrages and insults most galling to a sensitive mind; leveller,

republican, rebel, were the mildest epithets hurled at him. M'Kenzie loved Canada, the country of his adoption. He convinced himself that the party in power obstructed its progress in improvement and in happiness. He was honest in his intentions, and had an intense hatred of injustice; but his impulsive temperament hurried him into extremes of word and deed. Early in his political career he was imbued with an admiration of American republican institutions. In despair of effecting constitutional reform, and exasperated by what he deemed persecution, he rushed without forethought into rebellion. He represented that class of British immigrants and American settlers who found themselves in the position of aliens and foreigners, who formed the extreme section of the Reform party, and were actuated by an intense hatred of the Family Compact. Their intemperate attacks were repelled with scorn. The violent and uncompromising temper of the assailants and the assailed infused a rancour into the political strife of Upper Canada unknown in the other British Provinces.

3. Between the two extremes there was a body of **Moderate Reformers**,—numbering among them such men as Robert Baldwin, Dr. Rolphe, Marshall Bidwell, and Judge Rideout,—who represented a portion of the population in a different social position from that of the Radical section, but who were equally anxious to break up the Family Compact; to make the Government responsible to the representatives of the people; to sweep away the invidious privileges claimed by the Church of England; to promote a better system of Crown land management, immigration, and settlement; to extend education to the children of the poorer classes; and, generally, to establish a less costly and more economical Government, that would spend less money on high salaries, pensions, and sinecures, and more on roads, canals, and other works of public utility. This body, up to a certain point, acted with the Radical section; but it held back when M'Kenzie entered on his desperate course. Yet to the impetus given by him the ultimate triumph of their principles was in a great measure due.

4. Editors of newspapers, fifty years ago, wrote very strong articles against their political opponents, but not a whit more violent than those that their successors of the present day pen

when their party spirit is aroused, or their indignation at corruption in government is excited. Fifty years ago the most furious personal abuse against the opponents of the party in power was allowable ; but an attack on the constituted authorities—even when couched in terms which would now be considered temperate — was a libel deserving of summary punishment. On account of some strictures, M'Kenzie came under the ban of the Government. Some youths connected with the official party broke into his office, destroyed his presses, and scattered his types. Though they were tried and fined for the offence, they suffered nothing in fortune or in reputation ; but the persecution won for M'Kenzie popular favour : he was elected one of the members for York, and was borne into the Assembly on the tide of sympathy.

5. A new House met, and the Reformers formed the large majority of the Assembly. An almost unanimous resolution was passed, calling on the Governor-General to **1829** change the composition of his Executive Council, and **A.D.** to introduce members into it whose sentiments were in accordance with those of the majority of the Assembly. The appeal had no effect. The Executive Councillors maintained that they held their offices for life ; they would hardly acknowledge that they were responsible to any power above them ; they scoffed at the idea of being held amenable to the people for their acts ; and totally disregarded the censure of the Assembly. The Reformers soon perceived that, while the Executive Council bade them defiance, a majority in the Assembly was no advantage to them, and that all useful legislation according to their principles was impossible. Their great aim now was to make the Executive Council responsible to the Assembly.

6. **The Tory-official party** had, from youth up, been trained in the belief that the preservation of the Province to the British Crown, and the maintenance of the British Constitution, depended on its upholding the prerogative of the Crown and its own privileges, and on its resisting the encroachments of the people. Many men of high character and talent belonged to it ; outside of the placemen who were dependent on it, there was throughout the Province an influential body which thought that power was safer in its hands than in those of the Reformers. The Family Compact was thus strongly intrenched, and it pos-

essed the prestige that the long enjoyment of high position gave it. To seek to destroy its influence was to incur a charge of disloyalty; and people, generally, were anxious to avoid such odium. Besides, the Tories were not the only political sinners. The Reform majority in the Assembly was as extravagant and reckless in voting away the public money as ever they had been,—a fact that strengthened the argument that it would abuse power if it gained it.

7. George IV. died in June, and was succeeded by William IV., "the People's Friend." In the new House that **1830** met the year after (1831), the Reform majority was A.D. reduced to a small minority. The Crown now **sur-rendered** the control of the Casual and Territorial Revenue to the Legislature, and the Tories made permanent provision for defraying certain expenses in the Civil List. Their "Everlasting Salaries Bill" was made a grievance by the extreme Reform section. M'Kenzie, after the defeat of his party, found himself almost alone in the Assembly. His free speech, and the persistency with which he ferreted into all acts of the Government that seemed to him to savour of corruption, drew upon him the concentrated hostility of the Tories. **He was expelled** from the Assembly on a charge of having published a libel against the Government. His constituents of York immediately reflected him. Again he was expelled, and declared to be disqualified for sitting in the Assembly during the term of the existing House.

8. This course of persecution elevated M'Kenzie to the rank of a martyr for the people's cause. Public meetings were held, at which the general policy of the Government and the tyrannical action of the Assembly were denounced. M'Kenzie was appointed agent to bear to England a petition to which were attached 24,000 signatures, setting forth the grievances under which the Province groaned, and indicating the reforms that were necessary to give it tranquillity. The time was **1832** auspicious. The Reform Administration<sup>1</sup> of Earl Grey A.D. was in power. In the British Parliament there were many members who sympathized with the object the

<sup>1</sup> *The Reform Administration.*—The Administration of Earl Grey, which passed the Parliamentary Reform Act in 1832. It lasted from November 1830 till

Colonial Reformers had in view. **Lord Goderich**, Colonial Secretary, lent an attentive ear to the long tale of grievances which the "people's agent" poured in, and promised redress. He wrote a despatch to Sir John Colborne relieving Attorney-General<sup>1</sup> Bolton and Solicitor-General Hagerman of their offices, as they had been especially active in expelling M'Kenzie from the Assembly.

9. M'Kenzie's triumph was short-lived. While he was in England the Hon. E. G. Stanley was transferred from the Irish Secretaryship to the Colonial Office, and undid **1833** what his predecessor had done. Hagerman was re- **A.D.** placed, and Bolton was appointed Chief-Justice of Newfoundland. This action added to the catalogue of the Reformers another grievance; for when they saw that a change in the head of the Colonial Office produced a change in its policy, it furnished them with an argument against the system of governing the Colonies from Downing Street, by ministers who were ignorant of their condition, and who were likely to be biased by sympathy with the party in power there.

10. The official party was indignant at the courteous reception accorded to M'Kenzie. In an address to the Governor-General both branches of the Legislature denounced him as being unworthy of credit, and characterized the grievances set forth in the petition as groundless. They treated the suggestions of Earl Goderich with hardly a show of decency. The result of M'Kenzie's mission to England was not great. Quakers, who had hitherto been prevented from voting, were granted the privilege; representatives of the towns were declared to be, equally with those of the counties, entitled to remuneration; the Government was commanded to lay detailed accounts of all receipts and expenditures annually before the Assembly; and the education of the people was brought under its notice as a subject worthy of serious consideration. During his absence M'Kenzie had been reelected for York. He

July 1834, with the exception of one week in 1832 (May 10 to 18), when the Duke of Wellington tried to form a Ministry, but failed. Lord Goderich was Colonial Secretary till March 1833, when he was made Lord Privy Seal,

with the title of Earl of Ripon. He was then succeeded by the Hon. E. G. Stanley (afterwards Lord Stanley and Earl of Derby), who till that time had been Chief Secretary for Ireland in the same Ministry.

entered the House, but was dragged from his seat by the Sergeant-at-arms, and compelled to retire. This proceeding created extraordinary popular excitement. It elicited remonstrances from Downing Street; M'Kenzie, nevertheless, was not permitted to take a seat during the term of the House.

**1834** The town of York was at this time incorporated, and A.D. became the **city of Toronto**, and M'Kenzie was elected its first Mayor.

11. In the new House, which met the following year, the Reformers mustered in force. Mr. Bidwell, an American by descent, and in bad odour with the Family Compact, was elected Speaker. At this time communications passed between the Assemblies of Upper and Lower Canada, and their

**1835** members commenced to act in concert against the Govern- A.D. nors and the Councils. A volume of complaints, known as the "**Seventh Report of Grievances**," was drawn up. It received the serious consideration of King William and his Ministry. Sir John Colborne was superseded by Sir Francis Bond Head,<sup>1</sup> who carried out with him an answer to the Report, which was intended to be conciliatory.

12. Sir John Colborne bequeathed a legacy of trouble to his successors, by sanctioning, before leaving his Government, the erection of **fifty-six rectories** out of the "Clergy Reserves." This act was pronounced legal, according to the provisions of the Constitutional Act of 1791, but it provoked the jealousy and aroused the hostility of the other denominations. On the eve of his leaving for England, Sir John was detained and appointed Commander-in-Chief of the forces of British North America.

13. **Sir Francis Bond Head** arrived in Toronto in January. Even M'Kenzie and his party looked with hope to him.

**1836** The rumour that he was a friend to reform preceded A.D. his coming. Never was rumour so falsified by fact.

His appointment at so grave a crisis was regarded by some people as throwing doubt on the asserted good intentions of the British Government. Sir Francis himself looked upon

<sup>1</sup> *Sir Francis Bond Head*.—Born 1793; author of several humorous books of travel, as, "Rough Notes of some Rapid Journeys Across the Pampas,"

and "A Fortnight in Ireland." He published, in 1838, a "Narrative" in defence of his Administration in Upper Canada.

it at first as a ministerial joke, for he frankly confessed his entire ignorance of everything pertaining to the colonies and their government. He was an author of some repute, and had given evidence of business capacity as a Poor Law Commissioner; but his political prejudices unfitted him for conducting a mission of conciliation. His first official act caused embarrassment. His "Instructions" were almost identical with those which had been given to Lord Gosford, and were adverse to the popular demands for an elective Legislative Council and a responsible Executive. He submitted them in full to the Assembly, contrary to the intention of Lord Glenelg,<sup>1</sup> then Colonial Secretary. Papineau and his party in Lower Canada thus received confirmation of their suspicions, and grew more rebellious in their utterances, inveighing against the bad faith of the British Government and the duplicity of the Governor-General.

14. Sir Francis Head animated the hopes of the Reformers only to sink them in the depths of disappointment. He called three members of the party—Baldwin, Rolphe, and Dunn—to seats in the Executive Council, but refused to recognize the principle of responsibility to the Assembly, on which they insisted. He told them that they were responsible for their acts to him alone, while he was responsible to the King and the Parliament; that he was not bound to ask the advice of his Council, and would only do so when it suited himself. The three members resigned, and a break-up of the Council ensued. Sir Francis then threw himself into the arms of the Family Compact. A new Council was formed, composed entirely of members of that party. There was war to the knife between the Governor and the Reformers. An address condemning the action of Sir Francis, and arraigning him for want of truth and candour, was passed in the Assembly; and, for the first time, it **refused to vote the supplies.** At the close of the session Speaker Bidwell read a letter from Speaker Papineau, calling on the Reformers of Upper Canada, and of all the British North American Provinces, to unite in order to obtain redress of their common grievances. The British lion was aroused in the heart of Sir Francis. He conceived that the purport of the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Lord Glenelg.*—Colonial Secretary | 1835 till 1839, when he was succeeded  
in Lord Melbourne's Ministry, from | by the Marquis of Normanby.

letter was revolutionary—that it showed a design to subvert the British Constitution and to establish a republican form of government, and conveyed threats of foreign interference in the domestic quarrel. Alluding to the letter, in his speech before dissolving the House, he said that the people of Upper Canada were loyal, and detested democracy; and then, throwing out a challenge to an imaginary host of foreign invaders, he exclaimed, "Let them come if they dare."

15. Sir Francis Head was convinced that "**Monarchy or Democracy**" was the issue at stake in the political contest in Upper Canada. He conceived that it was his mission to fight against Democracy. As visible evidence that he was determined to uphold monarchical institutions, he caused the royal standard to be unfurled over Government House, "for the first time in the history of the Province." He threw himself heart and soul into the elections. In addresses and speeches he put the issue before the people. The contest was bitter in the extreme. The battle was for the Constitution as it was, and for the preservation of its privileges, and the whole influence of the Family Compact was brought to bear to defend them. The result was **victory** for Sir Francis and the Tories. M'Kenzie, Bidwell, and other Reformers, were not returned as members of the new House. The unfair means that their opponents, as they conceived, had taken to defeat them rankled in their hearts. Sir Francis congratulated himself that the question was settled—Monarchy had triumphed, and Upper Canada was pacified. He soon afterwards received a despatch from Lord Glenelg instructing him to enlarge his Council, by adding to it members who represented the different interests of the Province, and who possessed the confidence of the people. Such a measure of concession, faithfully carried out, would have satisfied the more moderate of the Reformers. Sir Francis, however, would not pursue a conciliatory course; he ran counter to his instructions, and widened the breach between himself and the whole party.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who succeeded Maitland as Governor of Upper Canada? What views did Colborne adopt?

2. Who was William Lyon M'Kenzie? What dangers had political re-

formers to encounter in those days? Wherein was M'Kenzie indiscreet? What class did he represent?

3. Who were the Moderate Reformers? What were their aims?

4. How did M'Kenzie fall under the ban of the Government? How was he persecuted? What effect had his persecution?

5. What resolution did the new House of Assembly pass? What did the Executive Councillors maintain? What did the Reformers then perceive?

6. What were the views of the Tory-official party? How was it supported? To what charge had the Reform majority laid itself open?

7. How was the position of parties changed in 1831? What concession did the Crown make? For what was M'Kenzie expelled from the Assembly? What followed?

8. On what mission was M'Kenzie employed? Why was the time auspicious? How was M'Kenzie received? What steps did Goderich take?

9. What led to the reversal of Goderich's policy? What effect had this action?

10. How did the official party give expression to their views on M'Kenzie and the petition? What were the only results of his mission? What took place

when he took his seat in the Assembly? What honour was conferred on him in 1834?

11. Who was elected Speaker of the new House? With whom did the Assembly begin to act in concert? What volume was prepared? What effect had it?

12. What legacy of trouble did Colborne bequeath to his successor? Whose jealousy did the Act excite?

13. How did Sir Francis Head disappoint the expectations which had been formed regarding him? What was his first official act? What embarrassment did it cause?

14. What led to the breach between Sir Francis and the Reformers? What extreme step did the Assembly take? What letter did Speaker Bidwell read at the close of the session? How did Sir Francis deal with the letter?

15. What did Sir Francis conceive to be the issue at stake? How did the contest end? What instructions soon afterwards arrived from the Colonial Secretary? How did Sir Francis widen the breach?

## CHAPTER XXXV.

## RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT—THE LOWER PROVINCES.

1832 to 1837 A.D.

The Family Compact of Nova Scotia.	Sir Archibald Campbell.
Joseph Howe and L. A. Wilmot.	Hon. G. F. Street in Downing Street.
Division of the Council of New Brunswick.	The Civil List Bill passed.
Crown Land Department.	Harvey and the Reign of Harmony.
Mission of Messrs. Simonds and Chandler.	Joseph Howe.
Surrender of Casual and Territorial Revenue.	The closed doors.
Mission of Messrs. Crane and Wilmot.	The Twelve Resolutions.
	The doors opened.
	The King's gracious intentions defeated.

1. **In the Lower Provinces**, at this time, there was much political agitation. It was comparatively mild in its character, as neither New Brunswick nor Nova Scotia was troubled by those questions of race and origin which aroused such rancorous feelings in Lower and Upper Canada. The form of their government was, however, similar, and excited similar discontent. The events passing in the Upper Provinces had an influence on the people of the Lower, and helped to break them away from their habit of "passive obedience," of which some of the leaders among them complained.

2. **In Nova Scotia** the domination of a Family Compact was as firmly established as in Upper Canada. The Executive and Legislative Councils (as in New Brunswick) formed one branch, and combined the functions of making and administering the laws. The members were all residents of Halifax, and did not represent the interests of other parts of the Province. All the principal offices were in the hands of two or three families, and the subordinate places were distributed among their adherents. Ten of the twelve Councillors were members of the Church of England; the other two were members of the Church of Scotland; all other denominations were unrepresented. The Bishop sat at the Council board, the Chief-Justice mingled in political disputes. Five of the Councillors were partners in a bank. The

Council sat in secret conclave, with closed doors, contemptuous towards the House of Assembly and defiant of public opinion.

3. In **New Brunswick** the Council was similarly constituted, but the members did not keep themselves so rigidly aloof from the people or their representatives, and they represented fairly the interests of the whole Province. In some respects the position of the sister Provinces was singularly alike. The interest of a political struggle sometimes centres in a particular individual. In Nova Scotia at this time, **Joseph Howe**, the son of a Loyalist, was rising into notice. He had qualities that fitted him to become a leader of the people. He had a very sociable temper, and was a ready, vigorous, eloquent, and humorous speaker and writer. His occupation of journalist made him intimately acquainted with the political questions of the day; and he came into close contact with all classes of people in the Province. The name of "Joe Howe" soon became as familiar in their mouths as a household word. By his writings in the press, by his speeches and acts in the Assembly, by his letters to public men in Great Britain, he did much to subvert the old system of rule in the Provinces, to make the principles of responsible government understood, and to draw attention to British North America. In New Brunswick, **Lemuel Allan Wilmot** took the lead of the reforming party. On both sides of his family he was connected with the old Loyalists and the party in power. He was a member of the profession of law, which, in the Provinces, soonest leads to political distinction. On his first entering the Assembly the influence of his brilliant eloquence was felt.

4. At that time two military men of the same name, and alike in character, ruled in the sister Provinces. **Sir Colin Campbell** was Governor of Nova Scotia; **Sir Archibald Campbell**, of New Brunswick. They were brusque soldiers, bred in the habits of command and implicit obedience, and possessing little of the suavity and ductility of polished politicians. They naturally ranged themselves on the side of the constituted authorities, and in opposition to innovation and reform.

5. The first movement towards political change was made in New Brunswick. A division was made by which the Legislative Council became a branch separate from the **1832** Executive Council. The latter body was composed of **A.D.**

five members,—Honourables <sup>Thomas</sup> William Bailey, Frederick Robinson, William F. Odell, George F. Street, and John S. Saunders. The ostensible object of the division was to open up a channel of communication between the Executive and the Assembly, by appointing members of the latter body to seats in the Council. As no increase was made to the number of five, the change was regarded as having been made entirely in the interest of the old "Compact" party, and excited much dissatisfaction among members of the Legislative Council and the Assembly.

6. New Brunswick had many grievances then; the chief of all was the state of **the Crown Land Department**. The system of granting lands favoured the rich, the influential, the large lumber operators, and was very obnoxious to the people. The head officer, the "Chief Commissioner," was appointed by the Crown, and was in a position to disregard their censure. He enjoyed a large salary, swelled by fees and perquisites, out of proportion to the incomes of other officials. This enabled him, it was said, to live in a style that set a bad example of extravagance. Out of the proceeds of the sales of lands—the Casual and Territorial Revenue—the salaries of the Governor, Judges, and officials were paid; and a surplus remained after the payment of this Civil List. The Assembly had no control over the management of the Crown lands and the revenue derived from them. During the session of 1832 that body prayed the Governor to submit to it detailed accounts of the moneys received and expended by the department. The request was brusquely refused. The Assembly then deputed Messrs. Charles Simonds and E. B. Chandler delegates to make arrangements with the Imperial Government for the surrender into its hands of the Casual and Territorial Revenue. Terms were proposed by Mr. Stanley, then Colonial Secretary (1833), and accepted by the Assembly; but through some misunderstanding, or secret influence, the arrangement was not carried out. One of the alleged causes of the failure was the refusal of the Secretary to include in the surplus the payments made by the **New Brunswick and Nova Scotia Land Company**.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Land Company*.—The Company | but was not incorporated by Royal  
named was formed in London in 1831, | Charter until 1834. Its object was to

7. The Assembly again grappled with the Crown land question. Dissatisfaction with the state of the department had, in the meantime, increased. The battle was commenced by L. A. Wilmot moving an address to the Governor for detailed accounts of the lands sold during the previous year. In answer, Sir Archibald Campbell caused a mere general statement to be laid before the Assembly. This course showed disregard to the instructions he had received from the Colonial Office, and incensed the members. An address to the King, praying for the redress of grievances, was passed; and Messrs. Crane and L. A. Wilmot were appointed delegates to carry it to the foot of the throne. 1836  
A.D.

8. The spirit of the **Address of the Assembly** met the marked approval of King William. Lord Glenelg evinced a disposition to meet the views of the delegates. After several interviews, at which the surrender of the Casual and Territorial Revenue was considered in all its bearings, a definite arrangement was concluded, and the draft of a Bill for the support of the Civil Government of the Province was drawn up. By its provisions the net amount of the Casual and Territorial Revenue was placed at the disposal of the Assembly, on condition of its making a permanent provision of £14,500 currency annually, for the support of the Civil List. The salaries of the officials on the list were not touched, but a reduction was promised, in some cases, in event of death and of new appointments. The management of the Crown lands was vested in the Governor and Council; but they were commanded to submit detailed accounts, fourteen days after the opening of each session, to enable the Assembly to maintain a supervision over the department. The principle of calling members of the Assembly to the Executive Council was recognized, but no peremptory rule was laid down. The selection of members of the Legislative Council from the ranks of gentlemen representing the various

promote emigration from the overcrowded parishes of England, and to give employment to the poorest class in making roads, clearing land, and building houses. It also held out inducements to officers retired from the military and civil services to settle on

farms, and increase their means by husbandry. A tract of over 500,000 acres, between the St. John and Miramichi Rivers was purchased, for the sum of £56,000, of which £21,000 was paid down, leaving a balance of £35,000.

interests of the Province was recommended. All grants and leases of lands, unless sold by public auction to the highest bidder, were declared null and void.

9. The Assembly seemed to have gained a victory, but the battle was only half fought. The members of Council had a strong personal interest in maintaining the old order of things. They raised objections to the Bill, to the insufficiency of the sum of £14,500 to cover all the expenses of the Civil List, as the salaries of the Judges of the Circuit Courts and several contingencies had been omitted; and to the injustice that would be done to a numerous and useful class of squatters, who could show no title to the land they were living on if the clause regarding sale by public auction were carried into effect.

10. The views of Sir Archibald Campbell might have been coloured by the sentiments of his Council, but he was in a position to be independent. He was opposed to the Surrender of the Casual and Territorial Revenue into the hands of the Assembly. He was afraid that the large surplus from that revenue, amounting to £171,222, would be squandered, as he thought that it was unsafe to intrust a legislative body with the expenditure of money; while, if the sum were properly invested, it would secure a permanent Civil List, and leave the annual revenues free to be devoted to purposes of general improvement. In answer to the despatch of Lord Glenelg, transmitting the draft of "the Civil List Bill," the Governor wrote counter despatches pointing out errors and omissions, and suggesting amendments.

11. The Legislature met in January. Sir Archibald Campbell had not received an answer to his despatches, and he  
**1837** wished to gain time. He assumed a cold and stiff attitude, and signified his desire that, in the event of the  
 A.D. Civil List Bill being passed, a "suspending clause" should be appended to it. The Bill was passed by the Assembly and the Legislative Council by large majorities. To meet the views of the Governor and his Council, they declared themselves willing to provide for all necessary expenses and to protect all just rights; but they refused to make any alteration in the Bill, or to append to it the suspending clause, the effect of which would have been to render the Act inoperative until the will of the

King concerning the amendments suggested by the Governor should be known. They were apprehensive that, in the event of these amendments meeting the approval of the Colonial Secretary, the Bill would be so altered by their insertion that the law officers of the Crown might advise His Majesty to refuse his assent to it. A deputation of the Legislature waited on the Governor to request that he would give his assent to the Bill. "Not without the suspending clause," said Sir Archibald. Later, the deputation again approached him with the question, "Would His Excellency assent to the Bill in the event of his receiving an answer to his despatches before the close of the session?" Sir Archibald would give no direct answer.

12. On the 7th of February the Legislature was startled by the report that the Hon. George F. Street had secretly departed on a mission to **Downing Street**. This sudden movement of the Governor and the Council excited alarm and suspicion. Resolutions, pitched in a tone of strong indignation, denouncing the acts of the Council, and demanding the recall of the Governor, were passed by the Assembly; and an address to the King, embodying their sentiments and spirit, was drawn up. When this address was presented to Sir Archibald Campbell, the old soldier met the censure of the Legislature with an air and with words of perfect indifference. The temper displayed by the Governor was not calculated to allay the angry excitement. Messrs. Crane and Wilmot were again deputed delegates to lay the address at the foot of the throne. They left Frederickton on the 9th amidst demonstrations of popular feeling. On the 21st they had an interview with Lord Glenelg in Downing Street, when they were informed that Sir Archibald Campbell had resigned, and that Major-General Sir John Harvey had been appointed to succeed him. Their arguments and representations nullified the efforts of the Hon. G. F. Street, the Council's delegate, to obtain a modification of the Bill.

13. **The Civil List Bill** became law on the 17th of July. The Reformers rejoiced over the great boon which they had obtained. Honours were bestowed on the delegates: Mr. Crane was called to a seat in the Executive Council; Mr. Wilmot was appointed King's Counsel. In the overflow of its gratitude, the Assembly requested Lord Glenelg to allow his

full-length portrait to be taken ; and it now hangs over the Speaker's chair in the chamber in Frederickton. The principle of the Civil List Bill was the basis of the Constitution which the Imperial Government proposed to extend to all the British North American Provinces. It was objected to by Sir Francis B. Head, who complained that Messrs. Crane and Wilmot had made a Constitution for Upper Canada without its assent being asked. The Reformers, however, in that Province and in Lower Canada looked upon the concessions made by the Imperial Government as most unsatisfactory. They stifled political agitation in New Brunswick, and, under the benign rule of Sir John Harvey, **the Reign of Harmony** between all the branches of the Legislature was inaugurated.

14. The contest did not commence in earnest in Nova Scotia until it was almost ended in New Brunswick. Joseph Howe entered the Assembly for the first time in 1837. He had proved himself to be a bold and acute reasoner. Two years before, he had been tried for publishing a libel on the Board of Magistrates which governed the town of Halifax. He proved the charges of incapacity and corruption that he had preferred against them, and was triumphantly acquitted. He acted as his own counsel on the occasion, and showed himself to be eminently qualified to take his own part. The Reformers looked to him as to the Ajax who should "defy the lightning" of the Council. It required a bold man to do that. On his motion a demand was made that the doors of the Council **should 1837 be thrown open**. It was met by defiant taunts. Howe A.D. returned to the charge, and hurled at the heads of the Council **Twelve Resolutions**, which repeated the demand for "open doors," and denounced the Council, in a body, as being exclusive, intolerant, opposed to the spread of civil and religious liberty, enlightenment, and education among the people, and actuated by motives of self-interest that were prejudicial to the trade and commerce of the Province. Stung by the imputation on their character, the members of Council angrily called on the Assembly to rescind the obnoxious resolutions, threatening to stop all legislation in case of refusal. A collision, which would have been very hurtful to the country, was adroitly averted. The resolutions were cancelled ; but

they were embodied in an address to the King, in which the members prayed for, among other reforms, the exclusion of the Bishop and Chief-Justice from the Council, and for an elective Legislative Council.

15. Lord Glenelg extended to Nova Scotia the provisions of the Civil List Bill of New Brunswick. Nearly everything was conceded save the elective Legislative Council. The doors were thrown open at last. The Assembly, however, soon began to complain that it had been amused by a mere mockery of concession. The gracious intentions of the King, it was said, were defeated by the manner in which the Governor carried them out. The Council was divided into two branches, but the new appointments were made from the Family Compact. The Assembly refused to make permanent provision for the Civil List, on the ground that the scale of salaries was too high for so poor a Province. The surrender of the Casual and Territorial Revenue was not an object of so great importance to it as it had been to the Assembly of New Brunswick. The proceeds were not nearly so great, and there was not only no large surplus in the treasury, but Nova Scotia was in debt.

16. Events in the Canadas were now running in a revolutionary current. Those who in Nova Scotia raised their voices for an elective Legislative Council were pronounced to be partisans of Papineau, and were stigmatised as rebels and republicans. The Reformers shifted their ground, and directed all their efforts to remodel the Executive Council, and make it "responsible to the people."

QUESTIONS.—1. What made the political agitation in the Lower Provinces milder than that in the Upper? What effect had the events in the latter Provinces on the former?

2. What was the state of affairs in Nova Scotia? Who were the members of the Supreme Council? What was its attitude towards the Assembly, and towards public opinion?

3. How was the Council constituted in New Brunswick? What two men came into notice as political leaders in Nova Scotia and in New Brunswick? Sketch their characters.

4. Who were then Governors of the

sister Provinces? Describe their common character. On which side did they range themselves?

5. Where was the first movement made towards political change? Of what did it consist? Whom did it dissatisfy? Why?

6. What was the chief grievance of New Brunswick? What was the result of the negotiations with Mr. Stanley?

7. When did the Assembly again grapple with the land question? How did the battle commence? How did the Governor incense the Assembly? What did it then do?

8. How was the address of the Assembly received by the King and by the Colonial Secretary? What were the chief provisions of the Civil List Bill?

9. What objections did the Council raise to the Bill?

10. What were the views of Sir Archibald Campbell? How did he answer Lord Glenelg's despatch?

11. What proposal did the Governor make, in the event of the Bill being passed? Why did the Assembly oppose the suspending clause? What position did the Governor take up?

12. What movement of the Governor and Council excited alarm? What did the Assembly consequently do? What did the delegates learn from Lord Glenelg?

13. When did the Civil List Bill become law? How were the delegates re-

warded? What compliment was paid to Lord Glenelg? Of what did the Bill lay the foundation? What objection did Sir Francis Head make to it? How were its concessions regarded by the Reformers in the Canadas?

14. When did the contest begin in Nova Scotia? On what occasion had Howe proved his ability? What motion did he make in the Assembly? What did he do when the demand was refused? How was a serious collision averted?

15. What was the result of the appeal to the Imperial Government? What complaint did the Assembly soon begin to make?

16. How were events now running in the Canadas? What led the Reformers to shift their ground? To what did they direct their efforts?

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

## REBELLION.

1837 A.D.

Lord John Russell's Resolutions.	Affairs at St. Denis and St. Charles.
Opinions regarding Responsible Government.	Flight of Papineau.
Final Dissolution of the Legislature of Lower Canada.	M'Kenzie threatens Toronto.
Sir Francis Head tranquilly awaits Rebellion.	The Rebels defeated at Montgomery Farm.
The Meeting of the Five Counties.	Loyal enthusiasm of Militia of Upper Canada.
"The Dorics" and "Sons of Liberty."	Insurrection in the Two Mountains crushed.

1. **The crisis now came.** In Lower Canada legislation was at a stand-still. Since 1832 the Assembly had refused to vote the supplies. Great suffering was the result to individuals. The Judges and officials, who were chiefly British, were reduced to dire straits. Yet such was the rancorous spirit of the strife, that the members of the Assembly, who were mainly French Canadians, mocked at the misery which they had created. 1837  
A.D.

2. On the meeting of the Imperial Parliament in February, the **Reports of the "Royal Commission of Inquiry"** were laid before it. On the 6th of March, Lord John Russell<sup>1</sup> introduced a series of Ten Resolutions, which embodied the chief suggestions made in them, and a coercive measure empowering the Governor-General to take, without the sanction of the Assembly, £142,000 out of the moneys in the hands of the Receiver-General, to pay the arrears of the Civil List. In the House of Commons, the friends of the French Canadians warned him that such an arbitrary stretch of power would drive them into rebellion, and into the arms of the United States. Lord John Russell met the prediction coolly and quietly. He

<sup>1</sup> *Lord John Russell.*—Born 1792; to the House of Commons 1831; three third son of the Duke of Bedford; times Prime Minister of England, 1846, entered Parliament 1813; took office 1851, 1865; raised to the peerage as Earl 1830; introduced the first Reform Bill Russell, 1861.

was not apprehensive that the United States would provoke a quarrel with Great Britain. The Imperial Government did not propose to take money out of the Canadian treasury for its own purposes, but to do an act of justice to individuals. The Lower Canadians had no real grievances. The people were very lightly taxed; the Assembly had control over the expenditure of the revenues; and the Executive and Legislative Councils would be remodelled in such a way as to give them a fairer representation.

3. In the House of Lords, Brougham alone protested against the policy of the Government. That policy was opposed to the chief demands of Papineau and his party. It refused to convert the Legislative Council into an elective body. The feelings of the King were opposed to such a change; which change, moreover, would tend to subvert an important principle of the Constitution. The Legislative Council, a body in some measure analogous to the House of Lords, was constituted to be a check to the encroachments and hasty legislation of the Assembly. If, like the latter, it were made elective, it would equally represent popular sentiment and feeling, and the barrier would be swept away. The Government policy also refused to make the Executive Council responsible to the people. The reasons for the refusal advanced by Lord John Russell were then very generally held by Liberals as well as by Tories in England, and were for a long time stumbling-blocks in the way of the Reformers. It was maintained that colonies held a different position from that of the mother country, and that the exact form of government that obtained in the latter was incompatible with the condition of the former, as dependent, subordinate provinces. In Great Britain, the King was placed above the passions of political strife. He represented the abiding power of the State. The Government was carried on by a body of advisers, a Ministry commanding the support of a majority of the people's representatives in the House of Commons. For its acts the Ministry was responsible to them. When it no longer met support, when the majority dwindled into a minority, the Ministry resigned its offices into the hands of the leaders of the party opposed to it, who enjoyed the confidence of the majority. The Ministry might doubt if the majority against it in the

House of Commons represented the real sentiments of the mass of the electors ; it might advise the King to dissolve the House and appeal to the people, in whose power was the ultimate fate of Ministries. If, after standing the test of a general election, the Ministry found that its acts were condemned, and that its supporters would be in the minority, it gave place without further demur to its opponents. To his new body of advisers the King, whose position was unaffected by the war of parties and the fall of Ministries, gave his confidence as representing the mind of the majority of the nation. But the Governor of a province was not a ruler in that supreme sense. He was appointed by the King and the Parliament, and was responsible to them for his acts. He received his instructions from the Colonial Office, and with the aid of his Executive Council carried them out. If the Executive Council were converted into a Ministry responsible to the people, as in Great Britain, the Governor would become a mere cipher ; power would be transferred from King and Parliament to the body of electors in the Province, and the Province would become independent. Its position in relation to the Empire would be changed. The ultimate result of this state of virtual independence would be the severance of the tie that bound the mother country and the Province together,—the overthrow of monarchical and the establishment of republican institutions.

4. The moderate Reformers contended that such extreme results would not follow upon the granting of responsible government to the Provinces. The supreme power of the Crown would remain unquestioned. The Governor, as the representative of the King, would, under imperial direction, have the command of the naval and military forces, the power of making treaties and binding the colonies, and of regulating their commerce according to the general interests of the Empire. It was only over mere local affairs, of which the Imperial Government could have no intimate knowledge, and in which it had really no interest, that they sought to establish the principle of the responsibility of the Executive to the people. The spirit of the great majority of the colonists was misunderstood. Their loyalty to the Crown and to the British Constitution was deep-seated. They were bound to their fellow-countrymen at

home by the ties of pride in the past history of the Empire, and of social and commercial interest in the present. They claimed the same lineage with them, spoke the same language, obeyed the same laws; all they asked was, that they should not be placed in an inferior position, as regarded their government, to their brethren in the old country.

5. When the **Resolutions of Lord John Russell** were read in Lower Canada, they excited exultation in the British and rage in the French Canadian party. The Act empowering the Governor-General to take £142,000 out of the treasury, was denounced by Papineau and other leaders as being quite as unjust and arbitrary as any that had driven the American Colonies into rebellion. They would not listen when it was said that the Imperial Government was justified in exercising extreme authority, since the Assembly had abandoned its legislative functions, and for five years had refused to vote the supplies. To show their detestation of imperial tyranny, they counselled the habitans not to use any dutiable articles, and to resort to smuggling rather than help to raise a revenue. In their rage and disappointment at being denied the changes in the Constitution which they had demanded, they entered upon the most **violent courses**. Abandoning the position of Reformers, they became **flaming Patriots**, determined to obtain by force of arms the concessions that had been refused to their addresses. The crisis demanded the exercise of calm judgment, and never were its dictates less regarded.

6. The Russell Resolutions affected Upper Canada equally with Lower Canada, and dashed the hopes of the extreme section of the Reformers. M'Kenzie and Papineau now clasped hands, and took the same desperate resolve—to rebel. If they had listened to the counsel of their best friends in England, they would have paused before committing themselves to so mad a course. The Imperial Government, they were told, had shown a disposition to be conciliatory; it could not be expected to break loose at once from the system of government that had obtained in the colonies ever since the colonies had had an existence. It would be wisdom on the part of the Reformers to accept the concessions offered in the same spirit, and to wait until it was seen how they should be carried

out before making further demands. Equally, however, it behoved the opponents of reform to be moderate. The gracious intention of the Imperial Government to remodel the Executive and Legislative Councils, by appointing members fairly representing the interests of all parties in the Provinces, might be defeated by the way in which it was carried out; its letter might be obeyed by increasing the number of members of the Councils, but its spirit disregarded by selecting them from persons in whom the people and their representatives had no confidence. That was not the time for the party in power to intrench itself selfishly behind its privileges, but to yield gracefully to necessity. They took counsel, however, of their pride. Papineau and his party gave way to their **rage and disappointment**. The seemingly irresolute tone assumed by Lord John Russell tended to draw them into the path of danger. If they had been met with the stern announcement that the Imperial Government had conceded so much and would concede no more, and that the force of the Empire would be used to crush rebellion, it is scarcely conceivable that they would have harangued the simple habitans on their duty as patriots to free themselves from British tyranny, and counselled them to attend political meetings with arms in their hands.

7. About the end of June, Lord Gosford, alarmed at the turn that affairs were taking, **issued a Proclamation**, warning the people of Lower Canada of the danger they were incurring by attending seditious gatherings. Copies were posted up in public places, and on the walls of the churches; but they were torn down with shouts of "Down with the Proclamation!" "Long live Papineau, our deliverer!" "Hurrah for liberty!" In the course of the summer all the British troops were concentrated in and about Montreal. Two additional regiments were called for from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Unwilling to proceed to extremities, Lord Gosford convened the Legislature towards the end of August. In his opening speech he besought the members of Assembly to resume their duties, to pass the supplies, and to accept the conciliatory measures offered by the Imperial Government. But his friendly overtures were met by demands for an elective

June,  
1837  
A.D.

Legislative Council, a responsible Executive, full, unconditional control of all the revenues and lands, and a termination of imperial interference in provincial affairs. Lord Gosford had no option but to dissolve the House and let rebellion run its course.

8. Immediately after the dissolution, **agitation** was carried on with increased fury. Papineau traversed the country from Montreal to Rimouski. Dr. Wolfred Nelson, Lafontaine, Girouard, and other leaders, held insurrectionary meetings in the counties south of the St. Lawrence. The blessing of the Church was not on the work. The clergy were solemnly instructed by the Bishops of Quebec and Montreal to refuse the rites of the Church to those who took part in it. But even the threat of excommunication had no terrors: the habitans turned on their priests, and told them not to meddle with matters political.

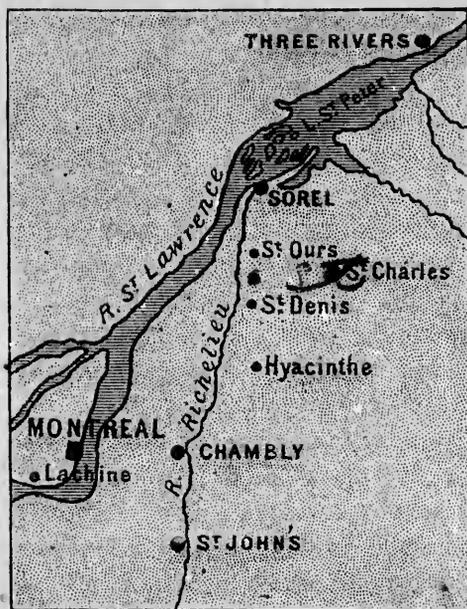
9. In Upper Canada the Tories were triumphant, and the Reformers were driven to desperation. To M'Kenzie's soured spirit and excited mind the opportunity, now that Lower Canada was on the eve of open rebellion, appeared to be favourable to shake the Province free of Sir Francis Head and his band of hireling officials. He wildly reasoned himself into the conviction that success was possible. On the 2nd Aug. 2. of August, **the Declaration of the Reformers**, in which they set forth at length their unredressed grievances, renounced imperial authority, and gave their active sympathy to the cause of the French Canadians, was published. It was signed by M'Kenzie and other members of the extreme section; but the more moderate men, Baldwin, Rolphe, and Bidwell, carefully abstained from appending their signatures. A Vigilance Committee was formed in Toronto; and Reform Unions were established in the Home and Gore districts. M'Kenzie travelled from village to village, inflaming the minds of the people. Sometimes he barely escaped very rough usage from the Loyalist farmers and members of the Irish Orange Society. Sir Francis gave him full scope to say and do what he pleased. He might easily have nipped the rebellion in the bud; but he chose to allow it to grow to a head. He sent all the regular troops out of the Province to aid Lord Gosford and Sir John

Colborne, and proclaimed his intention to trust to the loyalty of the brave militia of Upper Canada. "With folded arms" he awaited the outburst of the rebellion.

10. By the middle of October the state of Lower Canada became **alarming**. From the county of the Two Mountains the British settlers flocked into Montreal, leaving their farms to be ravaged by the excited habitans. On the 25th a great gathering took place at St. Charles on the Richelieu,—**the Meeting of the Five Counties**, as it was called. On the meadow a column was erected surmounted by a cap of Liberty, and bearing the inscription, "To Papineau, by his grateful brother Patriots." A band of armed militia kept the ground. Inflammatory speeches were made, and revolutionary resolutions passed amidst wild acclamations, followed by volleys of musketry. The young Patriots marched past the leaders; at the column of Liberty they paused, and laying their hands on it, solemnly vowed to devote themselves to the service of their country. Political organizations were formed in Montreal and Quebec, which marked the division of the races and provoked a disturbance of the peace. On the 6th of November, **Nov. 6.** the British "**Doric**" Club dispersed, by force, a meeting of French Canadian "**Sons of Liberty.**" No life was taken on either side; but the affair was remarkable as being the first collision that took place, and as a proof that both parties were prepared to come to blows.

11. The Governor-General now gave orders for the arrest of the ringleaders of the revolt on the southern bank of the St. Lawrence. A party of volunteer cavalry, returning from St. John's by way of Argenteuil, were surprised by a body of insurgents, and routed, with the loss of two prisoners whom they had taken. A simultaneous **attack** was made on the strongholds of the rebels on the Richelieu River. On the night of the 22nd November, Colonel Gore, with **Nov. 22.** five hundred men, one gun, and a few mounted police, advanced from Sorel to St. Denis, where Dr. Wolfred Nelson and a body of rebels held a strong position. Colonel Wetherall, with a slightly larger force, moved from Chambly to St. Charles, where "General" Stowell Brown and a party of habitans were posted in an old French chateau, within well-

barricaded grounds. The weather was dark and stormy, and the mud on the roads ankle-deep. It was ten o'clock the following



ST. DENIS AND ST. CHARLES.

morning before Colonel Gore's force reached St. Denis, a distance of sixteen miles from Sorel. Dr. Nelson had his men posted in a strong stone building, and in houses that lined the road leading to it. As the British soldiers, exhausted and foot-sore, advanced to attack the main position, they suffered a galling fire on their flanks. They could make no impression on the stone house; so leaving their one gun stuck fast in the mire, they retreated, crest-fallen,

carrying sixteen of their comrades killed and wounded. A young officer, **Lieutenant Weir**, carrying despatches from Gore to Wetherall, was intercepted by some of the insurgents, and murdered in the most barbarous manner.

12. Owing to the frightful state of the roads and the destruction of the bridges, it was noon of the 25th before Colonel Nov. 25. Wetherall reached **St. Charles**. The old chateau was strong, but its defenders were wretchedly armed with untrustworthy muskets and fowling-pieces. "General" Brown was a very different leader from the intrepid Doctor of St. Denis, and he fled after the first shot was fired. The deluded habitans made a stand for a time, till the red-coats, charging over the barricades, broke into the chateau grounds and poured a deadly volley of musketry upon them. All then fled who could flee. At the close of the contest, Colonel Wetherall counted fifty-six dead bodies of the insurgents. In revenge for the murder of Lieutenant Weir, the soldiery let loose their fury on the villagers. Daunted by the fate of St. Charles, Dr. Nelson

evacuated St. Denis on the 5th, on hearing the report of the advance of Colonel Gore with a fresh force. Emeutes among the habitans of St. Ours and Hyacinthe were promptly quelled. Papineau, the "head and front of the rebellion," and other leaders, were by this time **across the frontier**, and safe in the United States. Dr. Wolfred Nelson, in attempting to escape, was captured and lodged in Montreal jail.

13. Not until the fate of Papineau and his party had been decided at St. Denis and St. Charles did rebellion break out in Upper Canada. Deceived by the seeming indifference of Sir Francis Head, and the defenceless state of Toronto, M'Kenzie was drawn on to tempt Fortune. Fifteen hundred men enrolled themselves to fight under his flag, on which was inscribed the legend, "Bidwell and the glorious Minority of 1837; a good beginning." He had not arms for a third of the number. On the night of the 4th of December a band of four hundred met at Montgomery's tavern, in Yonge Street, the great **Dec. 4.** road running north from Toronto. **The city was un-** guarded; there was not a British soldier in it save the guard at Government House. A sudden, determined attack, might have placed the city, the Governor, and the Government in M'Kenzie's hand. A patrol riding out from Toronto brought back word hurriedly that the rebels were advancing. The alarm-bell rang and awoke Sir Francis out of a sound sleep. Hastily the citizens gathered around the City Hall, where four thousand stand of arms were stored. The first to seize muskets were the Attorney-General and the Judges. Messengers were despatched to Colonel M'Nab and the officers commanding the militia of the Gore, Newcastle, and Midland districts to come to the rescue. M'Kenzie lost his opportunity. His force, undisciplined and wretchedly armed, would not obey the word of command. Midway to the city they were **struck with panic**, and fled back to their head-quarters at the tavern. Sir Francis, under the mask of indifference, had been very uneasy. He was greatly relieved when Colonel M'Nab appeared with the militiamen of Gore. They were not clad in scarlet tunics and armed with regulation rifles, like our modern volunteer force. They mostly wore their ordinary gray homespun; and many of them carried old muskets, and even pikes and pitchforks. On the

heels of the men of Gore followed the militia of the north-western districts. Unwilling to shed blood in civil broil, or anxious to gain time until he had an overwhelming force, at his command, Sir Francis sent a messenger to the rebels to call on them to lay down their arms; but he curtly **refused** the condition demanded by M'Kenzie, that he would summon a Convention for the redress of all grievances.

14. About noon of the 7th, Sir Francis Head marched out of Toronto with a force of five hundred men **to give**  
**Dec. 7. battle.** The rebels, commanded by M'Kenzie, Van Egmond, an old officer who had served under Napoleon, and Lount, a blacksmith, were posted on both sides of the great road, and had the protection of a copse and a few houses. The Loyalists advanced with spirit to the sound of military music. They opened fire with two pieces of artillery. For a brief time the rebels bore it and the continuous volleys of musketry; then they broke into utter rout. To mark his vengeance, Sir Francis gave orders to burn the tavern, and the private dwelling of one of the rebel leaders; but he generously extended pardon to a few prisoners. He proclaimed M'Kenzie **an outlaw**, and offered a large reward for his capture. Ruined and well-nigh reckless, that ill-starred man escaped pursuit, and found safety and sympathy for a time in the United States. In a week from the time of the first rising, the **abortive rebellion** was crushed. The militia flocked to Toronto in such numbers that Sir Francis felt constrained to announce that he had no need of further help, and to direct the enthusiastic volunteers to go home, or to march to the aid of Sir John Colborne. His confidence in the loyalty of the yeomanry of Upper Canada had not been misplaced. The Province was far from being restored to a state of quiet and contentment. The harsh manner in which the Government used its victory, the revengeful spirit with which it pursued some of the ringleaders of the revolt to the bitter death, and persecuted those who were suspected of sympathizing with it, offended many loyal people.

15. **Rebellion** still raised its head in Lower Canada, in the county of the Two Mountains. On the 13th of December, Sir John Colborne set out from Montreal with a force of thirteen

hundred men. In his train followed many of the British settlers, who at the outbreak of the revolt had been compelled to fly from their farms: they were in a bitter mood. When Sir John entered the village of St. Eustache, the main body of the insurgents, under Girod, fled before him. Dr. Chenier and four hundred of the more resolute threw themselves into the church and into adjoining buildings. They found themselves penned as in slaughter-houses. The stone walls of the church fell before the fire of the British artillery, the wooden rafters took fire from the shells. In an hour's time the position became utterly untenable. Chenier and one hundred men were shot dead. Then the rest fled from the ruins of the church and from the burning outposts. One hundred more were taken prisoners. On the 15th, Sir John Colborne advanced to St. Benoit, where the fiercest resistance was expected. **The leaders fled** (as nearly all of them had done in the course of this luckless rebellion), daunted by the near approach of the danger which they had courted. A deputation came out to meet the General, and made peace for the insurgents. They did not escape punishment. In the night a part of the village was destroyed by fire,—a deed of vengeance attributed to the British settlers who had followed the camp.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did the crisis come? What had been the state of affairs in Lower Canada since 1832?

2. On what ground were the proposals of the Government opposed in the House of Commons? What was Lord John Russell's reply?

3. Who alone protested in the Lords against the Government policy? What were the objections to making the Legislative Council elective? What contrast was drawn between the position of colonies and that of the mother country in regard to the supreme power? What conclusion was drawn thence?

4. What was the contention of the moderate Reformers? In connection with what affairs only did they seek to make the Executive responsible to the people?

5. What effects had the Russell Resolutions in Lower Canada? To

what did the leaders chiefly take exception? What character did they assume?

6. Who were disappointed by the Resolutions in Upper Canada? What resolution did M'Kenzie and Papineau take? What advice was given them by their best friends in England? By whom should the advice of moderation also have been followed? What tended to draw Papineau and his party into the path of danger?

7. What step did Lord Gosford take about the end of June? How was the Proclamation treated? In what terms did Lord Gosford address the Assembly? How were his overtures met? What did he then do?

8. By what was the dissolution allowed? Who took part in it? What part did the Church take in it?

9. What document did the Reformers issue in Upper Canada? How was the

agitation carried on? What attitude did Sir Francis Head assume?

10. Describe the Meeting of the Five Counties. What kind of political societies were formed in Montreal and Quebec? When did the first collision take place?

11. What orders did the Governor-General then give? Describe Colonel Gore's attack on St. Denis. What was the fate of Lieutenant Weir?

12. Who attacked St. Charles? What was the result? What became of Papineau? and of Dr. Nelson?

13. How many men had M'Kenzie under his flag? What city did he

threaten? How were the authorities warned? How did the rebels conduct themselves? What message did Head send to them?

14. Describe the affair of the 7th December. What became of M'Kenzie? How long had the rebellion lasted? Who were enthusiastic in their loyalty? How did the Government offend many loyal people?

15. Where did Sir John Colborne defeat the insurgents in Lower Canada? Where had they taken refuge? How were they driven out? What was the fate of Chenier? How did the affair end?

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

## TROUBLOUS TIMES.

1838-1839 A.D.

Loyal feeling in the Maritime Provinces.  
 M'Kenzie on Navy Island.  
 The burning of the steamer *Caroline*.  
 American sympathizers invade Canada.  
 Suspension of the Constitution of Lower  
 Canada.  
 Sir Francis B. Head resigns.  
 Execution of Lount and Matthews.  
 Earl Durham, High Commissioner.

Amnesty to political prisoners.  
 The Earl abruptly leaves Canada.  
 Fresh outbreak.  
 Affairs at Napierville and Odell-town.  
 "The Hunters" invade Canada.  
 The Disputed Territory.  
 Warlike excitement in Maine and New  
 Brunswick.  
 The Ashburton Treaty.

1. THE rebellion in the Canadas called forth the British feeling of the Maritime Provinces. The people of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick stood ready to march to support Gosford and Head in their defence of monarchy. In the hour of danger their love for their Queen, and the dear old mother country and its institutions, rose above all political discontent. The uprising, however, obtained the sympathy of the Americans on the frontiers. In all the towns the feeling was openly expressed. In Buffalo, M'Kenzie, the attainted rebel, was received with enthusiasm and offers of aid. Lawless men enrolled themselves, in the desecrated name of Liberty, to "free Canada from oppression." Preparations for invasion went on before the eyes of the authorities of the States of New York, Ohio, and Michigan, who unaccountably could see in them nothing amiss. The State arsenals were broken into, new muskets were purloined, and no remonstrance was made. Great Britain and the United States were at peace, but the President issued no Proclamation warning the citizens not to levy war against a friendly nation.

2. M'Kenzie joined a General Van Rensselaer, who, with a body of Canadian refugees and American adventurers, took possession of **Navy Island** in the Niagara River, a short distance above the Falls, on the 13th of December. Here, on British territory, M'Kenzie proclaimed a republic for Upper Canada, and promised grants of land and

Dec. 13,  
**1837**  
 A.D.

money bounties to all who would volunteer to fight under the flag of Liberty. He offered a reward of £500 for the capture of Sir Francis Head. Recruits did not flock to his standard. Colonel M'Nab and his militia confronted him at Chippewa, and a brisk but not deadly fire was kept up between the shore and the island. The conduct of the American General did not inspire confidence; for he had a strong propensity to lie in bed, drink brandy, and write love-letters, instead of attending to his military duties. The situation had a ludicrous aspect, but an event happened which threw a serious shade over it. Shortly before midnight of the 27th a flotilla of boats, under Lieutenant Drew of the Royal Navy, swept over to Fort Schlosser on the American side and surprised a steamer belonging to the marauders. Her crew was landed, and the *Caroline*, on fire, was towed into mid-stream above "the rapids" and abandoned. Drawn in by the current, she was carried swiftly, in a flaming mass, right over the crest of the Horse Shoe Falls. Soon after this incident M'Kenzie left Navy Island.

3. The destruction of the "**Caroline**" won applause from the British Government for Colonel M'Nab, under whose orders it had been done. He was shortly afterwards knighted. By the United States authorities it was denounced as an infraction of the law of nations. Very angry feelings were aroused by this affair, which at one time threatened to embroil the two great nations in war. While the Americans were very sensitive on this point, they saw unmoved the attempt of some of their citizens to invade Canada. A plan was concocted to **1838** attack it in three directions,—from Ogdensburg, from A.D. Buffalo, and from the Detroit frontier. Fortunately there were too many generals who claimed the honour of leading these enterprises. Every one wished to command; none cared to obey. They grew jealous, and thwarted each other's plans. Mutual charges of treachery and cowardice were made. The consequence was that many of those who had consented to act as privates became disgusted, and deserted at the critical moment. On the 22nd of February a force of some 1500 men crossed over to **Hickory Island** from a point of the St. Lawrence below Kingston. While there their leader, Van Rensselaer, misbehaved himself as usual, whereon the

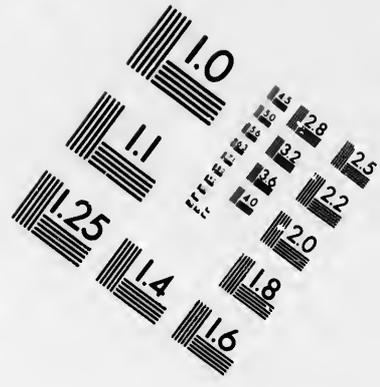
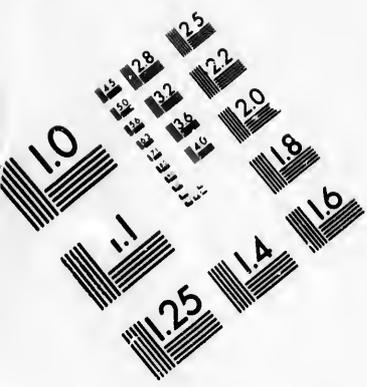
would-be marauders took the alarm and hastily made their way to the mainland.

4. In the west a force, styled the Patriot Army, made a landing on Bois Blanc Island,<sup>1</sup> opposite Sandwich. Their general, **Sutherland**, issued a proclamation to the Patriots of Upper Canada, calling on them to rise and rally around the standard of Liberty and free themselves from the parasites of the British Crown, who were fattening on their substance. A schooner, carrying arms and ammunition, ran aground and was captured by the British; whereon Sutherland in real or feigned alarm ordered a **hasty retreat**. Loud accusations of treachery were raised against him. He took part in another foray made by the Patriots on the 4th of March. Four **March 4**. hundred made their way to **Point Pelé Island**, forty miles south-east of Amherstburg.<sup>2</sup> They were met by Colonel Maitland at the head of several companies of regulars, and driven from the island. Two companies, posted on the frozen river, cut off their retreat. Throwing themselves behind blocks of ice, the Patriots kept up a stinging fire until they were dislodged by a charge of British bayonets, and compelled to seek their own shore in great disorder. Sutherland was among the prisoners taken. He was arraigned before a court-martial by Sir Francis Head. Before the trial took place, when lying in the jail at Toronto, he attempted suicide, having previously made a **confession**, in which he accused the United States Government of having abetted the attempts at invasion, and of harbouring the design of conquering Canada as it had done Texas. Whether the charge was true or not, it was implicitly believed by the impulsive and outspoken Governor, who did not fail to give the United States authorities his opinion of their conduct.

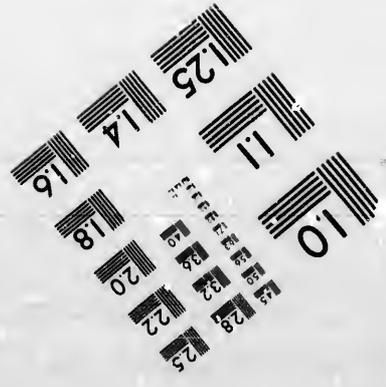
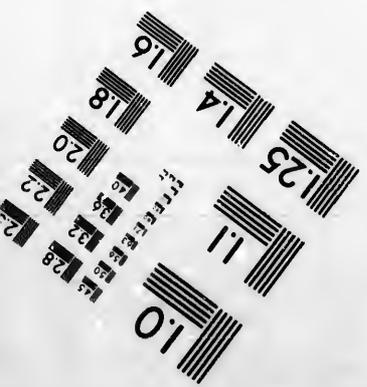
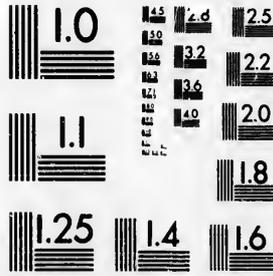
5. Lower Canada was now reduced to a wretched state. Civil government was suspended, and the people were placed under **martial law**. The unhappy events of the rebellion, the barbarous murders, the wanton destruction of property, widened the gulf between the hostile races. A return to the state of

<sup>1</sup> *Bois Blanc Island*. — In Detroit River. Sandwich is on the Canada side, 3 or 4 miles south of Detroit. See *Map*, p. 289.

<sup>2</sup> *Amherstburg*. — On Detroit River, 11 miles south of Sandwich. For this place, and for Point Pelé Island, see *Map*, p. 289.



**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**





affairs previous to the outbreak, when a French majority controlled the Assembly and a British minority ruled in the Councils, was impossible. The British minority appealed to their brethren in the other Provinces for sympathy. "The Constitutional Society of Montreal" sent an address to the several Legislatures, in which they depicted their unhappy condition, living in the midst of a majority speaking a foreign language, and subjected to the operation of barbarous laws, which repressed commerce and retarded progress. The remedy they sought was the abolition of the French laws and language and the **Union of Lower with Upper Canada**. They asked for a favourable expression of opinion from the Legislatures to aid them in obtaining these reforms. The address was discussed in the Legislatures, and sympathetic answers were sent from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. But Reformers like Howe would not sanction the intolerant spirit of either the address or the answers, which was shown in the desire expressed to Anglicize the French Canadians. It was not wise statesmanship to endeavour to crush out a national feeling by sweeping away the language, laws, and customs by which it was sustained. Besides, it was impossible to make a Frenchman act and think like an Englishman. The only way to avoid perpetual civil strife was to act justly, and in framing a Constitution to consult the feelings, customs, and prejudices of the French Canadians.

6. Though to all appearance the active spirit of rebellion was crushed out, **disaffection** smouldered; the rebellious gathered some hope from the actions of the sympathizers along the American frontiers. Lord Gosford was recalled, and Sir John Colborne was appointed Governor, with supreme power, in conjunction with his Council, to make, enact, and carry out, such laws as were necessary. It was a return to the absolute form of government erected in the Province after the Conquest. **The Constitution of 1791 was suspended.**

7. In Upper Canada the state of affairs was not much more satisfactory. Sir Francis Head set his face against conciliation, and absolutely refused to carry out the recommendation of Lord Glenelg to promote certain prominent members of the Reform party. As he chose to act in opposition to the policy of the Government that had appointed him, he felt constrained to

resign. He chivalrously sacrificed himself to preserve the Constitution and the privileges of the Compact party. He was rewarded by the presentation of numerous addresses from all the Provinces expressing admiration of his conduct and regret at his departure. He was succeeded by **Colonel Sir George Arthur**, formerly Governor of Van Diemen's Land, a penal colony. He had a firm and heavy hand. He entered into the views of the party in power, and ridiculed what he called **M'Kenzie's scheme of Responsible Government**. The jails in Toronto and other places were now crowded with political prisoners. Many had fled from the Province to escape trial for high treason. The triumphant Tories were in no lenient mood. They even showed zeal in punishing suspected sympathy with the rebellion, and dissatisfaction with the existing order. Lount and Matthews, in contempt of an urgent and numerous signed petition, were executed. Lord Glenelg interfered to stop the wanton spilling of blood in revenge. The body of the people had vindicated their loyalty, but the uncompromising attitude of the Family Compact in opposition to reform tended to unite all parties and sects outside of it,—Catholics, Presbyterians, Methodists, Baptists,—and to form in them a resolve to obtain some constitutional change.

8. The affairs of the Canadas engaged much attention in the Imperial Parliament. The Government was aroused to take an earnest step to give peace to the distracted country. The appointment of Sir John Colborne was only temporary, pending the arrival of the **Earl of Durham**, "Governor-General of all the North American Provinces, and High Commissioner for the adjustment of certain important questions depending in the Provinces of Lower and Upper Canada, respecting the future government of said Provinces." He had had great experience as a statesman, and belonged to the Liberal school. He possessed much ability and many accomplishments, and was of a refined and courteous nature. But he was proud and sensitive; he asserted his own opinions very strongly, and could not patiently brook contradiction. His liberality was princely. He was clothed with great powers, which he was disposed to use on the side of mercy and justice.

9. Lord Durham arrived with his retinue in Quebec on the

21st of May. He was received with the greatest cordiality by all parties. The people were impressed by the viceregal pomp with which he was surrounded. The thoughtful looked forward with hope to his administration. In order to keep himself free from the suspicion of being influenced, he called no members of any existing parties to his **Special Council**. This Council was composed of five members, Vice-Admiral Sir Charles Paget, General Sir James MacDonnel, Lieutenant-Colonel Grey, Colonel Cowper, and Hon. Charles Buller. His first acts were to despatch Colonel Grey to Washington to make representations against hostile demonstrations of American sympathizers, and to put the frontiers in a state of defence. On his staff were several gentlemen of great ability. To them was confided the task of collecting information concerning the political grievances and the general condition of the Canadas. Major Head was despatched to the Lower Provinces for a like purpose. Invitations were sent to the Governors of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, and Newfoundland, to meet and confer with the Earl in Quebec. Deputations composed of the leading members of the legislatures of the Provinces accompanied them.

10. **The disposal of the political prisoners** was a subject of anxious consideration. In the exasperated state of the country it was needless to bring them to trial. No French Canadian jury would ever convict a fellow-countryman, however heinous his offence. No mixed jury of French and British could be found who would agree on a verdict. And the act of bringing offenders to trial would stir up smouldering party hatreds. As Papineau and other leaders had fled from the Provinces, Lord Durham found that there were very few who were amenable to the grave charge of high treason. He issued an ordinance causing Dr. Wolfred Nelson and eight other ringleaders to be transported to Bermuda, under penalty of being liable to capture, trial, execution if they ventured to return to the Province. An amnesty was extended to all other offenders.

11. Lord Durham had acted from the best of motives, but he had committed a **technical error**. The Governor of Bermuda raised the objection that he had no legal authority to restrain the party sent to him, or to detain them as prisoners in the island.

The difficulty was not insuperable, but the question was taken up in the Imperial Parliament. The political opponents of the Earl had shown a disposition from the very first to criticise his acts in a keen and captious spirit. The extent and expense of his retinue and the number of his secretaries had been objected to. They now condemned his action in transporting the political offenders to Bermuda on his own authority as an illegal exercise of power. They ought to have been brought into court, tried by a jury, and sentenced by a judge. An Act was passed disallowing the ordinance, but indemnifying those who had issued and acted under it. This action deeply wounded the proud and sensitive Earl. He complained that while he had been unfairly assailed by his opponents, he had been but coldly supported by his friends. The course pursued by Parliament weakened the influence of his authority in Canada, and destroyed his power of doing good. He gave way to irritation, and resolved to throw up his commission. In publishing the Act of Indemnity he proclaimed that, as the Imperial Government had disallowed his act transporting the nine to Bermuda, the amnesty that he passed for minor offenders was extended to all. The force of this declaration was to extend pardon to Papineau and all others charged with high treason. This hasty interpretation of the Indemnity was understood as tending to encourage sedition. The Earl abruptly terminated his mission and returned to England.

12. The departure of the Earl of Durham seemed to be the signal for a fresh outbreak in Lower Canada, and for a renewal of hostile demonstrations on the American frontiers. Early in May secret societies, called "**Hunters' Lodges**," had been formed in all the towns and villages from Cleveland to Ogdensburg. Their members took an oath to uphold republican institutions on the American Continent, and to fight for the independence of Canada. Among them were a number of refugees, but the greater part were American adventurers. A simultaneous rising had been arranged for a certain day, but there was no discipline or unity among the predatory hordes. Their generals, as usual, quarrelled among themselves and abused each other. Their pretensions to conquer Canada were absurd, but they could commit acts of rapine and murder, and keep up

a state of dangerous excitement. A spirit almost approaching to disaffection was manifested among a portion of the militia of Upper Canada, who were annoyed at the lenity shown to participants in the late rebellion.

13. Early in October revolutionary societies were formed in Lower Canada. Again the British Loyalists fled from the districts about Montreal and Quebec into the cities; again the habitans in the counties north of the St. Lawrence gathered in large bodies. On Sunday the 5th of November they rose in

Beauharnois county. **At Caughnawaga**, on news arriving Nov. 5. that the insurgents were close at hand, a party of

Indians, who were attending divine service, rushed out of the chapel, fell on them, and took many prisoners. The chief force of the rebellion was collected at Napierville, in La Prairie county, under Dr. Robert Nelson, brother of Wolfred. Here he proclaimed the independence of Canada and his intention of founding a republic. General Sir James MacDonnell advanced with a force of regulars and militia. Thereupon Nelson retired towards the boundary line with the expectation of uniting with a body of American sympathizers. A party marching in advance was interrupted by two hundred militiamen, and put to flight. The victorious Loyalists then fell back on Odell-town, and on the approach of the main body of the insurgents under Nelson, threw themselves into a **church**. A spirited attack was made on this strong position, but failed to dislodge its defenders. After suffering a loss of fifty killed, and as many wounded, the deluded habitans retired across the line. The rebellion was crushed with extreme violence in the counties where it had raised its head. Tracts of land were made desolate, houses and barns were given to the flames; with brutal violence suspected rebels were hauled to prison, and crowds of distracted women and weeping children followed the devastating march of the militia.

14. In the meantime the members of the Hunters' Lodges had been active; but Sir George Arthur was on the alert. His agents on the frontiers had discovered the secret of the intended rising. A large body of sympathizers assembled at Ogdensburg, and the inhabitants of that town collected in gleeful crowds to witness the **invasion**. As usual, there was trouble among the

"generals." The head one suddenly fell sick, and the Hunters, thinking that cowardice was the cause of his illness, refused to put their lives in peril. On the 11th of November, Van Schultz, a Pole, crossed to Prescott<sup>1</sup> in a schooner with one hundred and seventy men. There they intrenched themselves on rising ground behind stone walls. On the 15th they were attacked by a party of marines and militia from Kingston, and driven to take refuge in a circular stone mill and stone house adjacent. The position was so strong that the guns of the steamer *Victoria* could make no impression on it. Van Schultz sent urgent requests to his friends across the river for assistance, but they were unheeded. On the 16th, companies of the 83rd and 93rd Regiments arrived on the ground. The mill was surrounded, and the stone walls were battered down by artillery. **Van Schultz** was compelled to surrender at discretion. His force suffered severely. He was executed along with eleven other prisoners.

15. A body of sympathizers assembled in the west. By this time President Van Buren had issued a Proclamation, warning the American people not to give countenance to hostile enterprises against a friendly nation. But the citizens of Detroit were not prevented from turning out in great numbers, in the gray light of a December morning, to cheer on a body of invaders as they crossed to Sandwich. They saw them burn a steamer and set fire to barracks; but it was not long before they beheld the remnant of the invaders flee in all haste to the river's side, and throw themselves into boats and canoes and cross again. They had left many of their comrades dead, wounded, and captive in the midst of the town, and in the hands of the enraged militia commanded by Colonel Prince. Four of the prisoners were shot without trial. This act was condemned by many.

16. The attack on Sandwich was the **last attempt** at the invasion of Canada; but the frontiers were still in an unsettled state. Amidst the dangerous excitement of the **1839** time, the people of Maine and of New Brunswick quarrelled over the old bone of contention—the **Disputed Territory**. The King of the Netherlands had (in 1831) given

---

<sup>1</sup> Prescott.—See Map, p. 297.

his decision. His Majesty "split the difference," and gave the United States the lion's share; but as nothing save the whole of the land would then satisfy their claims, they refused to be bound by the award. Early in January a party of lawless persons made a dash into the debatable land to cut timber. Governor Fairfield of Maine despatched a sheriff with a strong party of constables to expel the "intruders" and seize their lumber. A fracas occurred between them and a body of New Brunswickers. M'Intyre, the land agent for Maine, was captured, bundled into a sled, and driven off to Frederickton. M'Laughlan, the British warden, was seized by the Americans and carried off to Augusta. **Maine and New Brunswick** went aflame with excitement. Governor Fairfield ordered Colonel Jarvis with eighteen hundred militiamen to march to the support of the sheriff. Sir John Harvey issued a proclamation, in which he asserted the undoubted right of Great Britain to guard the territory while it was in dispute, and called on the Governor to withdraw his troops. Fairfield answered by a counter-proclamation, denying that right, and by a call upon the State for ten thousand men, horse, foot, and artillery. Sir John then despatched Colonel Maxwell with the 36th and 69th Regiments and a train of artillery to the Upper St. John, to watch the movements of the Maine militia. Great enthusiasm was shown by the people. Volunteers from St. John, Frederickton, and York, along with those from Woodstock, were attached to the army of the Madawaska under Maxwell, who opened communication with Sir John Colborne at Quebec and Sir John Harvey at Frederickton by means of a corps of York light dragoons.

17. The people of Nova Scotia heard not unruffled the news of these movements. In the Legislature angry discussion was stilled for a time. Measures were enacted placing a strong body of militia and £100,000 at the disposal of the Governor. Resolutions expressive of sympathy were passed. In the excitement of the moment the members of Assembly, carried out of their usual decorum, gave vent to their feelings in hearty **British cheers**, which were caught up and prolonged by the people in the crowded galleries. This action excited the admiration and gratitude of the Legislature of New Brunswick, and gave rise to a counter-demonstration.

18. In the United States the warlike ardour of the anti-British party was aroused, but the nation as a whole did not respond to its clamour. President Van Buren took a temperate view of the difficulty, and thought it capable of peaceful adjustment. The great Daniel Webster accused him of want of nerve, and declared that if Great Britain would not enter into negotiations under the Treaty of 1783, the United States should take forcible possession of the territory on the 4th of July. Conciliatory notes passed between the British Minister at Washington and the United States Secretary of State. The President then despatched **General Winfield Scott** to Maine with full power to settle the difficulty. When he arrived at Augusta he at once countermanded the march of the valiant ten thousand. This decided step at once abated the excitement. He then entered into a friendly correspondence with the Governor at Frederickton. He and Sir John Harvey had fought on opposite sides at Stoney Creek and Lundy's Lane, but they addressed each other as comrades. They came to an understanding, which was made the basis of the terms agreed to by the British and American Ministers. Maine consented to withdraw its militia; and Great Britain undertook, in case of the necessity arising, to expel intruders from the Disputed Territory.

19. Thus ended the "**Aroostook War.**" It left the boundary question as unsettled as ever. To finish this story: the people of Maine, under specious pretexts, continued to advance into the territory and to put up block-houses. Fresh surveys were ordered by the British and United States Governments. The reports of the respective engineers made out for their own country a right to the territory which they both claimed. To settle the interminable difficulty, and to avert war, Lord Ashburton, an amiable aged nobleman, was sent out from England in 1842. Daniel Webster was intrusted by the President to look after the interests of the United States. Of the twelve thousand and twenty-nine square miles in dispute, seven thousand and fifteen were ceded to the Americans, the rest were given to Great Britain. The American portion was not only the larger, but was also the more valuable for lumbering and agricultural purposes. This decision certainly did not please the people of New Brunswick. They

1842  
A.D.

could only bow in acknowledgment of the right of the Crown to settle, in the interest of the whole Empire, a question which was a continual source of international irritation.<sup>1</sup>

QUESTIONS.—1. What feeling did the Canadian rebellion call forth in the Maritime Provinces? Whose sympathy did it obtain? Of what remissness were the United States authorities guilty?

2. Where did M'Kenzie fix his rendezvous? Who confronted him? What exploit did Lieutenant Drew perform?

3. How was the destruction of the *Caroline* regarded by the United States authorities? How were the plans of the marauders disconcerted?

4. Where did the Patriot Army make a landing? What was the issue? In what other foray did Sutherland take part? Describe the encounter on the ice. What confession did Sutherland make when in jail?

5. What step was necessitated by the wretched state of Lower Canada? What remedy was proposed by the Constitutional Society of Montreal? What objections did Reformers like Howe make to these proposals?

6. What extraordinary powers were given to Sir John Colborne and his Council?

7. What led Sir Francis Head to resign? Who succeeded him? How did he treat the fallen party? To what did the uncompromising attitude of the Family Compact lead?

8. Who was the new Governor-General? With what powers was he invested? What was his character?

9. Of whom did Lord Durham's Special Council consist? On what mission was Lieutenant-Colonel Grey despatched? What means did Lord Durham adopt to obtain information and advice?

10. What difficulties beset the question of the disposal of the political prisoners? What course did the Governor-General follow?

11. What technical error had he committed? Who condemned his action? What did Parliament do? Of what did he complain? What interpretation of the Act of Indemnity did he publish? What did he then abruptly do?

12. What were the "Hunters' Lodges"? Of whom were they chiefly composed? Why did their rising fail? What offended a portion of the Upper Canada militia?

13. Describe the rising in Beauharnois county. Where was the chief force of the rebellion collected? What success had it there? In what manner was the rebellion crushed?

14. Who headed the invaders of Prescott? Where did they take refuge? How were they dislodged?

15. What damage did the party which attacked Sandwich in December do? How did the raid end?

16. What quarrel between Maine and New Brunswick was reopened in 1839? What had been the decision of the King of the Netherlands? What effect had it? What led to a serious fracas? What right did Sir John Harvey claim? What force did Governor Fairfield call for? How did the people of New Brunswick show their enthusiasm?

17. How did Nova Scotia show its sympathy?

18. What did President Van Buren think of the difficulty? What was Daniel Webster's opinion? What practical step did the President take? What was the result of General Scott's mission?

19. When was the boundary question finally settled? By whom? How was the Debatable Territory divided? To whom was the decision unsatisfactory?

<sup>1</sup> See *Map of Disputed Territory*, p. 258.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

## RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT ESTABLISHED.

1839 to 1849 A.D.

Lord Durham's Report.	Reconstruction of the Executive Council.
Charles Poulett Thompson.	Lord Falkland.
The Union Act of 1841.	Responsible Government carried.
Meeting of first Parliament of United Canada.	New Brunswick.
Death of Lord Sydenham.	The Provincial Secretaryship.
Sir Charles Bagot and Sir Charles Metcalfe.	Charles Fisher's Resolution
The right of Appointment to Office.	Rebellion Losses Bill.
Lord Elgin and the Reform Ministry.	Lord Elgin mobbed.
Nova Scotia.	The Parliament Buildings burned.
	Seat of Government question.

1. THE short administration of Lord Durham was an important epoch. It was a turning-point in the history of the British North American Provinces. The Report he **1839** submitted to the Imperial Parliament gave a clear view **A.D.** of all the difficulties besetting their government. He suggested a Confederation of the Canadas, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, and Newfoundland, and the construction of an **intercolonial railway**. In view of the difficulties of immediately carrying out the more comprehensive scheme, he advised the establishment of a Legislative Union of Upper and Lower Canada, and the recognition of the principle of the **responsibility of the Executive** to the representatives of the people. The Report was bitterly attacked by the Tory party in England and in the Provinces. Its statements were denied, its suggestions were ridiculed; but they had the effect of modifying the opinions of the Imperial Government.

2. The **Hon. Charles Poulett Thompson**, President of the Board of Trade, a statesman of liberal political principles, of fine judgment, and of great tact, was appointed Governor-General. He arrived in Quebec on the 13th of October, and relieved Sir John Colborne in Lower, and Sir George Arthur in Upper, Canada. He had a task of great difficulty before him. He

found everything in a disorganized state. In the Lower Province the British and the French Canadians were much exasperated against each other ; in the Upper Province the Tory party was dominant in both branches of the Legislature, and repelled the idea of constitutional change ; while the Reformers were increasing in number and in determination to attain their end. Both parties had been so long fighting for power, that the gaining of it seemed to be the chief object of their desire, to which the advancement of the general welfare, and the improvement of the internal condition of the country, were merely secondary considerations. The establishment of Responsible Government would be a boon only if it produced good measures.

3. Soon after his arrival, the Governor-General published **two Despatches** from the pen of Lord John Russell, which conveyed the views of the Imperial Government with regard to colonial rule. His Lordship, in the first despatch, maintained that the system of government established in Great Britain was incompatible with the dependent position of provinces ; yet while he insisted that imperial control over colonial affairs was necessary in order to uphold the honour of the Crown and the unity of the Empire, he admitted that the affectionate attachment of the people was the best security for permanent dominion. He declared that the Imperial Government had no desire to retard in any way the improvement of the Provinces ; and that it was earnestly desirous to give men of character and ability advantages similar to those which talent and character obtained when employed in the United Kingdom. Without laying down definite rules, he left it to the judgment, good sense, and good feeling of Governors on the one hand, and of Assemblies on the other, not to push the exercise of the prerogative of dissolution or of the right of withholding supplies to an extreme.

4. In his second despatch, his Lordship laid down rules regarding the tenure of the chief offices. Members of the Executive, and such officers as the Receiver, Surveyor, Attorney and Solicitor Generals, were notified that they must consent to hold office, not as heretofore, during good behaviour and practically for life, but dependent on the will of the Sovereign, or of her representative. A motive of policy, or the appointment of a new Governor, was to be regarded as sufficient reason for

making a change in the composition of the Executive Council and in the heads of departments. This despatch on the **tenure of office** was hailed by the Reformers in all the Provinces, as bestowing—to use the words of Sir John Harvey, Governor of New Brunswick—“a new and improved Constitution” upon the Provinces.

5. Mr. Poulett Thompson triumphed over all difficulties. He convened the Special Council of Lower Canada, laid before it the draft of a Bill for uniting the two Provinces, and carried it by a majority. One great objection was the necessity that would be imposed on Lower Canada of bearing its proportion of the large debt of Upper Canada, which would be assumed by the united Provinces. The French Canadian party was not consulted, as it was considered hopeless to expect that it would consent to a measure which it regarded, in its angry and jealous state of feeling, as a design to destroy its nationality. Mr. Thompson experienced great difficulty in gaining the assent of the Tory party in Upper Canada, but an effectual appeal to its loyalty was made by him. **The Union Bill** was introduced into the Legislature as a Government measure: it was first passed by the Legislative Council; and then, after a long and hot debate, obtained the consent of a majority of the Assembly. The draft of the Bill was introduced into **1840** the Imperial Parliament, and being slightly modified, **A.D.** was finally passed in July 1840, and was proclaimed to be law in the following year.

6. **The Act of Union of the Two Canadas** provided that there should be one Legislative Council and one Assembly. Equal representation in both branches was granted to the two Provinces. The Legislative Council was composed of twenty members, who were appointed by the Crown, and held their seats for life. The Assembly was composed of eighty-four members, forty-two for each Province. A permanent Civil List of £75,000 was established. The control of all the revenues was granted to the Assembly. An Executive Council was formed of eight members: such of them as held seats in the Assembly went back to the people to be **reëlected**. By taking this step, and gaining their reëlection, ministerial office-holders were assured that they possessed the confidence of their con-

stituents. This Executive Council held office as long as it, as a body, commanded the support of a majority of the representatives of the people in the Assembly. All measures involving expenditure of money were submitted to the Legislature by the Government. Previous to the passing of the Act of Union, the initiation of the money-rolls was in the hands of the members of Assembly, which led to improvident and reckless expenditure. This practice was maintained in Nova Scotia and in New Brunswick long after it had been abolished in Canada; for in spite of advice from Downing Street, and the arguments of their leading members, the Assemblies clung to what they considered the most convenient mode of voting grants for the public service.

7. The Hon. C. Poulett Thompson was elevated to the peerage with the title of **Lord Sydenham of Kent and Toronto**. In the course of the summer he visited the Maritime Provinces. His presence in Halifax animated the hopes of the Reformers. In New Brunswick he was received in a manner befitting his high position as Governor-General of all British America. Popularity is a very uncertain element. A few years previous, when he was plain Mr. Thompson, he had been burned in effigy in King's Square, St. John, and on the Old Church Green in Frederickton, for his hostility to the interests of the Province. As President of the Board of Trade he had favoured the abrogation of the duties on Baltic timber.

8. **The first session** of the first Parliament of the United June 13, 1841, A.D. Canadas was opened at Kingston on the 13th of June 1841. Lord Sydenham, in addressing the assembled legislators, said that he had been commanded by Her Majesty to administer the government in accordance with the well understood wishes of the people, and to pay their feelings, as expressed through their representatives, the deference that was justly due to them. **The principle of Responsible Government** was thus acknowledged, but not till several years had passed was it carried out in perfect practice, and unhesitatingly accepted as the established rule.

9. The Union did not put an end to the old bitter conflicts between parties, or all at once assuage the jealousies and antipathies of race. But the field was broader; there was less danger of parties coming into direct collision, and they had

acquired some moderation from the dangers they had incurred and the miseries they had endured in the past. The English-speaking population could not say that their representatives were outnumbered by the French Canadians; for the British members of Upper and Lower Canada were now in the majority. The French Canadians, on the other hand, could not complain that their influence was swamped by the British majority, and that their language, laws, customs, and institutions were in danger of being swept away. They had their full, some said more than their full, share of power. Parties arose in the Legislature, Tories (or to use the milder term, Conservatives) and Reformers; and the French Canadian party, by throwing its influence into the one scale or the other, managed to hold the balance of power in its hands. Union eventually put an end to the war of races, but in time it promoted another war—that of sections, **Upper against Lower Canada**. But its immediate effect was to calm the mind of the country so far, that it was enabled to give more attention to the consideration of reforms necessary to advance its prosperity. A number of important measures were introduced during the first session. The foundation was laid for many of the improvements that were afterwards carried out. Bills were introduced to establish **municipal institutions** and a system of common school education, and to promote the building of public works and the extension of the canal system. Laws were passed regulating the currency and adjusting the scale of customs-duties on imports and exports. Lord Sydenham did not live to see the system of government which he had inaugurated carried into successful operation. He was thrown from his horse, and being worn out by his arduous exertions, he could not bear up against the shock given to his constitution: he died on the 17th of September. At his dying request, Major-General Clitherce was appointed to administer the government.

10. At this time a change of Government took place in England. The Conservatives came into power. Sir Robert Peel<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Sir Robert Peel*.—Born 1788; died 1850. His father specially educated him for political life. He took a double first-class degree at Oxford—

first in classics and first in mathematics. He began his Parliamentary career as a Tory. Twice his convictions led him to abandon his party, and

became Premier in the place of Lord Melbourne ; Lord Stanley, Colonial Secretary in the room of Lord John Russell. The old official party was buoyed up with hopes that the new system of Responsible Government, which it had not accepted even in theory, would be overturned. These hopes were further

**1842** raised by the appointment of **Sir Charles Bagot**, a  
A.D. good old Tory and High Churchman, as Governor-General. But Lord Stanley followed up the policy of his predecessor, and Sir Charles Bagot faithfully carried out his instructions. Baldwin, Lafontaine, Hincks, Dominic, Daly, prominent members of the Reform party, were brought into his Executive Council. The old feuds of party and race

**1843** were revived in the Legislature. This Administration  
A.D. was of very short duration. Sir Charles was forced to resign in March, on account of ill health. He died at Kingston in May, and was succeeded by **Sir Charles Theophilus** (afterwards Lord) **Metcalf**.

11. The new Governor-General had many of the qualities that gain esteem even from political opponents. He had held a similar high position in India. Those who disliked his policy said that his experience in that country had unfitted him to administer the government of a free country like Canada. He had been accustomed to exercise the prerogative of the Crown without question. Contact with the wily, supple, dishonest natives, had made him incurably suspicious. But by the Tories he was considered a model Governor. He maintained their favourite doctrine, that Responsible Government, as carried out in England, was incompatible with the dependent position of a colony. He held that he was responsible to the Queen and the Parliament ; and that the right of patronage and appointment to office was vested in him as the representative of the Crown. Acting up to his high idea of the prerogative, he made **one or two appointments** without the advice, consent, or knowledge of the leaders of the Government. Messrs. Baldwin and Lafontaine had accepted office, on the express

to advocate measures he had previously opposed—Catholic Emancipation in 1829, and the Repeal of the Corn Laws in 1846. He was one of the greatest financial reformers of modern times.

His death was caused by a fall from his horse. His second Ministry lasted from September 1841 till June 1846, when his free trade policy lost him the confidence of his party.

understanding that they would only retain it as long as they could command the support of a majority of the Assembly. They were responsible to it for all acts done by the Government. If appointments were made that were unacceptable they would lose the confidence of their supporters, and would be forced to resign. They remonstrated with the Governor, and requested him to give up the right of patronage; but Sir Charles Metcalfe absolutely refused. He would not degrade the prerogative of the Crown to enable them to purchase support in the Assembly, or allow them to reduce his office to a nullity. Messrs. Baldwin and Lafontaine resigned. This quarrel not only raised great excitement in Canada, but it was watched with keen interest by the people of the Maritime Provinces. Everywhere the stand taken by Sir Charles Metcalfe was supported by those who had always opposed the Reformers. **A general election** took place, and the Governor-General was sustained. A Tory Ministry was formed, of which Mr. Draper was the leader. Metcalfe was soon afterwards created a peer,—a pretty sure proof that the Imperial Government did not disapprove of his action. The attitude he had assumed tended to array Tory against Reformer, and to increase the number of the adherents of the latter party.

12. The harsh and angry feelings aroused by rebellion were now subsiding. Many people began to entertain gentle thoughts of Papineau and M'Kenzie. Instead of execrating them as rebels, they were inclined to sympathize with them as martyrs to the popular cause. The Imperial Government had now proclaimed an amnesty, which included all the leaders save M'Kenzie (who was not pardoned till 1850); and some of them were returned members of the new Parliament, which met in Montreal for the first time on the 28th of November.

13. Lord Metcalfe suffered under a grave malady—a cancer in the face. He was compelled to resign his position and return to England, where he died the following **1845** year. **Major-General Lord Cathcart** was appointed **A.D.** Administrator, and afterwards Governor-General. During his time a question was raised which threw Canada into a turmoil for several years, and threatened to revive the war of races in all its rancour. A number of persons had suffered loss

of property during the rebellion in Upper Canada. The Draper Government proposed to indemnify them. The Lower Canadian members consented to support such a measure on condition that parties who had taken no part in the rebellion in that Province, and who had lost property, should receive like compensation. A Commission was appointed to make inquiry into the amount of loss sustained, and the number of parties justly entitled to indemnification. A Report was submitted

**1846** to Parliament, which was deemed unsatisfactory. But

A.D. an Act was passed which provided for the full payment of the Upper Canadian losses, and for a small portion of those of Lower Canada. The question was left in an unsettled state. The French Canadians were unsatisfied, while the Loyalists of Upper Canada, who looked upon them as having been rebels in a body, were enraged at their receiving any compensation at all. A Liberal British Ministry<sup>1</sup> came into power this year. Earl Grey, the Colonial Secretary, wrote a despatch confirming that of Lord John Russell in 1839 concerning the tenure of office. **Lord Elgin**, a son-in-law of the Earl of Durham, imbued with the Liberal sentiments of that nobleman regarding colonial government, and endowed with

strong sense, sound judgment, and commanding elo-

**1847** quence, was appointed Governor-General. He arrived in

A.D. Canada in 1847. From his time is dated the final establishment of **Responsible Government** in that Province.

14. A general election took place in Canada the year after the arrival of Lord Elgin. The Tory party had for some time been losing strength in the country. The Reformers

**1848** were thoroughly aroused. The French Canadian party

A.D. acted with them. When the new Parliament met, Mr.

Draper found that he could not command the support of a majority of the Assembly. Acting on the now recognized principle, he resigned, and Messrs. Baldwin and Lafontaine assumed the reins of Government.

15. **NOVA SCOTIA.**—The course of events in Great Britain and the Canadas affected the political struggle in Nova Scotia. The rage of the Family Compact was now excited and then

<sup>1</sup> *A Liberal British Ministry.*—That in power till 1852, when Lord Derby's of Lord John Russell, who continued first Administration was formed.

soothed, according as affairs looked unfavourable or favourable to their views. The Reformers also had their cold and their hot fits. The action of the Imperial Government in pronouncing the principle of "responsibility to the people" incompatible with the dependent position of colonies, elated the Tories and mortified the Reformers. The mission of Lord Durham was watched with intense interest by the latter; its abrupt termination filled them with sorrow. When "**the Report**" appeared, they received it with applause. Joseph Howe pronounced it to be a masterly review of the difficulties of government in the Provinces, and said that the remedy proposed in it—namely, the establishment of the principle of responsibility—was both easy and efficient. The Tories in the Legislative Council—to mark their contempt of the suggestion of a **Confederation of all the Provinces**—passed condemnatory resolutions, averring that the scheme would be destructive to the interests of the Empire and of the Provinces, and would lead inevitably to their separation from the mother country.

16. To Downing Street, at this time, delegations from both parties—Tories and Reformers—frequently resorted. When Lord John Russell's despatch concerning the tenure of office appeared, it was immediately adopted by Howe and the majority in the Assembly; and they called on the Governor to put "the new and improved Constitution" into practice by dismissing those of his advisers who did not possess their confidence. Sir Colin Campbell chose to be governed by the despatches of Lord Glenelg (1836), in which the principle laid down by Lord John Russell was not recognized. The gallant veteran at the head of the Government was esteemed by Howe and his party, but the persistency with which he opposed their demands provoked them to address Her Majesty praying for his recall. Party feeling now ran very high, and the Province was thrown into a state of feverish excitement. Tories and Reformers held meetings in Halifax, and all over the Province. The farmer was drawn from his fields, the fisherman from his nets, and the labourer from his work, to listen to eloquent speeches from Joseph Howe, who fired their imagination and aroused their hopes by dilating on the great happiness and prosperity that would shine on the Province when Responsible Government

should be established. The expectations of the people were raised and depressed by contradictory rumours; now they rejoiced, when they heard that Sir Colin Campbell was to be recalled; then they grieved, when it was said that he was to be sustained by the Imperial Government.

17. Lord Sydenham arrived in Halifax in July, and assumed the government. He reconstructed the Executive Council by dismissing four members who held seats neither  
**1840** in the Legislative Council nor in the Assembly, and  
 A.D. appointed Howe and others belonging to the Reform party in their place. The new members accepted office on the express understanding that they held it only on the tenure of public confidence. Among other measures, a Bill to incorporate Halifax was brought in by this coalition Government. Sir Colin Campbell retired, and left Nova Scotia with a pleasant farewell to his staunchest political opponents. **Lord Falkland** became Governor. He expressed a determination to preserve to the people the rights and privileges of the British Constitution, and to give talent, industry, and integrity their due share in the Government. His sincerity was not doubted. He quickly achieved popularity, and his cheering presence broke through the cloud of political discontent.

18. The hopeful aspect of affairs did not long continue. The four Executive Councillors who had been forced to give way to the Reformers, would not remain quiet. The members of the coalition Government did not agree very well among themselves: their opinions on some important questions were diametrically opposed. The old Tory members scouted the idea that their tenure of office was dependent on a majority vote in the Assembly, and they rather looked down on their new colleagues; and the Reformers soon began to suspect that the Governor was under their influence. Mr. Johnston, the leader of the Tories, and Mr. Howe, the head of the popular party, differed widely on the subject of **education**: the former was in favour of sectarian schools supported by grants of public money; the latter, of a free common-school system. While the country was agitated by this question, the Governor, acting, it was suspected, in the interest of the Tory section of his Council, and without consulting Howe, dissolved the House and ordered

a general election. A small majority of members was returned who supported Mr. Johnston's policy. Bitter enmities were provoked by this action, and the **fiercest political storm** that ever rent the Province arose.

19. Another stretch of the prerogative angered the Reformers. Lord Falkland, like Sir Charles Metcalfe, maintained that the right of appointing to office was in the hands of the Governor. He called to the Executive Council a gentleman (a friend of Mr. Johnston) who held a seat neither in the Upper nor in the Lower branch of the Legislature. As this appointment was very displeasing to the Reformers, Howe and his colleagues felt constrained to resign. In taking that step they fulfilled the pledge they had given on entering the Executive Council, and carried out the principles of Responsible Government. Lord Falkland afterwards made overtures to the retired members, with the exception of Howe, and offered them their seats again; on the condition of their deserting their leader and their principles; but they refused. A wide breach was now made between the Governor and the Reformers, who felt as if the fruits of their long struggle had been snatched away from them. A fierce literary war ensued. Lord Falkland was overwhelmed with ridicule and invective in poetry and prose: he wrote indiscreet despatches to the Colonial Secretary, which stigmatized the leaders of the Reform party, and they were read by the Speaker in the Assembly. Howe attacked and insulted him in language which no provocation could justify. The heats and enmities of party conflict were carried out of the political arena into society.

20. Lord Falkland's influence for good was destroyed. Sir John Harvey was called from Newfoundland to take his place. The great "**Political Pacificator**," as he was called, attempted to form a Government of "all the talents" by taking into it the most influential men of both parties; but he failed. Howe and the Reformers distrusted coalitions: they were conscious of their strength, and were content to bide their time. A general election was close at hand, and the Imperial Government was now in favour of the principle of responsibility. A despatch from Earl Grey (dated 17th March 1847), pointedly confirming the celebrated document from the pen of Lord John Russell (1839) on the tenure of office, was received by the Johnston

Government; but it did not see the light until the elections were over, and until the victory of the men who had so long been fighting to carry out the principles there laid down was made sure. **Responsible Government was fairly established.** Howe was called to the head of affairs.

The vexed question of the surrender of the Casual and Territorial Revenue was now settled by the Assembly making provision for a permanent Civil List.

21. **NEW BRUNSWICK.**— Political parties were more evenly balanced in New Brunswick than in Canada and Nova Scotia; a spirit of greater moderation actuated its people. Some of the leaders, who had been instrumental in obtaining the concessions granted by the Civil List Bill, now rested content. When a resolution to give effect to the principle laid down in Lord John Russell's despatch on the tenure of office was introduced into the Legislature, it was defeated by the casting vote of the Speaker, Charles Simonds. The Governor, Sir John Harvey, showed a decided leaning to the cause of political reform. He had the happy art of making himself popular. He was exposed to persistent and bitter attacks from the portion of the press that supported "the small and disappointed party" which had opposed the surrender of the Casual and Territorial Revenue, and all concession. The appointment by him of a relative to office, and an addition to his salary of £500 for table-money, voted by the Legislature, were made the grounds of slanderous attacks. Notwithstanding such disagreeable incidents, his administration was successful. He safely carried New Brunswick through the trouble regarding "the Disputed Territory." When he was appointed (1841) to the Government of Newfoundland, he was presented with a handsome service of plate, which he received as a memorial of the unsurpassed legislative harmony that had reigned during his term.

22. His successor was **Major-General Sir William Colbrooke.** Not long after his arrival the Province was subjected to one of the periodical depressions of its timber trade. It was unusually severe and prolonged, and was followed by a general depression of all branches of business. The gloom of the times was deepened by a great fire that occurred in St. John. The

revenues fell off. The Province was in debt, and in need of a loan; and Lord Stanley, then Colonial Secretary, informed the Legislature that its improvident mode of voting away the revenues tended to depreciate the financial credit of New Brunswick in England. The large surplus placed at its disposal in 1837 was all spent. The opponents of the surrender of the Casual and Territorial Revenue seemed to be justified. But then, investigations had been made into the management of the Crown Land Department in 1839-40, which disclosed **serious deficiencies** in its accounts, and proved the absolute necessity of their annual supervision by the Legislature.

23. A general election was held in 1842. **Responsible Government** was the rallying cry of the Reformers. But the mass of the people appeared to be indifferent, and **1842** they were defeated. Conservatism had a strong hold **A.D.** on the Province. In the contention between the Governor-General and his advisers as to the right of appointing to office, the majority of the Legislature applauded the stand taken by Sir Charles Metcalfe, and eulogistic addresses were passed thanking him for his defence of monarchical institutions.

24. The question raised by Sir Charles was soon brought home to the Legislature. On Christmas day the Hon. William Odell died. He had succeeded his father, the **1844** Hon. and Rev. Jonathan Odell, in 1818, in the office of **A.D.** Provincial Secretary, and for quarter of a century had been a power in the Province. Sir William Colebrooke, assuming that his right was acknowledged, appointed his son-in-law, **Mr. A. Reade**, provisionally. This action excited the greatest dissatisfaction among all parties. **1845** **A.D.** Four members of the Executive Council resigned their seats. The Hon. Messrs. Hugh Johnston, E. B. Chandler, and R. L. Hazen, professed themselves prepared to maintain the prerogative of the Crown in its fullest sense; they only objected to its exercise in this particular case. Lord Glenelg (in 1835) had laid down an explicit rule, that public employments should only be bestowed on natives and settled inhabitants of the Province. Was Mr. Reade a settled inhabitant of the Province? He might become one if he received the appointment, but no one cared to have him on such terms. The Hon. Mr. Wilmot

not only held that all appointments of honour and emolument should be bestowed on inhabitants of the Province, as the hope of gaining them was an incentive to the honourable ambition of its youth, but sought to make this incident a means of advancing the cause of Responsible Government. The office of Provincial Secretary was a Crown appointment, and held for life. He wished to erect it into a department, and place at its head a member of the Executive Council, who should be responsible to the Assembly. This reform was not effected till several years later. Mr. Reade's appointment was not sanctioned by the Colonial Secretary, and the Hon. J. Simcoe Saunders succeeded to the office.

25. The question of Responsible Government was tested in 1848. Mr. Charles Fisher, member for York, holding **1848** that the subject of **Earl Grey's Despatch** (of 1847) was A.D. as applicable to New Brunswick as to Nova Scotia, framed a resolution expressing full approval of its contents. The rule laid down by the Earl was, that those officers who directed the policy of the country should hold their places on the tenure of pleasure; that is, only as long as they could command the confidence of a majority of the representative branch. Members of the Executive Council and heads of departments were included in this category. All officers under the Government were to hold their places on the tenure of good behaviour. They were excluded from either branch of the Legislature, and were not to be subjected to removal on a change of Government. The resolution was debated on the 24th of February, and carried, the members of the Conservative Government voting with the large majority. Shortly afterwards, Messrs. L. A. Wilmot and Charles Fisher entered its ranks. A great outcry was raised by some of their supporters, who accused them of having deserted their principles; but as Responsible Government had been almost unanimously accepted, they could say that there was nothing really inconsistent in their conduct. Many of the Reformers were not content with a triumph of principle; the victory was incomplete until the control of all the offices should be in their hands.

26. Sir William Colebrooke, being seized with indisposition while in St. John, summoned the Legislature to meet in the

Court House of that city. Here, on the 30th of March, he prorogued the House he was not to meet again. He was called that year to the government of British Guiana. For a long time the legislators retained a lively recollection of the incidents that marked the close of the memorable session of 1848. **Sir Edmund Head**, grandson of a baronet of the same name who had been forced to flee with the Loyalists from the States in 1783, was the next Governor, and the first civilian ever regularly appointed to the position.

27. **CANADA.**—One of the first acts of the Baldwin and Lafontaine Administration in Canada was to introduce a Bill into the Legislature to provide for the indemnification of parties in Lower Canada whose property had been destroyed during the rebellion. It authorized the raising of £100,000 for the purpose. This step was taken to satisfy those parties whose claims had not been paid in 1846. The Government, to avoid the charge of indemnifying rebels, excepted from the benefit of the Act all persons who had been convicted of high treason since 1st November 1837, or who had been transported to Bermuda. This measure excited the most furious opposition, both within and without Parliament, of the party now called distinctively "**British.**" They would make no exceptions, and raised the cry, "No pay to rebels." Anger reached the point of disaffection. **The British North American League** was formed at Montreal, with the avowed object of breaking up the Union. Its members turned to Nova Scotia and New Brunswick for comfort, and proposed a Confederation of all the Provinces as the best means of breaking down the influence of the French Canadians; if they were denied that remedy, they declared that they would throw themselves into the arms of the United States.

28. Lord Elgin, though urgently pressed by the Opposition to take a contrary course, deemed it his duty to give his assent to **the Rebellion Losses Bill**. In resolving on this step he fairly carried out "Responsible Government." The occasion was an extreme one, and well calculated to test the value of the principle. The measure in question had been proposed by a Government which enjoyed the confidence and commanded the support of a majority in the Upper and Lower branches of

the Legislature, and the matter involved was entirely within their jurisdiction. They proposed to pay local claims with money raised in the Province. The exasperation of the Opposition minority was great: its members were among the most respectable and influential in the community, and Lord Elgin would certainly offend them intensely should he sanction a Bill that seemed to them to depreciate loyalty and to put a premium on rebellion. Yet, if he had become a partisan Governor, and had adopted their views, he might have rekindled the flames of civil war. For if he had refused his assent to the Bill, the French Canadians might have thought that it would be for ever after impossible to obtain, by constitutional forms, what they deemed justice. If Responsible Government broke down at this crisis, what hope could there be that it would ever be firmly established?

29. Lord Elgin, acting on his own judgment, gave his assent to the Bill on the 25th of April. As he was leaving the Parliament Buildings, he was received with mingled jeers and cheers by a small "well-dressed" crowd that was assembled about the entrance; and as the carriage drove off it was pelted with stones and malodorous eggs. Two hours had hardly elapsed after it was known that the assent had been given, when a great concourse of people was assembled in the Champ de Mars, to mark its reprobation of the action of the Governor-General. They were not in a mood to listen to long speeches. Some one cried out that the time for action had come; and then the cry, "**To the Parliament Buildings,**" was raised. Preceded by a party bearing lighted torches, the excited crowd rushed thither. It was night: the Assembly was sitting, and the halls were brilliantly lighted. A shower of stones shivered the glass of the windows, and broke up the meeting in "the most admired disorder." As a party of armed men entered the Assembly Chamber tumultuously, the members and the lady visitors in the galleries took shelter in the lobbies. One fellow seated himself in the Speaker's chair, and placing "the hat" upon his head, roared out, "Gentlemen, the French Parliament is dissolved." Another shouldered the mace and walked off with it. Then the cry of "**Fire**" was raised, and a general rush was made from the building. The flames did their work with

furious rapidity. Before midnight the buildings, with their splendid libraries, containing thousands of valuable volumes and the records of the Province, were utterly consumed. For some days afterwards stormy excitement prevailed in the city. Parliament met in Bon Secours Market on the 27th. A resolution, expressing approval of the action of the Governor-General in assenting to the Rebellion Losses Bill, was moved. It was violently opposed by Sir Allan M'Nab and the British party; but was carried by a large majority of the Assembly. On the same day a number of the citizens of Montreal met on the "**Champ de Mars**," and carried resolutions for an address to the Queen, praying Her Majesty to disallow the Bill, and to recall the Governor-General.

30. The course taken by Lord Elgin was sustained by the Imperial Government. The British party did not recover its temper for some time. It is strange, but the good old Tories—the Loyalists—showed symptoms of rebellion, and spoke of cutting off connection with the mother country. Three hundred and fifty persons, mostly of local note in Montreal, signed a document, in which, after drawing in the blackest colours a picture of impoverished, bankrupt, and backward Canada, they declared that annexation to the United States was its only resource in its dire extremity. Of course, this manifesto was a mere ebullition of feeling.

31. Parliament met no more at Montreal. At the last stormy meeting in Bon Secours Market the question of determining the future seat of Government was debated. John A. M'Donald moved that Kingston should again become the capital of Canada. A proposal was made to move the seat of Government to Bytown on the Ottawa; but the course was adopted of transferring it to Quebec and Toronto every four years alternately. The removals from one city to another being both inconvenient and expensive, the question of fixing a permanent site was placed before the Queen in 1858. Her Majesty's choice fell on Bytown, to which the name of **Ottawa** was then given.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Responsible Government was established in Prince Edward Island in 1851, when Sir Alexander Bannerman was Governor; and in Newfoundland during the administration of Hon. Ker B. Hamilton.

QUESTIONS.—1. What were the chief suggestions of Lord Durham's Report? What tentative measure did he advise? How did the Tories treat the Report?

2. Who was appointed Governor-General in 1839? What were the difficulties of the task he had before him? For what were the rival parties chiefly striving?

3. What was the tenor of Lord John Russell's first despatch? What advice was given to colonial Governors and Assemblies?

4. What was the subject of the second despatch? What important change did it introduce? How was it regarded by the Reformers?

5. Whose consent did Mr. Poulett Thompson first obtain to his Union Scheme? What was one great objection to it? Who opposed it in Upper Canada? How was their opposition overcome? When was the Bill passed by the Imperial Parliament?

6. Mention the chief provisions of the Act of Union. In what particulars was the new Government "responsible"?

7. What honour was conferred on Mr. Thompson? How did his career illustrate the uncertainty of popularity?

8. When was the first session of the United Canadian Parliament opened? How was the principle of Responsible Government recognized on the occasion?

9. What effect had the union on the conflict of parties? How did the French Canadians retain a large share of influence? What war of sections arose? What important Bills were introduced? How did Lord Sydenham die?

10. What change of Government took place toward the end of 1841? Whose hopes did it raise? How far were they justified? Why was the new Administration short-lived?

11. What was the opinion of Lord Metcalfe entertained by those who disliked him? What did the Tories think of him? Why? What led to the resignation of Messrs. Baldwin and LaFontaine? What was the result of the

general election? What Ministry was then formed?

12. How did Papineau and M'Kenzie begin to be regarded? Who was excluded from the amnesty? When was he pardoned?

13. Who succeeded Lord Metcalfe? What question was raised in his time? What Act was passed regarding it? In what state was the question left? What was the result of the change of the British Government? What is dated from Lord Elgin's time?

14. What was the result of the general election in 1848? Who were at the head of the new Ministry?

15. What was the state of parties in Nova Scotia? What was Joseph Howe's verdict on Lord Durham's Report? What did the Tories think of Confederation?

16. What despatch of Lord John Russell's was adopted by Howe and his party? Who refused to be guided by it? What were the consequences?

17. What changes took place in 1840? Who succeeded Sir Colin Campbell? What determination did he express?

18. What disturbed the peaceful aspect of affairs? What question brought on a crisis? How did the Governor's conduct provoke enmity?

19. To what further stretch of prerogative had Falkland recourse? How did he try to break up Howe's party? What ensued?

20. Who was called to take Falkland's place? What kind of Ministry did he try to form? Why did the attempt fail? What despatch was received from Earl Grey? When was it published? Who was then called to the head of affairs?

21. What was the state of political parties in New Brunswick? Towards what were the leanings of the Governor? To what did this expose him? In what was he nevertheless successful?

22. Who succeeded Harvey? What serious difficulties had the Province to encounter soon afterwards? What proved the necessity of the annual supervision of the expenditure?

23. What was the result of the general election of 1842? What further proof of its Conservatism did the Province afford?

24. What incident brought home to the Legislature the question of appointments? What different effects did it produce? What view did Mr. Wilmot take? What was the issue as regarded Mr. Reade's appointment?

25. What was the substance of Mr. Charles Fisher's resolution? What had been the rule laid down by Earl Grey? What was the result of the debate? For what were Messrs. Wilmot and Fisher afterwards blamed?

26. When did Sir W. Colebrooke retire? Who succeeded him?

27. What was one of the first acts of

the Baldwin and Lafontaine Ministry in Canada? Whose opposition did the measure excite? What League did they form? With what object? What seemed to be the only remedy for the case?

28. What course did Lord Elgin adopt? On what ground is his conduct justifiable?

29. How did the British party show its reprobation of Lord Elgin's action? What outrage did the mob perpetrate? By what proceedings was it followed?

30. What was the verdict of the Imperial Government? What did the British party threaten to do?

31. What course was adopted with reference to the seat of Government? What change was adopted in 1858?

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

## MEASURES OF PROGRESS.

1850 to 1858 A.D.

Commercial independence.

Measures of Progress.

Municipal Institutions.

The Intercolonial Railway.

Delegations and Conferences.

The Reciprocity Treaty.

The Clergy Reserves question settled.

Feudal Tenure abolished.

Emigration.

The Hudson Bay Company.

The North-West Territory.

Selkirk Settlement.

Feuds of rival traders.

British Columbia.

1. IN the year 1850 the British North American Provinces fairly entered on their **political manhood**. From this period may be dated the final acceptance by all parties of the system of government that gave to each Province the management of its own local affairs, free from the dictation of Downing Street; leaving to the Imperial Government the burden of defending them, the power of binding them to treaties, and the right of disallowing any acts of the local Legislatures which it deemed prejudicial to the interests of the Empire. From the same year may also be dated the commercial independence of the Provinces. Four years before, in 1846, during the administration of Sir Robert Peel, the Corn Laws were repealed, and Great Britain entered into **free trade** with all the world. The effect of this measure was to place Canadian exporters of grain in a position similar to that of foreigners. In comparison with the Americans, they were placed disadvantageously, as the former had greater facilities for exportation. Formerly, when the trade of the Provinces was regulated by the Imperial Government, higher duties were imposed on articles imported into them from foreign countries than on similar goods from Great Britain. These discriminating duties in favour of the British merchant were repealed by permission of the Imperial Government in 1847. This was one concession in favour of the Provinces.

2. In 1849 the last barrier of protection was thrown down, by

the **Repeal of the Navigation Laws**. American ship-owners were then permitted to register their ships in British ports, and to compete with the ship-owners of the Provinces in the carrying trade to Great Britain and her colonies. This state of commercial independence, which enabled the people of the Provinces to trade freely with any part of the world, to import articles of necessity and luxury from any country they pleased, and to manufacture among themselves whatever they chose, was not at first looked upon as a great boon and precious privilege. The repeal of the Corn and Navigation Laws disarranged trade; the people endured a long and severe depression in all branches of business, and many grew discontented, and cried out that the mother country was casting off the Provinces. As a means of allaying the discontent, the Imperial Government was induced to give instructions to Lord Elgin to use all his influence to promote reciprocal free trade between the United States and the Provinces. The spirit of commercial independence forced upon them tended to awaken among the people a spirit of self-reliance, and to arouse a desire for enterprise. In the fourteen years between 1850 and 1864 (when the Provinces were agitated by another political change), matters of internal improvement were carried out;—**municipal institutions** were established in Canada; laws were simplified and codified; common-school education was extended and placed on a systematic basis; internal means of communication were extended and improved; lines of railway were constructed with aid from the Government. By private enterprise, telegraphs were erected, and a line of ocean steamers was established between Montreal, Quebec, and Liverpool.

3. No more can be attempted here than a brief statement of the improvements carried out during the period in question. Much had already been done in Canada between 1841 and 1850. The beginning of all the reforms, it may be said, was then made. **The system of canals** was extended and completed. They were built to overcome the obstructions of the St. Lawrence from its numerous rapids and falls, and to open up an uninterrupted course of navigation from Lakes Erie and Ontario by the great river to the ocean. The canals were hardly finished when the people of the United States com-

menced making railways; and the Canadians, in self-defence, were compelled to undertake similar works.

4. The acknowledged cause (dwelt upon by Lord Durham in his Report) of the rapid advance of the United States, was the early establishment among them of municipal institutions. The people of every town, village, and township, obtained full control of their own **local affairs**;—such as the management of the common schools, and the levying of rates and taxes for their support; the opening up and maintenance of highways; the building of bridges, court-houses, and jails; the support of the poor; and generally all matters pertaining to the health, cleanliness, and local traffic of their districts. By throwing so many matters of local concern on local bodies, the Legislatures were relieved of much business, and the people were brought to take an intelligent interest in their own affairs. Having the power to provide for their local wants, they did not look to the State to do everything for them. The want of local control over local affairs was early felt, especially in Upper Canada; but it was not until 1849 that an efficient system of municipal institutions was established there. Lower Canada had not the benefit of them till 1850; and it was several years after that time before the system in either of the Provinces was perfected. In the smaller Provinces of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick no great desire was manifested by the people at large to take the control of their own local affairs. In the earliest period of their history they were compelled to look to their Legislatures for the support of their roads, bridges, and schools; and they have not grown out of the habit. In New Brunswick, Sir Edmund Head endeavoured to rouse the people to look less to the State and more to themselves; but municipal institutions, as carried out in the Canadas, have as yet taken no root in the Lower Provinces.

5. Between the years 1841 and 1846, **common-school** education was placed on a systematic basis in Upper Canada. It was not until the year 1850 that the people of Lower Canada were roused from their apathy towards this question. A system suited to their wants was then established. After this time much attention was given to improving the grammar-school and collegiate systems of both Provinces.

6. The people of the British American Provinces were in a measure excited by the **railway mania** that raged in Great Britain in 1845. A great many projects were brought before the Legislatures, but no great undertaking was carried out until seventeen years afterwards. The railway from Portland to Montreal was then commenced, by the American, St. Lawrence, and Atlantic Company. This line was afterwards leased by the Grand Trunk Company, and became part of the great Canadian railway.

7. **An Intercolonial Railway**, from Halifax to Quebec, was a scheme that early engaged the attention of all the Provinces. In connection with that scheme their legislators for the first time met on common ground; and though for fifteen years afterwards nothing was done, their meetings led to most important results. Lord Durham, in his Report, was the first to show the vast importance of railways as a means of strengthening the hold of Great Britain on British North America, and of uniting the Upper and Lower Provinces.

8. After the settlement of the boundary question in 1842, the Imperial Government contemplated making a great military, macadamized road through New Brunswick, from the Bend of the Peticodiac to Quebec. A London company offered to substitute a **railway**, on condition that part of the money necessary to make the road should be granted to it. This scheme excited attention in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, but awakened very little interest in the Canadas, especially in Upper Canada, the people of which were more interested in the construction of a railway from Montreal to the western boundary. Nova Scotia gave an impetus to the project. The Government of Lord Falkland considered it idle and visionary to expect that a vast undertaking, which held out no inducement of immediate profit, could be carried through by a company. It could only be constructed by the Imperial Government, with the combined and spirited coöperation of the three Provinces.

The Lower Provinces undertook to bear the expenses **1846** of an exploratory survey of the country through which **A.D.** the railway must pass. Canada, for the sake of the great national project, agreed to join with them. The British Government, in response to their united request, sent out Major

William Robinson and Captain Henderson of the Royal Engineers, with a staff, to undertake the work.

9. The Report of Major Robinson was submitted to the Legislatures of the three Provinces in 1849. It gave an enthusiastic estimate of the resources of the country, and of the importance of the railway for their development.

1849  
A.D. Out of the several routes explored the preference was given to that by the coast of the Gulf,—“**The North Shore**,”—as the best for purposes of military defence. The cost was calculated at £5,000,000 sterling. In anticipation of the immediate action of the Imperial Government, Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick voted aid to the extent of £6,000 a year, and ten miles of ungranted lands on each side of the railway. But this scheme was most unfavourably criticised by Captain Harness, one of the Railway Commissioners of the Board of Trade.

To the joint proposal of the three Provinces, Earl  
1850 Grey returned a most discouraging answer. This was the first of many checks to the Intercolonial Railway.

A.D. Repelled by the Imperial Government, the Lower Provinces now looked in another direction. The desire for closer commercial intercourse between the Provinces and the United States was then growing strong. This feeling took form in a **Convention** held at Portland on the 31st of July. Delegates from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick met representative men from New England. In the hall where they sat the red-cross banner and the stars and stripes were intertwined,—the emblem of a union that many desired to promote. Out of this meeting grew the project of the European and North American Railway, by which Halifax was to be connected with Bangor, Portland, and the railway system of the United States, by a line passing through New Brunswick by way of St. John, and extending westward to the frontier of Maine.

10. Joseph Howe now entered the railway field. He was not carried away by the enthusiasm created by the Portland Convention, and was opposed to placing a railway running over British territory under the control of an American company. He held that the only safe way to construct great public works was by the Government raising money on the credit of the Provinces or under imperial guarantee, on the security of the

lands and revenues of the Provinces. He carried the people of Nova Scotia along with him. Bearing a letter of introduction from Sir John Harvey to Earl Grey, he crossed over to England with the view of raising a loan of £800,000 by aid of the Imperial Government, to construct a line of railway from **Halifax to Windsor.**

11. With regard to railway projects, Nova Scotia stood in a more favourable position than New Brunswick. Whether the line from Halifax to Quebec alone were made, or the line to the Maine frontier, or both combined, the railway by the proposed route was equally necessary. In New Brunswick it was extremely difficult to reconcile the clashing interests of the different parts of the Province. Every scheme proposed met with this **sectional opposition.** The line running westward to the frontier of Maine was looked upon as advantageous chiefly to St. John. The people of the northern counties favoured the railway to Quebec by the North Shore route; those of the river counties that by the valley of the St. John; while the people of Charlotte thought that a line from St. Andrews running nearly parallel with the United States frontier was the most direct and advantageous route.

12. Joseph Howe, by his speeches and letters, created a favourable feeling in England. With his robust and florid eloquence he brought British North America with its vast resources prominently into view. Earl Grey was so far overcome by his arguments as to invite him to reöpen the Intercolonial Railway Scheme. In a letter to him, **1851** written on the 10th of March, by Mr. Hawes, Under- A.D. Secretary of State, the aid of the Imperial Government was pledged, and the statement made that no objections would be offered to the European and North American Railway forming part of the Intercolonial. At the suggestion of Earl Grey, Lord Elgin called, at Toronto, a **meeting of delegates from the Three Provinces** concerned, to arrange the terms and settle the amount of responsibility to be borne by each.

13. The glowing pictures drawn by Mr. Howe of the resources of British North America, and the prospect of the expenditure of millions raised under imperial guarantee, offered great inducements to a celebrated firm of railway contractors—

**Messrs. Jackson and Company**—to transfer their organized force of engineers and labourers to so inviting a field. Through their agent, Mr. Archibald, they made overtures to the Governments of the Provinces.

14. The movements of Joseph Howe had been watched with some suspicion by the party in New Brunswick that favoured the line proposed at the Portland Convention. A Bill was passed through the Legislature providing for the construction of a railway from **St. John to Shediac**, which should form part of the Intercolonial; and the resolution was taken not to construct the New Brunswick portion of the railway from Halifax to Quebec unless imperial aid were given to the line from St. John to Shediac. Howe, passing through New Brunswick on his way to Toronto to join the meeting of the delegates, smothered opposition by showing, by the letter of Mr. Hawes of the 10th of March, that the Imperial Government was pledged to aid both lines.

15. The delegates met at **Toronto** on the 21st of June. Several proposals were made. The one agreed to provided that the line from Halifax to Quebec should be undertaken on the joint account of the three Provinces, which should grant five miles of Crown lands on each side; and that, until the payment of the cost of construction and interest, the receipts should be common property, after which each Province was to own that portion of the road passing through its own territory. The New Brunswick Government agreed to this proposal on the distinct understanding that imperial aid should be given to the European and North American Railway. The Government of Nova Scotia afterwards generously offered to make thirty miles within New Brunswick. Everything seemed to be now satisfactorily settled. But there is many a slip between the cup and the lip. Earl Grey, by a despatch dated the 27th of November, apprised the Government of New Brunswick that Mr. Howe had misinterpreted Mr. Hawes's letter;—the Imperial Government would not aid the European and North American Railway. This announcement, after high hopes had been raised, caused deep disappointment. Many accused Howe of having made a wilful mistake. He, however, maintained that the interpretation he had put upon the letter had been at

first accepted by Earl Grey, and that his Lordship must afterwards have changed his mind. This misconception tended to engender mistrust among the Provinces.

16. Unwilling to stop the works of the Intercolonial Railway, the Government of New Brunswick then announced that it was prepared to abide by the Toronto arrangement, provided the route by the valley of the St. John were chosen. But "No," said the men of Nova Scotia. "We undertook one-third of the line on the understanding that it should go by the North Shore; the adoption of the St. John valley route would nullify the advantages that made us willing to agree to undertake so much."

17. **Another meeting of delegates** took place at Halifax the following January, to reconsider the whole matter. The Hon. Messrs. Hincks, Tache, and Young, of the **1852** Canadian Government, submitted a final proposal to A.D. the Maritime Provinces. Before it was taken up, the Hon. E. B. Chandler of New Brunswick intimated to Mr. Hincks that a body of English capitalists (including Jackson and Co.), and calling themselves the **North American Railway Association**, were about to make a proposal to construct the two proposed lines on condition of receiving an annual grant of £90,000 a year for twenty years, and 5,000,000 of acres of Crown lands. Would he consider it? "Not for a moment," answered Mr. Hincks. The Canadian proposal was then accepted. It bore hard on New Brunswick, for that Province was called to undertake five-twelfths of the cost of construction; but, hard as were the terms, its Government accepted them rather than bear the odium of staying a great national work.

18. A deputation was appointed to proceed to England to **solicit imperial aid** for the Intercolonial Railway on the new basis. There now appeared to be a want of cordial coöperation among the Governments of the three Provinces. The delegates of Nova Scotia did not join the delegates of Canada and New Brunswick, so that Messrs. Hincks and Chandler were left to make what arrangements they could. They were coldly received by the Government of Earl Derby. They suspected that some secret hostile influence was at work. Aggrieved at being slighted, impatient at being kept waiting for an answer

to his communication to the Colonial Secretary, Mr. Hincks wrote a **sharp letter** to Sir John Pakington, in which he bluntly stated that Canada, which he represented, came not as a humble suitor for aid, but on the invitation of the Imperial Government to take part in a great national work. The answer the delegates at length received was **adverse**. Imperial aid could not be given to a railway by the valley of the St. John: so again the great project fell to the ground. Each Province was now left to construct the works most advantageous to its interests on its own responsibility. Messrs. Hincks and Chandler threw themselves into the arms of Jackson and Co., and made arrangements for Canada, New Brunswick, and also on behalf of Nova Scotia; but the people of the last-named Province, hearkening to the advice of Howe, would not enter into copartnership with contractors, however eminent, and called on the Government to undertake the works.

19. This year the **Grand Trunk Company** was incorporated in Canada to make a railway from Montreal to Toronto, and from Quebec to Rivière du Loup; and the work was commenced. In the same year in New Brunswick, the Legislature ratified a contract with Jackson and Co. to make the line from St. John to Shediac.

20. By the influence of Lord Elgin, the negotiations for the establishment of a system of **Free Trade** between Canada and the United States were brought to a successful conclusion. By their express desire, the Maritime Provinces were included. On the 5th of June 1854 the **Reciprocity**  
A.D. **Treaty** was signed and sealed at Washington by Lord Elgin and the Hon. W. L. Marcy, the American Minister.

By the articles of the treaty the produce of the sea, the soil, and the forests were mutually admitted free; the Americans gained a full participation in the sea fisheries and in the navigation of the canals of Canada, and of the rivers St. Lawrence and St. John. The treaty was to continue in force ten years from the time when it came into operation, and a year after either of the contracting parties signified a desire to terminate it. It was very favourable to the interests of the farmers of Upper Canada, but in the Maritime Provinces it evoked **dissatisfaction**. The course pursued by Lord Elgin awakened

displeasure. He was accused of hurrying off to Washington without giving their delegates due notice, and of signing away their interests without giving those delegates an opportunity to make, if possible, a better bargain. The objections raised to the treaty were, that though the United States had nothing to exchange comparable in value to the priceless fisheries of British North America, and though their ships were placed on an equality with the ships of Great Britain, they still peremptorily declined to concede the only equivalent they could offer—namely, the admission of colonial vessels to registry in their ports and to their coasting trade. Great Britain, in the spirit of the policy she had pursued since the last war with the United States, conceded much to preserve amicable relations. The discontent in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick was only a passing feeling. The events of the times were such as called forth the sympathy of all the Provinces towards the mother country; for Great Britain, in alliance with France, had declared war against Russia,<sup>1</sup> and while Lord Elgin was signing the treaty at Washington, the forces of the combined powers were collecting at Varna,<sup>2</sup> preparatory to an invasion of the Crimea.

21. During the course of the summer of 1854 Sir Edmund Head was appointed Governor-General in the room of Lord Elgin, and the Hon. J. Henry Thomas Manners-Sutton assumed the Governorship of New Brunswick. At this time Sir J. Gaspard le Marchand was Governor of Nova Scotia, and Sir Dominic Daly of Prince Edward Island.

22. In Sir Edmund Head's time the questions that had continually provoked jealousy and discord in Upper Canada were settled in an amicable manner. After the Union, several attempts were made to dispose of the difficulty arising out of the claim of the Church of England to the sole enjoyment of the Clergy Reserves. The establishment of fifty-six rectories by Sir John Colborne had brought the contest between that

<sup>1</sup> *War against Russia.*—Russia seized the Principalities of Moldavia and Wallachia, north of the Danube. France and Britain, holding this to be a disturbance of the balance of power, formed an alliance in aid of Turkey. The Crimea was the chief theatre of the

war which ensued. The Allies gained the great victories of the Alma, Inkermann, Balaklava, and the Tchernaya. The war was ended by the Treaty of Paris, March 1856.

<sup>2</sup> *Varna.*—A sea-port of Turkey, on the western shore of the Black Sea.

body and the other sects **to a direct issue**. That act formally gave the Church of England connection with the State and the position of an Established Church, which it had always claimed. But such pretensions were exceedingly distasteful to the members of the other sects, who formed the majority of the population. The discussions in Parliament over this question revived the angry passions of the past, and tended to perpetuate discord and disquiet throughout the Province ; but in 1854 this trouble was disposed of. Parliament, acting under authority of an Imperial Act, passed a measure decreeing the **separation** of the State from connection with any Church, providing for the payment to the incumbents of the rectories of a sum equivalent to the value of the existing stipends, and making provision for the support of the widows and children of clergymen. After all just claims were satisfied, the remaining Clergy Reserves and funds were divided among the municipalities according to population.

23. At the same time an important step was taken, **to abolish "the Feudal Tenure"** in Lower Canada ; but this **1855** reform was not finally carried out until 1859. The **A.D.** body of the Censitaires had long desired to be freed from the state of semi-vassalage in which they were kept, and which so plainly placed them in a position of inferiority as compared with the British population. The Seigneurs were naturally unwilling to relinquish their feudal rights and privileges ; but their opposition was at length overcome, and full justice was done. The Censitaires paid a small sum, and the Province generally contributed £650,000, to indemnify the Seigneurs.

24. Measures were taken to promote settlement. The treatment that immigrants had formerly received in the Provinces was disgraceful. Nothing was done to encourage or cheer them. The vessels that brought them were frequently unseaworthy, overcrowded, and plague-stricken. On landing, many brought with them fever, disease, and destitution. Such as had means were waylaid by villains, whose only object was to rob and mislead them. To obviate these evils **quarantine harbours** were established, and the sick received medical care in the hospitals ; officers were appointed to give the immigrants

reliable information regarding the mode of obtaining grants of land, and of reaching their allotted destinations. The tendency of the Governments and people of the Provinces is to show to immigrants increasing care and kindness,—to welcome them as friends and labourers whose toil will increase the wealth and greatness of the Dominion.

25. In the year 1858 attention was drawn to **the North-West Territory**. It will be convenient here to take a glance at the progress of events in that quarter. The Hudson Bay Company (incorporated by Royal Charter in 1670) remained in undisputed possession of a boundless dominion, after the French King, by the Treaty of Utrecht, had relinquished all claim to it. In fact, its boundaries were, as defined in the treaty, a ridge of highlands extending, or which was supposed to extend, along the sources of the rivers falling into St. James and Hudson Bays. This definition was vague enough to encourage the Company to maintain claims that were open to dispute. It contended that its possessions stretched to the Rocky Mountains, including the great tract which has its centre in Lake Winnipeg.<sup>1</sup> For over a century the great Company enjoyed **an almost matchless prosperity**. Its affairs were presided over by a Governor-in-Chief, whose head-quarters were at Fort Factory, on Nelson Bay.<sup>2</sup> Under him was a number of factors, who took charge of the several departments and districts into which the Territory was divided. In its service was a numerous force of traders, clerks, servants, and voyageurs. The warriors of the various Indian tribes that hunted over their domain brought the spoils of the chase to the posts, which were built in convenient positions by the shores of the great bays, at the heads of lakes, and by the banks and mouths of rivers.

26. A few years after the Conquest, certain merchants of Montreal, chiefly Scotchmen, commenced trading in the North-West Territory, whose boundaries were defined as stretching from the head of Lake Superior over the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific coast, north to the Frozen Sea, and north-eastward to the limits of the Hudson Bay Company's domain. In 1784

<sup>1</sup> *Lake Winnipeg*.—Into this lake by the Nelson River, falling into Hudson Bay.  
flow the Saskatchewan, Red, and Assiniboine Rivers. It finds an outlet

<sup>2</sup> *Nelson Bay*.—In Hudson Bay.

they formed the **North-West Company**. They were very prosperous, and soon had a small army of employés at their command. They established posts by the shores of Lake Winnipeg and on Red River, in the country that the Hudson Bay people claimed as their exclusive domain. Then arose **disputes about boundaries**, which broke into bloody feuds between the rival traders.

27. Employés of both Companies made discoveries in the hitherto unknown wilderness. John Hearn (1771) found his way to a lake larger than Ontario, the **Great Slave**, and to the Metal or Coppermine River. (Sir) Alexander Mackenzie (1789) explored further north-west to a great river falling into the Arctic Sea, since called the **Mackenzie**. He crossed the Rocky Mountains and discovered the Tâ-cout-ché Tesse, the river of the Faculty nation. Several years later (1808), Simon Frazer, a North-wester, navigated it to its mouth, and half a century later it became famous as the gold-bearing **Frazer River**. Six years before (1797), Captain Vancouver had threaded his way through the archipelago on the Pacific coast, and given his name to the largest of its islands.

28. The Hudson Bay Company sold to the **Earl of Selkirk** (1811-12) a large tract of country along the courses of the Red and Assiniboine Rivers. He sent out a party of Scotchmen (who were afterwards joined by some Norwegians and French Canadians) to make a settlement. They were exposed to severe privations from the failure of their first crops, and to constant peril from the prowling Indians. Captain Milnes M'Donnel was appointed Governor. He kept his head-quarters at Fort Dan (the present Pembina). The establishment of this colony in territory to which the Hudson Bay Company had doubtful right, more fiercely inflamed the jealousy of the North-Westers. **The feuds** between the servants, the wild half-breeds and Indian allies, of the rival traders, were waged with fearful animosity for several years. Blood was shed, life was taken, cruelties were perpetrated, and the fruits of arduous toil were destroyed. The unfortunate Scotchmen and Norwegians of Selkirk were driven from their settlements. A party found temporary shelter at Norway House, one of the chief Hudson Bay posts near the outlet of Lake Winnipeg. They returned

only to be driven away again. The feud reached such a height that Sir George Drummond, then Governor of Canada, sent a regiment to Red River to **keep the peace** (1816). At this time the profits of the Hudson Bay Company fell to zero. The stock-holders in London received no dividends whatever. In a few years the criminal folly of the rivalries forced itself on the minds of those who had the chief interest in the fur-trade. An amalgamation of the interests of the two Companies was brought about. They were united under the name of the **Hudson Bay Company**. The monopoly of the trade in the British region between the coasts of Labrador and Columbia was granted to it for a term of years by the Imperial Parliament. With peace, prosperity returned.

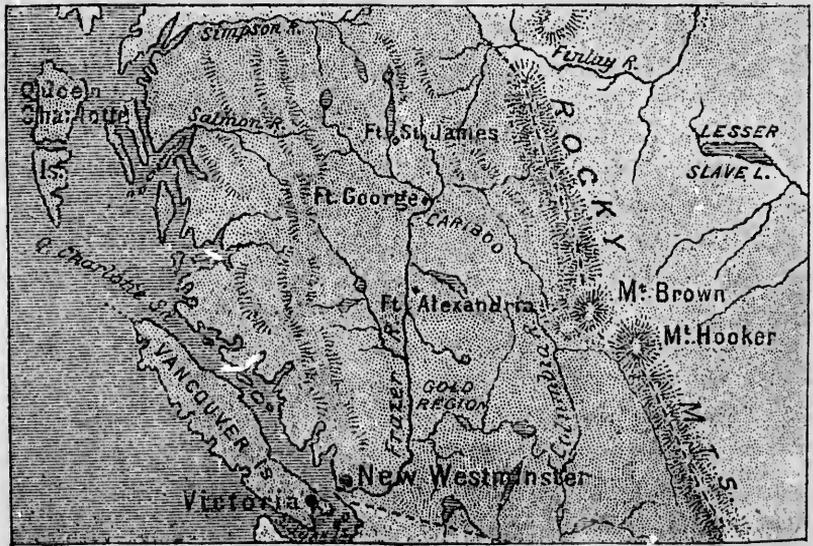
29. The Hudson Bay Company commenced to colonize **Vancouver Island** in 1843. It was looked upon as a most favourable field for settlement. It possessed spacious harbours, and enjoyed a healthy climate. Its soil was fertile, its forests of pine and other useful trees were extensive, and its sea and river fisheries exhaustless. **Victoria**, the capital, was then founded.

30. Shortly after this time, Great Britain and the United States were on the point of going to war over a dispute regarding the boundaries of their respective possessions in the west. The dispute was for the time settled by the **Oregon Treaty** (July 17, 1846). The boundaries were then defined to be separated by a line passing through the middle of the channel that divides Vancouver Island from the mainland. In this channel, and between the Strait of Haro on the east and of Rosario on the west, lies **San Juan** and other lesser islands. The Americans soon began to assert that San Juan was within their territory, as they claimed that the Haro Strait, which runs by the eastern coast of Vancouver, was within the dividing line as defined by the treaty. The British, on the contrary, contended that the Rosario Strait, running west of San Juan, and leaving that island within their territory, was the true dividing line. The **San Juan difficulty**<sup>1</sup> remained unsettled for a number of years.

<sup>1</sup> *The San Juan difficulty.*—It was referred by the Treaty of Washington (8th May 1871) for arbitration to the Emperor of Germany, who, in October 1872, gave his award in favour of the United States. See p. 442.

In 1849 Vancouver was erected into a Crown colony, and (Sir) James Douglas, local agent of the Hudson Bay Company, was appointed Governor.

31. Attention, as already stated, was directed to the North-West Territory at this time. The term of the monopoly of trade of the Hudson Bay Company was about 1858 A.D. to expire. Doubts were raised as to the validity of its ancient Charter, and a desire was manifested to annex the vast domain to Canada. The value of the Red River districts and Saskatchewan fertile belts was then becoming well known. Parties in Upper Canada perceived that they presented an opportunity to extend the bounds of their Province westward, and to increase **British influence** in the United Canadas. But the annexation of the North-West Territory did not take place till eleven years afterwards. **British Columbia** in the



BRITISH COLUMBIA : VANCOUVER ISLAND.

same year sprang into notice (1858). **Discoveries of gold** had been made in the country of the Upper Columbia River as early as 1850. The "findings" continued to be made on so large a scale that Governor Douglas in 1856 apprised the Imperial Government of the fact. When it was noised abroad, adventurous spirits were seized with a desire to explore the new

gold-fields. Wild miners from California deserted their old to try their fortune in the new diggings. By the year 1858, between twenty and thirty thousand men were scattered over the rocky mountain-slopes and the terraced ravines through which flows the Frazer River and its tributaries. A fixed and firm Government was necessary, to keep the reckless portion of the mixed population in order. British Columbia was constituted a separate colony, and **New Westminster**, its seat of Government, was founded.

32. The following year the American General commanding in the Oregon Territory crossed the dividing channel with a military force, and landed in San Juan. The **1859** British Admiral on the station, Sir Robert Baynes, there-  
A.D.  
upon sent a party of Royal Marines to the island. The claims of the two countries were thus brought to a **threatening collision**; but the danger was averted. The United States Government did not countenance the act of its General. The American soldiers did not retire altogether; for an agreement was made between the two Powers that each should maintain a small military force upon the island until the question of ownership should be settled.

QUESTIONS.—1. Describe the system of government finally accepted by all parties in Canada. What effect had the repeal of the Corn Laws on the Provinces? What concession was made to them in 1847?

2. When and by what measure did the Provinces achieve commercial independence? What were its immediate effects? What means were taken to allay the discontent? How were the years from 1850 till 1864 occupied?

3. What was the purpose of the canal system? What induced the Canadians to construct railways?

4. To what had Lord Durham ascribed the rapid advance of the United States? How had this affected the people? When were efficient municipal institutions established in Upper Canada? When, in Lower Canada? In what Provinces have municipal institutions taken no root?

5. When were systems of public education established in the Canadas?

6. What effect had the English railway mania on the North American Provinces? What was the first great railway undertaken there?

7. What railway scheme early engaged the attention of all the Provinces? Who had been the first to point out the importance of railways in British North America?

8. What great project was discussed shortly after 1842? Which Province was most active in connection with it? What step did the British Government take?

9. Give the substance of Major Robinson's Report. What aid did the Legislatures of the three Provinces vote to the undertaking? What discouraged it? What project took the place of this one?

10. What was Joseph Howe's opinion of the scheme? On what mission did he go to England?

11. Why was Nova Scotia more favourably situated than New Brunswick

for entering on these great railway schemes?

12. What was the result of Joseph Howe's visit to England? For what purpose was a meeting of delegates called at Toronto?

13. What were Messrs. Jackson and Company induced to do?

14. What party had watched Howe's movements with suspicion? What position did the New Brunswick Legislature take up? How was opposition in that quarter smothered?

15. What proposal was agreed to by the delegates at Toronto? How was the harmony disturbed?

16. What did the New Brunswick Government then propose? What did Nova Scotia reply?

17. What proposal did Mr. Chandler make at the Halifax meeting of delegates? How was it received? To what did the delegates then agree? On which Province did that project bear hardly?

18. What was the result of the application for imperial aid? What was the only course now open to the Provinces? On what point did Nova Scotia separate from the other Provinces?

19. What line of railway was begun in Canada in 1852?

20. When was the Reciprocity Treaty between Canada and the United States signed? To whom was the treaty favourable? Where was it unpopular? For what was Lord Elgin blamed? What were the chief objections to the treaty?

21. When did Lord Elgin retire? Who succeeded him?

22. What act had brought the contest

between the Church of England and the other sects to a direct issue? When was the matter settled? How?

23. When was feudal tenure in Lower Canada abolished? How were the Seigneurs indemnified?

24. What measures were taken to increase the comfort of immigrants and to promote settlement?

25. When was the Hudson Bay Company incorporated? What land did the Company claim? How were its operations carried on?

26. When was the North-West Company formed? What brought the two companies into collision?

27. What discoveries were made by the employés of these companies?

28. Sketch the early history of the Selkirk (Red River) Settlement. What effect had the feuds between the companies on the fur-trade? When did prosperity return?

29. When did the colonizing of Vancouver Island begin? Why was it deemed a favourable field for settlement?

30. What dispute arose at this time between Great Britain and the United States? What were defined to be the boundaries by the Oregon Treaty? What further difference arose? When did Vancouver become a Crown colony?

31. What desire was manifested in 1858 with reference to the North-West Territory? What brought British Columbia into prominent notice? How did it obtain a fixed Government?

32. What proceedings threatened a collision in San Juan in 1859? How was the danger averted?

## CHAPTER XL.

## CONFEDERATION.

1857 to 1867 A.D.

State of the Union Question.  
 Increased Representation.  
 An Elective Legislative Council.  
 Representation by Population.  
 First proposal of Union.  
 The Canadian Tariffs.  
 The Prince of Wales's visit.  
 The United States.  
 Defence Question.  
 Crisis in Parliament of Canada.  
 Parties coalesce to carry Confederation.  
 Prince Edward Island Conference.

Quebec Conference.  
 The Scheme of Union.  
 Delegation of Canadian Ministry to  
 London.  
 New Brunswick anti-confederate.  
 Mr. Cartwright's Despatch.  
 The F. Brotherhood.  
 The Session of 1866 in New Brunswick.  
 Meeting of Delegates in London.  
 British North America Act.  
 First Meeting of Confederate Parlia-  
 ment.

1. NOT very long after the establishment of British power in Canada the **Question of Union** became a subject of speculation. The vast progress made by the United States seemed to prove the strength of that principle; and the aggressive spirit evinced by them raised uneasy feelings with regard to the weak position of the separate Provinces. Each State had its independent Legislature, which governed its own local affairs; and there was a Central Government (the visible representation of the idea of country), which was supreme over all such general matters as pertained to defence, commerce, currency, and foreign relations. Within the bounds of the Union there was freedom of trade. The individual States were thus all bound together by the bond of obedience to a central power, and by the tie of a common interest. The British Provinces owed allegiance to one Sovereign,—there was thus a grand bond of union; but a similar strong **community of interest did not exist** among the individual Provinces as between the States. Each regulated its own currency; each adjusted its own tariffs to suit its own views and wants; and the free interchange of products was prevented by a barrier of custom-houses along the boundaries of each Province.

2. In the year 1808 a scheme to unite all the British Provinces

under a federal form of government was suggested by **Richard J. Winacke** of Nova Scotia. In 1814 (as before stated) Chief-Justice Sewell of Quebec laid a proposal for the Confederation of all the Provinces before the Earl of Bathurst, then Colonial Secretary, as a means of overcoming the difficulties of government in Lower Canada. In 1822 (the year in which a measure to unite the two Canadas was proposed in the Imperial Parliament and withdrawn) a project for the Confederation of all the Provinces was, at the request of the Colonial Office, drawn up by Sir John Beverley Robinson. In 1839 Lord Durham recommended **Confederation** as the best means of obviating the difficulties of government in Lower Canada, and of advancing the general interests of all the Provinces. In fact, at every political crisis in Canada the idea of Confederation was revived.

3. The period between 1857 and 1867 was **an important decade** in the history of the British North American Provinces. In 1857 the first practical step was taken to carry out the project which had been at various times in contemplation. In 1867 Confederation was consummated. During the earlier years of this period the discussion of the question was confined chiefly to the Canadas, and there it was only intermittent. In the Lower Provinces neither the people nor the Legislatures concerned themselves about it, though it sometimes formed the theme of a newspaper article. In Nova Scotia the proposal for a legislative union with New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island found favour, but the greater union with Canada did not then seem to be thought practicable.

4. Several events happened which, combined, forced the people to look upon Confederation not as a theory, as heretofore, but as a serious practical measure. **The War of Secession** broke out. An angry feeling was aroused in the United States against Great Britain. The danger of war being imminent, the British Government pressed upon the Provinces the necessity of uniting, in order to provide greater means of defence. The sectional difficulties in the Canadas, which had been increasing in intensity since 1857, reached an alarming height in 1864, when the United States gave warning of their intention to abrogate the Reciprocity Treaty. Again, a party in England raised the cry that the Provinces were a burden and a danger, and of

little commercial benefit to the mother country; and a feeling in favour of severing the connection seemed to be growing in strength. A conviction took possession of the minds of many people, that if the Provinces did not seize the opportunity that presented itself to unite, they could not remain in their separate condition, but would be forced before long to join the confederacy of the United States: the alternative was **Confederation or Annexation.**

5. Important measures of reform had been passed during the preceding ten years by the Parliament of the United Canadas. Still, there remained the old difficulties arising out of the different characters of the two portions of the population, expressed in their language, laws, and religion. The Government of the Canadas was, in fact, divided into **two sections**,—Eastern and Western,—each with its premier, or leader, and its several members in the Cabinet representing its interests. The British and the French Canadian members in Parliament were divided into parties;—the first into Conservatives and Liberals or Reformers (vulgarly *Grits*); the second into similar divisions, termed *Bleus* and *Rouges*. The French Canadians held their position well. By aid of their majority, the British Conservative minority were enabled to carry on the Government. The jealousy of sections tended to promote extravagance, and to excite angry altercations. As nearly as possible an equal division of the public money was insisted on. When a grant was made to Upper Canada for a useful public work, a like amount had to be voted to Lower Canada.

6. The Union of the Canadas had been founded on the basis of **equality of representation** in Parliament. The French Canadians regarded that provision as a guarantee that they would be enabled to preserve their language, laws, and religion intact. When Lower Canada entered the Union in 1841 it had the greater population; ten years later it could not boast of that superiority. Upper Canada had then 60,000 more people than the sister Province. The question was then raised, "**Ought not the Western British Province to have a representation in Parliament in proportion to its numbers?**"

7. In 1853 the number of representatives was increased from 84 to 130, giving 65 to each section. Three years afterwards a

change was made in the mode of appointing members to the Legislative Council. It became an **elective** instead of a nominative body. Its members, instead of being appointed by the Governor and Council, under authority of the Crown, were henceforth to be elected by the people. The Provinces were divided into 48 electoral districts, corresponding to the number of members of the Council. Elections were to be held in one-fourth of the districts every two years, thus securing an election of the entire House once every eight years. The new law did not affect the members already appointed by the Crown, but only took effect on their death or resignation. The elective principle had not been fully carried out when the nominative principle was reestablished by the Constitution of 1867.

8. While these changes were in progress the Provinces were agitated by a demand for alteration in the basis of representation. Probably most people in Upper Canada thought that the Province ought to have more representatives, but all were not willing to raise an exasperating question. The increase of representation became the favourite dogma of the Reformers. **George Brown**, a powerful speaker and writer, was the leader—the Boanerges of the party; his journal, "**The Globe**," established in Toronto, was its exponent. At public meetings "representation by population" was the theme of exciting harangues; it was the rallying cry at elections. If their demand were conceded, the Reformers expected that the representation of British and Protestant Upper Canada would become all-powerful in Parliament; that they would be able to carry out the common-school system in its entirety, and to prevent the establishment of sectarian schools by the Roman Catholic clergy; that Upper Canada would gain control of the revenues, and be able to prosecute useful public works, to develop trade in the west, and to acquire the North-West Territory.

9. This demand for "**representation by population**" was strenuously resisted by the people of Lower Canada; they considered it a violation of the pact of the Union. They did not say that the Upper Canadians would do them absolute injustice, but they were afraid to trust them with the power that would enable them to do so, were they so disposed. They would never consent to the principle, unless it were guarded by such checks

and guarantees as would secure to them the continuance of their peculiar institutions. In order to surmount the difficulty caused by the agitation of "representation by population," and to restore harmony between the sections, some of the Reformers proposed that the Legislative Union should be broken up and a Federal Union substituted, by which a General Parliament would be established to legislate in matters of common concern to both Provinces,—as customs, commerce, currency; and a Legislature in each, to have control over local matters,—as education, administration of justice, militia, public works.

10. The angry disputes between the two sections awakened the anxiety of thoughtful statesmen in Canada.

**Alexander T. Galt**, member for Sherbrooke, brought **1857** under the consideration of Parliament the subject of a **A.D.**

Confederation of all the Provinces. In his place, he made a speech in which he set forth the advantages of such a scheme, as offering the means to put an end to sectional strifes, to still the agitation of representation by population, and to advance the prosperity of British North America. The speech, able though it was, excited little interest in Parliament, but it was **the first blast of battle**. Next year a change in the Government took place. The Administration of John A. M'Donald and George E. Cartier was defeated on the question of carrying out Her Majesty's decision respecting the removal of the seat of Government to Ottawa. Parliament was dissolved, a general election took place, and the Reform party gained a small majority. George Brown and A. A. Dorion formed a Government. It was defeated, after a very brief existence. The Governor-General, Sir Edmund Head, then called on the leaders of the Conservatives, and the former Administration, with a slight change, was reconstructed. It was now the Cartier and M'Donald Administration. Its members did not go back to the people for reëlection, according to the established practice, but resumed their duties as if the few days of Brown and Dorion were not worth reckoning. The rage of the Reformers was aroused at the abrupt manner in which their Government had been defeated, at the refusal of the Governor-General to dissolve Parliament, and at what they deemed the unconstitutional way by which the Conservative Administration had regained power.

11. Mr. Galt joined the Cartier and M'Donald Administration, and Confederation was brought forward as the leading measure of their policy. At this time the project of the **Inter-colonial Railway** was engaging the attention of the Governments of Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick, and their delegates met in London to enter into negotiations with the Imperial Government; these were, however, unsuccessful. The Canadian delegates—Hon. Messrs. Cartier, Ross, and Galt—addressed a **memorial** to Hon. E. Bulwer Lytton,<sup>1</sup> then Colonial Secretary, in which, in all seriousness, they stated that grave difficulties presented themselves in the way of Government in Canada, and pointed out that **Confederation** was a measure not only of Provincial, but of Imperial importance; that it afforded a remedy for allaying the sectional jealousy of Canada, and a means of binding together and promoting the prosperity of all the Provinces, and of strengthening the power of the Empire on the American Continent. They suggested that the Imperial Government should authorize the appointment of delegates from all the Provinces to discuss the question. A **discouraging answer** was returned by the Colonial Secretary, and the proposal was somewhat coolly received by the Maritime Governments. In Nova Scotia a legislative union with New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island was more favourably looked upon than the Canadian scheme. In New Brunswick the Government seemed to be little disposed to discuss the question of union at all. They conceived that any change in the existing condition of the Provinces was unnecessary; the prosperity they had attained, and the power of self-government they enjoyed, left them nothing to envy in the condition of the neighbouring Republic.

12. The subject of Confederation was not taken into consideration when the Canadian Parliament met again.

**1859** It was dismissed for the time from consideration.

A. D. **A Federal Union** of the two Canadas was proposed at a Reform convention held at Toronto in the beginning of winter, as a remedy for the increasing difficulties. But

---

<sup>1</sup> *Hon. E. Bulwer-Lytton.*—Afterwards Lord Lytton; the celebrated novelist and dramatic writer. He was Colonial Secretary in Lord Derby's second Administration, from 1858 till 1859. Born 1805, died 1873.

nothing practical was done, though the necessity grew more pressing for some change in the relations of Upper to Lower Canada.

13. When the Canadian Government made the proposal of union to the Lower Provinces the circumstances of the time were unfavourable. Since the year 1854 Canada had enjoyed much seeming prosperity. The building of the Grand Trunk Railway caused a great expenditure; money was plentiful, and was more easily obtained than it had formerly been. The Provinces were blessed with fine harvests, and the farmers had a profitable market for their grain. The Reciprocity Treaty with the United States favoured them. But in 1857 a change occurred. **A severe crisis** overtook the commerce of America. It was long and severely felt in Canada. To add to the depression and difficulty of the times there was a succession of **bad harvests**. The wheat crop of 1858 was almost destroyed. The farmers had no grain to export. Many, who in the feverish hour of prosperity believed themselves rich, were plunged into the depths of bankruptcy. The revenue derived from the duties on imports fell off. At a time when the Government had insufficient money at their command to meet the ordinary expenses, they were called upon to assume large additional liabilities. To maintain the credit of the country they were compelled to increase taxation by reëdjusting the tariff and imposing a larger scale of duties on imports.

14. The imposition of the **high tariff** prejudiced English manufacturers against the Provinces, and tended to raise doubts in their minds as to the value of colonies to the mother country. They complained that its effect was to shut them out from the Canadian market, and to favour the introduction of American manufactures. The tariff also caused much discussion in the Provinces among parties who took different views regarding the commercial policy that colonies ought to pursue. After the repeal of the Corn Laws in Great Britain (in 1846), the question of Protection or Free Trade was much debated, not only in Canada, but also in the other Provinces. One party held that the wisest course was to reduce as much as possible the duties on imports, to carry on unrestricted commerce with all foreign nations, and to raise a revenue by direct taxation.

Another party held that the money of the Provinces ought to be retained in them, and not sent abroad to purchase what their own people might make; and that high protective duties should be imposed on foreign manufactures to encourage their own; that the aim of their Legislature should be to make the Provinces as nearly self-sustaining as might be; and that instead of promoting the importation of goods and articles from abroad, they should endeavour to induce British capitalists to establish manufactures in the Provinces, and to draw skilled operatives to them from Britain.

15. The tariffs of 1858-59 were arranged by the Canadian Government, not with a view of carrying out any particular policy, but for the purpose of raising a revenue. Indirectly, however, they were to some extent "protective," as the high duties imposed on certain articles tended to foster a number of new manufactories.

16. From the war of sections, the strife of parties, and clashing views of policy, the course of history turns to an event that stirred the heart of the people of British North America, and touched their feelings of attachment to the mother country, and of love and respect for the Sovereign. Two circumstances seemed to the people of Canada to demand a **1860** A.D. signal celebration. The magnificent **Victoria Bridge**,<sup>1</sup> spanning the River St. Lawrence at Montreal, was all but completed, and the erection of the **Parliament Buildings** at the new seat of Government at Ottawa, was about to be commenced. Only a **royal hand** should lay the key-stone of the arch, fasten the last of a million of rivets in the enormous tubes of the bridge, and lay the corner-stone of an edifice that might become the seat of the wisdom of a nation. The two branches of the Legislature united in an address soliciting the honour of a visit from the Queen to the loyal and flourishing Provinces. Unable to accept the invitation, Her Majesty graciously deputed her eldest son, the heir-apparent to the throne, to be her representative. When the intention of the

<sup>1</sup> *Victoria Bridge*.—This bridge, built over the St. Lawrence at Montreal, under the superintendence of Mr. Robert Stephenson and Mr. A. M. Ross, was begun 24th May 1854, and opened by the Prince of Wales 25th August 1860. Its length is about sixty yards less than two English miles. It is supported by twenty-four piers. The cost was £1,700,000.

Prince of Wales to visit Canada became known, the other Provinces eagerly desired to share in the honour.

17. Since Edward, Duke of Kent, commanded in Quebec, and dispensed viceregal hospitality at the Lodge, Halifax, no member of the Royal Family had set foot on British North American soil. In the sixty years that had intervened between his time and the coming of the young Prince, his grandson, scattered settlements, newly cut out of the wilderness, had grown to be flourishing provinces.

18. The *Hero*, bearing the Prince of Wales, his guardian the Duke of Newcastle, Colonial Secretary, and a brilliant suite, and with a fleet of war vessels in its train, arrived off the coast of Newfoundland in July. **The royal party** landed at St. John's on the 23rd, thence proceeded to Halifax, St. John, and Frederickton, and ended their tour of the Maritime Provinces in Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island. Their progress through them was a continuous ovation. From far and near flocked the people of the towns, villages, and settlements to the cities, which were lighted up with the spirit of rejoicing. In Canada the reception of the Prince was more imposing and formal, especially at Montreal and Ottawa, owing to the special public ceremonials. **Toronto** (which had no existence in the days of the Duke of Kent) outdid all other places in the magnificence of its preparations. But the smallest town vied with the largest city in loyal enthusiasm. Princes, who must live in the hearts of their people, value sentiment more than ceremony. On the 20th of September the royal party entered Detroit in the United States. They visited the principal cities—Chicago, St. Louis, Cincinnati, Pittsburg, Philadelphia, Baltimore, Washington, New York, Boston; and the Prince was everywhere received with a warmth of welcome that showed that the people of the Great Republic were touched with a feeling of kin to the country of whose Sovereign he was the representative. On the 20th of October the royal fleet sailed from Portland. The visit of the Prince to America was like a burst of sunshine before the closing of the clouds in storm.

19. The United States had now attained an **amazing degree of prosperity**. To the original eleven States had been added twenty-three others, with an aggregate population of 31,000,000.

Figures would fail to give an adequate idea of their possessions, of their realized wealth, of the extent of their commerce. With a territory and with latent resources far transcending those of the kingdoms of Europe, they were fast approaching the oldest and most populous in actual power and riches. For nearly a quarter of a century the country had been divided about **slavery**. In the presidential contest this year (1860), the Republican party in the North, which was opposed to it, defeated the slaveholders of the South. The chief question at issue was, whether or not slavery should be confined to the States where it was established and protected by the Constitution, and be excluded from all territories hereafter to be brought into the Union. There was also disagreement regarding **the tariff**. The North generally urged the imposition of high duties to protect its manufactures. The South, which produced much cotton, tobacco, and rice, but manufactured hardly anything, and which imported most of the articles it consumed and used, was in favour of low duties and free trade. The commercial interests, as well as the state of society, were different in the two sections of the country, and created opposition and repugnance between them.

20. The election of **Abraham Lincoln**, a noted Abolitionist, was the signal for war. The people of South Carolina had always maintained that each State was sovereign and independent, and had a right to break loose from the Union when it chose.

On the 20th of December they passed an ordinance of **1861 Secession**. By the end of January six other States—

A.D. Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana,

Texas—had seceded. They were afterwards joined by Eastern Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee,—eleven States in all, with a population of 9,000,000, of which 3,000,000 were slaves. These “wayward sisters” of the Union constituted themselves into a separate Confederacy, and chose **Jefferson Davis** to be President. Government troops held **Fort Sumpter**. The rebel cannon of Charleston opened fire upon it. After a hot but bloodless bombardment, its commandant, on the 13th of April, surrendered it to the triumphant Secessionists. **War was thus commenced**. President Lincoln called on the loyal States to send their quota of armed

men to take the field, and proclaimed the blockade of the Southern ports. The people of the North showed a burning zeal to support him. To preserve the Union, to refute the doctrine of State rights, to compel the rebel States to acknowledge that they were but the component parts of one great country, and that their first obedience was due to the Central Government, was their immediate desire. The abolition of slavery was only determined on amid the exigencies of a long and fierce contest, as a means of weakening the rebellion.

21. A month after the fall of Fort Sumpter, a **Royal Proclamation** was issued, calling on all loyal British subjects everywhere to preserve **neutrality** in the war. This was held to be an acknowledgment that the Southern Confederacy was a nation, and entitled to the rights of a belligerent power. The anger of the Northern people was excited. They held that the Confederacy was but a banding together of rebels, and that the British Government was not justified in elevating a domestic quarrel into a contest between independent powers. Their feeling of exasperation was strengthened by the sympathy shown to the Secessionists by a portion of the British people, and by events that arose in the course of the war,—the breaking of the blockade by British vessels, and the escape from British ports of cruisers of the South (chief among them the noted "**Alabama**") to prey upon the commerce of the North. The people of the British North American Provinces could not view with indifference the fierce struggle so close to them. In the past the example of the neighbouring Republic had had some effect in moulding their political constitution; in the present it was destined to have some influence in determining their future condition. In the autumn of 1861 Sir Edmund Head was succeeded by **Viscount Monck**, as Governor-General of Canada; the Honourable J. H. T. Manners-Sutton, by the **Honourable Arthur H. Gordon**, as Governor of New Brunswick.

22. The year closed in a threatening and a sorrowful manner. On the 8th of November, Captain Wilkes, of the United States war ship the *San Jacinto*, stopped the British mail-packet the "**Trent**," on the high seas, and forcibly took from on board Mason and Slidell, the Southern Commissioners to England. This act was hailed with exultation by the people of the North-

ern States. Wilkes became the hero of the hour. But it was determinedly resented by the British Government, who prepared to back their demand for the rendition of the Southern Commissioners by a declaration of war in case it were refused. Amidst the excitement caused by the threatened rupture, and the hurry of preparation, the "**Good Prince**" Albert died, and all British land was clothed in mourning. While British troops were being hurried across the Atlantic, President Lincoln quietly gave up the Commissioners, who sailed from

**1862** Boston for England on the 1st of January; so when the  
 A.D. Guards and Rifles arrived in St. John, New Brunswick, they found that war's alarms were changed to hospitable meetings with the citizens. The *Trent* affair intensified the feeling of hostility in the North against Great Britain. The danger of a rupture drew the attention of the British Government to the **defenceless state of the Provinces** in face of the fast growing military power across the frontiers. In case of war, they inevitably would be the battle-ground. Military officers were sent out to inspect the country and to organize the militia. A plan of fortification was agreed upon: the cost of the works at Quebec to be defrayed by the Imperial Government; those at Montreal, and other places above it, to be paid by Canada. The people of the Provinces were, in a measure, willing to provide for their defence, but the militia schemes proposed were thought too costly and extensive for their means. An impetus, however, was given to the **volunteer movement**, and rifle competitions kept up its spirit.

23. In the meantime the difficulty of conducting the Government of Canada continued. The Cartier and M'Donald Administration, unable to carry, besides other measures, a Militia Bill, resigned, and was succeeded by a Reform Government led by **J. Sanfield M'Donald and A. Sicotte**. This event, occurring at a time when the Imperial Government was urging on the Provinces the necessity of adopting adequate measures of defence, produced a bad impression in England. It raised a discussion regarding the relations of the mother country to the Provinces, and the burdens they cast on her.

24. **Defence** was a very difficult matter to adjust. The Imperial Government perceived that it might be called upon to

hold the Provinces against the military power of the United States, and that it would be impossible to do so unless the Provinces put themselves in a thorough state of preparation. The Duke of Newcastle urged on the Government of Canada the necessity of making some permanent provision for the militia system, so as to place it beyond danger of being destroyed by a party vote in the Legislature. On the other hand, the people of the Provinces very generally held that no war could occur with the United States through their instrumentality. It would grow out of a quarrel between the two Governments, which they had done nothing to foment, and which they could do nothing to allay. When it did arise, the contest would be fought on their soil, and they would have to bear the brunt of battle; and they thought it unjust that they should be called upon to assume burdens beyond their resources. They were willing to bear a fair share; and, as in the past, they would, if the crisis came, freely expend their blood and their treasure to preserve the connection with the mother country.

25. At this time the project of the Intercolonial Railway was again under consideration. Its importance as a means of defence caused the Imperial Government to look favourably upon it. The terms as to the portion of cost to be borne by each of the Provinces were settled. But the M'Donald and Sicotte Government refused to carry out the arrangement made for Canada. They were soon placed in such a position as to be unable to carry on the Government. A reconstruction was made, and A. A. Dorion took the place of M. Sicotte. The Parliament was dissolved, and a general election was held. The Administration gained a majority, but it was not strong enough to enable them to carry on business satisfactorily. Another ministerial crisis soon occurred. The old Conservative Government, with Sir Etienne Tache as  
1864  
A.D.
leader, again assumed the reins. After a brief hold of power for four months, it fell before a vote of want of confidence.

26. The position of affairs was now alarming. Party passions were fast gaining complete ascendancy in Parliament. There seemed to be nothing before the country but another election, and further dangerous excitement. Then the leaders

paused to consider if some means might not be devised to escape the threatening danger. George Brown, the leader of the Reformers, made overtures to his political opponents. A Coalition Government was formed with the express understanding that it would carry out a measure to establish a **Federal Union** of the two Canadas, with a provision for the admittance of the Maritime Provinces and the North-West Territory. There was some difference of opinion as to whether a Confederation of all the Provinces, or the Federal Union, should be the measure held first in view. But a circumstance decided the course of the Government.

27. While these events were occurring in Canada, the Governments of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick agreed to send delegates to Charlottetown to discuss, with representatives of Prince Edward Island, a scheme for a **Legislative Union of the Maritime Provinces**. The Conference was arranged for the 1st of September, with the cordial sanction of the Colonial Office, given in a despatch (6th July 1862) from the Duke of Newcastle. In the course of the summer a disposition was suddenly shown by parties in the Provinces to cultivate acquaintance with each other. Straws show which way the wind blows. A band of Canadians, led by **Thomas d'Arcy M'Gee**, a poet, an orator, and one of the firmest of Unionists, came as guests to the Lower Provinces, and were hospitably entertained in Halifax, St. John, Frederickton, and elsewhere. At the table in the Council Chamber, Frederickton, the **Honourable Samuel L. Tilley**, leader of the Government, joined hands with representatives of Canada and Nova Scotia,—a significant illustration of secret thought shaping itself in action.

28. The Canadian Government being apprised of the meeting of the Conference at Charlottetown, intimated a wish to be present. An invitation was forwarded to it, and delegates, comprising its leading members, descended on the island in their steamer *Victoria*, and took the representatives of the Maritime Provinces present in Charlottetown captive. The idea of a Legislative Union was dismissed from their minds. The Conference was broken up with the understanding that delegates from all the Provinces should meet at Quebec to discuss the greater question of Confederation. From Prince Edward

Island the delegates proceeded to Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Social demonstrations, balls and banquets, marked their progress, and gave a sentimental impulse to their political purpose. In the beginning of October, the *Victoria*, sent back by the Canadian Government, after its members had reached home, gathered the Maritime delegates on board at Pictou, Charlottetown, and Shediac. It might have been a complete pleasure party but for the lowering skies and strong gales during a part of the voyage. In the calm of a Sunday forenoon they reached the ancient capital.

29. On Monday, the 10th of October, thirty-three representatives of British North America met in a chamber of the Parliamentary Buildings of Quebec, to discuss the future political condition of the Provinces. The Canadian Government was there in its full force of twelve members. The Provinces of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, and Newfoundland, were represented by leading members of their Governments and Opposition parties. The Conference sat with closed doors, and continued its deliberations from day to day. When it rose, on the 27th of October, the **Quebec Scheme of Confederation** was completed. It was agreed that the different Governments should submit it to the Houses of Assembly then existing in the Provinces, and carry it without permitting the least alteration in its form. Until the time for legislative action arrived the Scheme was not to be published. Fortunately for public curiosity, one of the members of the Conference could not keep the secret. The Scheme appeared in a Prince Edward Island newspaper, and was quickly in the hands of the people of British North America.

Oct. 10,  
1864  
A.D.

30. The result of the proceedings of the Conference at Quebec took the people by surprise, especially those of the Lower Provinces. But the idea of **Union** recommended itself to the judgment and imagination of many. It suggested strength, growth, and prosperity. It was viewed in various lights. By some it was looked upon as a political necessity, as a means of overcoming the difficulties of Government in Canada, and of enabling the Governments of all the Provinces to combine in a measure of defence. The Provinces owed a common

allegiance to one Sovereign. They were only kept separate by tariffs and custom-houses. If these slight barriers were broken down, and a General Government were erected as a centre of authority, they would attain a strong position, and command a respect which would never be accorded to them as isolated dependencies. The idea of a **young nationality** springing into life appealed to the imagination. Then the Provinces, in the magnificent extent of their fertile territory, in their industrious and intelligent population, in the amount of their commerce and shipping, possessed the elements of national greatness. They were necessary to one another. Though their resources and pursuits were very similar, each of the Provinces possessed something in a greater degree than the others. Upper Canada, in her fertile **wheat-growing** territory, had the means of becoming one of the greatest of agricultural countries. Lower Canada had extensive **timber forests** and great capabilities of manufacturing. Nova Scotia had **coal and iron**; exhaustless **fisheries** were common to itself and to New Brunswick. The latter Province possessed all that the others did, and was famous for its **ship-building** besides. By their canal and railway systems the Canadas possessed great facilities for carrying their products to ports on the St. Lawrence, whence they passed directly to the sea. But for five months every year that river was sealed with ice. In winter they had no outlet for their exports, no inlet for their imports, except through the territory and by the sea-ports of the United States. By constructing the Intercolonial Railway (which was made a necessary part of the Scheme of Confederation) they would gain access to the ports along the extensive sea-coast of the Maritime Provinces,—they would become independent of foreign countries.

31. Although the general idea of union was acceptable to very many, yet when the particular Quebec Scheme, made up of numerous details—some of them open to definite objection—was presented for acceptance without hope of change or modification, many shrank from it. The party opposed to all sudden change—always pretty strong in every country—swelled the ranks of the Opposition. War against the Scheme was quickly raised in New Brunswick and Nova Scotia. The Confederate and the Anti-confederate forces joined in battle on the platform,

in the press, in the store, in the street,—wherever men met and conversed on the topic of the day.

32. **The Canadian Parliament** met on the 3rd of February. The resolutions passed at the Conference at Quebec were submitted by Sir Etienne Tache to the Legislative Council, and by the Hon. J. A. M'Donald to the Legislative Assembly. In the course of the debates, in which all the ablest speakers took part, the position of Canada in the past and in the then present was reviewed, and the prospective advantages of Confederation were set forth. The union would effect a great change with the least disturbance to the existing state of things. It would establish a General Government, charged with matters of common interest to the whole country ; and Local Governments in each of the Provinces, charged with all matters of local concern. It was calculated to satisfy the chief demand of Upper Canada—for representation by population, as the representation in the General Parliament was to be based on that principle ; and to reässure the French population of Lower Canada that their laws, language, and religion would be preserved, as it left to them the full control of their own affairs in their Local Legislature. Early in March the Canadian Ministry received from New Brunswick the **discouraging information** that a majority of the electors there had recorded their votes against the Scheme. The Government acted with decision, pressed the debate to a close, took the vote of the Assembly on the resolutions (which stood 91 yeas, 33 nays), framed an address to the Queen based upon them, and appointed a delegation, composed of their leading members, to proceed to England to entreat the Imperial Government to use its influence to induce New Brunswick to reconsider its decision.

33. The course prescribed at the Quebec Conference, to submit the Scheme to the then existing Houses of Assembly, was not carried out in New Brunswick. A general election took place in March. As already stated, the majority decided against Confederation. Not a single member of the delegation was elected. **An Anti-confederate** Government, under the leadership of the Hon. A. J. Smith and George L. Hatheway, was formed, with a strong body of support in the Assembly. The decision of New Brunswick arrested the action of the

Government of Nova Scotia. It strengthened the Opposition; of which Joseph Howe commenced to take the lead. It discouraged the few Confederates in Prince Edward Island and Newfoundland, and the Scheme was there laid aside. The interest of the Confederate contest was concentrated in **New Brunswick**. There the battle was fought. The vanquished would not accept their crushing defeat as final. Confederation was still agitated throughout the Province. Within and without, strong influences were brought to bear to break down the Government. In the Legislature there was divergence of opinion between the Upper and Lower branches. The Legislative Council was as strongly Confederate as the Legislative Assembly was Anti-confederate in sentiment, and conflict ensued. The Canadian delegates gained the ear of the Imperial Government. Despatches were sent by the Colonial Secretary, the **Hon. Mr. Cardwell**, expressing approval of Confederation. The pressure thus brought to bear upon New Brunswick was very strong and hard to resist. The tide of opposition to the Scheme was turned, and commenced to rush in the other direction.

34. The War of Secession had now come to a close by the vanquishment of the South. On the 9th of April, General Lee surrendered to General Grant with the army by means of which he had long kept the Northern forces at bay. Rebellion then nowhere raised its head. The North had wound around it the folds of military power, and crushed out its life. A deed that shot a thrill of horror through the civilized world marked the close of the strife. President Lincoln, in the hour of his supreme thankfulness that the days of peace had come, was **fouly assassinated** as he sat in his box in a theatre at Washington. The varying phases of the contest had been watched with sympathy and interest by the people of British North America, who faithfully preserved neutrality. But their peace was at times endangered through the acts of others. Parties from the South found refuge in Canada, and some of them misused the hospitality extended to them by organizing raids on the frontiers of the North. A band of marauders invaded the town of **St. Albans** in Vermont, robbed the banks, and committed other excesses; then fled back again. The American General Dix made intemperate threats of reprisal, which he was fortunately restrained

from carrying out. The Canadian Government, to prevent the recurrence of similar deeds, called out a large body of militia to patrol and watch their frontiers. The people of the North were sorely aggrieved. Their commerce had suffered very severely from the depredations of the *Alabama*, *Shenandoah*, and other Southern cruisers. They held Great Britain responsible, as some of the privateers had sailed from British ports. A correspondence was opened between the Governments of the two countries with respect to the right of the American people to demand compensation. The controversy over what were called the "**Alabama**" **Claims**<sup>1</sup> remained open for several years, and created a feeling of painful suspense as to the mode of their final adjustment.

35. The events of the war tended to break up the close commercial intercourse between the Provinces and the United States. A notification of its intention to **abrogate the Reciprocity Treaty** was given by the Government of the latter country in 1864. In the summer of 1865 the question of its renewal was discussed at a **Trade Convention** at Detroit, at which were present delegates from all the principal cities of the Union and of the Provinces. Joseph Howe carried his audience with him when he spoke eloquently of the benefits of reciprocity. The enthusiasm created passed away with the hour. Acting with imperial authority, the Governments of the Provinces entered into negotiations at Washington. But they could not accept the terms of renewal offered to them, and so the treaty ran to its close.

36. At this time the **Fenian Brotherhood** caused alarm. Ostensibly, it was composed of Irish patriots who had banded themselves together to revenge the wrongs of their country, and to overthrow the British Empire. But their ranks were recruited with lawless desperadoes, who, at the close of the war, had been let loose to engage in any desperate enterprise. They boastfully proclaimed their intention to invade Ireland and to conquer Canada.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Alabama Claims*.—The Court of Arbitration, consisting of representatives of the Great Powers, met at Geneva on 14th December 1872. Great Britain had consequently to pay to the Government of the United States upwards of £3,250,000. It gave its award

37. The Legislature of New Brunswick met in the midst of rather **exciting circumstances**. Some time previously **1866** rumours had been rife that a decisive step would be taken **A.D.** to overcome the opposition to Confederation. Governor Gordon, in his opening speech, announced the strong and deliberate opinion of Her Majesty's Government, that it was an object much to be desired that all the British North American Colonies should unite in one Government. A willingness to meet these imperial views was expressed by the Smith and Hatheway Administration, provided that justice were done to New Brunswick. They were not allowed to develop their policy. They were met at the outset with a vote of want of confidence in their general management of affairs, by the Opposition in the Assembly. The Province, the while, was startled by **rumours of invasion**. Bands of marauders hovering about the frontier created alarm in the detached settlements. The 15th Regiment, under Colonel Cole, and a body of volunteers, were despatched to Campobello, St. Andrews, and St. Stephen, to watch the movements of "**the Fenians**;" who, however, dispersed, happily for themselves, without attempting to invade British soil.

38. The protracted debate was brought to a **startling termination**. The Legislative Council passed an address expressing a desire that the Imperial Government would unite the Provinces under the Quebec Scheme. The Governor replied, rejoicing to believe that their action would tend to hasten the desired consummation. The Government was constrained to resign. Mr. Tilley was called to the head of affairs. A general election followed. The people went as far for Confederation as formerly they had gone against it. It was carried; and the destiny of British North America was decided in New Brunswick. The members of the Nova Scotia Government now took action. In conjunction with those of Canada and New Brunswick, they appointed delegates to proceed to London to perfect a measure of union. Joseph Howe, the agent of the Anti-confederate party, was there to oppose them; but his powers of argument and rhetoric were expended in vain. The delegates of the Provinces met in the Westminster Hotel. The Quebec Scheme was slightly modified (the subsidies for the Local Govern-

ments were increased), and formed the Constitution embodied in the "**British North America Act,**" passed by the Imperial Parliament on the 29th of March. At **March 29.** the same time a Bill (the Canada Railway Loan Act), authorizing the Imperial Government to give its guarantee for a loan of £3,000,000 for the construction of the **Intercolonial Railway,** became law.

39. On the 1st of July 1866 the Royal Proclamation was formally issued, and the Provinces of Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick were united in one **Dominion,** under the name of **Canada.** Before the close of the year the United Parliament met in the new buildings at Ottawa. Much had been done; a great deal remained to be done before the union should be completed. Discontent in Nova Scotia had to be stilled; the North-West Territory had to be added to the Dominion; British Columbia, Prince Edward Island, and Newfoundland to be brought into the Union.

QUESTIONS.—1. What lesson did the Provinces of British North America derive from the example of the United States? Under what disadvantages were the Provinces, owing to their separation?

2. When was the first scheme of union suggested? Mention the subsequent occasions on which the idea had been revived.

3. When was the first practical step taken? When was Confederation consummated? What part was taken in the discussion of the question by the different Provinces?

4. What events forced the people to regard Confederation as a serious practical measure? What alternative presented itself to them?

5. What was the state of parties in the Canadian Parliament? What effects had the jealousy of sections?

6. What had been the basis of the union of the Canadas? What question was raised in 1851?

7. What addition was made to the representatives in 1853? What change was made in the constitution of the Legislative Council in 1856? How long did the new rule last?

8. What became the favourite dogma of the Reformers in Upper Canada? Who was their leader? What were their expectations?

9. What was the objection of the Lower Canadians to representation by population? What proposal was made in order to restore harmony?

10. What proposal did Mr. Galt make in 1857? What ministerial changes took place the following year? What aroused the rage of the Reformers?

11. What was adopted as the leading measure of the Government? On what occasion was the subject brought under the notice of the Colonial Secretary? What answer was returned? How was the proposal regarded in the Maritime Provinces?

12. What proposal was made in 1859?

13. Why were the circumstances of the time at which the proposal of union was made to the Lower Provinces unfavourable?

14. Who complained of the imposition of the high tariff? Why? What different views were held on the Free Trade question?

15. What was the purpose of the

tariffs of 1858-59? What was their indirect effect?

16. What two events did the people of Canada wish to celebrate worthily in 1860? Whom did the Queen depute to be her representative?

17. How many years had passed since royalty had set foot on British North America?

18. Who accompanied the Prince of Wales? What cities did he visit successively?

19. Describe the prosperous condition of the United States. What questions divided the country?

20. What was the signal for war? How many States in all seceded? What was the first act of war? What spirit did the people of the Northern States show? What led them to determine on the abolition of slavery?

21. Why was the Royal Proclamation of neutrality resented by the North? What strengthened their feeling of exasperation? What changes in the governorships of the British Provinces took place in 1861?

22. What was the Trent affair? How was war averted? What steps were taken to improve the defences of Canada?

23. What ministerial crisis occurred in Canada at this time? What impression did it produce in England?

24. State the different views held by the Imperial Government and the colonists on the question of defence.

25. What led the Imperial Government to favour the Intercolonial Railway project? What ministerial changes occurred at this time in Canada?

26. Why was the position of affairs alarming? How was the threatening danger avoided?

27. What was the object of the Charlottetown Conference? What indications appeared in the meantime of a desire for a wider union?

28. How was the Charlottetown Con-

ference broken up? Where was a general Conference arranged to be held?

29. When did the Quebec Conference meet? Who attended it? When was its work completed? What agreement was made regarding the Scheme?

30. How was the Quebec Scheme received? What considerations made the idea of union generally acceptable?

31. Why did many shrink from the Quebec Scheme in particular? Where was the feeling against it strongest?

32. When was the Scheme submitted to the Canadian Parliament? What reasons were urged in support of it? What discouraging news arrived in March? How did the Government act?

33. Where had the Anti-confederate party its stronghold? What other Governments were influenced by the conduct of New Brunswick? What turned the tide of opposition?

34. When did the War of Secession in the States close? How had the peace of the British Provinces been endangered during the war? What step did the Canadian Government take? How did the question of the Alabama claims arise?

35. What effect had the war on commerce? What question was discussed at the Detroit Trade Convention?

36. What was "the Fenian Brotherhood"? How did it cause alarm?

37. What announcement was made by Governor Gordon to the New Brunswick Legislature? How was the Smith and Hatheway Administration overthrown? What rumours meanwhile startled the Province?

38. How did the protracted debate terminate? What state of public feeling did the general election show? Where and when was the measure of union perfected? What other Bill at the same time became law?

39. What Provinces originally formed the Dominion of Canada?

# APPENDIX:

## A.

### NOTES OF PRINCIPAL EVENTS SINCE CONFEDERATION.

1. **VISCOUNT MONCK** held the position of first Governor-General of the Dominion until November 1868, when he was succeeded by Sir John Young (Lord Lisgar). In the first year after Confederation, Sir N. F. Belleau was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Quebec; and Major-General Hastings Doyle, of Nova Scotia. Military officers administered the Governments of the two other Provinces until 9th of July 1868, when the Hon. W. Howland was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Ontario; and Hon. I. A. Wilmot, of New Brunswick.

2. The first **Privy Council** was constituted as follows, viz.,—

<i>President</i> .....	Hon. A. F. J. Blair.
<i>Minister of Justice</i> .....	Hon. Sir John A. M'Donald.
<i>Secretary of State</i> .....	Hon. H. S. Langeoui.
<i>Minister of Finance</i> .....	Hon. John Rose.
<i>Minister of Public Works</i> .....	Hon. W. M'Dougall.
<i>Postmaster-General</i> .....	Hon. Alexander Campbell.
<i>Minister of Agriculture</i> .....	Hon. J. C. Chapais.
<i>Receiver-General</i> .....	Hon. E. Renny.
<i>Minister of Militia</i> .....	Sir G. E. Cartier.
<i>Minister of Customs</i> .....	Hon. S. L. Tilley.
<i>Minister of Inland Revenue</i> .....	Hon. W. P. Howland.
<i>Minister of Marine and Fisheries</i> ...	Hon. P. Mitchell.

3. In the earliest hour of the 7th of April, the **Hon. d'Arcy M'Gee** was tracked from the Parliament Buildings, and shot dead as he was entering his hotel. The deed cast a gloom over Parliament, and over the Dominion. Imposing obsequies marked the sense of national bereavement. Generous sympathy was extended to the widow and family of the murdered statesman. M'Gee was one of the foremost advocates of Confederation; but his political course awakened, it is to be feared, the rancorous hostility of a party of his countrymen

1868  
A.D.

whose sympathies were with the enemies of Great Britain. Patrick Whelan was arrested, convicted, and executed for the crime.

4. Agitation for the repeal of the union of the Provinces in Nova Scotia. Sir J. A. M'Donald, Premier of the Dominion Government, opened correspondence with Hon. Joseph Howe, with a view  
1869 to conciliation. Arrangements subsequently made by which  
A. D. Nova Scotia obtained better financial terms. The amount of its debt assumed by the Dominion was increased from \$8,000,000 to \$9,186,756, and an additional annual subsidy for ten years and the cost of the new Provincial Buildings granted to it. Mr. Howe entered the Dominion Government, and was appointed President of the Executive Council. He gained his reelection after a violent contest.

5. Negotiations with the Hudson Bay Company, for the cession of the North-West Territory to the Dominion, brought to a close.  
1870 The Company obtained in compensation \$1,500,000 in money,  
A. D. grants of land around their posts equal to 50,000 acres in all, a right to a twentieth part of the land laid out for settlement south of the northern branch of the Saskatchewan River, and retained all its privileges of trade.

6. A new Province—**Manitoba**—organized in the Red River Country (the seat of the Selkirk Settlement), and added to the Dominion. It is represented in Parliament by two members in the Senate and four in the House of Commons. An annual subsidy of \$30,000, and 80 cents a head on a population computed at 17,000, granted to it. A local Legislature, consisting of a Lieutenant-Governor (aided by an Executive Council of five members), a Legislative Council of seven members, and a House of Assembly of twenty-four members, was constituted. The government of the North-West Territory was attached to that of Manitoba, and was conducted by the Lieutenant-Governor and eleven members of Council, subsequently increased to twenty-two. The organization of this new British Province was opposed by a party in the settlement. Riel, a young French Canadian, and others, usurped the government at Fort Garry, and carried affairs with a high hand. The murder of Scott, an Upper Canadian, by this band of conspirators excited great indignation throughout the Dominion. The Hon. William M'Dougall, Lieutenant-Governor, on entering the Province was met by Riel and his band, and forced to retire to Pembina, in the United States. The British Government asserted its sovereignty over Manitoba; the Red River Expedition, composed of British regulars and Canadian militia, under Lieutenant-Colonel Wolseley, accompanied by a large party of boatmen, voyageurs, and Indians, left Thunder Bay, on Lake Superior, in June, and reached Fort Garry in August. Riel

<sup>1</sup> Lieutenant-Colonel Wolseley. — As which he successfully brought to a close. For his services he received the  
General Sir Garnet Wolseley he in 1873-1874 commanded in the Ashantee War, thanks of Parliament.

and his Council fled, as the advanced companies of the 60th Rifles, under Colonel Fielding, entered the fort. Hon. A. G. Archibald was afterwards appointed Lieutenant-Governor.

7. In May, the Fenians put in execution frequent previous threats of invading Canada. Parties assembled at points upon the frontier. One of them, crossing the line, marched a few miles into Lower Canada, but was checked by some companies of British soldiers and Canadian militia, and hastily retreated. The "General," O'Neill, did not accompany it, but was quietly captured by the United States Marshal. When the trouble was over, the United States President issued a proclamation, forbidding American citizens to take part in forays against a friendly nation. The British Government hastily thanked him for his prompt action.

8. **Joint High Commission**, composed of plenipotentiaries appointed by the Governments of Great Britain and the United States (on which the Hon. J. A. M'Donald represented the interests of 1871 A.D. Canada), met at Washington on 27th February, to settle questions at issue between the two countries respecting the Alabama claims, fisheries, San Juan boundary, the claims of Canada on account of Fenian raids, and other matters. The treaty was concluded on the 8th of May. The articles from 18 to 34, both inclusive, refer to Canadian interests. By their terms, American citizens were admitted to shore and coast fisheries of British North America, and British subjects to coast fisheries of United States; a compensation in money to be paid to Canada in consideration of the superior value of the privilege it conceded—commissioners to be appointed to determine the amount; fish and fish-oil to be mutually admitted free in the United States and Canada; the navigation of the canals of Canada, of the United States St. Clair Canal, and of Lake Michigan, to be reciprocally thrown open, and the privilege of passing goods arriving at any port in United States or Canada in bond through the respective countries mutually granted. Trans-shipment of goods from port to port on the American side of the Great Lakes granted to Canada; but the privilege was void contingent on the abrogation, by the Legislature of New Brunswick, of the export duty<sup>1</sup> on American timber floated down the St. John. The dispute regarding the San Juan boundary was referred to the German Emperor for arbitration.

9. **Great dissatisfaction** manifested in the Dominion at the surrender of fishery rights to the United States for inadequate compensation, and at the non-settlement of the claims of Canada for the Fenian raids.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Export duty.*—In 1873 the Dominion Parliament granted New Brunswick \$150,000 per annum in lieu of this export duty, which had previously been one of its chief independent sources of local revenue.

10. **British Columbia, including Vancouver Island,**<sup>1</sup> entered the Dominion on the 20th of July. It is represented in the Dominion Parliament by three members in the Senate and six members in the House of Commons. Its debt was computed at \$1,666,200, on a population of 60,000; and it receives five per cent. interest on the difference between its actual indebtedness and that amount, besides 80 cents a head on its population, and an annual grant of \$35,000. The construction of a line of railway from the Pacific coast to be connected with the railway system of Canada, and its completion within ten years, constituted one of the terms of union—the Province to grant an extent of land twenty miles in breadth on each side of the line, and running the entire length of the line in its territory, and receiving in compensation \$100,000 per annum from the Government. Surveys to ascertain the best route for the railway commenced. **First census** of the Dominion taken.

11. Acts passed during this the last session of the first Parliament of Canada, to give effect to clauses of **Washington Treaty** relating to fisheries, &c. In consideration of the abandonment of the Fenian raid claims, the British Government, in order to aid the Dominion Government, guaranteed a loan of \$2,500,000, and also allowed a former guarantee of \$1,100,000 for fortifications (\$3,600,000 in all, out of a total loan of \$5,000,000) to stand.

12. **Two railway companies**—"the Canada-Pacific," president, Sir Hugh Allan; and "the Inter-Oceanic," president, Senator M'Pherson—were incorporated. An Act passed authorizing the Government to give the contract to make the Pacific Railway to either company, or to the two companies amalgamated, or to a company distinct from either; and to give to any company undertaking to make the road a subsidy of \$30,000,000, and a grant of 5,000,000 acres in alternate blocks along the line of railway.

13. In June, **Earl Dufferin** succeeded Sir John Young (Lord Lisgar) as Governor-General. **General election** held throughout the Dominion from 15th July to 12th October. In Ontario and Quebec, fierce struggle for power.

14. In the course of this year the award of the German Emperor, as arbitrator under the Washington Treaty, was made known. His Majesty gave his decision in favour of the Haro Strait as forming the boundary line between the possessions of Great Britain and the United States, thus giving to the latter Power the possession of San Juan and other islands in the Western Archipelago.

1873  
A.D. 15. First session of second Parliament. Charter granted on 19th February to a new "**Canada Pacific Railway Company**;"

<sup>1</sup> *British Columbia... Vancouver Isl.* under separate Governments, had been and.—These two Provinces, at first united in 1866.

president, Sir Hugh Allan, and a board of directors of seventeen members, composed of some of the leading promoters of the two former companies, and of representative men from all the Provinces in the Dominion.

16. **Grave charges** preferred by Mr. Huntingdon, member for Shefford, against the Dominion Government; the gravamen being that the contract for the Pacific Railway was given to Sir Hugh Allan, with whom were associated certain American capitalists, in consideration of a large sum of money advanced to leading members of the Government, to enable them to carry elections in Quebec and Ontario. The charges referred to a **Committee** for investigation. The "**Oaths Bill**" passed, to enable members of Committee to examine witnesses under oath. Awaiting the Report of the Committee, the Parliament rose in June, with the understanding that it should meet for prorogation on the 13th of August.

17. In the course of early summer, Canada lost two of her foremost men. **Sir George Etienne Cartier**, leader of the French Canadian party, died in London on the 27th of May. The Dominion undertook the cost of the imposing ceremonies with which his remains were buried at Montreal. **The Hon. Joseph Howe**, a few days after having been appointed Governor<sup>1</sup> of his native Province, died at Government House, Halifax, on Sunday the 1st of June.

18. **Prince Edward Island** became a Province of Canada on the 1st of July, Dominion-Day. The auspicious occasion was celebrated with great rejoicing at Charlottetown. By the terms of union, the island has representation in the Dominion Parliament by four members in the Senate, and six members in the House of Commons. Its debt was computed at \$4,701,050, and it receives interest at five per cent. on the difference between its actual debt and this amount. It also receives a subsidy of 80 cents a head on a population of 94,221, and a grant of \$30,000 per annum, and \$45,000 per annum, less interest, on any sum not exceeding \$800,000 advanced by the Dominion to enable the Island Government to purchase lands held by large proprietors.

19. **The Governor-General and Countess Dufferin** made a tour through the Maritime Provinces. His Excellency, as the representative of the Sovereign, was everywhere received with warm demonstrations of loyalty.

20. In the course of the summer, letters were published by the press that seemed to bear out the charges of corruption preferred by Mr. Huntingdon against the Government. The "**Pacific Scandal**" created

---

<sup>1</sup> *Governor*.—The position of Lieutenant-Governor of Nova Scotia was offered to Hon. Judge James Johnstone, but failing health compelled him to decline the honour. He died in November 1873.

intense excitement throughout the Dominion. In the meantime the Imperial Government had disallowed the "Oaths Bill," and the Committee of Investigation was at a stand-still. The Governor-General left Halifax for Ottawa to prorogue Parliament on the 13th of August. At the meeting, ninety-two members signed an address to his Excellency, praying that he would not prorogue until after a strict investigation of the charges against the Government had been made by the House. His Excellency, after fully stating his reasons for not acceding to the request, prorogued the Parliament on the day appointed.

21. **Royal Commission**, composed of three members—Judges—appointed to examine witnesses under oath on the charges. Parliament met again on the 23rd of October. Sir Hugh Allan resigned his contract for the Pacific Railway. **Mr. M'Kenzie**, member for Lambton, leader of the Opposition, moved a vote of want of confidence in the Government. Government resigned before close of debate. **Mr. M'Kenzie** was called upon by the Governor-General to form a new Administration.

1874  
A.D. 22. House of Commons dissolved during recess on 2nd January, and general election ensued.

---

## B.

### THE CONSTITUTION.

1. In order to exhibit the change made in the Government of the Provinces by Confederation, it is necessary to give an outline of the Constitution as established by the "**British North America Act**," which is now in force.

2. The four Provinces of Ontario (Upper Canada), Quebec (Lower Canada), Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick were constituted the **Dominion of Canada**. Their seat of General Government was fixed at Ottawa, and the Provincial seats respectively at Toronto, Quebec, Halifax, and Frederickton. To these four senior Provinces were afterwards added,—Prince Edward Island, British Columbia, and Manitoba, whose seats of Government are Charlottetown, Victoria, and Winnipeg.

3. **The Executive Authority** over Canada is vested in the Queen. It is administered by the Governor-General, the duly authorized representative of the Sovereign. He is aided and advised by a body styled the Privy Council, the members of which are summoned to their places by him. The command of all naval and military forces is vested in the Queen.

4. **The Privy Council** is composed of thirteen members, namely, the President, the Ministers of Justice, Militia, Customs, Finance, Marine

and Fisheries, Inland Revenue, Agriculture, and Public Works, the Postmaster-General, the Receiver-General, the Secretary of State for the Provinces, and the Secretary of State for Canada.

5. **The Legislative Power** is vested in a Parliament, consisting of the Queen, through her representative the Governor-General, the Senate, and the House of Commons.

6. **The Senate** consisted at first of seventy-two (72) members, twenty-four (24) for each of the three divisions,—Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. The number was afterwards increased, in consequence of the entrance of Prince Edward Island, British Columbia, and Manitoba into the Confederation.

7. The members of the Senate are appointed by the Crown (that is, by the Governor-General in Council, by an instrument under the Great Seal of Canada), and hold their seats for life, subject to forfeiture if they take an oath of allegiance to a foreign power, if they are attainted of treason or are convicted of crime, if they become bankrupt, or cease to hold the necessary qualifications of property and residence. A person, to be qualified for a Senator, must be of the full age of thirty years, a natural-born subject of the Queen, or a subject naturalized by an Act of the Imperial Parliament or of a Provincial Legislature; he must reside in the Province (if an inhabitant of Quebec, in the district) for which he is appointed, and be possessed of landed property of the value of \$4,000, and of real and personal estate to a like amount.

8. **The Speaker**, or presiding officer of the Senate, is appointed by the Governor-General. He votes on all questions: in cases where the voices are equal, he always gives a negative vote.

9. **The House of Commons**, as originally constituted, consisted of one hundred and eighty-one (181) members: eighty-two (82) for Ontario; for Quebec, sixty-five (65); for Nova Scotia, nineteen (19); for New Brunswick, fifteen (15). By the entrance of the three junior Provinces, and by the adjustment of the representation according to the census of 1871, the number of members has been increased to two hundred and six (206).

10. **The number of Members** may from time to time be increased by Parliament, provided each Province receive its proportionate representation. Sixty-five (65) is the fixed number for Quebec,—no addition will be made to it; and each of the Provinces receives, and will receive, such a number as bears the same ratio to its population as the number sixty-five bears to the population of Quebec. The House of Commons continues for a term of five years, unless sooner dissolved by the Governor-General. It elects its Speaker, who presides at all its meetings. He only votes in cases where the voices are equal. Either the English or the French language may be used in debate in Parliament. The proceedings are recorded in both languages.

11. **Appropriation of Revenue.**—Bills to appropriate the public reve-

nue, or to impose taxation, originate in the House of Commons. They must first be recommended by a message from the Governor-General.

12. **Bills.**—The Governor-General has discretionary power to give or withhold, in the Queen's name, his assent to Bills, and to reserve them for the signification of Her Majesty's pleasure, which may be given within two years. The Governor-General communicates the fact of the royal assent or disallowance, as soon as he receives notification of it, by message to the Houses of Parliament.

13. **Powers of Parliament.**—Parliament has exclusive jurisdiction over the public debt and property; trade and commerce; the raising of moneys by taxation, by loan, and on the public credit; the postal service; the militia, military, and naval services; the census and statistics; salaries of officials; navigation, shipping, fisheries; over everything relating to money,—banks, banking, currency, coinage, interest; over bankruptcy and insolvency; marriage and divorce; criminal law; public works, railways and canals, steamboat lines, telegraphs. In common with the Local Legislatures, Parliament has jurisdiction over agriculture and immigration. Where there is common jurisdiction, its laws control, and, when they clash, supersede those of the local bodies.

14. **Provincial Constitutions.**—A Lieutenant-Governor is appointed for each Province, who holds office for a term of five years, unless he is sooner removed for cause assigned. The appointment is vested in the Governor-General in Council.

15. **Ontario** has a Legislature, consisting of the Lieutenant-Governor and a Legislative Assembly of eighty-two (82) members.

16. **Quebec** has a Legislature consisting of the Lieutenant-Governor, a Legislative Council of twenty-four (24) members, and a Legislative Assembly of sixty-five (65) members.

17. **The Constitution** of the Legislatures of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick remain as they existed previous to Confederation. The Provinces of Prince Edward Island, British Columbia, and Manitoba have each a Local Legislature of three branches.

18. **Bills** passed by the Local Legislatures are subject to disallowance by the Governor-General within a year after their passing.

19. **The Local Legislatures** may make laws in relation to such matters as amendment of the Constitution of the Provinces; direct taxation; borrowing money on the credit of the Provinces; the establishment and tenure of provincial offices; the payment of provincial officers; the management and sale of lands belonging to the Provinces; prisons and reformatories; hospitals and asylums; municipal institutions; local works; solemnization of marriage; property and civil rights; administration of justice; and education, with certain reservations that protect the right to maintain separate schools of the Catholic and Protestant bodies in Quebec and Ontario.

20. **Appointment of Judges.**—The Governor-General in Council ap-

points all the Judges of the Superior, District, and County Courts. The Judges hold office during good behaviour, are paid by the General Government, and will continue to be selected from the bars of the respective Provinces until their laws are assimilated.

21. **The General Government** takes charge of the duties and revenues collected in the several Provinces: these form one consolidated Revenue Fund, from which the charges of the public service are paid. It assumes, to a specified extent, the debts of the Provinces, and pays certain annual sums, subsidies, and extraordinary grants for the support of their Local Governments.

22. **Public Works and Property**, as canals, harbours, light-houses, steamboats, railways, and railway stocks, custom-houses, post-offices, and armouries belong to Canada. Lands, mines and minerals, and the revenue derived from them, belong to the Provinces.

23. **Free Trade** exists among all the Provinces of the Dominion, in all articles of their growth and manufacture.

---

C.

**INTERNAL PROGRESS OF CANADA—1492-1867 A.D.**

**First Period.**—Canada a Wilderness.

**Second Period.**—Canada a French Colony.

**Third Period.**—Canada a British Colony.

**Fourth Period.**—Canada at peace.

1. A sketch of the history of Canada has been given during four periods, namely:—

I. **The Period of Discovery**, 1492-1583 A.D.

II. **The Period of Exploration and War**, 1600-1760 A.D.

III. **The Period of Political Strife and Change**, 1761-1840 A.D.

IV. **The Period of Responsible Government**, 1841-1867 A.D.

It may be important, in order to gain a general idea of the progress made by Canada, to make a rapid review of its internal state during these several periods.

I. THE PERIOD OF DISCOVERY, 1492-1583 A.D.

2. At the time of the discovery of America Canada was an unbroken wilderness, on whose skirts dwelt tribes of savages. The trees of the forests; the soil beneath them; the minerals; the wild animals—the moose, the bear, the beaver, the otter, the fox, the sable; the fish in stream, river, lake, and gulf—the trout, the salmon, the mackerel, the herring; the cod—were its natural resources. It was not a country where Nature produced fruits fit for food spontaneously,

where men could live in indolence. The climate was at some seasons rigorous, but it was on the whole genial and bracing. It was a country fitted to make the people who first attempted to settle in it bold, adventurous, hardy, but disinclined to steady industry: the savage denizens gave them no peace, and left them no option but to become soldiers; the necessities of living made them hunters and fishers. Their life was reduced to the rudest elements.

#### I. THE PERIOD OF EXPLORATION AND WAR, 1600-1760 A.D.

3. For more than a century, from the foundation of Port Royal and Quebec to the Peace of Utrecht, the progress made by Canada 1605-1713 was very slow. Agriculture was conducted without system A.D. and with the rudest of implements. The manure which should have fertilized the soil was carted by the inhabitants to the frozen river, and was swept away by the spring freshets. Wheat and corn were raised in quantities not more than sufficient for the sustenance of the colony. Under the vigorous sway of the Intendant Talon some improvement was made in the mode of agriculture; the cultivation of hemp and flax and the domestic manufacture of cloths were encouraged. But after his departure, Canada, amidst the excitement and horrors of perpetual Indian wars, relapsed into its former condition. The Fur-trade was its chief industry. Rich cargoes of peltries were brought to Montreal from the region of the Great Lakes, whose natural outlet was the River St. Lawrence. The English sought to divert this trade to New York, by way of the Hudson River. The rivalry provoked war. The competition between the two commercial routes never ceased. It grew keener with the increase of trade, and with the improvement of the means of transportation. The value of furs 1674 exported in a good year was 550,000 francs. The population of A.D. Canada in 1713 was 20,000 souls.

4. In Acadie, up to the time when it became a British Province 1711 under the name of Nova Scotia, progress was equally slow. The A.D. few inhabitants were more addicted to the wild life of the woods than to the sober toil of the fields. They took advantage of the natural fertility of the marshes, and diked them in from the tides of the Bay of Fundy; but they neglected the cultivation of the uplands. Eighty-two years after the founding of Port Royal, the popula- 1686 tion of Acadie,—including the settlement of Port Royal, and A.D. those of Minas, Chignecto, Cape Sable, St. John River, Passamaquoddy, Miramichi, Nepisiguit,—was eight hundred and fifteen settlers. At the time when Acadie ceased to be a French colony its population was not over 20,000.

5. Education in those days was possessed by the few. The Jesuit Fathers kept the lamp of learning burning in the wilderness. In the college at Quebec, and in the seminaries of Montreal, were educated

the young men destined for the priesthood, and the youth of both sexes of the upper ranks. The body of the people had hardly any school instruction.

6. Canada, during the peace that followed the Treaty of Utrecht, advanced faster than it had previously done. In forty years the population increased from 20,000 to 50,000. Its commerce grew in importance. In 1754, a prosperous year, its exports of furs, seal-oil, timber, flour, and pease were valued at \$350,000; its imports, at a little over £1,000,000, leaving the balance of trade greatly against the Province. Thirty-three vessels were then engaged in the carrying-trade. Ten vessels, of from ten to a hundred tons, were built. The money in circulation came, in a great part, from the salaries, stipends, and pay of the Governor-General and the high officials, of the priesthood, and of the officers and soldiers. During the war, the Government of France expended large sums; but they did not enrich the country, they were spent in military operations, and were partly embezzled by fraudulent officials. Canada was bankrupt at the Conquest. 1754-60 A.D.

7. The progress of Nova Scotia under British rule was not very perceptible until after the founding of Halifax. By that event, and the evacuation of Louisburg, and the settlement of Lunenburg, the population was increased by 3,000 people. At least as many of the primitive Acadians were expelled five years later. A number returned after the peace, but how many has not been exactly ascertained. Some time afterwards a census was taken. The population was then officially stated to be 2,775 families, or 9,789 persons. The foundations of its agricultural, manufacturing, and fishery interests were then laid. Its people possessed 292 square-rigged and other vessels; 45 grist, saw, and hemp mills: manufactured 1,132,184 feet of deal boards; and caught and cured 11,929 quintals and 10,000 barrels of cod fish. 1749 A.D. 1754 A.D. 1760 A.D.

### III. THE PERIOD OF POLITICAL STRIFE AND CHANGE, 1761-1840 A.D.

8. From the commencement of British rule, Canada made decided advances in population, agriculture, and commerce. The change from an arbitrary and oppressive to a mild and just form of Government was felt. The people were not ground down by the harsh exactions of a corrupt Intendant, nor compelled to perform unpaid military service. They were left at peace to devote themselves to the cultivation of their fields. They increased in number fast; and raised quantities of wheat and corn for exportation. Agriculture was chiefly in the hands of the French Canadians. Commerce was controlled by the British, who formed the small minority of the population. Canada early felt the impress of their intelligence and energy. But several causes—the antipathies of race, the sectional jealousies of Upper and Lower Canada,

and continued bitter political strife—retarded its progress, decided as was its advancement compared with that made under French rule.

9. **Education: Colleges and Superior Schools.**—In all the Provinces the establishment of Colleges and Grammar Schools preceded  
 1800–1834 that of Common Schools. In Lower Canada, besides the  
 A.D. provision made for superior education in the ancient  
 Colleges of Quebec and Montreal, “**Industrial and Classical Seminarier**” were established, under the sole direction of the Catholic  
 Clergy, in several of the counties. The Hon. James M’Gill, a  
 1811 merchant of Montreal, bequeathed funds to found a Protestant  
 A.D. Institution in that city. His will was contested. It was not  
 1829 until eighteen years afterwards that M’Gill College was in-  
 A.D. corporated by Royal Charter, and opened to students. It long  
 remained in an incomplete state.

10. In Upper Canada the Legislature early contemplated the founda-  
 tion of a **College at Toronto**. The scheme met the approval of the Duke  
 of Portland, then Colonial Secretary, who recommended that half a  
 million of acres of land should be reserved for its support. But the  
 1827 project was not carried out for thirty years. **King’s College** was  
 A.D. then established by Royal Charter. A thousand pounds a year  
 was granted by the Imperial Government to provide funds for  
 the erection of suitable buildings. An endowment of land was also  
 bestowed on it. It was placed under the direction of the clergy of  
 the Church of England. Great objections were raised by the other  
 sects to its exclusive character.

11. At first, owing to the scattered state of the settlements, and to  
 the difficulty of intercommunication, public schools could hardly be  
 maintained. Classical education was given in private academies,  
 conducted chiefly by clergymen, in Cornwall, Kingston, York, Nia-  
 gara, Ancaster, and other places. The first attempt to estab-  
 1795 lish **Grammar Schools** failed. Eight were afterwards erected,  
 A.D. one in each of the eight districts into which the Province was  
 1807 divided. They were not well supported. The farmers were pre-  
 A.D. judiced, and looked upon them as institutions for the benefit  
 of the upper class.

12. In Nova Scotia, provision was made for superior education by the  
 establishment of an **Academy at Windsor**. It was soon erected  
 1787 into a Royal Chartered College, with the Archbishop of Canter-  
 A.D. bury for its patron, and members of the Church of England for its  
 directors. Students of all other sects were excluded by religious tests.  
 The exclusiveness of Windsor incited other sects to establish their own  
 colleges, and led to a multiplication of such institutions far beyond  
 1816 the wants of the Province. The **Presbyterian College of Pietou**  
 A.D. was founded. It received legislative aid, but languished for  
 want of popular support. **Dalhousie College, Halifax**, was established

for the especial benefit of students against whom the halls of Windsor were closed. The greater proportion of the money for its erection and maintenance was taken out of the **Castine Fund**.<sup>1</sup> The Earl of Dalhousie laid the corner-stone of the building. For many years the Province was not able to support the institution in a suitable manner. Grammar Schools were established in the seven counties and the three districts into which the Province was then divided. 1811 A.D.

13. Six or seven years after New Brunswick had become a separate Province, **Grammar Schools** were erected in its eight original counties,—St. John, York, Sunbury, Charlotte, King's, Queen's, Northumberland, and Westmoreland. A College was also founded in Frederickton, and was endowed with land and with an annual grant of money. 1800 A.D.

Quarter of a century afterwards the governor and trustees surrendered its charter, in order that it might be placed on a better foundation. The Bishop of Nova Scotia exerted his influence to prevent its receiving a Royal Charter, as he was anxious that Windsor College should become the **University** of the Provinces; but he was unsuccessful. On the 1st of January, King's College, New Brunswick, was opened by its stanch patron and first Chancellor, Sir Howard Douglas. On that occasion he founded the **Douglas gold medal**, as a prize for English composition, to remain as an incentive to virtue and learning, and as a permanent token of his regard and good wishes. The College was under the management of the Bishop, clergy, and members of the Church of England; but, in order to draw towards it students of all sects, religious tests were abolished. 1829 A.D.

14. **Common-School Education**.—During this period nothing was done systematically in Lower Canada to promote the education of the people, though, according to the testimony of persons well qualified to judge, it was impossible to exaggerate the want of it among them. As Upper Canada became more thickly settled, the desire of the people for means of instruction increased. Common schools were established by law, and received Government support. 1816 A.D. Education was then placed under the direction of a **Board**; but no proper supervision was maintained over the schools. Their state was very similar to that of the common schools of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. There, year after year, complaints were made of the apathy of parents, of the irregular attendance of the children, of the wretched buildings used as school-houses, and of the too frequent moral and intellectual incompetence of the teachers, who, as a body, were degraded in popular esteem, by reason of the system and the scale of remuneration, which very generally deterred persons of respectable standing from adopting the calling. 1823 A.D.

<sup>1</sup> *Castine Fund*.—In the course of the war of 1812, the port of Castine, on the Penobscot, was captured by the British, who, during their occupation, levied customs-duties, which formed the fund in question.

15. **Internal Communication.**—The labour and the cost of opening up the wilderness of the Provinces were very great. The first British settlers were exposed to hardships and suffered privations of which the people of the present day have small conception. Now the waggon, on easy springs, bowls over macadamized roads; the locomotive, with its train of cars, speeds over the smooth lines of rail; and the steam-boat, in spite of wind and tide, makes its way up and down river, and across lake, gulf, and sea. Roads and mail routes now penetrate to the farthest settlements. The telegraph flashes intelligence between the most distant places. By its means the Provinces are connected with one another and with all the world. **Ninety years ago**, as late as the middle of this, our third period, the British settlers in Canada found themselves isolated in the wilderness. Their children grew up in ignorance. They could not reach their nearest neighbours, nor carry their produce to market; and for a time there was no market to which to carry it. When settlements became connected with one another, the rough corduroy roads were almost impassable in spring, and after heavy falls of rain. Winter was the season of brisk travel in sleighs over the snow tracks, the time for hauling loads of wood, and supplies of flour, pork, and molasses.

16. **Roads and Bridges** were the prime necessity of the country. They were the public works in which all the people were interested. The Legislatures of all the Provinces aided their construction by annual grants, which were distributed among the several counties. A representative could not better show his zeal for his constituency than by obtaining a large share of this road money. It was not always judiciously spent; but, on the whole, good roads were made by this means.

17. **Navigation: Canals.**—The Great Lakes and the St. Lawrence were navigated in open boats and bateaux up to the year 1790. Then sail-vessels—sloops and schooners—made their appearance there, and on the St. John and other large rivers in New Brunswick, and carried passengers and freight. The passages they made were of uncertain duration. The first steamboat appeared on Canadian waters in 1809. "The Accommodation" plied between Montreal and Quebec. It was superseded by the more efficient "Swiftsure" just before the breaking out of the war of 1812.

18. The St. Lawrence, above Montreal, was obstructed by numerous falls and rapids. The necessities of a growing commerce demanded that the river should be made navigable for vessels of considerable burden. The Americans constructed a ship canal between Lake Erie and the Hudson River. The trade of northern New York and Vermont, which had previously sought an outlet by the St. Lawrence, was diverted by it to the port of New York. The feeling of rivalry impelled the Legislatures of the two Canadas to

1817-24

A. D.

take action ; but sectional jealousies prevented its being combined and efficient.

19. In Lower Canada, the **Lachine Canal** was made, to overcome the obstacles of the rapids, and to connect Lake St. Louis with the Harbour of Montreal. In Upper Canada, the **Welland Joint Stock Company** was formed, with a capital of only \$150,000, to construct a canal to connect Lakes Erie and Ontario. The **Welland Canal** was finished on a small scale at the close of this period, at a cost of \$162,300. Its promoters encountered numberless difficulties, and had to apply to the Legislature for aid. At this time the **Rideau Canal** from Kingston to Ottawa was constructed at the expense of the Imperial Government.

1821-25

A. D.

1824-40

A. D.

20. **Population.**—It is hardly possible to ascertain quite correctly the population of the British North American Provinces at the close of this period. But there were then in Canada about 1,090,000 people (of whom 625,000 were inhabitants of the Lower, and 461,000 of the Upper Province); 200,000 in Nova Scotia; 154,000 in New Brunswick; and 47,000 in Prince Edward Island. Their combined revenues amounted to about \$1,700,000. The amount of their shipping may be computed at 2,500,000 tons. Generally, it may be said that they then had attained a not unimportant position as agricultural, lumbering, and ship-building countries.

#### IV. THE PERIOD OF RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT, 1841-1867 A. D.

21. Canada during this time made remarkable advances in internal reform. Troublous constitutional questions, and those of the Feudal Tenure and the Clergy Reserves, were finally settled. The education of the people was placed on a firm basis. The canal system was completed. The foundation of the railway system was extensively laid. **Municipal Institutions** were established in the two Canadas, which gave the people control over the local affairs of their cities, towns, villages, and townships. They were directly taxed to maintain schools, roads, bridges, and a number of other services. A great deal of mere local business was thus taken out of the jurisdiction of the Legislatures, and the public revenues of the Provinces were relieved.

22. **Education: Colleges and Superior Schools.**—In Lower Canada, after the Union, the **Collegiate system** was extended. The ancient Seminary of Quebec was erected into the **University of Laval**, and a number of additional Industrial and Classical Seminaries were established throughout the Province. **M'Gill College** was placed on a new foundation, and became a University. It was opened to students of all denominations, and entered on a career of great usefulness. It received no endowment from the Province, but was supported by private munificence.

1852

A. D.

23. In Upper Canada the unpopular **King's College** was merged in

the **University of Toronto**. The chair of Divinity was abolished, and its halls were opened to students of all denominations. The **1853** functions of conferring degrees and of teaching were divided **A.D.** when a University and a College were established. It was intended that with the University (where only degrees are conferred) a number of the higher institutions of learning throughout the Province should become affiliated. When King's College was remodelled, **Trinity College, Toronto**, was established by Bishop Strachan under the auspices of the Church of England. At the same time the Presbyterians founded **Queen's College, Kingston**; the Wesleyan Methodists, **Victoria College, Coburg**; and the Baptists and Congregationalists their separate institutions in Woodstock and Toronto.

24. In Nova Scotia the Colleges led an **uneasy life**. Windsor, Dalhousie, Pictou, Acadia, were made the objects of perpetual hostile attack. The courses of education they offered to students were denounced in the Legislature as unsuited to the wants of the Province. Dalhousie College only entered upon a career of usefulness when, forty years after it was first opened, it received the support of several denominations.

25. Few institutions of learning have weathered such a storm of obloquy as King's College, New Brunswick. Twenty years after **1846** it was incorporated by Royal Charter the sole control of its **A.D.** affairs was taken out of the hands of the clergy and members of the Church of England. But this concession to popular feeling did not put a stop to complaint. The small number of students educated in comparison with the extent of the endowment was a standing charge against it. As the result of the recommendation of a Commission which sat in Frederickton, King's College was merged in the **University of New Brunswick**, the course of instruction was extended, and adapted to the wants of the time.

26. **Common-School Education**.—An Act was passed immediately after the union of the two Canadas, making provision for elementary education. The Legislature granted the sum of £200,000, which was divided among the several counties of the two Provinces. But the measure did not meet the wants of Upper Canada. The way to educational reform was opened there by **Egerton Ryerson**, in a Report wherein he reviewed the school systems of Massachusetts and Prussia, and of other states and countries of America and Europe. It was made the basis of a school law, which was often changed and amended before it was brought into a satisfactory shape.

27. The government of the schools of the Canadas was placed under their separate **Chief Superintendants** in the year 1846. The common-school system of Upper Canada provides for the general control over educational affairs through the instrumentality of a Council or Board and a Chief Superintendent; and for the particular supervision over the

different schools by means of Inspectors. It provides a course of sound elementary instruction for every child, free of charge. It is supported by an annual grant from the Legislature, and by the proceeds of the direct taxation of the people. A somewhat similar system was organized in Lower Canada. **Normal and Model Schools** were established in Toronto, and afterwards in Quebec and Montreal, to train student-teachers in the duties of their profession.

1850  
A. D.

28. Several changes in educational affairs were made in the Maritime Provinces after the year 1841. Some of the features of the Upper Canada School Act were adopted. The principle of **Free Schools**, supported by direct taxation, was first (1855) carried out in Prince Edward Island, but not in an entirely satisfactory manner. In Nova Scotia, a School Act based upon that system was passed during the administration of the Hon. Dr. Tupper. Through the exertions of the Hon. George E. King, leader of the Local Government, a somewhat similar Act became law in New Brunswick<sup>1</sup> four years and a half after Confederation. **The Free-School Acts** of all the Provinces have encountered much opposition; but the way in which they have been administered has infused vigour into education, has improved the efficiency and standing of teachers, and, as already stated, has greatly increased the number of scholars.

1864  
A. D.1872  
A. D.

29. **Canals.**—Work on the canals was vigorously prosecuted in the Canadas after the Union. The Imperial Government gave the guarantee on a loan of £1,500,000, which enabled the Provincial Government to borrow that amount at a lower rate of interest than it could have done on its own credit. The **Welland Canal** was enlarged so as to allow vessels of 400 tons burden to navigate it. The obstructions in the St. Lawrence from Prescott to Lake St. Peter were overcome by the Williamsburg, Cornwall, and Beauharnois Canals. The system was (though capable of greater expansion) completed in 1846.

30. In Nova Scotia, the project of connecting Halifax Harbour with the Bay of Fundy by a canal uniting the Dartmouth Lakes and the Shubenacadie River was early conceived. But it was not thoroughly carried out. A canal across the Isthmus of Chiegnecto, between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, had been in contemplation from the earliest times. This **Bay Verte Canal** will be one of the great works of the near future.

<sup>1</sup> *New Brunswick.*—In the Report of the Chief Superintendent, Theodore H. Rand, who has been instrumental in bringing to successful operation "the Free Common-school Acts" of both the Maritime Provinces, a marked increase in the number of children at-

tending school is noticed. Since the establishment of the system in Nova Scotia there has been a progressive increase of attendance: in 1870 the number of scholars was more than double that of 1864. The prospect before New Brunswick is no less encouraging.

31. **Railways.**—The canals were no sooner finished than the **railway mania** seized the people of Canada, and of the other Provinces. Great projects were put forth, that seemed to be vastly disproportionate to their then existing means. But in the course of twenty years from the time when the making of railways was commenced in earnest, they were nearly all carried out. The project that engaged most attention was "**The Intercolonial Railway**" between Halifax and Quebec. With the view of making it a joint undertaking, the Governments of the several Provinces entered into negotiations with one another and with the imperial authorities; but with no result. The negotiations were renewed three several times in the course of the ten years succeeding, but were on every occasion frustrated by some misunderstanding or cross purpose. Yet the construction of this railway was made the **indispensable condition** on which the Maritime Provinces consented to enter into confederation with the Canadas.

32. The most serious railway projects—in which the people of the Canadas were interested, and which were first carried out—were the **St. Lawrence and Atlantic line**, connecting Montreal with Portland, United States; and the "**Great Western**," between Sarnia and the Niagara, which was connected with the American railway system by means of a suspension bridge over the river. Then the **Grand Trunk Company** was formed, with the view of constructing a line between Montreal and Toronto (which was afterwards extended to Sarnia), and between Quebec and Rivière du Loup. The work of constructing it was undertaken by **Jackson and Company**, a famous firm of contractors. The main line, with its approach to Montreal by the magnificent Victoria Bridge, was in full operation eight years afterwards. Branch lines were made by the municipalities with money borrowed from the Government.

33. In the same year in which the Grand Trunk Company was formed, the Government of New Brunswick entered into a contract with Jackson and Company to form a railway between **St. John and Shediac**, to form part of the European and North American line, which was to connect Halifax with St. John, and with the United States. In Nova Scotia, the railways between Halifax and Windsor and Truro—links in the great chain—were undertaken on the direct responsibility of the Government. Jackson and Company, unable to proceed, gave up their contract and all the work done under it for the sum of £90,000. The Shediac road was then finished under the supervision of the Government. A project was then contemplated, to spread a **network of railways** over New Brunswick, to connect St. John, Frederickton, Woodstock, St. Stephen, and St. Andrews with one another, and with Nova Scotia, Canada, and Maine.

34. A similar scheme was revived seven years afterwards, when

the Government<sup>1</sup> of the day (annoyed at the withdrawal of Canada from an agreement to make the Intercolonial Railway), introduced a **Railway Facility Bill**<sup>2</sup> that offered a bonus of \$10,000 a mile to any Company undertaking any of the lines therein specified. This liberal measure gave an impetus to railway construction in New Brunswick. Ten years after it was passed (1873), the scheme that had floated before the vision of the Legislature in 1845 was almost realized. The **Western Extension** line—from St. John to the border of Maine—and its branches, connect St. John, Frederickton, St. Stephen, St. Andrews, and Woodstock with one another, and with the railway system of the United States. The **Intercolonial Railway**, running along the Gulf shore, connects New Brunswick on one side with the Truro, Windsor and Halifax, and Annapolis lines, and on the other with the whole railway system of Canada. By the end of another decade there may be direct communication between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick on the Atlantic, and British Columbia on the Pacific coast.

35. In the quarter of a century between the union of the Canadas and Confederation (1841–1867), the British North American Provinces made **great progress**. In 1867, the population had increased to three million, one hundred and seventy-seven thousand, four hundred and fifteen (3,177,415); their revenues, to an aggregate of twelve million dollars (\$12,000,000); their commerce, to one hundred and ninety million dollars (\$190,000,000); the annual value of their fisheries was three million, six hundred and five thousand, nine hundred and fifty dollars (\$3,605,950). The population of Canada was in 1874, on a near calculation, four millions (4,000,000); its commerce amounted to two hundred million dollars (\$200,000,000); and the value of the fisheries to nine million, five hundred and seventy thousand, one hundred and sixteen dollars (\$9,570,116).

36. The idea that this short sketch of “progress” seeks to convey is, that as Canada, in spite of complicated difficulties, has made such great progress in the past, she must in the future advance with manifold more force and speed, now that she has attained political and commercial independence, perfect internal peace, and an actual state of great enlightenment, power, and wealth.

<sup>1</sup> *Government*.—Of which the Hon. S. L. Tilley was leader.

<sup>2</sup> *Railway Facility Bill*.—Humor-

ously called the Lobster Bill, because it had “claws” (i.e. a clause) pointing in every direction.

## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

	A. D.
Eric Raude discovers Greenland and Labrador .....	982
Christopher Columbus discovers San Salvador and other islands of the West Indies .....	1492
John and Sebastian Cabot come in sight of PRIMA VISTA, Newfoundland, and the Mainland of the Continent.....	1497-1498
Voyage of Amerigo Vespucci.....	1499
Death of Columbus.....	1506
European vessels frequent the "Banks" of Newfoundland.....	1517
John Verazzani's voyage from Florida to Newfoundland.....	1524
Jacques Cartier enters the Gulf of St. Lawrence—the Bay Chaleur .....	1534
Jacques Cartier ascends the River St. Lawrence—Stadaconé—Hochelaga..	1535
Jacques Cartier passes a second winter in Canada—Charlesbourg Royal....	1542
M. de Roberval, Viceroy.....	1540-1549
Martin Frobisher—Voyage to Greenland and Labrador.....	1576-1578
Sir Humphrey Gilbert forms a settlement at St. John's, Newfoundland ....	1583
Sieur de la Roche, Viceroy of Canada—Convicts on Sable Island.....	1598
M. Pontgravé—Fur-trade at Tadoussac .....	1599
M. de Monts, Viceroy of Acadie—Samuel de Champlain.....	1604
Port Royal founded .....	1605
Baron Poutrincourt and Marc Lescarbot at Port Royal .....	1607
Champlain founds the habitation of Quebec .....	1608
Champlain joins the Hurons in war against the Iroquois .....	1609
Baron Poutrincourt returns to Port Royal .....	1610
Henry IV. of France assassinated by Ravalliac.....	1610
The Jesuit Fathers settle in Acadie.....	1611
Settlement of St. Sauveur, on Penobscot, destroyed by Samuel Argall .....	1613
Argall destroys Port Royal.....	1614
Champlain visits the Huron country—goes to war against the Iroquois....	1615
Louis Hebert and family, the first settlers in Canada, arrive in Quebec.....	1617
Madame de Champlain accompanies her husband to Canada.....	1620
The Fort St. Louis, the Recollet Monastery on St. Charles, established.....	1620
Monopoly of fur-trade granted to Guillaume and Emery de Caen .....	1621
Madame de Champlain returns to France.....	1624
Grant to Sir William Alexander of Acadie (Nova Scotia)... 20th September	1624
The Jesuit Fathers establish themselves in Quebec .....	1625-1626
The New Company of the Hundred Associates founded .....	1627
Sir David Kirkcaldie takes possession of Acadie.....	1628
Champlain surrenders Quebec to Kirkcaldie.....	1629
Claude and Charles de la Tour created Knights Barons of Nova Scotia... 1629	1629
Treaty of St. Germain—Canada and Acadie restored to France, 27th March	1632
Isaac de Razilli appointed Commandant in Acadie .....	1632
The New Company enter on full possession of New France .....	1633
Death of Champlain .....	25th December 1635
Jesuit College, Institution at Sillery, and Hotel Dieu, Quebec, founded	1636-1637
Mesdames de la Peltrie and Guyart found Ursuline Convent, Quebec .....	1639
Society of Notre Dame de Montreal formed in Paris.....	1640

Montreal Ville-Marie founded .....	1642
Montreal attacked by Iroquois—Maisonneuve at Place d'Armes .....	1644
Destruction of the Jesuit Missions in the Huron country by Iroquois .....	1648-1649
Proposals for perpetual amity between New England and Canada.....	1648-1649
Father Druillettes goes on mission of peace to Boston .....	1648-1649
Negotiations between Canada and New England finally broken off.....	1651
Madame d'Aulnay marries Charles de la Tour .....	1653
Emmanuel le Borgue obtains Acadie in satisfaction of debts due to him....	1653
New Englanders under Colonel Sedgwick capture Acadie .....	1654
Treaty of Westminster—Acadie in joint possession of France and Eng- land.....	3rd November 1655
Insecure state of Canada under M. de Lauson.....	1656
Island of Montreal ceded to Seminary of St. Sulpicius.....	1657
Institution of Filles de la Congregation, under Marguerite Bourgeois, founded .....	1658
M. de Laval, Ecclesiastical Superior (afterwards first Bishop), arrives in Quebec.....	1659
Extreme distress in Canada.....	1660
Disputes concerning liquor traffic.....	1661
The Great Earthquake.....	1663
The New Company surrenders its charter.....	1663
Sovereign Council established in Canada—M. de Mesy.....	1663
West India Company formed.....	1664
Marquis de Tracy, Viceroy, arrives in Quebec with Carignan Salières regi- ment and a large party of colonists.....	1665
Father Allouez explores the country around Lake Superior.....	1665
Forts St. Therese, Chambly, and Sorel, on the Richelieu River, built .....	1665
Marquis de Tracy conducts expedition against the Mohawks.....	1666
Treaty of Breda—Acadie restored to France.....	31st July 1667
The Recollet Fathers reestablished in Canada by Royal Edict.....	1669
Canada makes progress under direction of M. Talon, Intendant.....	1670
The western Indian tribes acknowledge sovereignty of the King of France	1671
Father Marquette and M. Joliet discover the Mississippi .....	1672
M. de Courcelles, Governor-General, makes peace with Indians at Catara- coui.....	1672
Arrival of Count Frontenac.....	1672
Sieur la Salle obtains seigneurie of Cataracoui .....	1677
Voyage of the <i>Griffin</i> , the first ship on the Great Lakes .....	1679
Port Royal the capital of Acadie.....	1680
La Salle reaches the mouth of the Mississippi.....	1682
Count Frontenac recalled—M. de la Barre Governor-General .....	1682
Colonel Dongan, Governor of New York .....	1682
Efforts made to colonize Acadie .....	1683
Sufferings of French army at Bay of Famine .....	1684
M. de la Barre makes disgraceful peace with the Iroquois.....	1684
M. d'Iberville captures the English posts on Hudson Bay.....	1686
Treaty of Neutrality between French and English Colonies .....	1687
M. de Denonville lays waste the country of the Senecas .....	1687
Dismal state of Canada .....	1688
Machinations of Kondiaronk, the Rat .....	1688
War declared between Great Britain and France .....	1689
The Massacre of Lachine .....	1689
Return of Count Frontenac .....	1689
Three French war parties attack English Colonies—"petite guerre".....	1690
Sir William Phips seizes Port Royal.....	1690

Sir William Phips repulsed at Quebec .....	1690
Medal struck by order of Louis XIV. in honour of the success of French arms .....	1690
Country of the Onondagas devastated by force under Count Frontenac.....	1692
Fort William-Henry (on the Pemaquid) destroyed by M. d'Iberville.....	1696
Fort on the Nachouac unsuccessfully attacked by New Englanders .....	1696
Peace of Ryswick.....	20th September 1697
Death of Count Frontenac.....	28th November 1698
M. de Caillères, Governor-General, makes peace with all the Indian tribes .....	1701
War of the Spanish Succession—French and English Colonies embroiled... ..	1702
Marquis de Vaudreuil, Governor-General.....	1703
The Ottigamies attack Detroit—Western country disturbed for many years .....	1703
Port Royal attacked by New Englanders .....	1707
Another unsuccessful attack on Port Royal.....	1708
French under M. d'Hertel destroy Haverhill .....	1708
Invasion of Canada checked .....	1709
Colonel Nicolson captures Port Royal, and names it Annapolis Royal .....	1710
British Fleet under Sir Hoveden Walker shattered on Egg Islands.....	1711
Treaty of Utrecht.....	13th April 1713
Canada enters on a long period of repose .....	1713
The building of Louisburg (Cape Breton) commenced by the French .....	1713
Canada begins to make great progress under MM. Raudot, Intendants.....	1713
The Tuscaroras enter the League of the Iroquois, which is now called the Six Nations.....	1717
The French make settlements in Louisiana.....	1718
Father Charlevoix visits New France.....	1722
The English of New York build Fort Oswego at the mouth of the Chouagen .....	1724
The New England States make peace with the Abenakis and Micmacs ....	1725
Death of Marquis de Vaudreuil—Wreck of the royal ship <i>Chameau</i> .....	1725
Marquis de Beauharnois Governor-General .....	1726
Fort Frederick, at Crown Point, on Lake Champlain, erected .....	1733
M. de Verendrye explores territory between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains.....	1743
War of the Austrian Succession in Europe—French and English Colonies embroiled .....	1744
M. du Vivier and his Micmac allies besiege Annapolis Royal.....	1744
Capture of Louisburg by Commodore Warren and Colonel Pepperell.....	1745
Disastrous issue of the French Expedition against Massachusetts and Nova Scotia.....	1746
Death of its leader, Duc d'Anville—Suicide of Admiral d'Estournelle.....	1746
Capture of M. de la Jonquière, Governor-General of Canada .....	1746
Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle—Louisburg restored to the French .....	1748
Count Galissonnière, Governor-General.....	1748
The London and Virginia "Ohio Land Company" formed.....	1749
M. Célérin de Blenville marks the boundaries between French and English possessions.....	1749
Halifax founded under the auspices of Earl of Halifax.....	2nd July 1749
English and French Boundary Commissioners meet at Paris.....	1750
Intrigues of Abbé de Loutre in Nova Scotia .....	1750
Fort Beauséjour built .....	1750
Death of M. de la Jonquière—Marquis du Quesne, Governor-General.....	1752
Collision between French and English in the valley of the Ohio .....	1754
George Washington surrenders at Fort Necessity .....	1754
Marquis de Vaudreuil-Cavagnac, Governor-General .....	1755
Fort Beauséjour captured by force under Colonel Moncton .....	1755
General Braddock defeated at Monongahela.....	9th July 1755

William Johnson defeats the French under Baron Dieskau at Lake George.....	8th September	1755
Expulsion of the Acadians from Nova Scotia .....		1755
War formally declared between England and France .....		1756
Reinforcements arrive in Canada with Marquis de Montcalm and General Levis .....		1756
M. de Montcalm captures and destroys Fort Oswego.....		1756
Earl of Loudoun, Commander-in-Chief—his vacillating course.....		1757
M. de Montcalm captures Fort William-Henry (on Lake George)—Massacre of British prisoners .....		1757
Capture of Louisburg by Admiral Boscawen and Colonels Amherst and Wolfe .....		1758
Cape Breton and Island of St. John become British possessions .....		1758
General Abercrombie defeated at Ticonderoga .....	5th July	1758
Fort du Quesne captured by Colonel Forbes—it is named Fort Pitt .....		1758
Meeting of first General Assembly at Halifax .....		1758
General Amherst checked in his advance on Montreal .....		1759
Fort Niagara taken by Sir William Johnson .....	25th August	1759
Unsuccessful attack by the British on French intrenchments at Beaufort.....	31st July	1759
Battle of the Plains of Abraham — Death of Wolfe and Montcalm.....	15th September	1759
Surrender of Quebec to the British.....	18th September	1759
Battle of Ste. Foye—General Murray defeated .....	April	1760
Petite Rochelle destroyed by squadron under Captain Byron .....		1760
M. de Levis hastily raises siege of Quebec on appearance of the English fleet .....		1760
Capitulation of the French army at Montreal.....	8th September	1760
End of French rule in Canada.....		1760
Canada divided into the districts of Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers..		1760
French posts in the west are surrendered to Major Rogers .....		1761
Pontiac's Conspiracy.....		1762
The Treaty of Paris .....	10th February	1763
Fort Michillimackinac captured by the Ojibaways and Sacs.....	July	1763
Royal Proclamation.....	7th October	1763
Simonds, White, and Peabody establish a fishery on St. John Harbour ...		1763
Defeat of Pontiac's Conspiracy—End of the Indian War .....		1764
Brigadier-General Guy Carleton, Governor of Canada .....		1766
Meeting of the first Assembly in St. John (Prince Edward) Island .....		1773
Quebec Act passed.....		1774
Meeting of Congress at Philadelphia—Commencement of the Revolutionary War .....		1775
Montreal and Quebec threatened by insurgent Colonial forces under Generals Montgomery and Benedict Arnold.....		1775
St. John's (on the Richelieu) and Montreal taken by Montgomery .....		1775
Unsuccessful assault on Quebec—General Montgomery killed, and General Arnold wounded .....	31st December	1775
British fleet arrives with large reinforcements .....	May	1776
Insurgent Colonial forces driven out of Canada .....		1776
Naval fight on Lake Champlain—Benedict Arnold defeated.....		1776
British army under General Burgoyne assembles at Montreal to attack New York State .....		1777
Major-General Sir Frederick Haldimand, Governor of Canada—Discontent .....		1778
Lord Cornwallis surrenders at Yorktown.....		1781
General Sir Guy Carleton arrives in New York to promote peace .....		1782
Independence of the United States.....		1782

General Carleton makes arrangements to settle the United Empire Loyalists in Canada and Nova Scotia.....	1782
Treaty of Paris.....	3rd September 1783
Landing of the United Empire Loyalists at St. John.....	18th May 1783
Province of New Brunswick formally proclaimed.....	22nd November 1784
General Sir Guy Carleton (Lord Dorchester) appointed first Governor-General of the British North American Provinces.....	1787
Earl Grenville's Act, commonly called the Constitutional Act, passed....	1791
Division of Canada into Lower and Upper Canada—First meetings of their Legislatures.....	1792
The Revolutionary Government in France declares war against England ...	1793
Town of York (Toronto) founded by Governor Simcoe.....	1794
Prince Edward, Duke of Kent, visits Halifax.....	1794
Island of St. John named Prince Edward Island.....	1799
Duke of Kent finally leaves Halifax.....	1800
Death of Joseph Casot, the last member of the Jesuit Order in Canada.....	1800
Emperor Napoleon issues the Berlin Decrees interdicting commerce with Great Britain.....	1806
The British Government promulgate Orders in Council forbidding commerce with France.....	1807
The dispute between Great Britain and the United States culminates in the attack by H.M. ship <i>Leopard</i> on the U.S. frigate <i>Chesapeake</i> .....	1807
American ports closed against the British.....	1808
Secret mission of Captain Henry to the Eastern States of America.....	1809
Troubles in Lower Canada during the administration of Sir James Craig....	1809
Violent dissolutions of the Legislature—The Reign of Terror.....	1810
Sir George Prevost, Governor-General.....	1811
President Madison declares war against Great Britain.....	1812
Emperor Napoleon declares war against Russia.....	1812
Fort Michillimackinac taken by the British.....	17th July 1812
American General Hull surrenders his army at Detroit.....	16th August 1812
Battle of Queenston Heights—Death of Sir Isaac Brock.....	13th October 1812
American General Wilkinson defeated at Frenchtown by Colonel Proctor.....	19th January 1813
York (Toronto) captured by the Americans.....	27th April 1813
Fort George, on the Niagara, taken by the Americans.....	27th May 1813
Affair at Sackett's Harbour.....	29th May 1813
Midnight attack by the British on the American camp at Stoney Creek, June	1813
Americans repulsed at Fort Meigs, on the Miami river.....	1813
Naval fight on Lake Erie.....	18th September 1813
Proctor defeated at Moravia village by the U.S. General Harrison, October	1813
Colonel Salaberry defeats the U.S. General Hampton at Chateauguay.....	26th October 1813
Americans defeated at Chrysler's Farm.....	November 1813
Town of Newark (Niagara) burned by the Americans.....	December 1813
Buffalo burned by the British.....	December 1813
U.S. General Wilkinson defeated at La Colle Mill.....	January 1814
Ogdensburg destroyed under Major M'Donnel, of Glengarry Fencibles....	1814
U.S. General Brown crosses the Niagara river—takes Fort Erie.....	July 1814
Battle of Lundy's Lane—Americans defeated.....	24th July 1814
Fort Erie assaulted—British repulsed.....	August 1814
Sir George Prevost retreats from Plattsburg.....	September 1814
Treaty of Ghent.....	24th December 1814
Feuds between the traders of the Hudson Bay and North-West Companies—Selkirk Settlement.....	1815

Sir John Cope Sherbrooke, Governor-General—calls on the Assembly of Lower Canada to vote the deficiency of the Civil List ..... 1816

Duke of Richmond, Governor-General—dies from the effect of a fox-bite. 1819

Earl of Dalhousie, Governor-General ..... 1820

Union of the two Canadas proposed ..... 1822

Defalcation of Sir John Caldwell, Receiver-General ..... 1824

Great fire at Miramichi ..... October 1825

Canada Land Company incorporated ..... 1826

Boundary dispute between Maine and New Brunswick ..... 1827

Political dissensions in Lower Canada—Public meetings and petitions ..... 1827

The Canada Committee Report in Imperial Parliament ..... 1828

Lord Aylmer, Governor-General—Renewed troubles in Lower Canada ... 1830

West India trade thrown open to the Americans ..... 1831

M'Kenzie, the agent of the people of Upper Canada, takes a petition to England ..... 1832

The Assembly of Lower Canada pass the Ninety-four Resolutions..... 1834

Town of York incorporated as the city of Toronto..... 1834

Lord Gosford, Governor-General—Royal Commission of Inquiry ..... 1835

Sir Francis Bond Head, Governor of Upper Canada ..... 1836

Mission of Crane and Wilmot to Downing Street ..... 1836

Surrender of Casual and Territorial Revenue to New Brunswick Legislature 1836

Civil List Bill passed in the Legislature of New Brunswick ..... 1837

Joseph Howe first enters the Legislature of Nova Scotia ..... 1837

Lord John Russell introduces coercive resolutions into the Imperial Parliament ..... 6th March 1837

Lord Gosford issues a Proclamation against seditious gatherings ..... June 1837

Reformers of Upper Canada publish their Declaration..... August 1837

Fray between the British "Dorics" and the French Canadian "Sons of Liberty"..... November 1837

Colonel Gore repulsed by rebels at St. Denis—Murder of Lieutenant Weir ..... 23rd November 1837

Colonel Wetherall defeats the rebels at St. Charles ..... 24th November 1837

St. Denis evacuated by the rebels ..... 5th December 1837

M'Kenzie advances to attack Toronto ..... 5th December 1837

Fight at Montgomery's Farm—U.C. rebels put to rout ..... 7th December 1837

Rebellion in the county of Two Mountains crushed ..... 15th December 1837

M'Kenzie proclaims a Republic on Navy Island ..... 15th December 1837

The Rebel steamer *Caroline* burned, and carried over the Falls of Niagara..... 23th December 1837

American sympathizers repulsed at Hickory Island and at Point Pelé Island..... February and March 1838

Lord Gosford recalled—The Constitution of Lower Canada suspended—Sir John Colborne, Governor-General ..... January 1838

Arrival of the Earl of Durham, High Commissioner..... 21st May 1838

Nine of the leaders of the rebellion sent to Bermuda.—Amnesty extended to all the other political prisoners ..... June 1838

The Governors of the Lower Provinces, accompanied by delegations, visit the Earl of Durham—Confederation discussed ..... 1838

Earl of Durham leaves Canada ..... 3rd November 1838

Second outbreak of the rebellion—Affairs in Beauharnois and Odelltown..... 3rd and 9th November 1838

"Hunters" under Van Schultz defeated at Prescott..... 16th November 1838

Colonel Prince and U.C. Militia defeat the Patriots at Sandwich, December 1838

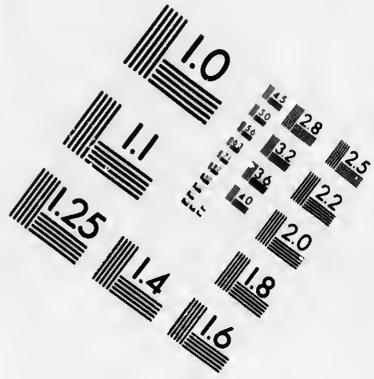
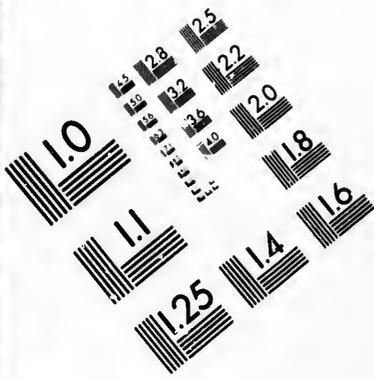
Excitement over the Disputed Boundaries question ..... 1839

Earl of Durham's Report submitted to the Imperial Parliament ..... 1839

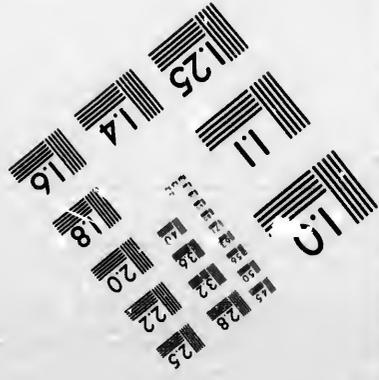
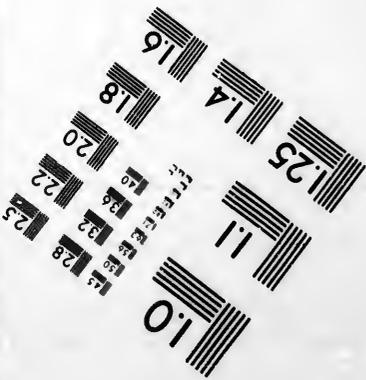
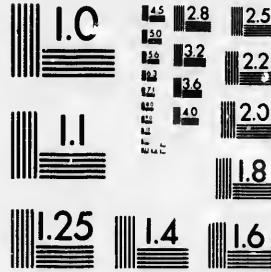
Hon. C. P. Thompson, Governor-General.....	1839
Lord John Russell's despatch on the Tenure of Office.....	16th October 1839
Union agreed to by the Council of Lower Canada .....	November 1839
Union Bill passes in the Legislature of Upper Canada .....	December 1839
Union formally proclaimed .....	10th February 1841
The first meeting of the Parliament of the United Canadas .....	13th June 1841
Death of C. P. Thompson (Lord Sydenham).....	13th September 1841
Sir Charles Bagot, Governor-General.....	1842
Treaty of Washington—Settlement of the Disputed Boundaries .....	1842
Sir Charles Metcalfe, Governor-General .....	1843
Seat of Government transferred from Kingston to Montreal.....	1845
Lord Cathcart, Governor-General.....	1846
Committee appointed in the Legislature of Canada to inquire into losses occasioned by the rebellion—submits a Report.....	1846
Lord Elgin, Governor-General.....	1847
Responsible Government established in Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick .....	1848
Lord Elgin assents to Rebellion Losses Bill.....	2nd April 1849
Parliament Buildings burned .....	2nd April 1849
Repeal of the Navigation Laws.....	2nd April 1849
Major Robinson's Report on the Routes of the Intercolonial Railway submitted to Provincial Legislatures .....	1849
Railway Convention at Portland .....	31st July 1850
Intercolonial Railway negotiations between the Imperial and Provincial Governments .....	1852
Reciprocity Treaty with the United States .....	June 1854
Crimean War .....	June 1854
Sir Edmund Head, Governor-General .....	June 1854
Clergy Reserves question settled .....	June 1854
Settlement of the Feudal Tenures .....	1855
Alexander T. Galt's speech on Confederation in the Canadian Parliament .....	1857
The Cartier and J. A. M'Donald Administration proposes a Federative Union of the Provinces .....	1858
Government established in British Columbia .....	1858
Visit of H.R.H. the Prince of Wales to Canada and the United States .....	1860
War of Secession commences .....	April 1861
Lord Monck, Governor-General.....	1861
The Trent affair.....	8th November 1861
Death of Prince Albert.....	December 1861
Serious political crisis in the Canadian Parliament—A Coalition Government formed—Confederation policy adopted.....	1864
Conference of Delegates from the Maritime Provinces in Prince Edward Island.....	1st September 1864
Quebec Conference.....	10th October 1864
Quebec Resolutions pass the Parliament of Canada.....	March 1865
New Brunswick anti-confederate.....	1865
Mission of the Canadian Ministry to England.....	1865
End of the War of Secession .....	9th April 1865
Murder of President Lincoln .....	11th April 1865
Trans Convention at Detroit.....	July 1865
Termination of the Reciprocity Treaty.....	1865
The Fenian Brotherhood threaten to invade Canada .....	1865
Confederation carried in New Brunswick .....	1866
Meeting of Provincial Delegates in Westminster Hotel .....	1866
British North America Act passed by the Imperial Parliament, 29th March .....	1867

Dominion of Canada proclaimed.....	1st July	1867
Thomas d'Arcy M'Gee assassinated.....	7th April	1868
Sir John Young (Lord Lisgar), Governor-General.....		1868
Agitation for repeal of the Union in Nova Scotia stilled.....		1869
Province of Manitoba organized.....		1870
The Red River Expedition.....	May to August	1870
The Fenians invade Canada.....		1870
The Treaty of Washington.....	8th May	1871
British Columbia enters the Confederation.....	20th July	1871
Census taken.....		1871
Earl Dufferin, Governor-General.....		1872
General election.....		1872
Mr. Huntindgon prefers charges against the Dominion Government.....		1873
Death of Sir George Etienne Cartier and the Hon. Joseph Howe.....		1873
Prince Edward Island enters the Confederation.....	1st July	1873
Earl and Countess Dufferin make a tour of the Maritime Provinces.....		1873
Excitement over the Pacific Scandal.....		1873
Meeting of Parliament.....	23rd October	1873
Resignation of the J. A. M'Donald Ministry.....	November	1873
The M'Kenzie Administration formed.....	November	1873
The House of Commons dissolved.....	2nd January	1874
General election.....		1874

\*



**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**





## PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES.

**EXPLANATION.**—In the pronunciations given, many which are, of course, only approximations, the letters and syllables are to have their ordinary English sound, with these exceptions:—viz., *u* and *eu*, IN ITALICS, denote the corresponding French sounds, which have no English equivalent; *ü* represents the short sound of the French *e*, somewhat like *u* in *but*; *n<sup>s</sup>* denotes the French nasal sound; *g* everywhere denotes the *hard* sound of that letter, as in *go*; *zh* denotes the sound of *z* in *azure*.

Abenaquis .....	Ab-en-a'h-quis.	Berryer .....	Berry-ay.
Acadie, <i>or</i> .....	} A'k-ah-dee, <i>or</i>	Bersiamites .....	Ber-see-a-mites.
Acadia .....		} Ak-ā'-de-a.	Biard, (Pierre) ...
Aix-la-Chapelle .....	Åks-lah-shape'l.	Biarni, <i>or</i> .....	} Be-ar-ne, <i>or</i>
Albanel .....	Al-ban-el.	Biorn .....	
Algonquin .....	Al-gōn <sup>s</sup> -kans.	Biencourt .....	Be-an <sup>s</sup> -koer.
Alilatho .....	Al-i-la-tho.	Boerstler .....	Burst-ler.
Andastes .....	Ahn <sup>s</sup> -da'st.	Bouganville .....	Boo-gan <sup>s</sup> -vee'l.
Areskoué .....	Ar-es-koo-a'y.	Bouquet .....	Boo-ka'y.
Assiniboine ...	} Ass-in-ib-wawn	Bourdon .....	Boor-dōn <sup>s</sup> .
		( <i>or</i> , -oin).	Bourlamaque ....
Atticamigues. {	At-te-kam-e-	Brouage .....	Broo-a'hzh.
	gwe <sup>s</sup> .	Brouillan .....	Broo-ee-ya'h <sup>s</sup> .
Attigouantin. {	At-te-gou-an-	Bruyas .....	Bru-e-yah.
	teen.	Bruyers .....	Bru-e-yair.
Attinanchrons ...	At-teen-an-krons.	Burgoyne .....	Bur-goin.
Aubry .....	O'-bree.		
Baccalaos .....	Bak-a-lay-os.	Cabot .....	Kab-ot.
Baggiatway .....	Baj-e-at-way.	Caffinière .....	Kaf-in-e-a'ir.
Baudet .....	Bō-day.	Cahiague .....	Ka-e-ā-gu.
Béarne .....	Bay-a'rn.	Callières .....	Kal-e-air.
Beaubassin .....	Bo-bass-a'n <sup>s</sup> .	Canceau, <i>or</i> .....	} Kahn <sup>s</sup> -so', <i>or</i>
Beauharnois .....	Bo-har-nwa'w.	Canso .....	
Beauport .....	Bo-po're.	Canibas .....	Kah-ne-bah.
Beauséjour .....	Bo-say-zho'or.	Carheil .....	Kar-ell.
Bécancourt .....	Bay-kan <sup>s</sup> -koer.	Carignan-Sa- {	Kar-een-yahn <sup>s</sup> .
Benoit .....	Ben-waw.	lières .....	} Sah-le-a'ir.
		Carillon .....	Kar-ee-yon <sup>s</sup> .

Cartier, Jacques. Kar-te-ay, Zhak.  
 Cataracoui ..... Kat-ar-ä-koo-ë.  
 Caughnawaga ... Kaw-naw-wäg'ä.  
 Cayugas ..... Kay-yu-gahs.  
 Chagouamigon.. Sha-gou-a-mi-gon.  
 Champlain ..... Shaun<sup>s</sup>-plan<sup>s</sup>.  
 Charlevoix ..... Char-le-vo-ä.  
 Charnisay ..... Shar-ne-zay.  
 Chatin ..... Shah-tä'n<sup>s</sup>.  
 Charney ..... Chahn-se'.  
 Chetodel ..... Shet-o-de'l.  
 Chippewa ..... Chip-pe-waw.  
 Chomedy ..... Sho-med-ee.  
 Chouagen ..... Shou-a-gen.  
 Chouanons ..... Shoo-ah-no'ns.  
 Chrysler ..... Kris-lier.  
 Cockburn ..... Ko-burn.  
 Codougey ..... Kod-oo-gay.  
 Colange ..... Ko-lahn<sup>s</sup>-zh.  
 Contrecoeur ..... Kōn<sup>s</sup>-tr-ke'ur.  
 Cottin ..... Kot-an<sup>s</sup>.  
 Courcelles ..... Koor-se'll.  
 Coureurs du } Koo-reu'r du  
 Bois ..... } bwaw.  
 Coutume de } Koo-tu'md-pah-  
 Paris ..... } re'e.  
 Cristinilauz ..... Kris-teen-e-lo'.  
 Cuvillier ..... Ku-veel-yay.

Dablon ..... Dah-blōn<sup>s</sup>.  
 Dauversiere ..... Do-vair-se-ai'r.  
 D'Aiguillon ..... Däy-gee-yōn<sup>s</sup>.  
 D'Ailleboust ..... Däl-boo.  
 D'Argenson ..... Dar-zha'n<sup>s</sup>-sōn<sup>s</sup>.  
 D'Aulnay ..... Do'nay.  
 D'Avangour ..... Dah-vo-goo'r.  
 Dearborn ..... Deer-burn.  
 De Bienville, } Dü Be-an<sup>s</sup>-veel,  
 (Celerin) ..... } (Cel-e-rin).  
 De Caen, (Em- } Dü Kahn<sup>s</sup>, (Em-  
 eryl) ..... } er-y).  
 De Chastes, } Dü Shast, (Ag-  
 (Agmar) ..... } mar).  
 De Guast, } Dü Gah, (Pe-air).  
 (Pierre) ..... }

De Monts ..... Dü Mon<sup>s</sup>.  
 De Silleri, } Dü Sill-er-y,  
 (Bruart) ..... } (Bru-ar).  
 Denys ..... Day-nee.  
 Deschamps ..... Day-shahn<sup>s</sup>.  
 Des Mäsgou- } Day May-goo-  
 ets, (Troilus) } ay, (Tro-e-lus).  
 Des Meules ..... Day-meul.  
 D'Hertel, (Rou- } Dair-tell, (Roo-  
 ville) ..... } veel).  
 D'Iberville ..... Dee-bair-ve'el.  
 Dieskau ..... Dee-e's-ko.  
 Dinwiddie ..... Din-wi'ddy.  
 D'Orvilliers ..... Dor-ve'el-yay.  
 Druillettes ..... Dru-ee-ye't.  
 Duchesneau ..... Du-shen-o'.  
 Dupuys ..... Du-pwe'e.  
 Du Plessis, } Du Pless-e'e,  
 (Pacifique).. } (Pass-e-feek).  
 Du Quesne ..... Du Kai'n.  
 Du Thet, (Gil- } Du Tay, (Zhil-  
 bert) ..... } bair).  
 Duvantye ..... Du-van-ti.  
 Eric ..... Er'ik.  
 Enemond ..... En-em-ōn.  
 Entouhonouns ... En-tou-hon-ouna.  
 Etchemins ..... Etch-e-mins.

Fauxchamps ..... Fo-shahn<sup>s</sup>.  
 Fontainebleau ... Fōn<sup>s</sup>-tain-blo'.  
 Fremin ..... Frem-an<sup>s</sup>.  
 Freneuse ..... Fren-euz.  
 Gabarus ..... Gab-ah-roo's.  
 Galissonniere. } Gal-ées-on<sup>s</sup>-ne-  
 } air.  
 Garrangula ..... Gar-a'n-gu-lah.  
 Genessee ..... Jen-ë-se'e.  
 Ghent ..... Gahn<sup>s</sup>.  
 Girouard ..... Zhee-roo-a'rr.  
 Grosellière ..... Gro-sell-e-ai'r.  
 Gruyart ..... Gru-e-yar.  
 Guerecheville ..... Gairsh-veel.  
 Guillaume ..... Gee-yo'me.



**Pearron** ..... Pay-az-rō'nē.  
**Penouil** ..... Pen-oo-ee'yū.  
**Pentagoët** ..... Pen-tah-go-et.  
**Perrot** ..... Pair-ro'.  
**Pontchartrain** ... Pōn's-shār-tran'.  
**Pontgravé** ..... Pōn's-grah-va'y.  
**Pontiac** ..... Pon'te-ac.  
**Potherie** ..... Pō-ter-ee.  
**Pottawattamies** ..... } Pot-ah-wo't-ah-meas.  
**Pouchot** ..... Poo-sho'.  
**Poutrincourt** ... Poo-trahn's-koor.  
**Presqu'isle** ..... Press-ke'el.  
**Prevost** ..... Prā'v-o.  
**Prideaux** ..... Prid'o.  
  
**Quinipissas** ..... Keen-e-pis-sus.  
  
**Radisson** ..... Rah-dee-sōn's.  
**Rasle** ..... Rahl.  
**Razilli** ..... Rah-zee l-ye.  
**Recollet** ..... Ru-koll-a'y.  
**Reconvrance** ..... Ru-koo-vra'h'n's-ss.  
**René Rohault** ... Ru-nay-ro-hó'.  
**Rensselaer** ..... Ren-se-lur.  
**Richelieu** ..... Reesh-le-eu.  
**Rossignol** ..... Roz'een-yoll.  
  
**Sagamore** ..... Sa'g-ah-more.  
**Saignelay** ..... Sān-yū-lay.  
**Saskatchewan** ... Sas-ka'tch-e-wan.  
**Sault Ste. Marie** Sō-san'st-mah-ré'e.  
**Saussaye** ..... So-sa'y-ee.  
**Savannois** ..... Sah-van-waw.

**Schultz** ..... Shoolts.  
**Schuyler** ..... Sky'ler.  
**Senecas** ..... Sé'n-e-kahs.  
**Senezergues** ..... Sé'n-ez-airg.  
**Sioux** ..... See-oo'.  
**Souriquois** ..... Soo-re-quaw.  
**Ste. Foye** ..... San'st-fwaw.  
**St. Pierre** ..... Saint Pe-are'.  
**St. Sulpicius** ... } Saint Sul-pí'sh-e-us.  
**Stadaconé** ..... Stad-ah-ko-nay.  
**Stuyvesant** } Stí've-sant  
 (Petrus) ..... } (Pe-trus).  
  
**Taencas** ..... Ta-en-kahs.  
**Tecumseh** ..... Te-cum'stí.  
**Temiscaming** . } Tem'í-iss-kam-ing.  
**Tessouac** ..... Tess-ou-ak.  
**Tionnates** ..... Tee-on-nā-tes.  
**Troyes** ..... Trwaw.  
  
**Utrecht** ..... You-trekt.  
  
**Vaudrenil** ..... Vo-dreu'ee-yt.  
**Vaure** ..... Vōr.  
**Ventadour** ..... Vahn's-tah-doo'r.  
**Verazzani** ..... Vay-rah-za'h-nee.  
**Vespucci**, } Ves-poot-chee,  
 (Amerigo) ... } (Ah-may-ree-go)  
**Viger** ..... Vee-zhay.  
**Villebon** ..... Veel-bōn's.  
  
**Wyandot** ..... Wy-an-do't.

# INDEX.

---

- Abenakis, 39.  
Abraham, Plains of, 217.  
Acadlans, expulsion of, 199.  
Acadie (*note*), 14; present condition of, 21; colonized, 50; Poutrincourt's return to, 53; Lieutenant-General Saussey in, 60; chartered, 79; restored to France, 81; Razilli commandant in, 82, 102; seized by English, 107; restored to Louis XIV., 108; resettled, 152; Port Royal, capital, 167.  
Aix-la-Chapelle, Treaty of, 185.  
Alabama, The, 427, 435.  
Albany, named, 116; French routed at, 109.  
Alexander, Sir William, 75.  
Algonquin, 38.  
Allens, 316.  
Alllatho, The, 44.  
Allen, Colonel, 250.  
Allen, Isaac, Judge, 260.  
Alliance, Indian, 233.  
America, discovered, 23; origin of name, 26; first peopled, 37.  
Amherst, General, 230.  
Annapolis Royal, 170.  
Argall, Samuel, 60; Governor of Virginia, 61.  
Arnold, Colonel, 250.  
Aroostook War, 379.  
Arthur, Colonel Sir George, 373.  
Ashburton Treaty, 379.  
Assembly, First General, in Canada, 245.  
Assembly, General Indian, 126.  
Attigouantin, Lac, 68.  
Aubry, M., lost, 51.  
Avalon, Province of, 129.  
Aylmer, Lord, 333.  
Baccalaos, 26.  
Bagot, Sir Charles, 386.  
Baltic timber duties repealed, 327.  
Baptiste, Privateer, 160.  
Baronets, Knights, of Nova Scotia, 76.  
Barre, M. de la, 137.  
Basque, language (*note*), 26.  
Bay Chaleur, 28.  
Beaubair's Island, Pestilence on, 245.  
Beauharnois, Marquis de, 177.  
Beaupré, 200.  
Beauséjour, Fort, 191.  
Beaver Dams, unaccountable occurrence at, 293.  
Belleau, Sir N. F., 439.  
Berlin Decree (*note*), 277.  
Bigot, M., 189.  
Billop, Hon. Christopher, 325.  
Bishop, powers of, in Canada, 111.  
Bliss, Daniel, 261.  
Bloody Bridge, 230.  
Borgne, Emanuel le, 106.  
Boston, La Tour at, 104.  
Boulay, Hélène de, 73.  
Bouquet, Colonel, 231.  
Bourbon, Charles de, 63.  
Bourbon, Henri de, 63.  
Bourgade, 42.  
Bourlamaque, M., 211.  
Braddock, General, 196.  
Bradstreet, General, 233.  
Breda, Treaty of, 108.  
Breton, Cape, 209; annexed to St. John, 245; to Nova Scotia, 325.  
British North America Act, 437.  
Brock, General, 284, 285.  
Brouillan, M., 163; Governor, 137.  
Brown, General, 302.  
Brown, George, 420, 421.

- Brulé, Etienne, 37.  
 Burgoyne, General, 253.  
 Burke, Edmund (*note*), 265.  
 Burton, Sir Francis Matthew, 322.
- Cabots, The, 25.  
 Caffière, M. de, 145.  
 Cahigue, 68.  
 Caldwell, Sir John, 321.  
 Callières, in France, 145; death of, 166.  
 Calumet, Isle of, 65.  
 Campbell, Major-General, 328.  
 Campbell, Sir Archibald, 349, 352.  
 Campbell, Sir Colin, 349.
- Canada, origin of name, 35; invaded by English, 154, 169; end of French rule in, 220; Royal Proclamation, 224; Upper and Lower, 266; Reign of Terror in, 279; invaded, 282; Peace of, 308; Trade Act and Tenures Act, 321; Land Company, 323; rebellious tendencies in, 334; invaded, 370; Constitution suspended, 372; invade d by Hunters, 377; Dominion of, 437; internal progress of, 447.
- Canals, 455.  
 Cardwell's despatches, 434.  
 Carignan Salières, 120.  
 Carillon, 210.  
 Carleton, Colonel Thomas, 260.  
 Carleton, Governor Sir Guy, 237, 249; Lord Dorchester, 262; leaves Province, 276.  
 Caroline, Destruction of, 370.  
 Cartier, Jacques, sails from St. Malo, 27; takes possession of Canada, 28; visits Hochelaga, 30; last days, 33.  
 Cartier, Sir George Etienne, 443.  
 Casco Bay, 151.  
 Cataracoui, Peace meeting at, 132; besieged, 143.  
 Cathay (*note*), 15.  
 Cathcart, Major-General, 387.  
 Catherine, the squaw, 228.  
 Caughnawaga, rising at, 376.  
 Cavagnac, Marquis de, 195.  
 Censitaires, 113.  
 Census first taken, 442.  
 Chambly, 250.  
 Chameau, Le, wrecked, 177.  
 Champlain, Lake, 56, 253.  
 Champlain, Samuel de, 14, 49; made lieutenant, 63; returns to France, 64; to Canada, 66; explores the Ottawa, 67; war with Senecas, 69; a prisoner, 70; returns to Quebec, 73; Governor of Canada, 78; death of, 83.
- Charlesbourg, 124.  
 Charlesbourg Royal, 33.  
 Charlevoix, Father, 175.  
 Charlottetown Conference, 430.  
 Chastefort, M. B., 84.  
 Chateauguay, Battle of, 296.  
 Chauncy, Commodore, 296.  
 Chauvigny, Madeline de, 85.  
 Chazy, M. de, killed, 121.  
 Chebucto, 189.  
 Chedabucto, 146, 153, 275.  
 Chesapeake taken, 305.  
 Chicago, Perrot at, 126.  
 Chipman, Hon. Ward, 325.  
 Chippewas, 38.  
 Chrysler's Farm, Battle of, 298.  
 Chubb, Captain, 161.  
 Church, Colonel Benjamin, 162.  
 Church Rule, 84.  
 Civil List Bill, 352.  
 Clarke, Colonel Alured, 269.  
 Clergy Reserves, 317, 410.  
 Clitheroe Major-General, 335.  
 Colbert, M. (*note*), 112.  
 Colebrooke, Major-General, 392.  
 Columbia, British, 414, 442.  
 Columbus, Christopher, 23.  
 Commercial Independence, 400.  
 Commission, Joint High, 441.  
 Commission of Inquiry (1835), 336.  
 Compact, Family, 340; of Nova Scotia, 348.  
 Company of Hundred Associates, 79.  
 Company of the North, 147.  
 Confederation, 19, 418, 433.  
 Congress, First, 152.  
 Conjurers, Hostility of the, 87.  
 Constitutional Act, 266.  
 Constitution of Canada, 444.  
 Cornwallis, Governor, 189.  
 Council, Grand, of Plymouth, 75.  
 Council, Sovereign, 110.  
 Courcelles, M. de, 122; firm rule of, 131.  
 Coureurs du Bois, 115.  
 Cromwell, Oliver, 107.  
 Crown lands, 323, 350.  
 Cumberland, Fort, attacked, 254.  
 Customs dispute, 318.  
 Czar, Mediation of, 300.
- D'Ailleboust, M., 90, 96.  
 Dalhousie, Earl of, 313; recalled, 332.  
 D'Allumette, Isle, 65.

- Dalzell, Captain, 230.  
 Daniel, Father, murdered, 93.  
 D'Anville, death of, 184.  
 D'Argenson, Viscomte, 98.  
 D'Aulnay Charnisay, Seigneur, 103.  
 D'Avaugour, Baron, 99.  
 Davis, Jefferson, 426.  
 Dearborn, General, 285; beleaguered in Fort George, 293.  
 Denonville, Marquis de, 140; recalled, 145.  
 Denys, Nicolas, 102, 106.  
 Deschamps and Brenton, 273.  
 D'Estournelle, Admiral, 184.  
 Detroit, given up, 227; captured, 284; Convention and Treaty of, 435.  
 D'Hertel, M. Rouville, 169.  
 D'Iberville, M., 147; sails for Fort Henry, 161; captures English sailors, 164.  
 Dieskau, Baron, 198.  
 Disputed Territory, 327.  
 Dongan, Colonel, 136, 142.  
 Doric Club, 363.  
 Douglas, Sir Howard, 325.  
 Downie, Captain, 306.  
 Doyle, Major-General, 439.  
 Drummond, Governor Gordon, 310.  
 Drummond, Sir George, assumes command, 298.  
 Duchesneau, M., 133.  
 Dufferin, Earl, 442.  
 Dummer's Treaty, 176  
 Dunnacorna, 29.  
 Dupuys, M., 97.  
 Durham, Earl of, High Commissioner, 373.  
 Duvantye, M., 141.  
  
 Eams, Captain, 161.  
 Education in Canada, 450, 453.  
 Egg Islands, catastrophe at, 172.  
 Elgin, Lord, 388; mobbed, 396.  
 Erie, Fort, evacuated, 307.  
 Erie, Lake, battle on, 295.  
  
 Falland, Lord, Governor of Nova Scotia, 390.  
 Family Compact, The, 315.  
 Fenians, The, 435, 441.  
 Feudal system, The, 113.  
 Feudal tenure (*note*), 19.  
 Fishing Admirals, The, 129.  
 Five Counties, Meeting of the, 363.  
 Five Nations, The, 40.  
  
 Fox, Charles James (*note*), 235.  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 105.  
 Frazer River discovered, 412.  
 Frederickton, St. Anne's Point, 261.  
 Frenchtown surprised, 288.  
 Frobisher, Martin, 34.  
 Frontenac, Count, 132; goes back to Canada, 157; death of, 164.  
 Fur-trade, 48, 114; edict against, 159.  
  
 Galissonnière, Count de la, 187.  
 Galt, A. T., 421.  
 Garrangula, 138.  
 Gaudois, M., 110.  
 George, Battle of Lake, 198.  
 Ghent, Treaty of, 307.  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 34.  
 Gladwyn, The, surprised, 231.  
 Goderich, Lord, 343.  
 Gordon, Hon. A., 427.  
 Gosford, Lord, 336; proclamation, 361.  
 Grenville's Act, 266.  
 Grievances, Seventh Report of, 344.  
 Griffin, The, 134.  
 Guercheville, Madame de, 59.  
  
 Haldimand, General Sir Frederick, 253.  
 Halifax, founded, 190; in time of war, 304; conference, 407.  
 Hampton's, General, army, 296.  
 Harvey, Sir John, 391.  
 Hazen, William, 261.  
 Head, Sir Edmund, 395; Governor-General, 409.  
 Head, Sir Francis, 344; awaits rebellion, 362; resigns, 373.  
 Hennepin, Father, 134.  
 Heriufulson, Biarni, 23.  
 Hochelaga, 30.  
 Hodosanuee, 39.  
 Horse, The, first in Canada, 120.  
 Howe, Lord, death of, 209.  
 Howe, Joseph, leads Reformers in Nova Scotia, 349; enters Assembly, 354; enters railway field, 404; death of, 443.  
 Hudson Bay Company, 411, 440.  
 Hudson Bay Territory, taken by France, 128, 164.  
 Hull, General, surrenders, 284.  
 Hunters' Lodges, 375.  
 Hunter, Major-General, 277.  
 Huron or Wyandot, 33.  
 Huron Mission, 86, 92.

- Indians, origin of name, 25; their welcome to Frenchmen, 29; their tribes, 38; characteristics, 41, government, 44; superstitions, 45; present location, 46; discontent 227; last rising of, 254.
- Inheritance, Law of Federal, 114.
- Inquiry, Royal Commission of 357.
- Intendant, The, 111.
- Iroquois, division into clans, 39; incursions of, 89; murders and massacres by, 93; their spies executed, 98; defiant, 139; seizure of their chiefs, 141.
- Jesuits, Society of, 58; Fathers, 74 College established, 85.
- Johnson, Sir William, 192, 212.
- Jonquière, M. de la, 184, 188.
- Judges, Impeachment of, 273, 301; appointment of, 446.
- Jumonville, M., 123.
- Kébeca liberata*, 156.
- Kempt, Sir James, 324; Governor of Canada, 332.
- Kirkt, Admiral, 79.
- Kondlaronk, The Rat, 144.
- Lachine, Massacre at, 146; Canal, 453.
- Lallemant, Father, 80.
- Land Company (*note*), 350.
- L'Assomption discovered, 29.
- Lauson, M. de, 96.
- Laval, M. Francois de, 98.
- Lawrence, Fort, 191.
- Laws, Conflict of, 235.
- League, British North American, 395.
- Legislatures, Local, 446.
- Lescarbot, Marc, 53.
- Levi, Henri de, Duc de Ventadour, 74.
- Libertine party, 100.
- Lieutenant-Governors, 262.
- Limoulin, 33.
- Lincoln, Abraham, elected, 426; assassinated, 434.
- Liquor traffic, 100.
- London, meeting of delegates at, 436.
- Louisbourg, 124.
- Louisburg founded, 173; siege of, 181; second siege, 208.
- Louisiana named, 136.
- Lount and Matthews executed, 373.
- Loutre, Able de, 190.
- Loyalists, United Empire, 256-258.
- Loyola, Ignatius (*note*), 58.
- Ludlow, Chief-Justice, 260.
- Lundy's Lane, Battle of, 304.
- Mackenzie River discovered, 412.
- Madawaska, 246.
- Madison, President, declares war, 282.
- Madockawando, 161.
- Maine, excitement in, 378.
- Maisonneuve, Paul de Chomedey, 88.
- Maitland, Sir Peregrine, 313.
- Manitoba, 440.
- Manitous, 44.
- Mantelets (*note*), 69.
- March, Colonel, 168.
- Mascarene, Governor, 180.
- Maugerville, 246.
- M'Donald, J. A., 433, 439.
- M'Donald, J. Sanfield, 423.
- M'Dougall, Hon. William, 440.
- M'Gee, D'Arcy, 430; shot, 439.
- M'Kenzie Administration, 444.
- M'Keuzie, William Lyon, 339; persecuted, 341; Mayor of Toronto, 344; rebels, 360; besieges Toronto, 365; in Navy Island, 369; pardoned, 387.
- Meigs, Fort, siege of, 294.
- Membertou, first met with, 54; receives Poutrincourt, 57; baptism of, 58.
- Merchants, Associated, 64, 73.
- Mesnard, Father, 123.
- Mesy, M. de, 119.
- Metcalfe, Sir Charles, 336.
- Michigan territory, held by British, 285.
- Michillimackinac, Hurons settled at, 123; convoy sent to, 151; Fort attacked, 234.
- Miramichi, Fire at, 326.
- Missionaries, Dangers of, 90.
- Missions, Western, 123.
- Mississippi explored, 127.
- Mohawks, Campaign against, 121.
- Monarchy triumphant, 346.
- Monck, Viscount, Governor, 427.
- Moncton, Colonel, 196.
- Monk, Judge, 301.
- Monongahela, 197.
- Montagnais, 38, 45, 56, 67.
- Montcalm, Marquis de, 201; death of, 218.
- Montgomery, Colonel Richard, 250; killed, 252.
- Montgomery Farm, 366.

- Montmagny, M. de, Governor, 84.  
 Montmorency, Duc de (*note*), 72.  
 Montreal founded, 87; Iroquois deputies at, 131; Onondagas at, 142; threatened by the English, 154; surrender of, 219; disturbances at, 396.  
 Monts, De, Lieutenant-General of Acadie, 50; returns to France, 53; his monopoly renewed, 55.  
 Moose Island captured, 305.  
 Moravia village, Battle of, 295.  
 Moravians (*note*), 46.  
 Morgan, Captain, 252.  
 Mount Royal named, 31.  
 Municipal Institutions, 401.  
 Murray, General, 226.  
  
 Nachouac, Fort on the, 160, 163.  
 Napierville, rising at, 376.  
 Navigation: Canals, 452.  
 Navigation Laws repealed, 401.  
 Navy Island, 369.  
 Necessity, Fort, 194.  
 Neilson, Mr., 322.  
 Neison, Dr. Robert, 376.  
 Nelson, Dr. Wolfred, 363; captured, 365.  
 Neutrality, Treaty of, 140.  
 Newark, Legislature meets at, 270; in flames, 298.  
 New Brunswick, 260; disputes at, 275; in 1848, 392; Anti-Confederate, 433.  
 New England Colonies, 95.  
 Newfoundland, French in, 128.  
 New France, 48.  
 New Orleans, Battle of, 307.  
 New York named, 116.  
 Niagara, Fort, invested, 213; meeting at, 232; an American possession, 291.  
 Niagara frontier crossed, 303.  
 Nibachis, native chief, 65.  
 Nicholson, Colonel Francis, 167.  
 Nipercini, The, 67.  
 Nipissing, Lake, 67.  
 Norembègue, 32.  
 North-West Territory, 411.  
 Nova Scotia, charter granted, 75; in 1755-60, 244; decline of, 324; Family Compact, 389; Responsible Government, 391.  
  
 Oaths Bill, 443.  
 Odell, Hon. Jonathan, 260.  
 Odell-town, 376.  
 Ogdensburg burned, 288.  
 Ohio Company, 193.  
  
 Ojibaways, 38.  
 Okies, 45.  
 Onondaga Mission, 97.  
 Onondagas attacked, 158.  
 Oregon Territory, 413.  
 Oswego taken, 202, 302.  
 Ottawa, Parliament removed to, 397.  
 Ottawas, 38.  
 Ougonhose, Iroquois, 39.  
  
 Pacific Scandal, The, 443.  
 Papineau, Louis, 314; opposed, 322; Speaker, 332; against Britain, 335; unites with M'Kenzie 361.  
 Paria (*note*), 26.  
 Paris, Treaty of (*note*), 16, 223; Peace of, 257.  
 Parliament Buildings at Montreal burned, 396.  
 Parliament, First, of united Canadas, 384; Powers of, 446; first, of Dominion, 437.  
 Parrtown, 259.  
 Patronage, Right of, 387.  
 Peltrie, Madame de la, 85.  
 Pemaquid, Fort at, 160.  
 Pepperell, William, 181.  
 Perrot, Nicholas, 126.  
 Perry on Lake Erie, 295.  
 Philadelphia Congress, 249.  
 Phips, Sir William, 152.  
 Pitt, Fort, Siege of, 232.  
 Pitt, William, 205.  
 Place d'Armes, 91.  
 Placentia, 161.  
 Point Pelé Island, 371.  
 Pontchartrain, M., 159.  
 Pontgravé, M., 49.  
 Pontiac, M., 226; conspiracy of, 228; death of, 233.  
 Population, 453, 457.  
 Portland Convention, 404.  
 Port Royal, named, 52; discord at, 54; captured, 153; attacked, 168.  
 Poutrincourt, first arrival of, 50; goes to France, 53; abandons Acadie, 57; his second return to France, 59; slain, 62.  
 Prescott, General, 271.  
 Presentation, La, 192.  
 Prevost, Sir George, 285; retreat of, 292; in New York, 306.  
*Prima Vista*, 25.  
 Prince Edward's Island, 21, 275, 443.  
 Prince of Wales in Canada, 425.

- Privy Council, First, 439.  
 Proctor, Colonel, 288.  
 Provinces, Maritime, 369.  
 Puritan Fathers (*note*), 39.  
 Putnam, James, 260.
- Quebec, founded, 15; present condition of, 19; origin of name, 30; first captured, 81; restored, 81; besieged by Iroquois, 99; by English, 155; Wolfe before, 213; Act, 243; besieged by Montgomery, 251; Scheme, 431.  
 Queenston, Battle of, 296.  
 Quesne, Marquis du, 189.  
 Quints, 113.
- Railways: Canada Pacific, 442; Canadian, 456; Facility Bill, 457.  
 Rasle, Father, 176.  
 Raudot, Messieurs, 174.  
 Razilli, Isaac de, 82, 102.  
 Reade, Mr. A., 393.  
 Rebellion Losses Bill, 395.  
 Reciprocity Treaty, 408.  
 Recollets, The, 67; re-established, 125.  
 Rectories, Fifty-six, 344.  
 Reform Administration (*note*), 343.  
 Reformers, Moderate, 340; views of, 359; declaration of, 362.  
 Regiment, The King's (of New Brunswick), 290.  
 Resolutions, The Ninety-two, 336.  
 Resolutions, The Twelve, 354.  
 Revenue, Appropriation of, 445.  
 Revenue, Casual and Territorial, 312, 352.  
 Revolution, French, 265.  
 Riall, Major-General, 303.  
 Richelieu, Cardinal (*note*), 78.  
 Richelieu, Forts on the, 121.  
 Richmond, Duke of, 313.  
 Riel in Fort Garry, 440.  
 Roads and Bridges, 452.  
 Roberval, Sieur de, 32.  
 Robeyre, M. de, 146.  
 Robinson, Beverley, 261.  
 Roche, Sieur de la, 49.  
 Rossignol, 51.  
 Russell, Lord John, 357; his Resolutions, 358; his Despatches, 382.  
 Ryswick, Peace of, 164.
- Salle, Robert Cavalier la, 134; explores the Mississippi, 135.  
 Sandusky attacked, 295.  
 Sandwich, Attack on, 377.  
 San Juan Difficulty, 413, 415.  
 Saratoga, Surrender at, 253.  
 Saunders, Judge John, 261.  
 Saussaye, M. de la, 60.  
 Savannois, 38.  
 Schenectady, Sack of, 150.  
 Schultz, Van, Surrender of, 377.  
 Schuyler, General, 249.  
 Scotch, at Port Royal, 76.  
 Scott, General Winfield, 379.  
 Search, Right of, 276.  
 Secession, War of, 418.  
 Secretaryship, Provincial, 393.  
 Sections, War of, 385.  
 Sedgwick, Colonel R., 107.  
 Selkirk Settlement, 412.  
 Senate, The, 445.  
 Senecas, War with, 69; punished, 141.  
 Seven Years' War, 201.  
 Sewell, Chief-Justice, 301.  
 Sheaffe, Sir Roger, 291.  
 Sherbrooke, Sir John Cope, 311.  
 Sicotte, A., 423.  
 Silleri, Marquis Noel B., 85.  
 Simcoe Country, 39.  
 Simcoe, Governor (*note*), 19, 270.  
 Sioux, 33.  
 Six Nations, The, 176.  
 Slave Lake, Great, discovered, 412.  
 Smallpox, 142.  
 Smythe, Major-General, 325.  
 Soccage (*note*), 225.  
 Sons of Liberty, Political Club, 363.  
 Stadacoe's, 30.  
 Stamp Act, 242.  
 Stoney Creek surprised, 293.  
 Street's, Hon. George, Mission, 353.  
 Studholme, Gilfred, 261.  
 St. Albans invaded, 434.  
 St. Castine, Baron, 161.  
 St. Croix named, 52.  
 St. Denis and St. Charles, 364.  
 St. Foye, Battle of, 219.  
 St. Germain-en-Laye, Treaty of, 81.  
 St. John (Island), captured, 209; name changed, 275; separated from Nova Scotia, 247.  
 St. John (New Brunswick), 52, 261.  
 St. John's, Fort (on the Richelieu), 249.  
 St. John's (Newfoundland) 129; sacked, 164.

- Ste.-Marie, Mission at, 91.  
 St. Sauveur, settlement, 60; destroyed, 61.  
 St. Sulpicius, Seminary of, 97.  
 Sunbury, 246.  
 Susa, Convention of, 81.  
 Sutton, Hon. J. H. I., 409.  
 Sydenham, Lord, Governor of Nova Scotia, 390.  
  
 Tadoussac, English fleet at, 80.  
 Talon, M., 115; investigates the case of Mesy, 120; tries to improve the country, 123-125; claims Hudson Bay Territory for France, 127.  
 Tariffa, Canadian, 423.  
 Tecumseh, 283; besieges St. Meigs, 294; slain, 296.  
 Temple, Sir Thomas, 108.  
 Territory, Disputed, 258, 377.  
 Terror, Reign of, in Lower Canada, 279.  
 Thomas, General, 252.  
 Thompson, Hon. Charles, 381; Lord Sydenham, 384.  
 Ticonderoga, 202.  
 Tilley, Hon. Samuel L., 430.  
 Tonti, Chevalier, 134.  
 Toronto, 20; threatened, 365; Conference at, 406.  
 Tour, Charles de la, 82; Lieutenant, 102; disobeys the King, 103; heroism of his wife, 105; marries D'Aulnay's widow, 106; seizes Acadie, 108.  
 Tracy, Marquis de, 120.  
 Treaty of Amity, 271.  
 Trent Affair, The, 427.  
 Trial by jury, 236.  
 Triple Invasion, 211.  
 Two Mountains, Insurrection in, 367.  
  
 Union Scheme, 320; of Two Canadas, 383.  
 Upham, Joshua, Judge, 260.  
 Utrecht, Treaty of, 173.  
  
 Vancouver's Island, 413.  
 Vaudreuil, Marquis de, appointed, 165; invades Canada, 163; death of, 177.  
  
 Verazzani, John, 27.  
 Vespucci, Amerigo, 26.  
 Vetch and Nicholson, Colonels, 109.  
 Victoria Bridge (*note*), 424.  
 Victoria Founded, 413.  
 Vignan, 64, 66.  
 Villebon, goes with D'Iberville, 161; sails for Newfoundland, 163.  
 Vincent, Color?, 291.  
 Virginia (*note*), 60.  
 Viviers, De, stratagem of, 181.  
  
 Wampum, 42.  
 War, U.S., 426.  
 Washington, burned, 306; Treaty of, 441.  
 Washington, George, 193.  
 Webster, Daniel, 379.  
 Weir, Lieutenant, murdered, 304.  
 Welland Canal, 453.  
 Wentworth, Sir John, 273.  
 West India Company established, 112; chartered, 115.  
 Westminster founded, 415.  
 Westminster, Treaty of (*note*), 107.  
 Whelan, Patrick, 440.  
 Wilkes, Captain, 427.  
 Wilkinson's army, 296.  
 Willard, Abijah, 261.  
 William-Henry, Fort (on the Pemaquid), taken, 161.  
 William-Henry, Fort (on Lake George), erected, 199; Massacre of, 203.  
 Wilmot, Lemuel, leads Reformers in New Brunswick, 349; his mission, 351.  
 Winacke, R. J., 418.  
 Winslow, Edward, Judge, 260.  
 Wolfe, General, 208; before Quebec, 213; slain, 213.  
 Wolseley, Lieutenant-Colonel, 440.  
 Wyandot, 38.  
  
 Yeo, Sir James, 292.  
 York, seat of Government, 270; Surrender of, 291.  
 Yorktown, Surrender of British army at, 256.

;

t,

2;

),-

),

in

n,

oc,

ur-

ny